

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

v92

Revelation

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

Copyright © 2022 by unfoldingWord

This work is made available under the Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License. To view a copy of this license, visit https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0/ or send a letter to Creative Commons, PO Box 1866, Mountain View, CA 94042, USA.

unfoldingWord® is a registered trademark of unfoldingWord. Use of the unfoldingWord name or logo requires the written permission of unfoldingWord. Under the terms of the CC BY-SA license, you may copy and redistribute this unmodified work as long as you keep the unfoldingWord® trademark intact. If you modify a copy or translate this work, thereby creating a derivative work, you must remove the unfoldingWord® trademark.

On the derivative work, you must indicate what changes you have made and attribute the work as follows: “The original work by unfoldingWord is available from unfoldingword.org/utn”. You must also make your derivative work available under the same license (CC BY-SA).

If you would like to notify unfoldingWord regarding your translation of this work, please contact us at unfoldingword.org/contact/.

Table of Contents

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes **9**
Revelation 9
Revelation Introduction 9
Revelation 1 14
Revelation 2 48
Revelation 3 86
Revelation 4 117
Revelation 5 129
Revelation 6 147
Revelation 7 171
Revelation 8 191
Revelation 9 207
Revelation 10 229
Revelation 11 240
Revelation 12 265
Revelation 13 287
Revelation 14 310
Revelation 15 336
Revelation 16 348
Revelation 17 374
Revelation 18 396
Revelation 19 434
Revelation 20 463
Revelation 21 482
Revelation 22 511
Appendix: Translation Academy **537**
First, Second or Third Person 537
Abstract Nouns 538
Active or Passive 540
Apostrophe 543
Double Negatives 544
Doublet 546
Ellipsis 548
Order of Events 550
Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’ 552
Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information 553
Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit 556
When to Keep Information Implicit 558
When Masculine Words Include Women 559
Generic Noun Phrases 560
Go and Come 562
Hendiadys 563
Hyperbole 565
Idiom 568
Imperatives — Other Uses 570
Third-Person Imperatives 573
Information Structure 575
Irony 577
Litany 579
Merism 581
Metaphor 582
Metonymy 588
Nominal Adjectives 590
Parallelism 591
Personification 594
Possession 595
Direct and Indirect Quotations 598
Quote Markings 600
Quotes within Quotes 602
Reduplication 604
Rhetorical Question 606
Simile 609
Synecdoche 611
Forms of You 612
Forms of ‘You’ — Dual/Plural 613
Forms of ‘You’ — Singular 615

Collective Nouns 616
Connect — Exception Clauses 619
Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship 620
Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship 622
Translating Son and Father 624
Biblical Distance 626
Blessings 628
Biblical Money 630
Biblical Volume 631
Biblical Weight 634
Fractions 635
How to Translate Names 637
Numbers 640
Ordinal Numbers 642
Symbolic Action 644
Irregular Use of Tenses 645
Textual Variants 648
Copy or Borrow Words 650
Translate Unknowns 652
Verse Bridges 654
Symbolic Prophecy 656
Background Information 658
Poetry 661
Politeness 663
Pronouns — When to Use Them 666
Quotations and Quote Margins 668
Symbolic Language 669
Appendix: Translation Words **671**
abomination, abominable 671
adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress 672
Almighty 673
altar 673
amen, truly 674
angel, archangel 675
anoint, anointed, anointing 677
apostle, apostleship 678
ark 679
ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh, box, Box of the Testimony, Box of the Covenant of Yahweh 679
authority 680
believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief 681
beloved 683
blameless 684
blasphemy, blaspheme, blasphemous 684
bless, blessed, blessing 685
bind, bond, bound 686
call, called, call out, called out 687
Christ, Messiah 688
church, Church 689
confess, confession 690
covenant 691
crucify, crucified 693
curse, cursed, cursing 694
demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit 695
chosen, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect 696
eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever 697
evil, wicked, wickedness, unpleasant 698
faith 699
faithful, faithfulness, trustworthy 700
god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry 701
fear, afraid, frighten 703
fellowship 704
fulfill, fulfilled, carried out 704
Gentile 705
glory, glorious, glorify 706
God 707
godly, godliness, ungodly, godless, ungodliness, godlessness 709
God the Father, heavenly Father, Father 710
good news, gospel 711
grace, gracious 712
Hades, Sheol 713

heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly 714
Hebrew 715
hell, lake of fire 716
holy, holiness, unholy, sacred 717
Holy One 718
Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit 719
honor 720
in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him 721
inherit, inheritance, heir 722
Israel, Israelites 723
Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus 724
Jew, Jewish 725
judge, judgment 726
kingdom of God, kingdom of heaven 727
lamb, Lamb of God 729
lord, Lord, master, sir 730
love, beloved 731
manna 733
to minister, ministry 733
people of God 734
perish 735
pray, prayer 736
priest, priesthood 737
prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess 739
pure, purify, purification 740
redeem, redeemer, redemption 741
repent, repentance 742
resurrection 743
righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness 744
saint 746
Satan, devil, evil one 747
save, saved, safe, salvation, rescue 748
sign, proof, reminder 750
sin, sinful, sinner, sinning 751
Son of God, the Son 752
Son of Man, son of man 753
soul, self 754
spirit, wind, breath 755
synagogue 757
tabernacle 757
temple, house, house of God 758
test, tested, testing, testing in the fire 759
testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness, evidence 760
will of God 762
wise, wisdom 763
woe 764
word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, scripture 765
world, worldly 766
prostrate, bow down, worship 767
wrath, fury 768
zeal, zealous 769
Zion, Mount Zion 770
Asher 770
Asia 771
Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian 771
Balaam 772
Benjamin, Benjaminite 773
David 773
Egypt, Egyptian 774
Ephesus, Ephesian 775
Euphrates River, the River 776
Gad 776
Greek, Grecian, Hellenist 777
Issachar 777
Jerusalem 778
Jezebel 779
John (the apostle) 779
Joseph (OT) 780
Judah 781
Levi, Levite 782

Manasseh 783
Moses 784
Naphtali 785
Reuben 785
Simeon 786
Sodom 786
Zebulun 787
twelve tribes of Israel, twelve tribes 787
abyss, bottomless pit 788
adversary, enemy 788
age, aged, old, old age, years old 789
age, era, time 789
assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting, gather, community 790
avenge, avenger, revenge, vengeance 791
barley 792
bear, bearer, bore, borne, produce, produced 792
bear 793
beast 793
day 794
hour, moment 795
month, monthly 796
year 796
Book of Life 797
bow, bow down, kneel, bend, bend the knee 797
bow and arrow, a bow 798
breastplate, breastpiece 799
bride, bridal 799
bridegroom, groom 800
bronze 800
captive, captivate, captivity, catch 801
chariot, charioteer 802
commander 802
corrupt, corrupted, corruption, incorruptibility, depraved 803
advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels 803
cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox 804
create, created, creation, creator 805
creature, creation 806
crown, crowned 806
cry, cry out, outcry 807
deceive, lie, deception, illusion 808
defile, defiled, desecrate 809
desert, wilderness 810
desolate, desolated, desolation, deserted, desolator 810
destroy, destruction, annihilate 811
detest, detested, detestable 812
devour 813
drunk, drunkard 814
eagle 814
earth, land 815
elder 816
endure, endurance 816
exult, exultant 817
false prophet 818
famine 818
feast, feasting 819
fig 820
firstborn 820
firstfruit, firstfruits 821
flood 822
flute, pipe 823
sexual immorality, immorality, immoral, fornication 824
foundation, founder, founded 825
fountain, source, spring 826
frankincense 826
free, freed, freedom, freeman, freewill, liberty 827
fruit, fruitful, unfruitful 828
furnace 829
gate, gate bar, gatekeeper, gatepost, gateway 829
gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt around 830
gold, golden 831

grape, grapevine 832
hail, hailstone, hailstorm 832
hard, harder 833
harp, harpist 833
harvest, reap 834
holy city 835
honey, honeycomb 835
horn, horned, shofar 836
horse, warhorse, horseback, stallion, steed, mare 836
image, carved image, cast metal image, figure, carved figure, statue 837
incense 838
joy, joyful, rejoice, glad 838
king, kingship 840
kingdom 841
know, knew, knowledge, known, unknown, distinguish 842
labor, labors, labored, laboring, laborer, work, hard work 843
lamp 843
lampstand 844
leopard 845
lion, lioness 845
locust 846
lust, lustful, passion, desire 846
might, mighty, mighty works 847
mind, mindful, remind, reminder, likeminded 848
mourn, mourner, weeping 849
mystery, hidden truth 849
nation 850
oath, vow, swear, swearing, swear by, sworn 851
oil 852
olive 852
palm 853
peace, peaceful, peacemaker 853
persecute 854
persevere, perseverance 855
column, pillar 856
pit, pitfall, trench, cistern 857
plague 857
praise, praised, praiseworthy 858
preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation 859
prostitute, harlot, whored 860
purple 861
queen 861
rebuke, reprove 862
receive, welcome, taken up, acceptance 862
reed 863
reign, rule 864
reward, prize, deserve 864
robe, robed 865
rod 866
rule, reign, ruler, prefect, official, leader 866
sackcloth 867
scroll 868
seal, sealed, unsealed 868
seed 869
seek, search, look for 870
seize, seizure, capture 871
serpent, snake, viper 871
servant, serve, maidservant, young man, young women 872
shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach 873
ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearer, sheepskin 875
shepherd, herder, pastor 876
silver 877
slander, slanderer, revile, insult 878
slaughter, slaughtered 878
snow 879
sorcerer, sorceress, sorcery, sorceries, witchcraft, magician 879
staff, clubs 880
suffer, suffering 880
sulfur, sulfurous 881
sword, swordsmen 882

terror, terrorize, terrify, dread, panic 883
thief, thieves, rob, robber, robbery, bandit 883
throne, enthroned 884
grave, gravedigger, tomb, burial place 885
tongue, language 886
torment, tormented, tormentor 887
trample 888
tribe, tribal, tribesmen 888
tribulation, distress, distresses, trouble 889
trumpet, trumpeter 889
understand, understanding, thinking 890
vine 890
virgin, virginity 891
vision, envision 891
watch, guard, take heed, beware 892
wheat 893
wine, wineskin, new wine 893
winepress 894
womb 895

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

Revelation

Revelation Introduction

Introduction to Revelation

Part 1: General Introduction

Outline of Revelation

1. Opening (1:1–20)
2. Letters to the seven churches (2:1–3:22)
3. Vision of God and the Lamb in heaven (4:1–5:14)
4. The seven seals (6:1–8:1)
5. The seven trumpets (8:2–13:18)
6. Worship of the Lamb and judgment against Babylon (14:1–20)
7. The seven bowls (15:1–18:24)
8. Worship in heaven (19:1–10)
9. The destruction of the beast (19:11–21)
10. The thousand years, destruction of Satan, and final judgment (20:1–15)
11. The new creation and the new Jerusalem (21:1–22:5)
12. Closing (22:6–21)

Many interpreters believe that a phrase in 1:19, “what you have seen, and what is, and what is about to happen after these things,” describes three main divisions of the book. “What you have seen” would describe John’s vision of Jesus in chapter 1. “What is” would describe the current situation of the churches, addressed in chapters 2 and 3. “What is about to happen after these things” would describe the visions of the future in the rest of the book.

Who wrote the book of Revelation?

The author identifies himself as John. Many interpreters believe that this means he was the apostle John. However, other interpreters believe this was a different man named John, a prophet who had a ministry among the seven churches described in chapters 2 and 3. In either

case, this man wrote the book while on the island of Patmos. The Romans had exiled him there for teaching people about Jesus.

What type of writing is the book of Revelation?

John used a special style of writing to describe his visions. John described what he saw by using many symbols. This style of writing is called symbolic prophecy or apocalyptic literature, and a book written in this style is called an apocalypse.

No other book of the Bible is written entirely in apocalyptic style like the book of Revelation. However, some passages in the books of Ezekiel, Zechariah, and especially Daniel are similar in content and style to Revelation. It may be beneficial to translate Revelation at the same time as Daniel since those two books have a similar style and some shared imagery. (See: Symbolic Prophecy)

How should we translate the title of this book?

Translators may choose to call this book by one of its traditional titles, such as "Revelation," "The Revelation of Jesus Christ," "The Revelation to Saint John," or "The Apocalypse of John." Or they may choose a different title such as "The Things that Jesus Christ Showed to John." (See: How to Translate Names)

What is the book of Revelation about?

John wrote the book of Revelation to encourage believers to remain faithful even when suffering persecution. In the book, John describes visions he had of Satan and his followers fighting against and killing believers. In these visions, God causes many terrible things to happen on earth to punish wicked people. In the end, Jesus defeats Satan and his followers. Then Jesus comforts those who were faithful. Those believers will live forever with God in the new heavens and earth.

Does one need to understand the book of Revelation in order to translate it?

The book provides the reader with some idea of how to understand its symbols by interpreting a few of them at the beginning (1:20) and near the end (19:8). But one does not need to understand all of the symbols in the book of Revelation in order to translate it properly. Translators should not suggest possible meanings for the symbols in their translations. (See: Symbolic Prophecy)

Are the events of Revelation past or future?

Since early Christian times, scholars have interpreted Revelation differently. Some scholars think John described events that happened during his lifetime. Other scholars think John described events that happened throughout history, from his time until the return of Jesus. Still other scholars think John described events that will happen in a short period of time just before Christ returns.

Translators do not need to decide about the time reference of the visions in this book in order to translate it, and they should be careful not to let their own beliefs influence how they translate. They should leave the prophecies in the tenses that are used in the ULT.

Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts

Angels

People in this culture recognized that God uses created spirits called angels to carry out his purposes. In the book of Revelation, John describes seeing visions of angels announcing and executing God's judgments.

In chapters 1–3 there may be some special uses of the word "angel." That word can also mean "messenger," and so the "angels of the seven churches" (1:20) could mean messengers whom those churches had sent to John or whom John was sending to those churches. The word might also refer symbolically to leaders of those seven churches. In 1:1, John says that either God or Jesus "sent through his angel" to make this revelation known. If John is saying that it was God who sent, the "angel" could figuratively mean Jesus as a messenger of God. If John is saying that it was Jesus who sent, the "angel" could mean the actual angel with whom John speaks in 19:10 and 22:9.

In any event, translators should use the word "angel" throughout the book, wherever it appears in the ULT, and not offer interpretations of the word in their translations. (See: angel, archangel)

Part 3: Important Translation Issues

Language that would be figurative in other contexts

If your language does not generally use figures of speech, and if you have previously translated other books of the Bible, you may be accustomed to using literal language to translate figurative language. However, that would not be appropriate in this book, since John is describing what he actually saw and heard in his visions. For example, John says in 16:7, "I heard the altar saying." In other contexts, this might mean that John heard someone standing at the altar saying something. But within the world of these visions, the altar itself could have spoken. In 16:14, John speaks of "the kings of the whole world." In other contexts, this might be a generalization for emphasis, and it might be appropriate to translate it as "kings throughout the world." But in this book, this kind of generalization applies to everyone John saw in his vision, so it can be translated literally. In other contexts, the phrase "the throne of God" might refer figuratively to the presence of God (as it does in Hebrews 4:16, for example). But here it literally means the royal throne upon which God sits as the ruler of the universe. It would be appropriate in all such cases to retain John's actual language and not translate it as if it were representing something else.

Verb tenses

As John describes his visions, he sometimes changes back and forth between the present and past tenses or between the present and future tenses. You can make these verb tenses consistent in your translation. For example, in 16:21, where John says, "And great hail, about a talent, comes down from heaven upon men, and men blasphemed God because of the plague of hail, because that plague is exceedingly great," you could say, "And great hail, about a talent, came down from heaven upon men, and men blasphemed God because of the plague of hail, because that plague was exceedingly great." In 21:24, where John says, "the nations will walk by the light of her, and the kings of the earth bring their glory into her," you could say, "the nations will walk by the light of her, and the kings of the earth will bring their glory into her."

Singular and plural "you"

Many languages have separate forms for singular and plural "you." In most contexts in the book of Revelation, it is clear whether one person or a group of people is being addressed and so it is obvious what form to use. Notes will specify which form of the word the book is using when this may not be clear.

Periods of time

John refers to various periods of time in Revelation. For example, there are references to three and a half days, ten days, 1,260 days, and forty-two months. Some scholars think these time periods are symbolic. Other scholars think these are actual time periods. The translator should translate these expressions as referencing actual periods of time. It is a matter of interpretation, not translation, to determine their significance or possible symbolic reference.

"Saints"

John often uses the term "saints" to describe people who believe in Jesus and obey him faithfully. John uses the term by association with the way these people are set apart as holy for God. You language may have a term or expression of its own that would convey this meaning. In your translation you could also express the meaning plainly by using a phrase such as "disciples of Jesus" or "believers in Jesus." (See: Metonymy)

"Amen"

John uses the word "Amen" many times in this book. This is a Hebrew word that people used to express agreement and the wish that something someone said would actually happen. John spells out the word using Greek letters so that his readers will know how it sounds. In your translation you could also spell this word the way it sounds in your language, especially if people in the churches in your area use the word and your readers are likely to understand its meaning. If the word would not be familiar, you could translate it with a phrase that expresses its meaning, as the UST does by translating "Amen" as "May it be so." However, in 3:14, where Jesus describes himself as "the Amen," it would probably be most appropriate to spell the word the way it sounds, rather than have Jesus call himself "the May It Be So." (See: Copy or Borrow Words)

"Behold"

As John describes what he saw in his visions, he frequently uses the word "behold" to focus the attention of his listeners on what he is about to say. Jesus also uses the word that way in his letters to the seven churches, and characters in the visions that John sees also use the word in the same sense. The word literally means "look!" or "see!" However, in this usage, the expression means to "see" in the figurative sense of giving notice and attention. If it would be helpful in your language, in your translation you could express the meaning plainly by using an expression such as "listen carefully!" (See: Metaphor)

"Keep"

In this book, John uses the word "keep" many times to mean "obey." If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. For example, in 1:3 you could say "obeying" rather than "keeping." However, there are two places, 3:10 and 16:15, where the word means "preserve" instead. In 3:10, Jesus actually contrasts these two meanings. He says, "Because you have kept the word of my steadfastness, I will also keep you from the hour of

testing." This means, "Because you have obeyed the word of my steadfastness, I will also preserve you from the hour of testing." In 16:15, the phrase "the one keeping his garments" means "the one preserving his garments," that is, keeping them in good repair, "so that he might not walk around naked." Notes will address these specific uses; in other contexts, translators may find that "obey" is a good way to translate the term "keep." (See: Idiom)

"Certainly not"

In many places throughout the book of Revelation, the ULT uses the expression "certainly not" to translate a double negative that John uses for emphasis. The second negative does not cancel the first to create a positive meaning. If for emphasis your language uses double negatives that do not cancel one another, it would be appropriate to use that construction in these places. (See: Double Negatives)

"the ones living on the earth"

John uses the expression "the ones living on the earth" in a specific sense in several places in the book (3:10, 6:10, 8:13, 11:10, 13:8, 13:12, 13:14, 17:2, 17:8). In these places John is not referring in general to humans who live in the world. He means specifically people who will disobey God and worship idols at the time of the events that the book of Revelation describes. You may have an expression in your language that you could use in these places with this meaning, such as "worldly people."

Revelation 1

Revelation 1 Introduction

Revelation 1 Chapter Introduction

Structure and Formatting

This chapter explains how the book of Revelation records the vision that John received on the island of Patmos.

- Prologue (1:1–8)
- Preface (1:1–3)
- Address and Doxology (1:4–6)
- Theme (1:7–8)
- John's Vision of Christ (1:9–20)

Some translations set quotations from the Old Testament farther to the right on the page to make them easier to read. The ULT does this with the words quoted in verse 7.

Religious and Cultural Concepts in This Chapter

Language that would be figurative in other contexts

To describe the way he saw Jesus in the opening vision that this chapter relates, John uses much language that would be treated as figurative in other contexts. For example, John says in verse 16 that Jesus had "a sharp, double-edged sword coming out of his mouth," and yet Jesus was still able to speak. Since Hebrews 4:12 describes the word of God as like a double-edged sword, we might therefore think that this image actually indicates that Jesus speaks the very words of God because he is God himself. But as the General Introduction to Revelation discusses, it would not be appropriate to use literal language like that in your translation to explain the meaning of what John saw. John is describing what he actually saw and heard in his visions, and you should simply translate his descriptions rather than interpreting them.

Seven churches

John wrote this book to seven actual churches in the Roman province of Asia. That province was located in the western part of what is now the country of Turkey. The churches themselves would be found in the southwestern area of Turkey. The list of the churches in verse 11 follows a particular order. The list begins with Ephesus, the most important city at the time, and moves clockwise around the cities, ending with Laodicea, which was the southernmost city. The letters in chapters 2 and 3 follow this same order.

Revelation 1:1

ULT	UST
The revelation of Jesus Christ, which God gave to him to show to his servants what must happen soon. And he signified, sending through his angel to his servant John,	*This book is about things that God revealed to Jesus the Messiah. These things are just about to happen. God revealed them to Jesus so that he could tell the people who believe in him about them. Jesus shared these things by sending his angel to show them to me, John, a man who serves him faithfully.*

ULT **The revelation of Jesus Christ, which God gave to him**

UST This book is about things that God revealed to Jesus the Messiah … God revealed them to Jesus

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **revelation**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [The things that God revealed to Jesus Christ] or [The things that Jesus Christ revealed, which God gave him]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **The revelation of Jesus Christ**

UST This book is about things that God revealed to Jesus the Messiah

This phrase could mean: (1) that this book is a **revelation** that came to Jesus from God. Alternate translation: [The revelation to Jesus Christ]; or (2) that this book is a **revelation** that came from Jesus to John, the author of the book. Alternate translation: [The revelation from Jesus Christ]

Support Reference: Possession

ULT **to his servants**

UST the people who believe in him

Here, **his servants** refers to people who believe in Jesus Christ and accordingly serve him as their Lord. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could indicate that explicitly. Alternate translation: [those who believe in him]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **he signified**

UST Jesus shared these things

The word translated **signified** could mean implicitly: (1) that Jesus used signs or symbols to communicate this **revelation**. Alternate translation: [he showed this by signs]; or (2) that Jesus made known **what must happen soon**. Alternate translation: [he made this known]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **to his servant John**

UST to show them to {me,} John, a man who serves him faithfully

John is speaking about himself in the third person. If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate this in the first person. Alternate translation: [to me, John, his servant]

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

> ULT **John**
> UST to show them to {me,} John

The word **John** is the name of a man. See the General Introduction to Revelation for a discussion of who this man may have been.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jesus	Jesus
Christ	Messiah
God	God
servants	the people who believe in
angel	angel
servant	serves
John	John

Revelation 1:2

ULT	UST
who attested the word of God and the testimony of Jesus Christ, as much as he saw.	*I, John, am reporting to you everything that I saw concerning this message from God that Jesus the Messiah revealed to me.*

ULT **who attested**
UST I, John, am reporting to you

Although John uses the past tense and says **attested**, he means that he is testifying to what **he saw** by sending this written record of his visions to the believers in the seven churches. You could indicate this in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [who is attesting, by sending you this written record of his visions,]
Support Reference: Irregular Use of Tenses

ULT **the word of God and the testimony of Jesus Christ**
UST this message from God that Jesus the Messiah revealed to me

These two phrases mean similar things. John is using them together for emphasis. If it would be clearer for your readers, you could express the emphasis with a single phrase. Alternate translation: [to what God told Jesus Christ to disclose]
Support Reference: Doublet

ULT **the word of God**
UST this message from God

John uses **word** figuratively to refer to the message that God spoke by using words. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [to the message that God spoke]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **the testimony of Jesus Christ**
UST Jesus the Messiah revealed to me

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **testimony**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [to the things about which Jesus Christ testified]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
attested	am reporting to you
word of God	this message from God
testimony	revealed to me
Jesus	Jesus
Christ	Messiah

Revelation 1:3

ULT	UST
Blessed are the one reading and the ones hearing the words of this prophecy and keeping the things having been written in it, for the time is near.	*How happy is the person who reads this book of prophecy for others to hear, and how happy are all who hear it and obey what this prophecy says, because these events will happen soon.*

ULT **the one reading**
UST the person who reads … for others to hear

In this context, the word **reading** implicitly means "reading aloud." In John's culture, a message to a church, such as the message he is sending to the seven churches in this book, would have been read aloud to the assembled believers. You can indicate this in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. (Revelation is not simply declaring a blessing upon any believer today who would read the book out loud in private.) Alternate translation: [the one reading aloud] or [the one reading for others to hear]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **the one reading**
UST the person who reads … for others to hear

Here, **the one reading** does not refer to a specific person. It refers to anyone who reads the words of the prophecy aloud. Express this in the way that would be most natural in your language. Alternate translation: [anyone who reads aloud]
Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

ULT **keeping**
UST obey

See the discussion of the term "keep" in the General Introduction to Revelation. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning of this expression plainly here and elsewhere throughout the book. Alternate translation: [obeying]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **the things having been written in it**
UST what this prophecy says

If your language does not use this passive form, you could state this in active form. Alternate translation: [the things that I have written in it]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **for the time**
UST because these events will happen

Here, **the time** refers specifically to the appointed time when God will make the prophecies in this book come true. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this meaning explicitly. Alternate translation: [for the time for the fulfillment of what is written in this book]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Blessed	How happy is … how happy are
prophecy	prophecy
time	these events will happen

Revelation 1:4

ULT	UST
John, to the seven churches in Asia: Grace to you and peace from the one being and the one having been and the one coming and from the seven spirits who are before his throne,	*I, John, am writing this letter to you seven groups of believers in the province of Asia. May God continue to be kind to you and make you peaceful. God exists, he has always existed, and he will come and judge everyone in the future. May the seven spirits who are in front of the throne of God also continue to be kind to you and make you peaceful.*

ULT **John**

UST I, John, am writing this letter

In this culture, letter writers would give their own names first, and they would refer to themselves in the third person. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use the first person. If your language has a particular way of introducing the author of a letter, you could also use that. Alternate translation: [From John] or [I, John, am writing this letter to] (with no comma following)

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

ULT **to the seven churches in Asia**

UST to you seven groups of believers in the province of Asia

In this culture, after giving their own names, letter writers would then say to whom they were writing, naming those people in the third person. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use the second person. Alternate translation: [to you who are members of the seven churches in Asia]

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

ULT **Grace to you and peace from the one being and the one having been and the one coming and from the seven spirits who {are} before his throne**

UST May God continue to be kind to you and make you peaceful. God exists, he has always existed, and he will come {and judge everyone} in the future. May the seven spirits who are in front of the throne of God also continue to be kind to you and make you peaceful

In this culture, letter writers would offer a good wish for the recipient before introducing the main business of the letter. Use a form in your language that makes it clear that this is a greeting and blessing. Alternate translation: [May the one who is and who was and who is coming and the seven spirits who are before his throne give you grace and peace]

Support Reference: Blessings

ULT **Grace to you and peace from the one being and the one having been and the one coming and from the seven spirits who {are} before his throne**

UST May God continue to be kind to you and make you peaceful. God exists, he has always existed, and he will come {and judge everyone} in the future. May the seven spirits who are in front of the throne of God also continue to be kind to you and make you peaceful

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the ideas of **grace** and **peace**, you could express the same ideas in another way. Alternate translation: [May the one who is and who was and who is coming and the seven spirits who are before his throne treat you kindly and make you peaceful]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **to you**

UST to you … to you

The word **you** is plural here because it refers to all of the believers to whom John is writing. So use the plural form here in your translation if your language marks that distinction, and use the singular or plural form in the rest of the book as the context indicates. (As the General Introduction to Revelation explains, these notes will generally only identify forms as singular or plural if that might not be clear from the context.)

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

ULT **the one being and the one having been and the one coming**

UST God exists, he has always existed, and he will come {and judge everyone} in the future

These three phrases do not describe three different people. They all refer to God. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could indicate this explicitly. Alternate translation: [God, who is and who was and who is coming]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **the seven spirits**

UST the seven spirits

The **seven spirits** could refer to: (1) the Spirit of God, that is, the Holy Spirit. The Bible can use the number **seven** as a symbol for completeness and perfection, for example, it describes the Holy Spirit with seven attributes in Isaiah 11:2. If this phrase refers to the Holy Spirit, then John is giving a Trinitarian benediction by mentioning God the Father and the Holy Spirit in this verse and Jesus Christ in the next verse. Alternate translation: [the Holy Spirit]; or (2) seven individual spirits who serve God. Alternate translation: [the seven spirit beings] or [the seven angelic spirits]

Support Reference: Symbolic Language

ULT **who {are} before his throne**

UST who are in front of the throne of God

If these are individual **spirits**, is not entirely clear who they are, but they would be seven individual spiritual beings who had important responsibilities serving God. John indicates this by association by noting that they are **before his throne**, that is, in God's presence and ready to serve him whenever needed. Some interpreters believe that they may be the "seven angels" whom John describes in 8:2. Alternate translation: [who are always ready to serve him in important ways]

Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
John	John
churches	to you … groups of believers
Asia	Asia
Grace	to be kind … to be kind
peace	peaceful
spirits	spirits
throne	throne

Revelation 1:5

ULT	UST
and from Jesus Christ, “the faithful witness,” “the firstborn” from the dead and “the ruler of the kings of the earth.” To the one loving us and having released us from our sins by his blood	*May Jesus the Messiah also continue to be kind to you and make you peaceful. He has reliably told us the message from God. He is the first one whom God caused to become alive again after he had died. He is the one who rules the kings of the world. Because he loves us, he shed his blood for us when he died on the cross, and as a result, God has forgiven our sins.*

ULT **and from Jesus Christ**

UST May Jesus the Messiah also continue to be kind to you and make you peaceful

The first half of this verse continues the sentence from the previous verse. It may be helpful to indicate this by repeating some of the information from the previous verse. It may also be helpful to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: [And may grace and peace also be to you from Jesus Christ]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **the faithful witness,” “the firstborn” from the dead and “the ruler of the kings of the earth**

UST He has reliably told us the message from God. He is the first one whom God caused to become alive again after he had died. He is the one who rules the kings of the world

In this verse, John is alluding several times to Psalm 89. In that psalm, God speaks of King David as his “firstborn” and says that he will make him “the most exalted of the kings of the earth.” God also says that he will establish David’s throne forever like the moon, “the faithful witness” in the sky. Psalm 89 as a whole is a meditation on the promises that God gave to David in 2 Samuel 7. So all of these allusions indicate that Jesus Christ is the one who fulfills God’s promises to David. You may want to explain this in a footnote. You may also want to mark the phrases that are Old Testament allusions by putting them in quotation marks, as the ULT does.

Support Reference: Quote Markings

ULT **the firstborn” from the dead**

UST He is the first one whom God caused to become alive again after he had died

John is speaking as if Jesus was literally “born” when he became alive again after he died. Since Jesus was the first person to do this, John says that he is the **firstborn**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [the first person to become alive again after dying]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **from the dead**

UST after he had died

John is using the adjective **dead** as a noun to mean a certain kind of person. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you could translate this word with an equivalent phrase. Alternate translation: [from among people who have died]

Support Reference: Nominal Adjectives

ULT **To the one loving us and having released us from our sins by his blood**
UST Because he loves us, he shed his blood for us when he died on the cross, and as a result, God has forgiven our sins

A new sentence begins here that continues through the rest of the next verse. This sentence praises Jesus. To make this clear for your readers, you could create a verse bridge for verses 5–6 and begin with John's wish that would Jesus receive glory and power. A verse bridge might say something like this: "May the glory and the power forever be to Jesus because he is the one who loves us and who has released us from our sins by his blood and who has made us a kingdom, priests for his God and Father. Amen."
Support Reference: Verse Bridges

ULT **To the one loving us**
UST Because he loves us

Here, **the one** refers to Jesus Christ. If this is not clear to your readers, you can say this explicitly. Alternate translation: [To Jesus Christ, who loves us]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **us … us … our**
UST us … God has forgiven our

By **us** and **our**, John means both himself and his readers. So use the inclusive form of those words in your translation if your language marks that distinction.
Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

ULT **having released us from our sins**
UST God has forgiven our sins

John is speaking of **sins** as if they were something that had held him and his readers captive and from which they needed to be **released**. He means that Jesus obtained forgiveness from God for people's sins. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [the one having obtained forgiveness for us for our sins]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **by his blood**
UST he shed his blood for us when he died on the cross, and as a result

John is using the word **blood** to refer by association to the sacrificial death of Jesus, since Jesus shed his blood when he died for **our sins**. Alternate translation: [by his sacrificial death]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jesus	Jesus
Christ	Messiah
faithful	reliably
witness	has … told us the message from God
firstborn	first one whom God caused to become alive again
ruler	rules
kings	kings
earth	of the world
loving	loves
sins	sins

Revelation 1:6

ULT	UST
and he has made us a kingdom, priests to God and his Father—to him be the glory and the power to the ages. Amen.	*Jesus is the one who has caused us to become people over whose lives God rules. He has also made us priests who serve God, who is the Father of Jesus. May people glorify Jesus and acknowledge him as their ruler throughout eternity. May it be so!*

ULT **he has made … his … to him**
UST Jesus is the one who has caused … to become … He has also made … of Jesus. May … Jesus … him

The pronouns **he**, **his**, and **him** all refer to Jesus. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [Jesus has made … his … to Jesus]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **a kingdom, priests to God and his Father**
UST people over whose lives God rules … priests who serve God, who is the Father of Jesus

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of a **kingdom**, you could express the same idea in another way. The phrase **a kingdom, priests to God** is an allusion to Exodus 19:6, where God tells the Israelites, "You will be to me a kingdom of priests." This means that the Israelites will have the God as their king and that they will lead the other people of the world to worship God. Alternate translation: [people who obey God, the Father of Jesus Christ, as their king and who lead others to worship him]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **to God and his Father**
UST who serve God, who is the Father of Jesus

This phrase expresses a single idea by using two words connected with **and**. The phrase **his Father** tells who **God** is. If it would be more natural in your language, you could express this meaning with an equivalent phrase that does not use "and." Alternate translation: [to God, who is his Father]
Support Reference: Hendiadys

ULT **Father**
UST who is the Father

Father is an important title that describes the relationship between God and Jesus. Be sure to retain this title in your translation.
Support Reference: Translating Son and Father

ULT **to him {be} the glory and the power**
UST May people glorify Jesus and acknowledge him as their ruler

If your language does not use abstract nouns for **glory** or **power**, you could express these ideas in other ways. Alternate translation: [may all of creation acknowledge how glorious and powerful he is]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **to the ages**
UST throughout eternity

This expression refers to endless future time. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [forever]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **Amen**
UST May it be so

See the discussion in the General Introduction to Revelation about how to represent the word **Amen** in your translation here and in its other occurrences throughout the book.
Support Reference: Copy or Borrow Words

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
a kingdom	people over whose lives God rules
priests	priests
glory	glorify
power	acknowledge … as their ruler
ages	throughout eternity
Amen	May it be so
Father	Father

Revelation 1:7

ULT	UST
“Behold, he is coming with the clouds,” and “every eye will see him, even those who pierced him,” and all the tribes of the earth “will mourn because of him.” Yes, Amen.	*Pay attention! Jesus is going to come back from heaven through the sky. Everyone will see him, including those who killed him by nailing him to a cross. When they see him coming, every people group in the world will grieve in sorrow for their sins. May it be just like that!*

ULT **Behold, he is coming with the clouds,” and “every eye will see him, even those who pierced him,” and all the tribes of the earth “will mourn because of him**
UST Pay attention! Jesus is going to come back from heaven through the sky. Everyone will see him, including those who killed him by nailing him to a cross. When they see him coming, every people group in the world will grieve in sorrow for their sins

Behold, he is coming with the clouds is a quotation from Daniel 7:13. The phrases **every eye will see him, even those who pierced him** and **will mourn because of him** are quotations from Zechariah 12:10. It may be helpful to your readers to indicate this by setting off these Old Testament quotations with quotation marks, as the ULT does, or with whatever other punctuation or convention your language uses to indicate a quotation.
Support Reference: Quote Markings

ULT **Behold**
UST Pay attention

As the General Introduction to Revelation discusses, here John is using the term **Behold** to focus his listeners’ attention on what he is about to say. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation, in this instance and throughout the book. Alternate translation: [Listen carefully!]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **he is coming with the clouds**
UST Jesus is going to come back from heaven through the sky

The pronoun **he** here refers to Jesus Christ. If this is unclear to your readers, you could express the meaning explicitly. Alternate translation: [Jesus is coming with the clouds]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **he is coming with the clouds**
UST Jesus is going to come back from heaven through the sky

John is referring to Jesus returning from heaven through the sky by association with the **clouds** that are in the sky. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [he will return visibly in the sky]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **every eye will see him**
UST Everyone will see him

John is using one part of a person, the **eye**, to mean all of a person in the act of seeing. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [every person will see him]
Support Reference: Synecdoche

ULT **those who pierced him**
UST those who killed him by nailing him to a cross

John is using one thing that people did to Jesus when they killed him, they **pierced** him, to mean all that they did when they killed him. (Jesus' hands and feet were pierced with nails when he was hung on the cross, and later a soldier pierced his side with a spear to see whether he was dead.) If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [those who killed him]
Support Reference: Synecdoche

ULT **Yes, Amen**
UST May it be just like that

The terms **Yes** and **Amen** mean similar things. John is using the two terms together for emphasis. If it would be clearer for your readers, you could express the emphasis with a single phrase. Alternate translation: [It will certainly be so!]
Support Reference: Doublet

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
tribes	people group
earth	in the world
mourn	will grieve in sorrow for their sins
Amen	May it be just like that

Revelation 1:8

ULT	UST
“I am the alpha and the omega,” says the Lord God, “the one being and the one having been and the one coming, the Ruler of All.”	*The Lord God says: “I am the one who began all things. I am the one who will cause all things to come to an end. I am the one who exists, who has always existed, and who will come and judge everyone in the future. I am the one who rules over everything and everyone.”*

ULT **I am the alpha and the omega,” says the Lord God, “the one being and the one having been and the one coming, the Ruler of All**

UST The Lord God says: “I am the one who began all things. I am the one who will cause all things to come to an end. I am the one who exists, who has always existed, and who will come {and judge everyone} in the future. I am the one who rules over everything and everyone

The phrase **says the Lord God** indicates that the clauses before and after this phrase are quotations. If it would be helpful in your language, you could move this phrase to the beginning or end of the verse. Alternate translation: [The Lord God says, “I am the alpha and the omega, the one being and the one having been and the one coming, the Ruler of All]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **the alpha and the omega,” says the Lord**

UST The Lord … says … the one who began all things … the one who will cause all things to come to an end

Some versions add the phrase “the Beginning and the End” after this statement. If a translation of the Bible exists in your region, you may wish to use the reading that it uses. If a translation of the Bible does not exist in your region, you may wish to follow the reading of the ULT and not include the extra phrase.

Support Reference: Textual Variants

ULT **the alpha and the omega**

UST the one who began all things … the one who will cause all things to come to an end

The first and last letters of the Greek alphabet are **alpha** and **omega**. When God says that he is these letters, he means that he is the one who was at the beginning of all things and who will be at the end of all things. If you wish to retain this image in your translation, you could use the first and last letters of your own alphabet. Alternatively, you could use plain language. See the next two notes for further possibilities. Alternate translation: [the A and the Z] or [the one who was at the beginning of all things and who will be at the end of all things]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **the alpha and the omega**

UST the one who began all things … the one who will cause all things to come to an end

The implication of God having been at the beginning of all things may be that God created all things, and the implication of that fact that God will be at the end of all things may be that God will bring all things to their appropriate end. In other words, God may be asserting his identity as the creator of the world and the ultimate judge of the world. Alternate translation: [the creator and the ultimate judge of the world]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **the alpha and the omega**
UST the one who began all things … the one who will cause all things to come to an end

God may also be using the first and last letters of the alphabet to represent two extremes of time, the beginning and end of time, in order to mean those extremes and all of the time in between. In that case, this expression would be equivalent to what God says in the rest of the quotation in this verse. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [the one who has always existed]
Support Reference: Merism

ULT **the one being and the one having been and the one coming**
UST the one who exists, who has always existed, and who will come {and judge everyone} in the future

See how you translated this phrase in 1:4.
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Lord	Lord
God	God
Ruler of All	one who rules over everything and everyone

Revelation 1:9

ULT	UST
I, John, your brother and partner in the suffering and kingdom and endurance that are in Jesus, was on the island called Patmos because of the word of God and the testimony of Jesus.	*I, John, believe in Jesus as you do. Like you, I am patiently enduring the troubles that everyone experiences whose life Jesus rules. The Roman government had put me in exile on the island of Patmos because I was telling people God's message about who Jesus is.*

ULT **brother**
UST believe in Jesus

John is using the term **brother** to indicate that he has the same faith as the people to whom he is writing. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [fellow believer]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **partner in the suffering and kingdom and endurance {that are} in Jesus**
UST Like you, I am patiently enduring the troubles that everyone experiences whose life Jesus rules

If your language does not use abstract nouns for the ideas of **suffering**, **kingdom**, and **endurance**, you could express these ideas in another way. Alternate translation: [someone who is patiently enduring while suffering just as you are because we are loyal to Jesus as our king]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **that are in Jesus**
UST Jesus

Alternate translation: [that people who follow Jesus experience]

ULT **the island called Patmos**
UST the island of Patmos

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [the island that people call Patmos]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **the word of God**
UST God's message

John is using the term **word** to mean the message from God that he had shared by using words. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [the message from God]
Support Reference: Metonymy

> ULT **the testimony of Jesus**
> UST about who Jesus is

In this possessive form, **Jesus** is the object rather than the subject of **testimony**. This does not mean **testimony** that Jesus himself gave; it means **testimony** that John gave about Jesus. Alternate translation: [the testimony that I proclaimed about Jesus]

Support Reference: Possession

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
John	John
suffering	troubles
kingdom	that everyone experiences whose life … rules
endurance	enduring
in Jesus	Jesus
Jesus	Jesus
called	of
word of God	God’s message
testimony	about who … is
Jesus	Jesus

Revelation 1:10

ULT	UST
I was in the Spirit on the Lord's day, and I heard behind me a loud voice like a trumpet,	*It was a Sunday, the day on which believers gather to worship because God made Jesus alive again on that day. The Holy Spirit inspired me so that I could see and hear things in a vision. I heard someone speaking behind me. His voice was as loud as the blast of a horn.*

ULT **I was in the Spirit**
UST The Holy Spirit inspired me so that I could see and hear things in a vision

Here, **in the Spirit** could mean: (1) God's **Spirit**, the Holy Spirit, influenced John so that he could receive divine revelation. Alternate translation: [The Holy Spirit influenced me]; or (2) God caused John's spirit to be in a state in which he could perceive revelation. Alternate translation: [God influenced my spirit]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **on the Lord's day**
UST It was a Sunday, the day on which believers gather to worship because God made Jesus alive again on that day

Here, **the Lord's day** means the first day of the week, which was the day on which believers gathered to worship because that was the day on which Jesus rose from the dead. In your translation, you could use the term in your language for the first day of the week. Alternate translation: [one Sunday]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **a loud voice like a trumpet**
UST someone speaking … His voice was as loud as the blast of a horn

The point of this comparison is not that the sound of the **voice** was like the sound of a **trumpet** but that the voice was **loud** like a trumpet. If it would be helpful in your language, you could make this point explicitly. Alternate translation: [a voice as loud as a trumpet]
Support Reference: Simile

ULT **a loud voice**
UST someone speaking … His voice was as loud

John is referring to someone speaking by association with the **voice** that the person is using to speak. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [someone speaking loudly]
Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Spirit	Holy Spirit
Lord’s	Sunday, the day on which believers gather to worship because God made Jesus alive again on that day
day	day
trumpet	the blast of a horn

Revelation 1:11

ULT	UST
saying, "Write what you see on a scroll and send it to the seven churches—to Ephesus and to Smyrna and to Pergamum and to Thyatira and to Sardis and to Philadelphia and to Laodicea."	*The person speaking said to me, "Write what you see on a scroll. Send what you have written to seven groups of believers. Send it to the believers in the cities of Ephesus, Smyrna, Pergamum, Thyatira, Sardis, Philadelphia, and Laodicea."*

ULT **saying**
UST The person speaking said to me

The word **saying** introduces a quotation. What follows is what the voice that John described in the previous verse said. Consider natural ways of introducing direct quotations in your language. It may be helpful to start a new sentence here. Alternate translation: [That voice said]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Ephesus … Smyrna … Pergamum … Thyatira … Sardis … Philadelphia … Laodicea**
UST the believers in the cities of Ephesus, Smyrna, Pergamum, Thyatira, Sardis, Philadelphia … Laodicea

The words **Ephesus**, **Smyrna**, **Pergamum**, **Thyatira**, **Sardis**, **Philadelphia**, and **Laodicea** are the names of cities. See the introduction to this chapter for more information.
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
scroll	scroll
churches	to … groups of believers
Ephesus	Ephesus

Revelation 1:12

ULT	UST
And I turned around to see the voice that was speaking with me, and having turned, I saw seven golden lampstands,	*When I heard this voice, I turned my head to see who was speaking to me. When I turned, I saw seven golden lamp holders.*

ULT **the voice that**
UST this voice … who

John is referring to someone speaking by association with the **voice** that the person is using to speak. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [what person]

Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
golden	golden
lampstands	lamp holders

Revelation 1:13

ULT	UST
and in the middle of the lampstands one like a son of man, wearing a foot-length robe and a golden sash wrapped around his chest.	*In the midst of the lamp holders I saw someone who looked like a human being. He wore a robe that reached down to his feet. He also wore a band of golden fabric across his chest.*

ULT **one like a son of man**
UST I saw someone who looked like a human being

The expression **like a son of man** is an allusion to Daniel 7:13. It means "like a human being." The point of this comparison is that the figure whom John saw looked like a human. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [a figure who was human in form]
Support Reference: Simile

ULT **and a golden sash wrapped around {his} chest**
UST He also wore a band of golden fabric across his chest

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. It may be helpful to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: [He had wrapped a golden sash around his chest]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **a golden sash**
UST a band of golden fabric

A **sash** was a strip of cloth that someone would wrap around the chest to keep a robe closed. Your language may have a term of its own for such an article that you can use in your translation, or you could use plain language. Alternate translation: [a wide strip of golden cloth]
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
lampstands	of the lamp holders
son of man	a human being
golden	golden
wrapped	He … wore

Revelation 1:14

ULT	UST
Now his head and hair were white as wool—white as snow—and his eyes were like a flame of fire,	*The hair on his head was gleaming like white wool or like white snow. His eyes were bright like a fiery flame.*

ULT **his head and hair**
UST The hair on his head

John is not saying that both the **head** (that is, the skin of the head) and the **hair** of this person were while. Rather, this phrase expresses a single idea by using two words connected with **and**. The word **head** tells where this **hair** was. If it would be more natural in your language, you could express this meaning with an equivalent phrase that does not use "and." Alternate translation: [his hair]
Support Reference: Hendiadys

ULT **were white as wool—white as snow**
UST was gleaming like white wool or like white snow

If your readers would not be familiar with **snow** or **wool**, in your translation you could use the names of things they would be familiar with, or you could use a general expression. Alternate translation: [were white as cotton, white as egret feathers] or [were brilliantly white]
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **were white as wool—white as snow**
UST was gleaming like white wool or like white snow

The phrases **white as wool** and **white as snow** indicate the same thing. John is using the two phrases together for emphasis. If it would be clearer for your readers, you could express the emphasis with a single phrase. Alternate translation: [as white as the whitest things on earth]
Support Reference: Doublet

ULT **his eyes {were} like a flame of fire**
UST His eyes were {bright} like a fiery flame

The point of this comparison is that the **eyes** of this person were very bright, like a **flame**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could make this point explicitly. Alternate translation: [his eyes were as bright as a flame of fire]
Support Reference: Simile

ULT **a flame of fire**
UST a fiery flame

It might seem that the expression **a flame of fire** contains extra information that would be unnatural to express in your language. If so, you can shorten it. Alternate translation: [a flame]
Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
snow	snow

Revelation 1:15

ULT	UST
and his feet were like bronze as having been refined in a furnace, and his voice was like the sound of many waters,	*His feet shone like bronze that the heat of a furnace had refined. When he spoke, his resonant voice was like the noise of a great river of rushing water.*

ULT **his feet {were} like bronze as having been refined in a furnace**
UST His feet shone like bronze that the heat of a furnace had refined

The point of this comparison is that the **feet** of this person were shining brightly, as refined **bronze** does. If it would be helpful in your language, you could make this point explicitly. Alternate translation: [his feet were shining brightly, as bronze does when it has been refined in a furnace]
Support Reference: Simile

ULT **bronze as having been refined in a furnace**
UST bronze that the heat of a furnace had refined

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [bronze that someone had refined in a furnace]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **his voice {was} like the sound of many waters**
UST When he spoke, his resonant voice was like the noise of a great river of rushing water

The point of this comparison is that the **voice** of this person was very loud, like the **sound of many waters**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could make this point explicitly. Alternate translation: [his voice was very loud, like the sound of many waters]
Support Reference: Simile

ULT **of many waters**
UST of a great river of rushing water

By **many waters**, John could mean a loud waterfall or raging floodwaters. Alternate translation: [of a waterfall] or [of raging floodwaters]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
bronze	bronze
furnace	furnace

Revelation 1:16

ULT	UST
and having seven stars in his right hand and a sharp, double-edged sword coming out of his mouth, and his face as the sun shines in its strength.	*The one who looked like a human was holding seven stars in his right hand. A sword with two sharp edges was extending from his mouth. His face shone as brightly as the sun shines during the middle of the day.*

ULT **and having**

UST The one who looked like a human was holding

If it would be helpful to your readers, you could start a new sentence here and indicate the subject of **having** explicitly. Alternate translation: [This one who was like a son of man had]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **coming out of his mouth**

UST was extending from his mouth

Be sure it is clear in your translation that this means that the blade of the **sword** was protruding from **his mouth**. The sword itself was not in motion. Alternate translation: [protruding from his mouth]

Support Reference: Symbolic Language

ULT **his face as the sun shines**

UST His face shone as brightly as the sun shines

John is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [his face was shining as the sun shines]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **his face as the sun shines**

UST His face shone as brightly as the sun shines

The point of this comparison is that the **face** of this person was shining as brightly as the **sun** shines. If it would be helpful in your language, you could make this point explicitly. Alternate translation: [his face was shining as brightly as the sun shines]

Support Reference: Simile

ULT **in its strength**

UST during the middle of the day

This expression refers to the greatest brightness of the sun, which occurs at noon, when the sun is highest in the sky. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [at its greatest brightness] or [when it is highest in the sky]

Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
sword	sword

Revelation 1:17

ULT	UST
And when I saw him, I fell at his feet like a dead man, but he placed his right hand on me, saying, "Do not be afraid! I am the first and the last	*When I saw him, I bowed down in front of him. I was so overcome that I could not move. But he put his right hand on me and said to me, "Do not be afraid! I am the one who began all things, and I am the one who will cause all things to end.*

ULT **at his feet**
UST in front of him

This expression means that John fell to the ground in front of this person. It does not mean that he landed right on his feet. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [onto the ground in front of him]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **like a dead man**
UST I was so overcome that I could not move

The point of this comparison is that just as a **dead man** is lifeless, John was so overcome by fear that he did not even have the energy to keep standing up. If it would be helpful in your language, you could make this point explicitly. Alternate translation: [because I was so overcome by fear that I lost all my energy and became like a lifeless dead man]
Support Reference: Simile

ULT **he placed his right hand on me**
UST he put his right hand on me

Jesus **placed his right hand** on John as a symbolic action to express comfort and assurance to him because he needed encouragement in this moment of fear. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could explain the significance of this action. Alternate translation: [he placed his right hand encouragingly on me]
Support Reference: Symbolic Action

ULT **Do not be afraid**
UST Do not be afraid

If it would be clearer in your language, you could use a positive expression to translate this double negative that consists of the negative particle **not** and the negative verb **be afraid**. Alternate translation: [Take courage]
Support Reference: Double Negatives

ULT **the first and the last**
UST the one who began all things, and … the one who will cause all things to end

This expression has the same meaning as "the alpha and the omega" in 1:8. See how you translated that expression there. Alternate translation: [the one who was at the beginning of all things and who will be at the end of all things] or [the one who created everything and who will bring all things to an end] or [the one who has always existed]
Support Reference: Merism

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
afraid	afraid

Revelation 1:18

ULT	UST
and the one living; and I became dead, but behold, I am living to the ages of the ages, and I have the keys of death and of Hades.	*I have been alive forever. When I came to earth, I died, but indeed I am now alive again for all eternity. I have the power to make anyone who has died become alive again.*

ULT **and the one living**
UST I have been alive forever

If you translated "I am the first and the last" in the previous verse as "I am the one who has always existed," then the phrase "and the one living" means basically the same thing. Jesus would be using repetition for emphasis. In your translation, you could connect these phrases with a word other than **and** in order to show that the second phrase is repeating the first one, not saying something additional. Alternate translation, following a comma at the end of the previous verse: [yes, I have always been alive]
Support Reference: Parallelism

ULT **to the ages of the ages**
UST for all eternity

See how you translated the similar expression in 1:6. Alternate translation: [forever]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **I have the keys of death and of Hades**
UST I have the power to make anyone who has died become alive again

Jesus is speaking as if he possesses literal **keys** to **death and Hades**. He means that he has authority over the realm of the dead. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [I have authority over death and Hades]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **I have the keys of death and of Hades**
UST I have the power to make anyone who has died become alive again

In this context, the terms **death** and **Hades** mean the same thing. They both refer to the abode of the dead. Jesus is using the two terms together for emphasis. If it would be clearer for your readers, you could express the emphasis with a single phrase. Alternate translation: [I have complete authority over the realm of the dead]
Support Reference: Doublet

ULT **I have the keys of death and of Hades**
UST I have the power to make anyone who has died become alive again

The implication is that Jesus is able to give life to those who have died and let them out of **Hades**. You can indicate this in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [I am able to give life to people who have died and let them out of Hades]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

> ULT **of death and of Hades**
> UST to make anyone who has died become alive again

The word **Hades** is the Greek name for the abode of the dead. In your translation, you could spell this word the way it sounds in your language and then explain its meaning. Alternatively, you could use a word for the abode of the dead in your language. Alternate translation: [of Hades, the abode of the dead]

Support Reference: Copy or Borrow Words

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
ages	all eternity
ages	all eternity
Hades	to make anyone who has died become alive again

Revelation 1:19

ULT	UST
Therefore, write what you have seen, and what is, and what is about to happen after these things.	*Therefore, write down this vision that you are seeing of me. I will reveal the truth to you about what is happening now and about what will happen in the future. I want you to write down those things as well.*

> ULT **what you have seen, and what is, and what is about to happen after these things**
>
> UST this vision that you are seeing of me. I will reveal the truth to you about what is happening now and about what will happen in the future

See the discussion of this phrase in the General Introduction to Revelation. Jesus may be referring to the vision John is presently having of him, the letters he will tell John to write, and the visions John will later see. If that is the case, then Jesus is describing everything he wants John to write by naming its major components. Translate this phrase in such a way that this potential meaning would be clear.

Support Reference: Merism

Revelation 1:20

ULT	UST
The mystery of the seven stars that you saw in my right hand and the seven golden lampstands: The seven stars are the angels of the seven churches and the seven lampstands are the seven churches.	*I will explain the symbolic meaning of the seven stars that you saw in my right hand and of the seven golden lamp holders. The seven stars represent the angels of the seven groups of believers. The seven lamp holders represent the seven groups of believers.*

ULT **The mystery**
UST I will explain the symbolic meaning

Jesus is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be helpful in your language. Alternate translation: [I will explain the mystery]
Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **the angels of the seven churches**
UST the angels of the seven groups of believers

In chapters 2 and 3, Jesus will dictate a letter to each of the **angels of the seven churches** as if those angels were the churches themselves. So in this vision in chapter 1, these **angels**, symbolized by the **stars** in Jesus' **right hand**, seem to personify the churches. That is, the angels represent the churches as if the churches were people. These **angels** could be: (1) actual angels, that is, spiritual beings. Alternate translation: [angels who represent the seven churches]; or (2) leaders of the churches, whom Jesus is describing as angels. Alternate translation: [leaders of the seven churches]; or (3) messengers bringing news of the churches to John and carrying John's letters back to the churches. Alternate translation: [messengers of the seven churches]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
mystery	symbolic meaning
golden	golden
lampstands	of the … lamp holders
angels	angels
lampstands	lamp holders
churches	the … groups of believers
churches	of the … groups of believers

Revelation 2

Revelation 2 Introduction

Revelation 2 Chapter Introduction

Structure and Formatting

- The Letter to Ephesus (2:1–7)
- The Letter to Smyrna (2:8–11)
- The Letter to Pergamum (2:12–17)
- The Letter to Thyatira (2:18–29)

You may wish to set each letter apart so that your readers can easily see that these are separate letters. You could, for example, put a blank line between these letters in your translation.

Some translations set quotations from the Old Testament farther to the right on the page than the rest of the text. The ULT does this with the words in verse 27.

Religious and Cultural Concepts in This Chapter

“the angel of the church”

Jesus addresses each of his letters to the “angel” of the church he is writing to. As a note to 1:20 discusses, the word “angel” could have a literal sense, or it could mean “leader” or “messenger.” You should translate “angel” in the introduction to these letters in the same way you decided to translate it in 1:20.

Balaam, Balak, and Jezebel

In two of the letters in this chapter, Jesus refers to people whose stories are told in the Old Testament. In the letter to Pergamum, in 2:14, he refers to Balaam and Balak, and in the letter to Thyatira, in 2:20, he refers to Jezebel. These were all people who tried to harm the Israelites by cursing them or by making them want to stop obeying God. Notes to these verses suggest ways of indicating that Jesus is referring to people whose stories are told in the Bible.

Nicolaitans

In the letter to Ephesus, in 2:6, and in the letter to Pergamum, in 2:15, Jesus refers to the “Nicolaitans.” This name describes people who followed the teachings or practices of a man named Nicolaus. It is no longer known who he was or what he taught. It is possible that he encouraged believers in Jesus, based on a misunderstanding of what it meant to be spiritual or to have Christian freedom, to take part in feasts at the temples of idols and in the immorality that happened during these feasts. In 2:14–15, Jesus seems to associate the teaching of Nicolaus with the teaching of Balaam, who got the Israelites “to eat food sacrificed to idols and to be sexually immoral.” The Hebrew name Balaam has the same meaning as the Greek name Nicolas, “one who conquers the people,” so when Jesus says in 2:14 that some in Pergamum follow the teaching of Nicolaus “in the same way” that they follow the teaching of Balaam, he

may be saying that the contemporary teaching of Nicolaus is the same as the ancient teaching of Balaam. However, none of this is certain, so it would be best in your translation simply to refer to "the works of the Nicolaitans" in 2:6 and to "the teaching of the Nicolaitans" in 2:15 without trying to explain those things any further.

Translation Issues in This Chapter

Levels of quotation

The opening of each of the letters to the seven churches is a quotation within a quotation, and the main body of each letter is a quotation within a quotation within a quotation. If your language would not put one direct quotation inside another, you can translate the opening of each letter so that its main body is a simple direct quotation. You could end the quotation that begins at 1:17 at the end of 1:20, and you could then have John resume his narrative of his encounter with Jesus at the beginning of each letter. For example, for the first letter, to Ephesus, you could translate 2:1 this way: "Jesus then told me to write to the angel of the church in Ephesus that the one holding the seven stars in his right hand, the one walking in the midst of the seven golden lampstands, said the following things." (See: Quotes within Quotes)

The use of the second-person singular in letters to groups

Since each of the letters to the seven churches is addressed to an individual "angel," the words "you" and "your" are singular and the verb forms are second-person singular. However, since the angel represents the church—Jesus is addressing the angel as if the angel were the church—"you" and "your" and the singular verbs are plural in their implied references to the believers in the churches. If singular forms would not be natural in your language in such a context, you could use plural forms in your translation. (See: Forms of 'You' — Singular)

In several places, Jesus switches to the second-person plural to speak more directly to the believers themselves. Notes indicate where this happens and suggest using the second-person plural in your translation if that would be natural in your language.

"The one … says these things"

Jesus begins each of the letters to the seven churches by identifying himself with some of the symbols from the vision that John relates in chapter 1. As he does this, he speaks of himself in the third person. If this would not be natural in your language, you could use the first person in your translation. For example, you could say in 2:1, "I, Jesus, the one holding the seven stars in my right hand and walking in the midst of the seven golden lampstands, say these things."

"I know"

At the beginning of each of the letters to the seven churches, Jesus uses the phrase "I know" to express his personal familiarity with what is happening in the churches. This phrase communicates an assurance that Jesus understands the current religious, social, and moral circumstances in which the Christians are living. While the phrase is usually positive, sometimes it expresses a critical assessment. Thus the phrase indicates more than just a knowledge of circumstances on the part of Jesus. It also implicitly asserts a claim to be in a position to make an authoritative judgment, critical if necessary, about how the believers are responding to these circumstances. To show this, you might consider translating "I know" at the start of each letter as "I am well aware of" or with some similar phrase. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

“I have against you”

In several of the letters, Jesus tells the believers in a given church, “I have” something “against you.” This phrase makes a negative, critical statement, even though it is typically found among other, positive statements. It means “there is something about you of which I disapprove.” You could translate this expression with a phrase such as “I disapprove of you because” or “I have a criticism to make of you, that.”

“you have this”

Conversely, in several of the letters Jesus makes a positive statement by telling the believers “you have this” and then naming something about them of which he approves. You could translate this expression with a phrase such as “this is to your credit” or “here is a good thing that you are doing.”

“Let the one who has an ear hear”

Toward the end of each letter, Jesus says, “Let the one having an ear hear what the Spirit is saying to the churches.” Jesus says this to emphasize that what he has just said is important and that it may take some effort to understand and put into practice. This expression presents four translation issues that could be addressed in various ways.

- The expression uses a third-person imperative. If your language does not use that form, you could express the meaning in another way that is natural in your language. For example, you could say, “May the one having an ear hear” or “The one who has an ear should hear.” (See: Third-Person Imperatives)
- The expression might seem to be speaking of a specific person, but it really means any person who fits its description. In your translation, express this in the way that would be most natural in your language. For example, you might say, “Anyone who has an ear should hear” (See: Generic Noun Phrases)
- Through this expression, Jesus is addressing his audience in the third person, even though he is speaking directly to them. If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate the expression in the second person. You could say, for example, “If you have an ear, then hear” (See: First, Second or Third Person)
- The phrase “having an ear” represents the willingness to understand and obey, by association with the part of the body by which people would have received the spoken teaching of Jesus. In your translation, you might say something such as, “Anyone who is willing should understand and obey” (See: Metonymy)

“to the one conquering”

At the end of each letter, Jesus makes a promise “to the one conquering.” This expression describes someone who wins a victory, such as on the battlefield or in a sports contest. In the context of the book of Revelation, it refers to a person who refuses to worship idols even at the risk of persecution and death. The expression is therefore paradoxical: The person is said to conquer or win a victory, even though it appears that his enemies have defeated him, since they have put him in prison or even killed him. In your translation, you may wish to express the meaning plainly by saying something such as “to the one who refuses to worship idols even at the risk of persecution and death.” (See: Metaphor)

The expression “to the one conquering” might seem to be speaking of a specific person, but it really means any person who fits its description. In your translation, express this in the way that would be most natural in your language. For example, you might say “to anyone who conquers” or “to anyone who refuses to worship idols even at the risk of persecution and death.” (See: Generic Noun Phrases)

Revelation 2:1

ULT	UST
To the angel of the church in Ephesus write: 'The one holding the seven stars in his right hand, the one walking in the midst of the seven golden lampstands, says these things:	*Write this message to the angel of the group of believers in the city of Ephesus: 'I am the one who holds the seven stars in his right hand and who walks among the seven golden lamp holders. This is what I say to you:*

ULT **To the angel of the church in Ephesus write: 'The one holding the seven stars in his right hand, the one walking in the midst of the seven golden lampstands, says these things**
UST Write {this message} to the angel of the group of believers in the city of Ephesus: 'I am the one who holds the seven stars in his right hand and who walks among the seven golden lamp holders. This is what I say to you

See the introduction to this chapter for a discussion of how you could translate this verse so that there is not a quotation within a quotation and so that the letter that follows in verses 2–7 is not a quotation within a quotation within a quotation.
Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **To the angel of the church in Ephesus**
UST to the angel of the group of believers in the city of Ephesus

As the introduction to this chapter discusses, here and in verses 8, 12, and 18 you should translate the term **angel** the way you did in 1:20. Alternate translation: [To the angel who represents the church in Ephesus] or [To the leader of the church in Ephesus] or [To the messenger of the church in Ephesus]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **The one holding the seven stars in his right hand … says these things**
UST I am the one who holds the seven stars in his right hand … This is what I say to you

As the introduction to this chapter discusses, Jesus is identifying himself by referring to symbols from the vision that John describes in chapter 1. As Jesus does this, he speaks of himself in the third person. If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate this in the first person. Alternate translation: [I, Jesus, the one holding the seven stars in my right hand … say these things]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
angel	angel
church	of the group of believers
Ephesus	Ephesus
golden	golden
lampstands	the … lamp holders

Revelation 2:2

ULT	UST
"I know your works and labor and your endurance and that you can not tolerate evil ones and that you have tested the ones calling themselves apostles but are not and you have found them to be false	*"I am aware of all that you have done. I am aware of how hard you have worked for me. I am aware of how patiently you have endured difficult times. I am also aware that you do not accept wicked people. When people falsely claim to be genuine leaders, you prove that they are lying.*

ULT **I know**
UST I am aware of … I am aware of … I am aware of … I am … aware

See the discussion of the phrase **I know** in the introduction to this chapter. Alternate translation: [I am well aware of]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **your … your … you can not … you have tested … you have found**
UST you … you … you do not … you prove that

See the discussion in the introduction to this chapter of how Jesus is using the second-person singular to address the "angel" of this church. Throughout this letter and the other letters in 3, it may be more natural in your language to use the plural form of second-person pronouns and verbs, since Jesus is actually addressing all of the believers in the churches.

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

ULT **evil ones**
UST wicked people

Jesus is using the adjective **evil** as a noun to mean a certain kind of person. The word is plural, and the ULT adds the word **ones** to show this. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you can translate this adjective with an equivalent phrase. Alternate translation: [evil people]

Support Reference: Nominal Adjectives

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
know	I am aware of … I am aware of … I am aware of … I am … aware
labor	worked
labor and	hard
endurance	endured
tolerate	accept
evil	wicked
tested	you prove that
apostles	genuine leaders

Revelation 2:3

ULT	UST
and that you have endurance and have suffered because of my name and have not grown weary.	*I am aware of how patiently you have endured. I am also aware that you have suffered for my sake. I am also aware that you have not abandoned your faith in me even though you have suffered.*

ULT **because of my name**
UST for my sake

Here, **name** represents a person by association with the way that each person has a name. Alternate translation: [because of me]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **have not grown weary**
UST you have not abandoned your faith in me even though you have suffered

If it would be clearer in your language, you could use a positive expression to translate this double negative that consists of the negative particle **not** and the negative verb **grown weary**. Alternate translation: [have remained strong]
Support Reference: Double Negatives

ULT **have not grown weary**
UST you have not abandoned your faith in me even though you have suffered

Jesus is referring to giving up by association with the way that people who have **grown weary** often give up what they have been doing. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [have not given up] or [have not abandoned your faith in me]
Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
endurance	how patiently … endured
have suffered	you have suffered

Revelation 2:4

ULT	UST
But I have against you that you have abandoned your first love.	*Nevertheless, I must criticize you about something: You no longer love me as you did when you first believed in me.*

ULT **I have against you that**
UST I must criticize you about something

See the discussion of the expression **I have against you** in the introduction to this chapter to decide how to translate the expression here and in its other occurrences in these letters. Alternate translation: [I disapprove of you because] or [I have a criticism to make of you, that]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **you have abandoned your first love**
UST You no longer love me as you did when you first believed in me

To stop doing something is spoken of as leaving it **behind**. Here the expression **you have left behind your first love** represents **love** as an object that can be forsaken. Alternate translation: [you have stopped loving me as you did at the beginning]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
love	love

Revelation 2:5

ULT	UST
Therefore, remember from where you have fallen and repent and do the first works. But if not, I will come to you and I will remove your lampstand from its place—if you do not repent.	*Therefore, remember how you used to love me. Love me again the way you did at first. Now if you do not love me again in that way, I will judge you and I will not allow you to continue being a group of believers.*

ULT **from where you have fallen**
UST how you used to love me

Jesus is speaking as if the believers in Ephesus have literally **fallen** from a height. He means that they are no longer devoted to him in the way they originally were. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [how much you once loved me]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **do the first works**
UST Love me again the way you did at first

Here the word **first** indicates earliest in time rather than chief in importance. Alternate translation: [demonstrate your devotion to me in the way you did originally]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **I will remove your lampstand from its place**
UST I will not allow you to continue being a group of believers

Jesus is not speaking of a literal **lampstand** here; when he says that he will remove this lampstand, he means that the assembly of believers in Ephesus will no longer exist. However, since Jesus refers to the lampstands in John's vision at the opening of this letter, it would be good to show the connection between the reference there and the reference here. In your translation, you might translate the term **lampstand** directly here but then explain its meaning. Alternate translation: [I will remove your lampstand from its place, yes, you will no longer be a church]
Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
repent	Love me again the way you did
lampstand	I will not allow you to continue being a group of believers
repent	you do … love me again in that way

Revelation 2:6

ULT	UST
But you have this, that you hate the works of the Nicolaitans, which I also hate.	*However, I do praise you for something that you are doing well. You refuse to accept what the disciples of Nicolaus are doing. Those disciples eat food that people have sacrificed to idols and they commit sexual sins. I myself completely reject what they are doing.*

ULT **you have this, that you hate**

UST I do praise you for something that you are doing well. You refuse to accept

See the discussion of the expression **you have this** in the introduction to this chapter to decide how to translate the expression here and in its other occurrences in these letters. Alternate translation: [this is to your credit, that you hate] or [here is a good thing that you are doing: you hate]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **of the Nicolaitans**

UST the disciples of Nicolaus

The word **Nicolaitans** is the name for people who followed the teachings and practices of a man named Nicolaus. See the introduction to this chapter for a discussion of the Nicolaitans.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

Revelation 2:7

ULT	UST
Let the one having an ear hear what the Spirit is saying to the churches. To the one conquering, I will grant to him to eat from the tree of life that is in the paradise of God.”’	*Everyone who is spiritually discerning should pay attention to what the Holy Spirit is saying to the groups of believers. I will permit anyone who is victorious to eat fruit from the tree that gives life. That tree is in the garden of God.”’*

ULT **Let the one having an ear hear**
UST Everyone who is spiritually discerning should pay attention to

See the discussion in the introduction to this chapter of how to translate this third-person imperative, found here and towards the end of each of the letters, if your language does not use that form. Alternate translation: [May the one having an ear hear] or [The one who has an ear should hear]
Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

ULT **Let the one having an ear hear**
UST Everyone who is spiritually discerning should pay attention to

See the discussion in the introduction to this chapter of how to translate this expression that might seem to be speaking of a specific person but which really refers to any person who fits its description. Alternate translation: [Anyone who has an ear should hear]
Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

ULT **Let the one having an ear hear**
UST Everyone who is spiritually discerning should pay attention to

Through this expression, Jesus is addressing his audience in the third person, even though he is speaking directly to them. As the introduction to this chapter discusses, if it would be helpful in your language, you could translate the expression in the second person, here and in its other occurrences in 3. Alternate translation: [If you have an ear, then hear]
Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

ULT **Let the one having an ear hear**
UST Everyone who is spiritually discerning should pay attention to

As the introduction to this chapter discusses, the phrase “having an ear” represents the willingness to understand and obey, by association with the part of the body by which people would have received the spoken teaching of Jesus. Alternate translation: [Anyone who is willing should understand and obey]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **To the one conquering**
UST who is victorious

As the introduction to this chapter discusses, Jesus is speaking as if the person to whom he is making this promise will win a victory. He is actually referring to a person who refuses to worship idols even at the risk of persecution and death. In your translation, you may wish to express this meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [To the one who refuses to worship idols even at the risk of persecution and death]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **To the one conquering**
UST who is victorious

As the introduction to this chapter discusses, while the expression “to the one conquering” might seem to be speaking of a specific person, it really means any person who fits its description. Alternate translation: [to anyone who conquers] or [to anyone who refuses to worship idols even at the risk of persecution and death]
Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

ULT **the tree of life**
UST the tree that gives life

Jesus is using this possessive form to identify this **tree** not as having life but as giving **life**. In other words, Jesus means not a living tree but a life-giving tree. Alternate translation: [the life-giving tree]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **the tree of life**
UST the tree that gives life

This is a reference to the description in Genesis 2:9 of the **tree of life** that was in the Garden of Eden. The fruit of that tree enabled anyone who ate it to live forever. So Jesus is saying by implication that he will give everlasting life to anyone who remains faithful to him. However, since the tree of life appears in the closing vision of the book, in 22:2, it would be good to retain the image here rather than simply express its meaning in plain language. So you might translate the phrase **tree of life** directly but then explain its meaning. Alternate translation: [I will grant to him to eat from the tree of life that is in the paradise of God, yes, I will grant him everlasting life]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Spirit	Holy Spirit
churches	to the groups of believers
God	God

Revelation 2:8

ULT	UST
And to the angel of the church in Smyrna write: 'The first and the last, who became dead but lived, says these things:	*Next, write this message to the angel of the group of believers in the city of Smyrna: 'I am the one who began all things and who will cause all things to end. I am also the one who died and became alive again. This is what I say to you:*

ULT **And to the angel of the church in Smyrna write: 'The first and the last, who became dead but lived, says these things**

UST Next, write {this message} to the angel of the group of believers in the city of Smyrna: 'I am the one who began all things and who will cause all things to end. I am also the one who died and became alive again. This is what I say to you

If you translated the letter to Ephesus in verses 1–7 so that its main body was a simple direct quotation, you can continue to do that with each of the letters. Alternate translation: [Then Jesus told me to write to the angel of the church in Smyrna that the first and the last, who became dead but lived, said these things]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **The first and the last, who became dead but lived, says these things**

UST I am the one who began all things and who will cause all things to end. I am also the one who died and became alive again. This is what I say to you

If you have decided to use the second person to translate these opening statements in which Jesus refers to himself in the third person, you can continue to do that here. Alternate translation: [I, Jesus, the first and the last, who became dead but lived, say these things]

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

ULT **The first and the last**

UST I am the one who began all things and who will cause all things to end

See how you translated the phrase **The first and the last** in 1:17.

Support Reference: Merism

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
angel	angel
church	of the group of believers

Revelation 2:9

ULT	UST
"I know your affliction and poverty—but you are rich—and the slander of the ones saying themselves to be Jews, but they are not, but are a synagogue of Satan.	*"I am aware that people have persecuted you. I am aware that you are poor, although you have everything you need spiritually. I am aware that people are insulting you. Those people claim to be Jews, but they are not acting as if they truly belong to God. When they gather together, they help the devil instead of serving God.*

ULT **you are rich**
UST you have everything you need spiritually

Jesus is speaking as if the believers in Smyrna were literally **rich**, even though he has just acknowledged their **poverty**. He means that they are spiritually rich because God will reward them for their faithfulness and suffering. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [God will reward you richly]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **but they are not**
UST but they are not acting as if they truly belong to God

Jesus is speaking as if the people who are slandering the believers in Smyrna are literally **not** Jews. He means that they are acting as if they were not Jews, since they are persecuting people who sincerely worship the God of Israel. This makes them **not** Jews in some spiritual sense. Alternate translation: [but who are not acting in the way that Jews should]
Support Reference: Irony

ULT **are a synagogue of Satan**
UST When they gather together, they help the devil

Jesus is speaking as if the **synagogue** where these Jews gathered was literally devoted to the worship of **Satan** instead of the God of Israel. He means that when these Jews gather together and **slander** genuine believers, they are serving Satan's purposes rather than God's. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could say that plainly. Alternate translation: [their gatherings really serve Satan's purposes rather than God's]
Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
know	I am aware that … I am aware that … I am aware that
affliction	people have persecuted
slander	insulting
Jews	Jews
synagogue	When they gather together
Satan	devil

Revelation 2:10

ULT	UST
Do not fear what you are about to suffer. Behold, the devil is about to throw some of you into prison so that you will be tested, and you will have tribulation for ten days. Be faithful until death, and I will give you the crown of life.	*Those people are going to make you suffer. Do not be afraid, but watch out! The devil will soon lead them to put some of you in jail. The devil wants to show that you will abandon your faith in me if you suffer. You will have to suffer for ten days. But remain loyal to me even if you have to die. If you do, I will give you everlasting life as a reward.*

ULT **to throw {some} of you into prison**
UST lead them to put some of you in jail

Jesus does not mean that the devil will literally **throw** some of the believers in Smyrna **into prison**. That is, the devil will not pick them up and heave them through the air. Alternate translation: [to have some of you put in prison]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **to throw {some} of you into prison**
UST lead them to put some of you in jail

Jesus is speaking of **the devil** as the person who will do this action, but Jesus is using the devil to represent everyone who will responsible for it. The Jews in Smyrna would actually have the believers put in prison, acting under the devil's influence. Alternate translation: [to influence people to put some of you in prison]
Support Reference: Synecdoche

ULT **so that you will be tested**
UST The devil wants to show that you will abandon your faith in me if you suffer

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [so that he can test you]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **so that you will be tested**
UST The devil wants to show that you will abandon your faith in me if you suffer

The words **so that** introduce the purpose for which **the devil** will **throw** some of the believers **into prison**. Use a natural way in your language for introducing a purpose clause. Be sure that it is clear to your readers that this is a purpose that the devil is pursuing. Jesus is not saying that he is going to use the devil to test the believers to see if they will remain faithful. Alternate translation: [to try to get you to abandon your faith]
Support Reference: Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

ULT **you … you will be tested … you will have**
UST of you … The devil wants to show that you will abandon your faith in me if you suffer. You will have to suffer

The word **you** is plural in these instances. Jesus is speaking more directly to the believers in Smyrna to warn them about the suffering they are about to experience. If your language marks a distinction between singular and plural forms of "you" and if you have been using the singular forms of "you" and "your" in these letters because they are addressed to individual angels, you may consider using the plural form of "you" here if that would be natural in your language.

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

ULT **for ten days**
UST for ten days

As the General Introduction to Revelation discusses, time references such as this one may have symbolic significance. In this case, by allusion to Daniel 1:14, **ten days** may represent a short or limited amount of time for testing. However, as the Introduction explains, it would be appropriate to translate this as a literal period of time rather than offering an interpretation of the phrase such as "for a short time of testing."

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **the crown of life**
UST everlasting life as a reward

Jesus is speaking he will literally give these believers **life** as a crown to wear. He is using the word **crown** to mean "reward." If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [everlasting life as your reward]

Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
fear	afraid
suffer	suffer
devil	devil
tested	The devil wants to show that you will abandon your faith in me if you suffer
tribulation	You will have to suffer
days	days
faithful	loyal to me
crown	as a reward

Revelation 2:11

ULT	UST
Let the one having an ear hear what the Spirit is saying to the churches. The one conquering will certainly not be hurt by the second death.”’	*Everyone who is spiritually discerning should pay attention to what the Holy Spirit is saying to the groups of believers. Whoever is victorious will never die a second time.”’*

ULT **Let the one having an ear hear … The one conquering**
UST Everyone who is spiritually discerning should pay attention to … Whoever is victorious

See how you translated these phrases in 2:7.
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **The one conquering will certainly not be hurt by the second death**
UST Whoever is victorious will never die a second time

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [The second death will certainly not hurt anyone who conquers]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **certainly not**
UST never

As the General Introduction to Revelation discusses, John frequently uses a double negative for emphasis that the ULT translates with the expression “certainly not,” as in this case. The second negative does not cancel the first to create a positive meaning. If for emphasis your language uses double negatives that do not cancel one another, it would be appropriate to use that construction here and in the other instances of this double negative throughout the book.
Support Reference: Double Negatives

ULT **the second death**
UST will … die a second time

If your language does not use ordinal numbers, you can use a cardinal number here or an equivalent expression. Alternate translation: [death number two] or [the next death]
Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

ULT **will certainly not be hurt by the second death**
UST will never die a second time

Jesus is speaking as if people who had died would die a **second** time. By **the second death**, he means separation from God. That is spiritual death, just as physical death involves the separation of the human soul and spirit from the human body. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [will certainly not experience separation from God after he dies physically]
Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Spirit	Holy Spirit
churches	to the groups of believers

Revelation 2:12

ULT	UST
And to the angel of the church in Pergamum write: ‘The one having the sharp, double-edged sword says these things:	*Next, write this message to the angel of the group of believers in the city of Pergamum: ‘I am the one who has a sword with two sharp edges. This is what I say to you:*

ULT **the sharp, double-edged sword**
UST a sword with two sharp edges

See how you translated this phrase in 1:16.
Support Reference: Symbolic Language

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
angel	angel
church	of the group of believers
sword	sword

Revelation 2:13

ULT	UST
"I know where you live, where the throne of Satan is, yet you hold my name and you did not deny my faith even in the days of Antipas my witness, my faithful one, who was killed among you, where Satan lives.	*"I am aware of where you live. It is a place where Satan controls people. I am also aware that you are very loyal to me. You did not abandon your faith in me even when people attacked your fellow believer Antipas. He told others about me, and he remained loyal to me. People killed him right in front of you, because Satan has such an influence in your city.*

ULT **where the throne of Satan is**
UST It is a place where Satan controls people

Jesus is speaking as if **Satan** literally had a **throne** in the city of Pergamum. He means that Satan has great influence in that city. (This could be a reference to a giant altar to the god Zeus that existed in Pergamum at this time.) Alternate translation: [in a city where Satan has great influence]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **you hold my name**
UST that you are very loyal to me

Here, **name** represents a person by association with the way that each person has a name. Alternate translation: [you hold on to me]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **you hold my name**
UST that you are very loyal to me

Jesus is speaking as if the believers in Pergamum were literally holding on to him. He means that they are continuing to trust him despite the suffering they are experiencing. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [you continue to trust me]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **you did not deny my faith**
UST You did not abandon your faith in me

If it would be clearer in your language, you could use a positive expression to translate this double negative that consists of the negative particle **not** and the negative verb **deny**. Alternate translation: [you continued to believe in me]
Support Reference: Double Negatives

ULT **my faith**
UST your faith in me

In this possessive form, **Jesus** is the object rather than the subject of **faith**. That is, this does not mean faith that Jesus has, it means the faith that these believers have in Jesus. Alternate translation: [your faith in me]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **in the days of Antipas**
UST when people attacked {your fellow believer} Antipas

Jesus is using the term **days** to refer to a specific time. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [during the time of Antipas]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **of Antipas**
UST your fellow believer Antipas

The word **Antipas** is the name of a man.
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **my faithful one**
UST and he remained loyal to me

Jesus is using the adjective **faithful** as a noun to mean a certain kind of person. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you can translate this word with an equivalent phrase. Alternate translation: [who was faithful to me]
Support Reference: Nominal Adjectives

ULT **who was killed**
UST People killed him

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you could state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [whom your enemies killed]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **you**
UST you

The word **you** is plural in this instance. Jesus is speaking more directly to the believers in Pergamum because of the suffering they all experienced when Antipas was killed. If your language marks a distinction between singular and plural forms of "you" and if you have been using the singular forms of "you" and "your" in these letters, you may consider using the plural form of "you" here if that would be natural in your language.
Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

ULT **where Satan lives**
UST because Satan has such an influence in your city

Jesus is speaking as if **Satan** literally lived in Pergamum. He means that Satan has great influence in that city. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [where Satan has such great influence]
Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
know	I am aware of … I am … aware
throne	controls people
Satan	Satan
faith	faith
days	when people attacked
witness	He told others
faithful	and he remained loyal
Satan	Satan

Revelation 2:14

ULT	UST
But I have a few things against you, that you have there ones holding the teaching of Balaam, who taught Balak to throw a stumbling block before the sons of Israel, to eat idol-offerings and to be sexually immoral.	*Nevertheless, I must criticize you about a few things. Some people in your group firmly believe that they should do what the ancient prophet Balaam taught. It was Balaam who showed Balak, the king of Moab, how to tempt the people of Israel to sin. Balak led the Israelites to eat meat that people had sacrificed to idols. Balak also led the Israelites to commit sexual sins.*

ULT **I have a few things against you**
UST I must criticize you about a few things

See how you translated the similar phrase in 2:4.
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **ones holding the teaching of Balaam**
UST firmly believe that they should do what {the ancient prophet} Balaam taught

Jesus is speaking as if the believers in Pergamum were literally **holding** the **teaching of Balaam**. He means that they are doing what this teaching instructs them to do. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [people who are obeying the teaching of Balaam]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **ones holding the teaching of Balaam**
UST firmly believe that they should do what {the ancient prophet} Balaam taught

Jesus is referring to teaching that condones practicing sexual immorality and eating food sacrificed to idols by association with the way that **Balaam** advised **Balak** to get the Israelites to do those things. (See the discussion in the introduction to this chapter.) If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [people who teach the same things that Balaam did]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **of Balaam … Balak**
UST the ancient prophet Balaam … Balak, the king of Moab

The words **Balaam** and **Balak** are the names of men. Their story is told in Numbers 22:1–24:45. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could identify them further in your translation. Alternate translation: [of the ancient prophet Balaam … Balak, the king of Moab,]
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **to throw a stumbling block before the sons of Israel, to eat idol-offerings and to be sexually immoral**

UST how to tempt the people of Israel to sin. Balak led the Israelites to eat meat that people had sacrificed to idols. Balak also led the Israelites to commit sexual sins

Jesus is speaking as if **Balak** had literally thrown a **stumbling block**, something that would make people trip and fall, in front of the Israelites. He means that Balak tempted them and got them to sin. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [how to tempt the sons of Israel into sinning by eating food sacrificed to idols and being sexually immoral]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **the sons of Israel**

UST the people of Israel

Here, **sons** figuratively means "descendants." Jesus is identifying the Israelites as descendants of their ancestor Israel (who was also known as Jacob). If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [the people of Israel]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **idol-offerings**

UST meat that people had sacrificed to idols

The word translated **idol-food** describes food that was offered to idols. People then often ate this food as a way of worshiping the idols. Alternate translation: [food sacrificed to idols]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Balaam	Balaam
Israel	Israel
immoral	Balak … led the Israelites to commit sexual sins

Revelation 2:15

ULT	UST
Thus you also have ones holding the teaching of the Nicolaitans similarly.	*Just as Balak followed Balaam's advice, some people in your group firmly believe that they may similarly do what the disciples of Nicolaus teach. They eat food that people have sacrificed to idols and they commit sexual sins.*

ULT **ones holding the teaching**

UST firmly believe that they may … do what … teach. They eat food that people have sacrificed to idols and they commit sexual sins

See how you translated the similar phrase in the previous verse. Alternate translation: [people who are obeying the teaching]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **of the Nicolaitans**

UST the disciples of Nicolaus

See how you translated the word **Nicolaitans** in 2:6.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

Revelation 2:16

ULT	UST
Repent, therefore! But if not, I will come to you quickly and wage war against them with the sword of my mouth.	*But what the disciples of Nicolaus teach is wrong. So everyone in your group must stop doing those things! Now if some of you do not stop, I will immediately judge those people. I will pronounce a sentence of judgment against them and punish them.*

ULT **But if not**
UST Now if some of you do not stop

Jesus is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You could supply these words from earlier in the sentence if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [But if you do not repent]
Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **them**
UST them

The pronoun **them** refers to the "ones holding the teaching of the Nicolaitans," whom Jesus describes in the previous verse. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [these people who obey the teachings of the Nicolaitans]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **wage war against them with the sword of my mouth**
UST I will pronounce a sentence of judgment against them … punish them

Jesus is speaking as if he will literally **wage war** against the disobedient believers in Pergamum with the **sword** in his **mouth**. He likely means that he will announce a punishment against them that will become effective as soon as he speaks it. You could say that in your translation. The UST models one way to do that. However, since the symbol of the sword comes from the opening vision in the book, and since Jesus uses it to identify himself at the beginning of this letter, and since the symbol also appears in one of the last visions in the book, in 19:15–21, you may wish to retain the symbol in your translation rather than state the meaning plainly here.
Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Repent	everyone in your group must stop doing those things
sword	I will pronounce a sentence of judgment

Revelation 2:17

ULT	UST
Let the one having an ear hear what the Spirit is saying to the churches. To the one conquering, I will give to him of the hidden manna, and I will give to him a white stone and on the stone a new name written that no one knows except the one receiving it.”’	*Everyone who is spiritually discerning should pay attention to what the Holy Spirit is saying to the groups of believers. To the one who is victorious I will award some special bread that I have hidden for him. I will also give him a white pebble upon which I have written a new name for him. No one will know what this name is except the one to whom I give it.”’*

ULT **of the hidden manna**
UST some special bread that I have hidden for him

If your language does not use the passive form in this way for the word **hidden manna**, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [some manna that I have hidden]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **a new name written**
UST I have written a new name for him

If your language does not use the passive form in this way for the word **written**, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [a new name that I have written]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **no one knows except the one receiving it**
UST No one will know … except the one to whom I give it

If it would appear in your language that Jesus is contradicting himself by saying that **no one knows** the new name but then saying that **the one receiving it** knows this name, you could reword this to avoid using an exception clause. Alternate translation: [only the person receiving it knows]
Support Reference: Connect — Exception Clauses

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Spirit	Holy Spirit
churches	to the groups of believers
manna	some special bread
knows	know
receiving	one to whom I give it

Revelation 2:18

ULT	UST
And to the angel of the church in Thyatira write: 'The Son of God, the one having his eyes like a flame of fire and his feet like bronze, says these things:	*Next, write this message to the angel of the group of believers in the city of Thyatira: 'I am the Son of God, whose eyes shine like a fiery flame and whose feet shine like bronze. This is what I say to you:*

ULT **The Son of God**
UST I am the Son of God

Son is an important title that describes the relationship between Jesus and God. Be sure to retain this title in your translation.
Support Reference: Translating Son and Father

ULT **the one having his eyes like a flame of fire and his feet like bronze**
UST whose eyes shine like a fiery flame and whose feet shine like bronze

See how you translated these phrases in 1:14 and 1:15.
Support Reference: Simile

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
angel	angel
church	of the group of believers
Son of God	Son of God
bronze	bronze

Revelation 2:19

ULT	UST
"I know your works and love and faith and service and your endurance, and your last works are greater than the first.	*"I am aware of all that you are doing. I am aware that you love one another because you love me. I am aware that you are very loyal to me. I am aware of how you are serving me. I am aware that you are enduring patiently. Finally, I am aware that you are now doing more than you did when you first believed in me.*

ULT **love and faith and service and your endurance**

UST you love one another because you love me. {I am aware that} you are very loyal to me. {I am aware of how} you are serving me. {I am aware that} you are enduring patiently

If your language would not use an abstract nouns for the ideas of **love**, **faith**, **service**, and **endurance**, you could express the same ideas in other ways. Alternate translation: [how you have loved and trusted and served me and how you have endured]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **your last works {are} greater than the first**

UST you are now doing more than you did when you first believed in me

Jesus is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [your last works are greater than the first works you did]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
know	I am aware of
love	love
faith	you are very loyal to me
service	how you are serving me
endurance	are enduring patiently

Revelation 2:20

ULT	UST
But I have against you that you tolerate the woman Jezebel, the one calling herself a prophetess, and she teaches and deceives my servants to be sexually immoral and to eat idol-offerings.	*Nevertheless, I must criticize you about something. You tolerate a woman in your assembly who is like that wicked queen in the Old Testament whose name was Jezebel. She claims falsely that she teaches the truth from God. But in fact, by what she teaches, she is misleading people who believe in me. She is teaching them to commit sexual sins and to eat meat that other people have sacrificed to idols.*

ULT **Jezebel**
UST who is like that wicked queen in the Old Testament whose name was Jezebel

The word **Jezebel** is the name of a woman. It is not clear whether this is the actual name of this woman or whether Jesus is calling her by this name because she is like the wicked Queen Jezebel whose story is told in the Old Testament. The UST models one way of indicating that this may be an allusion to the Old Testament rather than the actual name of this woman.
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **she teaches and deceives**
UST by what she teaches, she is misleading … She is teaching them

This phrase expresses a single idea by using two words connected with **and**. The word **deceives** tells what the result is of what Jezebel **teaches**. If it would be more natural in your language, you could express this meaning with an equivalent phrase that does not use "and." Alternate translation: [she deceptively teaches]
Support Reference: Hendiadys

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jezebel	Jezebel
calling	claims {falsely} that
prophetess	teaches the truth from God
deceives	by what she teaches, she is misleading … She is teaching them
servants	people who believe in
immoral	to commit sexual sins

Revelation 2:22

ULT	UST
Behold! I will throw her onto a bed, and the ones committing adultery with her into great tribulation, if they do not repent of her deeds.	*Pay attention! I am going to punish her with a terrible sickness. I will also cause those who act immorally as she does to suffer greatly if they do not stop doing what she does*

ULT **I will throw her onto a bed**
UST I am going to punish her with a terrible sickness. I will … cause

Jesus is referring to punishing Jezebel with sickness by association with the **bed** that she would have to lie on because she was sick. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [I will punish her by making her gravely ill]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **the ones committing adultery with her into great tribulation**
UST those who act immorally as she does to suffer greatly

Jesus is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [I will throw the ones committing adultery with her into great tribulation]
Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **the ones committing adultery with her into great tribulation**
UST those who act immorally as she does to suffer greatly

Jesus does not mean that he will literally **throw** the disobedient believers in Thyatira into **tribulation**. That is, he will not pick them up and heave them through the air. Alternate translation: [I will cause the ones committing adultery with her to experience great tribulation]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
adultery	who act immorally
tribulation	to suffer
repent	they do … stop

Revelation 2:23

ULT	UST
And I will strike her children with death, and all the churches will know that I am the one searching kidneys and hearts, and I will give to each of you according to your deeds.	*And as a judgment against her, I will kill the children she has had as a result of her sexual immorality. Then all the groups of believers will recognize that I examine what everyone thinks and desires. I will punish or reward each one of you as you deserve.*

ULT **her children**
UST the children she has had as a result of her sexual immorality

The word **children** could mean: (1) literal children of Jezebel and the men who, as verse 22 describes, have been "committing adultery" with her. Alternate translation: [the children she has had with her adulterous lovers]; or (2) the disciples of Jezebel. (However, since Jesus says in the previous verse that he will cause these disciples to experience tribulation if they do not repent, it appears that Jesus is giving them the opportunity to repent, so it seems unlikely that he would immediately pronounce a death sentence against them here.) Alternate translation: [her disciples]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **I am the one searching kidneys and hearts**
UST I examine what everyone thinks and desires

Here, **kidneys** represent people's thoughts and **hearts** represent their emotions. Alternate translation: [I am able to determine exactly what each person is thinking and feeling]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **of you … your**
UST of you … you

The word **you** is plural in these instances. Jesus is speaking more directly to the believers in Thyatira in order to warn them that he is going to judge them imminently. You may consider using the plural form of "you" here if that would be natural in your language.

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
churches	groups of believers
know	will recognize

Revelation 2:24

ULT	UST
But I say to you, to the rest in Thyatira, to as many as do not hold this teaching, whoever has not known the deep things of Satan, as they call them: 'I do not put another burden on you,	*But the rest of you believers in the city of Thyatira have not obeyed this woman's teachings. You have not taken part in what she calls the secret practices that Satan taught her. I have something to say to you as well. I am going to ask you to do just one thing.*

ULT **to you … you**
UST to you … you

The word **you** is plural in these instances. Jesus is speaking more directly to the faithful believers in Thyatira in order to encourage them. You may consider using the plural form of "you" here if that would be natural in your language.
Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

ULT **the deep things of Satan, as they call them**
UST what she calls the secret practices that Satan taught her

The people Jesus is quoting have been using the adjective **deep** as a noun to mean a certain kind of thing. The adjective is plural, and the ULT adds the word **things** to show this. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you can translate this word with an equivalent phrase. Alternate translation: [the things pertaining to Satan that they call deep]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **as they call them**
UST what she calls

The pronoun **they** is an indefinite pronoun that does not have a specific referent in the immediate context. Jesus is using this indefinite construction to focus on what is being said rather than on who is saying it. If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate this with a different expression that does not use an indefinite pronoun. Alternate translation: [as the people who do hold this teaching call them]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **I do not put another burden on you**
UST I am going to ask you to do just one thing

If it would be clearer in your language, you could translate this so that there is not a quotation within a quotation. Alternate translation: [that I do not put another burden on you]
Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **I do not put another burden on you**
UST I am going to ask you to do just one thing

If it would be clearer in your language, you could translate this as a positive statement. Alternate translation: [I put only this one burden on you]
Support Reference: Double Negatives

ULT **I do not put another burden on you**
UST I am going to ask you to do just one thing

Jesus is speaking as if he might literally put a **burden** on the believers in Thyatira. He is referring to something he might require of them. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [I do not require anything else of you]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **another burden**
UST to do just one thing

By **another burden**, Jesus means implicitly no burden other than the one he is about to mention. You can indicate this in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [any burden on you other than the following:]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
known	have … taken part in
Satan	Satan

Revelation 2:25

ULT	UST
only hold what you have until I come.'	*Just continue to obey the true teaching that you have received until I return.*

ULT **only hold what you have until I come**
UST Just continue to obey the true teaching that you have received until I return

If you translated the beginning of this quotation in the previous verse as an indirect quotation so that there would not be a quotation within a quotation, you can also translate the end of the quotation here as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: [except to hold on to what you have until I come]
Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **hold what you have**
UST continue to obey the true teaching that you have received

By **what you have**, Jesus means implicitly the good things that the faithful believers in Thyatira have been doing. (See the discussion of the phrase "you have" in the introduction to this chapter.) Alternate translation: [continue to do the good things that you are doing]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **hold what you have**
UST continue to obey the true teaching that you have received

Jesus is speaking as if he wants the believers in Pergamum literally to **hold** on to the good things that they have been doing. He means that he wants the believers to continue doing these things. Alternate translation: [continue to do the good things that you have been doing]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **hold … you have**
UST continue to obey the true teaching that you have received

Jesus is continuing to use the plural form of **you** as he speaks to the faithful believers in Thyatira in order to encourage them. You may consider using the plural form of "you" here if that would be natural in your language.
Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

Revelation 2:26

ULT	UST
And the one conquering and the one keeping my works until the end, to him I will give authority over the nations.	*To the one who is victorious, who continues to do what I command until he dies, I will give power to rule the people groups on earth.*

ULT **the one conquering and the one keeping**
UST To the one who is victorious, who continues

Here Jesus is expressing a single idea by using two phrases connected with **and**. The phrase **the one keeping** tells how **the one conquering** is able to conquer. If it would be more natural in your language, you could express this meaning with an phrase that does not use "and." Alternate translation: [the one conquering by keeping]

Support Reference: Hendiadys

ULT **the one conquering and the one keeping**
UST To the one who is victorious, who continues

Jesus is not referring to a specific person who is **conquering** in this way. He means any person who conquers in this way. Express this in the way that would be most natural in your language. Alternate translation: [anyone conquering by keeping]

Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

ULT **the one keeping my works**
UST who continues to do what I command

See the discussion in the General Introduction to Revelation of the word "keep." If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning of this expression plainly. Alternate translation: [the one obediently doing what I command]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **the one keeping my works**
UST who continues to do what I command

The possessive form **my works** describes not what Jesus does but what Jesus commands believers to do. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [the one doing the works that I command]

Support Reference: Possession

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
authority	power to rule
nations	people groups on earth

Revelation 2:27

ULT	UST
'And he will rule them with an iron sceptre, as clay jars are shattered,'	*Those to whom I give this authority will rule the people groups with irresistible power. They will destroy evildoers as completely as if they were smashing clay pots.*

ULT **And he will rule them with an iron sceptre, as clay jars are shattered**
UST Those to whom I give this authority will rule the people groups with irresistible power. They will destroy evildoers as completely as if they were smashing clay pots

This verse is a quotation of Psalm 2:9. You may wish to indicate this in your translation by putting the words of this verse within quotation marks or by using some other punctuation or convention that your language uses to indicate a quotation.
Support Reference: Quote Markings

ULT **he will rule them**
UST Those to whom I give this authority will rule the people groups

The pronoun **he** refers to "the one conquering" and the pronoun **them** refers "the nations" in the previous verse. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [the one conquering will rule the nations]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **with an iron sceptre**
UST with irresistible power

Jesus is speaking as if the one conquering will literally use **an iron scepter** to **rule** the nations. He means that he will rule with great strength, by association with the way that **iron** is very strong. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. However, since Jesus is quoting this image from Psalm 2, and since the image recurs in 12:5 and 19:15, you may wish to retain the image in your translation. Alternate translation: [with great strength]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **as clay jars are shattered**
UST They will destroy evildoers as completely as if they were smashing clay pots

The point of this comparison is that the one conquering will defeat his enemies as easily as **clay jars are shattered**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could make this point explicitly. Alternate translation: [defeating his enemies as easily as clay jars are shattered]
Support Reference: Simile

ULT **as clay jars are shattered**
UST They will destroy evildoers as completely as if they were smashing clay pots

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [as one shatters clay jars]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
he will rule	Those to whom I give this authority will rule
an … sceptre	irresistible power

Revelation 2:28

ULT	UST
as I also have received from my Father, and I will give to him the morning star.	*They will rule so powerfully because I will share with them the authority that I myself have received from God my Father. I will also give them the assurance that God is beginning a wonderful new era.*

ULT **as I also have received**

UST They will rule so powerfully because I will share with them the authority that I myself have received

Jesus is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [as I also have received authority]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **my Father**

UST God my Father

Father is an important title that describes the relationship between God and Jesus. Be sure to retain this title in your translation.

Support Reference: Translating Son and Father

ULT **the morning star**

UST the assurance that God is beginning a wonderful new era

Jesus is speaking as if he will literally give the faithful believers in Thyatira **the morning star**. This could mean: (1) confident hope about the future, just as the appearance of the morning star (that is, the planet Venus) shows that a new day is about to begin. (2) a deep and meaningful relationship with Jesus, who says in 22:16, "I am … the bright morning star." You could say either of these things in your translation. The UST models one way to express the first possibility. However, since this image recurs later in the book, you may wish to retain it here by translating the phrase **the morning star** directly.

Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
received	received
Father	Father

Revelation 3

Revelation 3 Introduction

Revelation 3 Chapter Introduction

Structure and Formatting

- The Letter to Sardis (3:1–6)
- The Letter to Philadelphia (3:7–13)
- The Letter to Laodicea (3:14–22)

You may wish to set each letter apart so that your readers can easily see that these are separate letters. You could, for example, put a blank line between these letters in your translation.

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with verse 7.

Religious and Cultural Concepts in This Chapter

“The angel of the church”

See the discussion of this concept in the introduction to chapter 2.

Translation Issues in This Chapter

See the discussion in the introduction to chapter 2 of the translation issues in the letters to the seven churches.

Revelation 3:1

ULT	UST
And to the angel of the church in Sardis write: 'The one having the seven spirits of God and the seven stars says these things: "I know your works, that you have a name that you are alive, but you are dead.	*Write this message to the angel of the group of believers in the city of Sardis: 'I am the one who has the seven spirits of God and the seven stars. I have these things to say to you: "I am aware of what you are doing. You have a reputation for being spiritually vigorous. However, you are not really acting out of zeal for me.*

ULT **you have a name that you are alive**
UST You have a reputation for being spiritually vigorous

Here, **name** represents the reputation of a person or group. Alternate translation: [you have a reputation for being alive]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **that you are alive, but you are dead**
UST for being spiritually vigorous. However, you are not really acting out of zeal for me

When Jesus says that the believers in Sardis have a reputation for being **alive**, he does not mean literally alive, but spiritually vibrant, that is, obeying and honoring God and experiencing God's presence and power. Similarly, when Jesus speaks as if the believers in Sardis were literally **dead**, he means that they are not spiritually vibrant. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [for being spiritually vibrant, but actually you are not]
Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
angel	angel
church	of the group of believers
spirits	spirits
God	God
know	I am aware of

Revelation 3:2

ULT	UST
Becoming waking and strengthen the remainder that is about to die, for I have not found your works completed before my God.	*Be careful! You are at risk of losing your devotion for me completely. Renew the devotion that you still have left. You have not yet done all that God knows you should have done.*

ULT **Becoming waking**
UST Be careful

Jesus is speaking as if the believers in Sardis were asleep and needed to wake up. He means that they are complacent and need to become concerned about their spiritual state. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [Become concerned about your spiritual state]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **strengthen the remainder that is about to die**
UST You are at risk of losing your devotion for me completely. Renew the devotion that you still have left

When Jesus says that there are some remaining things in Sardis that are **about to die**, as in the previous verse, he is speaking of the absence of spiritual vibrancy as if it were literally death. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [strengthen the few things about you that are still spiritually vibrant]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **for I have not found your works completed**
UST You have not yet done all

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [I have not found that you have completed your works]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **before my God**
UST that God knows you should have done

Here the expression **before my God** means “in front of my God,” that is, “where my God can see them.” Sight, in turn, represents attention, perspective, and judgment. Alternate translation: [from my God’s perspective]
Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
waking	Be careful
God	God

Revelation 3:3

ULT	UST
Remember, therefore, how you have received and heard, and be keeping and repent. But if you should not be awake, I will come like a thief and you will certainly not know at what hour I will come against you.	*So remember how eagerly you accepted God's instruction when you heard it. Be sorry for disobeying and start obeying again. If you are not careful to obey me, I will judge you when you are not expecting it. You will not know at what time I am going to punish you.*

ULT **how you have received and heard**
UST how eagerly you accepted God's instruction when you heard it

This phrase expresses a single idea by using two words connected with **and**. The word **heard** tells by what means the believers in Sardis learned the things about Jesus that they **received** (that is, believed). If it would be more natural in your language, you could express this meaning with an equivalent phrase that does not use "and." Alternate translation: [how you received the things that you heard]
Support Reference: Hendiadys

ULT **how you have received and heard**
UST how eagerly you accepted God's instruction when you heard it

Jesus means implicitly the things that the believers in Sardis **heard** and **received** (believed) about him. You can indicate this in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [how you believed the teaching about me when you heard it]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **be keeping and repent**
UST Be sorry for disobeying and start obeying again

The believers in Sardis first need to **repent** before they can be **keeping** (that is, obeying) the things that they **received** when they first **heard** about Jesus, so it might be more natural to put the word "repent" before the word "keeping." Alternate translation: [repent and be obedient]
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **if you should not be awake**
UST If you are not careful to obey me

As in the previous verse, Jesus is speaking as if the believers in Sardis were asleep and needed to wake up. Once again he means that they are complacent and need to become concerned about their spiritual state. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [if you do not become concerned about your spiritual state]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **I will come like a thief**
UST I will judge you when you are not expecting it

The point of this comparison is that just as a thief comes unexpectedly, so Jesus will come unexpectedly. If it would be helpful in your language, you could make this point explicitly. Alternate translation: [I will come unexpectedly like a thief]
Support Reference: Simile

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
received	you accepted God’s instruction
repent	Be sorry for disobeying
you should … be awake	you are … careful to obey me
thief	when you are not expecting it
know	know
hour	time

Revelation 3:4

ULT	UST
But you have a few names in Sardis who have not stained their clothes, and they will walk with me in white, for they are worthy.	*Nevertheless, there are a few believers there in the city of Sardis who have not been doing what is wrong. They will live with me forever and be pure in every way. This is what they deserve.*

ULT **But you have**
UST Nevertheless, there are

See the discussion of the phrase "you have" in the introduction to chapter 2. Alternate translation: [But this is to your credit, that there are]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **names**
UST believers

Here, **names** represent people by association with the way that each person has a name. Alternate translation: [people]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **have not stained their clothes**
UST have not been doing what is wrong

If it would be clearer in your language, you could use a positive expression to translate this double negative that consists of the negative particle **not** and the negative verb **stained**. Alternate translation: [have kept their clothes clean]
Support Reference: Double Negatives

ULT **have not stained their clothes**
UST have not been doing what is wrong

Jesus is speaking as if the disobedient believers in Sardis had literally **stained their clothes** while the obedient ones had not. He means that the obedient believers have not compromised their character by sinning. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. However, since Jesus continues the clothing image in the next phrase, you may wish to retain it here by translating the phrase **stained their clothes** directly. Alternate translation: [have not compromised their character by sinning]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **they will walk with me**
UST They will live with me forever

In this context, the word **walk** refers to how people live and behave. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [they will live in relationship with me]
Support Reference: Idiom

> ULT **in white**
> UST and be pure in every way

Jesus is using the adjective **white** as a noun to mean a certain kind of clothing. He specifies in the next verse that he means "white garments." Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you can translate this word with an equivalent phrase. Alternate translation: [in white garments]

Support Reference: Nominal Adjectives

> ULT **in white**
> UST and be pure in every way

Jesus may mean that faithful and obedient believers actually will wear **white** clothing when they live with him as their everlasting reward, since this is depicted several times in the course of the book. If so, wearing this white clothing would be a symbolic action indicating the purity of their lives and their devotion to Jesus. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could explain the significance of this action. Alternate translation: [in white clothing that is symbolic of their purity]

Support Reference: Symbolic Action

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
have … stained	have … been doing what is wrong

Revelation 3:5

ULT	UST
The one conquering will be clothed thus in white garments, and I will certainly not wipe out his name from the Book of Life, but I will confess his name before my Father and before his angels.	*In this way I will completely purify the one who is victorious. I will make sure that his name always remains in the Book of Life. I will tell God my Father and his angels that I know him personally.*

ULT **will be clothed thus in white garments**
UST In this way I will completely purify

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [will wear white garments in this way]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **I will certainly not wipe out his name**
UST I will make sure that his name always remains

If it would be clearer in your language, you could use a positive expression to translate this double negative that consists of the negative particle **not** and the negative verb **wipe out**. Alternate translation: [I will certainly keep his name in the Book of Life]
Support Reference: Double Negatives

ULT **I will confess his name**
UST I will tell … that I know him personally

Here, **name** represents a person by association with the way that each person has a name. Alternate translation: [I will acknowledge him] or [I will acknowledge that he belongs to me]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **before my Father and before his angels**
UST I will tell God my Father and his angels that I know

Here the word **before** means “in front of” or “in the presence of” another person. Alternate translation: [in the presence of my Father and in the presence of his angels]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **Father**
UST God … Father

Father is an important title that describes the relationship between God and Jesus. Be sure to retain this title in your translation.
Support Reference: Translating Son and Father

ULT **his angels**
UST his angels

See how you translated **angel** in 1:20.
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Book of Life	Book of Life
confess	I will tell … that I know
Father	Father
angels	angels

Revelation 3:6

ULT	UST
Let the one having an ear hear what the Spirit is saying to the churches.”’	*Everyone who is spiritually discerning should pay attention to what the Holy Spirit is saying to the groups of believers.”’*

ULT **Let the one having an ear hear what the Spirit is saying to the churches**
UST Everyone who is spiritually discerning should pay attention to what the Holy Spirit is saying to the groups of believers

You can translate this statement in its three occurrences in this chapter the same way you translated it in its four occurrences in chapter 2.

Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Spirit	Holy Spirit
churches	to the groups of believers

Revelation 3:7

ULT	UST
And to the angel of the church in Philadelphia write: 'The Holy One, the True One, the one having the key of David, the one opening and no one will shut and shutting and no one opens, says these things:	*Write this message to the angel of the group of believers in the city of Philadelphia: 'I am the one who always does what is right. I am the one who always says what is true. Just as King David had authority to allow people to enter the ancient city of Jerusalem, so I have the authority to allow people to enter heaven. If I create an opportunity for someone, then no one can deny him that opportunity. If I deny an opportunity to someone, then no one can give him that opportunity. I have these things to say to you:*

ULT **The Holy One, the True One**

UST I am the one who always does what is right. I am the one who always says what is true

Jesus is using the adjectives **Holy** and **True** as nouns to describe himself as a certain kind of person. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you can translate these words with equivalent phrases, as the ULT does by adding the word **One** in each case.

Support Reference: Nominal Adjectives

ULT **the one having the key of David**

UST Just as King David had authority to allow people to enter the ancient city of Jerusalem, so I have the authority to allow people to enter heaven

Jesus is not referring to a literal **key**. Rather, he is quoting from Isaiah 22:22, where God says that he will make a man named Eliakim the administrator of the royal palace in Jerusalem and give him the "key of the house of David," symbolizing authority over the kingdom that the dynasty of David rules. As the Messiah, Jesus now has David's royal authority. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [the one having royal authority as the Messiah]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **the one opening and no one will shut and shutting and no one opens**

UST If I create an opportunity for someone, then no one can deny him that opportunity. If I deny an opportunity to someone, then no one can give him that opportunity

This is a continuation of the quotation and the image of the key from Isaiah 22:22. These two phrases say the same thing in opposite ways. God, speaking through Isaiah, was using repetition to emphasize the idea that the phrases express, that he would give this new palace administrator authority that no one could defy. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could combine the phrases or express their meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [who decides definitively whether to open a door or to lock it shut] or [whose authority no one can defy]

Support Reference: Parallelism

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
angel	angel
church	of the group of believers
Holy	one who always does what is right
David	David

Revelation 3:8

ULT	UST
"I know your works (behold, I have put before you an opened door that no one is able to shut it), that you have little power, yet you have kept my word and you have not denied my name.	*"I know what you are doing. I know that although you are weak, you have obeyed my commands You have acknowledged that you believe in me. Be aware that I am giving you an opportunity that no one will be able to deny to you.*

ULT **behold, I have put before you an opened door that no one is able to shut it**
UST Be aware that I am giving you an opportunity that no one will be able to deny to you

In order to keep what Jesus says he knows about the believers in Philadelphia together with the phrase **I know your works**, you may wish to move this statement to the end of the verse and make it a separate sentence.
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **I have put before you an opened door**
UST I am giving you an opportunity

This **opened door** could symbolize: (1) an opportunity to proclaim the gospel or (2) entrance into everlasting life with Jesus. However, since the image of the **door** continues the image of the key from the previous verse, you may wish to retain the image by translating the phrase **I have put before you an opened door** directly.
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **I have put before you an opened door**
UST I am giving you an opportunity

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [I have opened a door before you]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **I have put before you an opened door**
UST I am giving you an opportunity

Here the word **before** means "in front of." The implication is that the believers in Philadelphia can go through this door, since it is open right in front of them. Alternate translation: [I have opened a door in front of you that you can go through]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **that no one is able to shut it**
UST that no one will be able to deny to you

It might seem that this expression contains extra information that would be unnatural to express in your language. If so, you can shorten it. Alternate translation: [that no one is able to shut]
Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

ULT **you have kept my word**
UST you have obeyed my commands

Jesus is using the term **word** to mean the commandments he has given by using words. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [you have obeyed my commandments]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **you have not denied my name**
UST You have acknowledged that you believe in me

Here, **name** represents a person by association with the way that each person has a name. Alternate translation: [you have not denied me]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **you have not denied my name**
UST You have acknowledged that you believe in me

If it would be clearer in your language, you could use a positive expression to translate this double negative that consists of the negative particle **not** and the negative verb **denied**. Alternate translation: [you have acknowledged me] or [you have acknowledged that you believe in me]
Support Reference: Double Negatives

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
know	know
word	commands

Revelation 3:9

ULT	UST
Behold, I will give those of the synagogue of Satan, the ones saying themselves to be Jews, but they are not, rather, they are lying, behold, I will make them so that they will come and bow down before your feet, and they will know that I have loved you.	*Pay attention! Some people are denying that you belong to me. Those people claim to be Jews, but they are not acting the way people do who truly belong to God. When they gather together, they help the devil instead of serving God. Pay attention! I will make those people recognize that I love you. They will come and honor you greatly when they recognize this.*

ULT **Behold, I will give {those} of the synagogue of Satan, the ones saying themselves to be Jews, but they are not, rather, they are lying, behold, I will make them so that they will come**

UST Pay attention … Those people claim to be Jews, but they are not acting the way people do who truly belong to God. When they gather together, they help the devil {instead of serving God}. Pay attention! I will make those people … They will come

It might seem that this sentence contains extra information that would be unnatural to express in your language. If so, you can shorten it by saying **behold** just once and by saying only **I will make** and not also **I will give**. Alternate translation: [Behold, those of the synagogue of Satan, the ones saying themselves to be Jews, but they are not, rather, they are lying, I will make them so that they will come]

Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

ULT **those of the synagogue of Satan**

UST When they gather together, they help the devil instead of serving God

See how you translated the expression **synagogue of Satan** in 2:9. Alternate translation: [those whose gatherings really serve Satan's purposes rather than God's]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **but they are not, rather, they are lying**

UST but they are not acting the way people do who truly belong to God

See how you translated the similar expression in 2:9. Alternate translation: [but who are not acting in the way that Jews should]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **bow down before your feet**

UST honor you greatly

The enemies of the believers in Philadelphia would **come and bow down** at **their feet** as a symbolic action to show that they honored and respected these believers. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could explain the significance of this action. Alternate translation: [to bow down before your feet as a gesture of honor and respect]

Support Reference: Symbolic Action

ULT **before your feet**
UST honor you greatly

Jesus is using one part of the believers in Philadelphia, their **feet**, to mean their entire beings. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [before you] or [in front of you]
Support Reference: Synecdoche

ULT **I have loved you**
UST you belong to me … I love you

For emphasis, Jesus is stating the pronoun **I**, whose meaning is already present in the verb **have loved**. If your language can state implied pronouns explicitly for emphasis, you may want to use that construction here in your translation. Other languages may have other ways of expressing this emphasis. Alternate translation: [I have certainly loved you]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
synagogue	they gather together
Satan	devil
Jews	Jews
bow down	honor … greatly
know	Some people are denying … recognize … when they recognize this
loved	love

Revelation 3:10

ULT	UST
Because you have kept my word of endurance, I will also keep you from the hour of testing being about to come upon the whole world to test the ones living on the earth.	*You obeyed me when I commanded you to endure suffering patiently. And so I will keep you safe during the time of trouble that all of humanity will soon experience. How people everywhere respond to this trouble will show what they are really like.*

ULT **you have kept my word of endurance**
UST You obeyed me when I commanded you to endure suffering patiently

Jesus is using the term **word** to a command he has given by using words. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [you have kept my command of endurance]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **you have kept my word of endurance**
UST You obeyed me when I commanded you to endure suffering patiently

Jesus is using this possessive form to describe a **word** or statement that commands **endurance**, not a statement characterized by endurance (that is, one that endures). Alternate translation: [you have obeyed my command to endure]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **my word of endurance**
UST me when I commanded you to endure suffering patiently

If your language would not use an abstract noun for the idea of **steadfastness**, you could express it with the verb "to endure." See how you translated this word in 1:9 and in 2:2. Alternate translation: [my admonition to suffer patiently]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **you have kept … I will also keep you**
UST You obeyed … I will keep you safe

See the discussion in the General Introduction to Revelation of the various ways in which the word **keep** is used in this book. Alternate translation: [you have obeyed … I also will protect you]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **the hour of testing**
UST the time of trouble

Jesus is using the term **hour** to refer to a specific time. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [the time of testing]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **the ones living on the earth**
UST people everywhere

See the discussion in the General Introduction to Revelation of how to translate this phrase.
Alternate translation: [worldly people]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
word	when I commanded you
endurance	endure
hour	time
testing	of trouble
world	of humanity
test	How … respond to this trouble will show what they are really like
earth	people everywhere

Revelation 3:11

ULT	UST
I am coming quickly. Hold what you have so that no one may take your crown.	*I am coming soon. So continue to believe in me. Do not let anyone cause you to lose the reward that God wants to give you.*

ULT **I am coming quickly**
UST I am coming soon

The implication is that Jesus is **coming quickly** to judge people for whether or not they have remained faithful to him. You can indicate this in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [I am coming quickly to judge]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **Hold what you have**
UST So continue to believe in me

Alternate translation: [Continue doing the things that are to your credit]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **so that no one may take your crown**
UST Do not let anyone cause you to lose the reward that God wants to give you

If it would be clearer in your language, you could use a positive expression to translate this double negative that consists of the negative particle **not** and the verb that is negative in this context, **take**. Alternate translation: [so that you will indeed have your crown]
Support Reference: Double Negatives

ULT **crown**
UST the reward

See how you translated **crown** in 2:10. Alternate translation: [your reward]
Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
crown	the reward

Revelation 3:12

ULT	UST
The one conquering, I will make him a pillar in the temple of my God, and he will certainly not go outside anymore, and I will write on him the name of my God and the name of the city of my God, the new Jerusalem, the one coming down out of heaven from my God, and my new name.	*I will make the one who is victorious secure, like a pillar in the temple of my God. He will remain in God's temple forever. I will write my God's name on him. I will also write on him the name of the city of my God. That city is the New Jerusalem. It will come down out of heaven from my God. I will also write my new name on the one who is victorious.*

ULT **I will make him a pillar in the temple of my God**
UST I will make … secure, like a pillar in the temple of my God

Jesus is speaking as if he would literally make a faithful and victorious believer a **pillar** in God's temple. This likely symbolizes that the believer will always be in God's temple, just as a pillar is a permanent fixture. (Indeed, Jesus says specifically that this believer will not leave the temple anymore.) If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [I will have him remain always in the temple of my God]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **Jerusalem**
UST Jerusalem

The word **Jerusalem** is the name of a city.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
pillar	pillar
temple	temple
God	God
God	God's
God	God
Jerusalem	Jerusalem
heaven	heaven
God	God

Revelation 3:14

ULT	UST
And to the angel of the church in Laodicea write: 'The Amen, the faithful and true witness, the beginning of the creation of God, says these things:	*Write this message to the angel of the group of believers in the city of Laodicea: 'I am the one who confirms all of God's promises. I am the one who testifies about God with complete reliability. I am the ruler over all of God's creation. I have these things to say to you:*

ULT **The Amen**
UST I am the one who confirms all of God's promises

See how you translated the word **Amen** in 1:5, and see the discussion in the General Introduction to Revelation of how to translate this word.
Support Reference: Copy or Borrow Words

ULT **faithful and true**
UST with complete reliability

The terms **faithful** and **true** mean similar things. Jesus is using the two terms together for emphasis. If it would be clearer for your readers, you could express the emphasis with a single phrase. Alternate translation: [entirely faithful]
Support Reference: Doublet

ULT **the beginning of the creation of God**
UST I am the ruler over all of God's creation

Jesus is most likely using this possessive form to describe himself as the one who began the creation of God, that is, the one through whom God created all things. Jesus is likely using this phrase to mean the same thing as he does when he describes himself as "the alpha" or "the first." Jesus is not saying that he was the first creature God created. Jesus is not a created being, he is the eternally begotten Son of God. Alternate translation: [the one through whom God created all things]
Support Reference: Possession

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
angel	angel
church	of the group of believers
Amen	one who confirms all of God's promises
faithful	with complete reliability
witness	testifies
creation	creation
God	God's

Revelation 3:15

ULT	UST
“I know your works, that you are neither cold nor hot. I wish you were cold or hot!	*“I am aware of what you are doing. You have not abandoned your faith, but you do not love me very much. I would rather have you commit yourselves for me or even against me!*

ULT **cold nor hot … cold or hot**

UST abandoned your faith, but you do not love me very much … commit yourselves for me or even against me

Jesus is speaking as if the believers in Laodicea were literally water that was a certain temperature. He is using the word **hot** to mean diligently obedient to God and the word **cold** to mean stubbornly resistant to God, so he means that the Laodiceans are complacent and indifferent. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [disobedient nor obedient … disobedient or obedient]

Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
know	I am aware of

Revelation 3:16

ULT	UST
So, because you are lukewarm and neither hot nor cold, I am about to spew you out of my mouth.	*But you are just mediocre. You do not love me very much, but you still claim that you believe in me. That is disgusting, and because of it, I am going to reject you.*

ULT **lukewarm and neither hot nor cold**
UST just mediocre. You do not love me very much, but you still claim that you believe in me

In this verse, Jesus continues to develop the image of water temperature that he introduced in the previous verse. Alternate translation: [complacent and neither obedient nor disobedient]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **I am about to spew you out of my mouth**
UST That is disgusting … I am going to reject you

In the context of this image, when Jesus that says he will **spew** or spit the Laodiceans out of his mouth, he means that he will reject them. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could make this point explicitly. Alternate translation: [I am about to reject you as I would spit out lukewarm water]
Support Reference: Metaphor

Revelation 3:17

ULT	UST
For you say, ‘I am rich and have become wealthy and have no need,’ and you do not know that you are the miserable and pitiable and poor and blind and naked one.	*You keep bragging about how very rich you are. You do not realize that you are actually unhappy. You need someone to pity you. You are actually poor, blind, and lacking clothes.*

ULT **For you say, ‘I am rich and have become wealthy and have no need**
UST You keep bragging … how very rich you are

If it would be clearer in your language, you could translate this so that there is not a quotation within a quotation. Alternate translation: [For you say that you are rich and have become wealthy and have no need]
Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **the miserable and pitiable and poor and blind and naked one**
UST unhappy. You need someone to pity you … poor, blind, and lacking clothes

Jesus is using the adjectives **miserable**, **pitiable**, **poor**, **blind** and **naked** as nouns to describe a certain kind of person. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. Other languages may have other ways of showing this meaning, such as the ULT does by adding the word **one**. Alternate translation: [a person who is miserable, pitiable, poor, blind, and naked]
Support Reference: Nominal Adjectives

ULT **the miserable and pitiable and poor and blind and naked one**
UST unhappy. You need someone to pity you … poor, blind, and lacking clothes

Jesus is speaking as if the Laodiceans were literally **miserable**, **pitiable**, **poor**, **blind** and **naked**. He means that this is what they are like spiritually. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [spiritually very needy and unhealthy]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **the miserable and pitiable and poor and blind and naked one**
UST unhappy. You need someone to pity you … poor, blind, and lacking clothes

The words **miserable**, **pitiable**, and **poor** mean similar things. Jesus is using these terms together for emphasis. If it would be clearer for your readers, you could express the emphasis with a single phrase. Alternate translation: [extremely poor as well as blind and naked]
Support Reference: Doublet

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
you do … know	You do … realize

Revelation 3:18

ULT	UST
I advise you to buy from me gold refined by fire so that you might become rich and white garments so that you might clothe yourself and the shame of your nakedness might not be shown and salve to anoint your eyes so that you might see.	*I advise you to get everything from me that you need, as if you were buying pure gold from me that would make you truly rich. Let me make you righteous, as if you were buying white garments from me so that you could be wearing clothes instead of being shamefully naked. Let me help you to understand the truth, as if you were buying eye salve from me to put on your sick eyes so that you could see.*

ULT **to buy from me gold refined by fire so that you might become rich**
UST to get everything from me that you need, as if … were buying pure gold from me that would make you truly rich … as if you were buying … from me … as if you were buying … from me

Jesus is speaking as if he wants the believers in Laodicea literally to buy **gold** from him. He is using gold to symbolize spiritual riches, meaning things such as a profound knowledge of God and a life transformed into the image of Christ. When Jesus says that this gold is **refined by fire**, he means that it is pure gold, that is, genuine wealth; by contrast, the riches that the Laodiceans have are not true riches. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [to seek genuine spiritual riches from me so that you will be truly wealthy]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **gold refined by fire**
UST everything … that you need … pure gold

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [gold that fire has refined]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **white garments so that you might clothe yourself and the shame of your nakedness might not be shown**
UST white garments … so that you could be wearing clothes instead of being shamefully naked

Jesus is speaking as if he wants the believers in Laodicea literally to buy **white garments** from him. As in 3:4, white clothing symbolizes purity of life and devotion to Jesus. Accordingly, **nakedness** symbolizes a sinful life and indifference towards Jesus. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [to seek my help in being devoted to me so that you will live a pure life and not be shamefully disobedient]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **might not be shown**
UST instead of being shamefully

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [might not appear]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

> ULT **salve to anoint your eyes so that you might see**
> UST eye salve … to put on your sick eyes so that you could see

Jesus is speaking as if he wants the believers in Laodicea literally to buy **salve** from him to **anoint** their **eyes**. He said in the previous verse that they were "blind," and this likely symbolized their lack of spiritual discernment. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [to seek my help in becoming spiritually discerning]

Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
advise	advise
gold	gold
shame	shamefully
anoint	to put

Revelation 3:19

ULT	UST
I, as many as I love, rebuke and discipline. Therefore be zealous and repent.	*I carefully discipline everyone I love. So sincerely change your behavior.*

ULT **I, as many as I love, rebuke and discipline**
UST I carefully discipline everyone I love

For emphasis, Jesus is stating the pronoun **I**, whose meaning is already present in the verbs **rebuke** and **discipline**. If your language can state implied pronouns explicitly for emphasis, you may want to use that construction here in your translation. Other languages may have other ways of expressing this emphasis. Alternate translation: [I certainly rebuke and discipline as many as I love]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **rebuke and discipline**
UST carefully discipline

The terms **rebuke** and **discipline** mean similar things. Jesus is using the two terms together for emphasis. If it would be clearer for your readers, you could express the emphasis with a single phrase. Alternate translation: [diligently correct]

Support Reference: Doublet

ULT **be zealous and repent**
UST sincerely change your behavior

This phrase expresses a single idea by using two words connected with **and**. The verb **be zealous** tells how Jesus wants the Laodiceans to **repent**. If it would be more natural in your language, you could express this meaning with an equivalent phrase that does not use “and.” Alternate translation: [repent zealously]

Support Reference: Hendiadys

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
love	love
rebuke	carefully discipline
zealous	sincerely
repent	change your behavior

Revelation 3:20

ULT	UST
Behold, I stand at the door and knock. If anyone should hear my voice and open the door, I will indeed enter to him and I will eat with him, and he with me.	*Pay attention! I am urging each one of you to love me genuinely, as if I were standing at the door of your house and knocking to get you to open it. If anyone responds to me by loving me, I will become his dear friend. It will be as if he heard me calling from his door and he opened it and I came into his house and we ate a meal together.*

ULT **I stand at the door and knock. If anyone should hear my voice and open the door, I will indeed enter to him and … will eat with him, and he with me**

UST I am urging each one of you to love me genuinely, as if I were standing at the door of your house and knocking to get you to open it. If anyone responds to me by loving me, I will become his dear friend. It will be as if he heard me calling from his door and he opened it and I came into his house and we ate a meal together

Jesus is speaking as if he were literally standing outside a **door** and seeking entrance to a house. He means that he is seeking to have personal fellowship with each of the Laodiceans to whom he is writing. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [I am seeking personal fellowship with each one of you. If anyone recognizes this and wants to have fellowship with me as well, I will certainly enter into a relationship with him of the most intimate kind]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **knock**

UST knocking to get you to open it

To **knock** at a **door** means to hit it a few times to let a person inside the house know you are standing outside. You could translate this expression with the way people in your culture show that they have arrived at a house, such as “call out” or “cough” or “clap.”

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **my voice**

UST to me by loving me … me calling from his door

The word **voice** could mean: (1) by implication, that in addition to knocking on the door, Jesus is also calling out to the person inside the house. Alternate translation: [me calling as I knock]; or (2) the sound of the knocking. Alternate translation: [the sound of me knocking]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **will eat with him, and he with me**

UST we ate a meal together

Jesus is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [I will eat with him and he will eat with me]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **will eat with him, and he with me**

UST we ate a meal together

Since people share table fellowship with others in their homes only if they have a close relationship, Jesus is using eating together to symbolize that he will become a good friend of the person who welcomes him. You can indicate this in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [I will eat with him and he will eat with me, as good friends do]

Support Reference: Metaphor

Revelation 3:21

ULT	UST
The one conquering, I will grant to him to sit with me on my throne, as I also have conquered and have sat with my Father on his throne.	*I have been victorious and now rule with my Father. In the same way, I will permit everyone who is victorious to rule with me.*

ULT **to sit with me on my throne**
UST with … to rule … me

Jesus is speaking as if a victorious believer would literally **sit with** him on his **throne**. He means that the believer will share his ruling authority. He means the same thing when he says that he has **sat** with his **Father** on his **throne**. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [I will share my ruling authority with him, as I also … have come to share my Father's ruling authority]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **Father**
UST Father

Father is an important title that describes the relationship between God and Jesus. Be sure to retain this title in your translation.

Support Reference: Translating Son and Father

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
throne	to rule
Father	Father
throne	now rule

Revelation 3:22

ULT	UST
Let the one having an ear hear what the Spirit is saying to the churches.”’”	*Everyone who is spiritually discerning should pay attention to what the Holy Spirit is saying to the groups of believers.”’”*

ULT **Let the one having an ear hear**
UST Everyone who is spiritually discerning should pay attention to

See how you translated this phrase in 2:7.

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **Let the one having an ear hear**
UST Everyone who is spiritually discerning should pay attention to

See how you translated this phrase in 2:7.

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

ULT **the Spirit**
UST the Holy Spirit

Here, **the Spirit** most likely refers to God’s Spirit, or simply the Holy Spirit of God’s triune nature, in contrast to the spirit of the writer or author which one finds in 1:10. In other words, the Holy Spirit addresses the messages and contents of each letter written to each of the seven churches which are addressed in chapters two and three (See: Revelation 2:7, 11, 17, and 29: 3:6, 13, 22). See the introductions for chapter 2 and for chapter 3 to read this same explanatory note.

Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Spirit	Holy Spirit
churches	to the groups of believers

Revelation 4

Revelation 4 Introduction

Revelation 4 Chapter Introduction

Structure and Formatting

At this point in the book of Revelation, John has finished describing the letters to the churches. In this chapter he begins to describe a vision of heaven that God showed him.

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with verses 8 and 11.

Religious and Cultural Concepts in This Chapter

Jasper, carnelian, and emerald

These words refer to special stones that the people in John's culture valued for their beauty. If the people in your culture do not consider stones to be valuable, in your translation you can emphasize that it was the beauty of the stones that made such an impression on John.

Twenty-four elders

John does not explain who or what he means by "elders" when he describes seeing them in the vision he relates in this chapter. These 24 elders may be symbolic of the whole people of God through the ages. There were 12 tribes of Israel in the Old Testament Israel and 12 apostles of Jesus in the New Testament church. In chapter 21, John describes seeing the names of the 12 tribes of Israel on the gates of the New Jerusalem and the names of the 12 apostles on the foundations of that city. However, it is not necessary to offer an explanation in your translation of who these elders might be. If your language has a word for a distinguished older person who is a leader in the society, it would be appropriate to use it without any further explanation.

Giving glory to God

God's glory is the great beauty and radiant majesty that God has because he is God. Other Bible writers describe it as if it were a light so bright that no one can look at it. No one can give God this kind of glory, because it is already his. When people give glory to God or when God receives glory, people say that God has the glory that is his, that it is right for God to have that glory, and that people should worship God because he has that glory. In your translation, be sure that it is clear that when people "give glory" to God, they are not giving God something that he does not already have. Instead, people are acknowledging that God is already glorious. (See: glory, glorious, glorify; and prostrate, bow down, worship)

Translation Issues in This Chapter

Difficult images

Such things as bolts of lightning coming from the throne, lamps that are spirits, and a sea in front of the throne may be difficult to imagine. However, John is describing what he actually saw and heard in his visions, so you can translate his descriptions directly. See the discussion of this in the General Introduction to Revelation. (See: Symbolic Prophecy)

Revelation 4:1

ULT	UST
After these things I looked and behold, a door opened in heaven and the first voice like a trumpet that I had heard speaking with me saying, "Come up here and I will show you what must happen after these things."	*After these things, I, John, saw something remarkable: a door open in heaven! The one who had spoken to me previously, whose voice had been like a loud trumpet, spoke to me again. He said, "Come up here! I will show you events that must happen later."*

ULT **a door opened in heaven and the first voice**
UST a door open in heaven! The one who had spoken to me previously

John is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [I saw a door opened in heaven and I heard the first voice]
Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **a door opened in heaven**
UST a door open in heaven

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [an open door in heaven]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **a door opened in heaven**
UST a door open in heaven

John is speaking as if there were literally a **door** leading into heaven through which he could see. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [I could see through an opening into heaven]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **like a trumpet**
UST whose voice had been like a loud trumpet

The point of this comparison is not that the sound of the **voice** was like the sound of a **trumpet** but that the voice was **loud** like a trumpet. If it would be helpful in your language, you could make this point explicitly. Alternate translation: [that had been loud like the sound of a trumpet]
Support Reference: Simile

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
heaven	heaven
trumpet	trumpet

Revelation 4:2

ULT	UST
Immediately I was in the Spirit and behold, a throne was appearing in heaven, and on the throne one sitting.	*At once the Holy Spirit inspired me so that I could see and hear things in a vision. I saw something remarkable: A throne was there in heaven and someone was sitting on that throne.*

ULT I was in the Spirit

UST the Holy Spirit inspired me so that I could see and hear things in a vision

See how you translated this expression in 1:10. Alternate translation: [the Holy Spirit influenced me]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT on the throne one sitting

UST someone was sitting on that throne

John is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [on the throne there was one sitting] or [someone was sitting on the throne]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Spirit	Holy Spirit
throne	throne
heaven	heaven
throne	throne

Revelation 4:3

ULT	UST
And the one sitting was like in appearance to a jasper stone and to a carnelian, and a rainbow was around the throne, like in appearance to an emerald.	*The ruler who sat on the throne shone like a bright red jasper gem and like an orange carnelian gem. Around the throne a rainbow was shining like a brilliant green emerald gem.*

> ULT **was like in appearance to a jasper stone and to a carnelian … like in appearance to an emerald**
>
> UST shone like a bright red jasper gem and like an orange carnelian gem … was shining like a brilliant green emerald gem

The point of these comparisons is that the **one sitting** on the throne and the **rainbow** were dazzling in their **appearance**, like the gemstones John describes. If it would be helpful in your language, you could make this point explicitly. Alternate translation: [was dazzling in appearance, like a jasper stone and a carnelian … dazzling in appearance like an emerald]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

> ULT **to a jasper stone and to a carnelian … to an emerald**
>
> UST a bright red jasper gem and … an orange carnelian gem … a brilliant green emerald gem

The terms **jasper**, **carnelian**, and **emerald** describe gemstones. Jasper is often red, carnelian is often orange, and emerald is usually brilliant green. If your readers would not be familiar with these precious stones, in your translation you could use the name of comparable gems that they would recognize, or you could use general expressions. Alternate translation: [to a red or orange gemstone … to a brilliant green gemstone]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
throne	throne

Revelation 4:4

ULT	UST
And around the throne were 24 thrones, and sitting on the thrones were 24 elders dressed in white garments, and on their heads were golden crowns.	*Around the throne there were 24 other thrones. On those thrones 24 elders were sitting. They were wearing pure white garments and they had golden crowns on their heads.*

ULT **dressed in white garments**
UST They were wearing pure white garments

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [wearing white garments]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
throne	throne
thrones	thrones
thrones	thrones
elders	elders
golden	golden
crowns	crowns

Revelation 4:5

ULT	UST
And from the throne come out lightnings and sounds and thunders, and seven lamps of fire burn before the throne, which are the seven spirits of God.	*Flashes of lightning and peals of thunder came out from the throne. In front of the throne, seven torches were burning. These torches represented the seven spirits of God.*

ULT **sounds and thunders**
UST peals of thunder

The word translated **sounds** could mean: (1) noises, in which case **sounds and thunders** might be a phrase that expresses a single idea by using two words connected with **and**. The word **thunders** would tell what kind of noises these are. Alternate translation: [rumblings of thunder]; or (2) voices. Alternate translation: [voices and thunders]

ULT **lamps of fire**
UST torches

This possessive form does not mean that the **lamps** were made **of fire** but that they burned with fire. Alternate translation: [flaming lamps]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **the seven spirits**
UST the seven spirits

See how you translated this expression in 1:4.
Support Reference: Symbolic Language

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
throne	throne
lamps	torches
throne	throne
spirits	spirits
God	God

Revelation 4:6

ULT	UST
And before the throne was as a glass sea, like crystal, and in the midst of the throne and around the throne were four living creatures, being full of eyes before and behind.	*In front of the throne there was also something that looked like a sea made of glass. It was clear like crystal. A living creature stood on each of the four sides of the throne. Eyes covered each creature, all around its body.*

ULT **was as a glass sea, like crystal**
UST there was … something that looked like a sea made of glass. It was clear like crystal

The point of these comparisons could be that the **sea** was: (1) clear or (2) sparkling, like **glass** and **crystal**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could make this point explicitly. Alternate translation: [was a sea that was as clear as glass or crystal] or [was a sea that was sparkling like glass or crystal]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **before and behind**
UST all around its body

John is using two sides of the body, the front and the back (what is **before** and **behind** a being), to mean the whole body. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [over their whole bodies]
Support Reference: Merism

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
throne	throne
throne	throne
throne	throne
creatures	creature

Revelation 4:8

ULT	UST
And the four living creatures, each one of them having six wings apiece, being full of eyes around and underneath, indeed do not have rest night and day, saying, "Holy, holy, holy, Lord God, the Ruler of All, the one having been and the one being and the one coming."	*Each of the four living creatures had six wings. Eyes completely covered these living creatures. All the time, without stopping, they say: "Holy, holy, holy is the Lord God who rules over everything and everyone. He is the one who has always existed, who exists now, and who will come and judge everyone in the future."*

ULT **around and underneath**
UST completely

John is using two sides of the body, the top and the bottom (what is **around** and **underneath** a being), to mean the whole body. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [over their whole bodies]
Support Reference: Merism

ULT **do not have … night and day, saying**
UST All the time, without stopping, they say

If it would be clearer in your language, you could use a positive expression to translate this double negative that consists of the negative particle **not** and the verb **rest**, which in this context means to "stop." Alternate translation: [saying continuously night and day]
Support Reference: Double Negatives

ULT **night and day**
UST All the time

The living creatures are using the two main components of time, **night** and **day**, to mean all the time. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [at any time]
Support Reference: Merism

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
creatures	creatures
day	All the time
Holy	Holy
holy	holy
holy	holy
Lord	Lord
God	God
Ruler of All	rules over everything and everyone

Revelation 4:9

ULT	UST
And whenever the living creatures will give glory and honor and thanks to the one sitting on the throne, the one living to the ages of the ages,	

ULT **will give glory and honor and thanks to the one sitting**
UST repeatedly praise, honor, and thank God, who sits … to God, who lives

If your language does not use abstract nouns for the ideas of **glory**, **honor**, and **thanks**, you could express the same ideas in another way. Alternate translation: [glorify and honor and thank the one sitting]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **to the ages of the ages**
UST forever … forever

See how you translated the same expression in 1:18.
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **the living creatures**
UST The living beings

See how you translated **living creatures** in 4:6.
Support Reference: Symbolic Language

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
creatures	living beings
glory	repeatedly praise
honor	honor
throne	throne
ages	forever … forever
ages	forever … forever

Revelation 4:10

ULT	UST
the 24 elders will fall before the one sitting on the throne and worship the one living to the ages of the ages, and they will lay their crowns before the throne, saying,	

ULT **will fall**
UST also kneel

Be sure that it is clear in your translation that the elders do not fall down accidentally. They bow down in front of the throne as a gesture to honor God. Alternate translation: [will bow down respectfully]
Support Reference: Symbolic Action

ULT **they will lay their crowns before the throne**
UST They place their crowns in front of his throne

The elders respectfully place their **crowns** on the ground to show that they are submitting to God's authority over them. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could explain the significance of this action. Alternate translation: [they will lay their crowns on the ground in front of God's throne to show that they are submitting to him]
Support Reference: Symbolic Action

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
elders	elders
will fall	kneel
throne	throne
worship	bow down
ages	αἰῶνας
ages	τῶν αἰώνων
crowns	crowns
throne	throne

Revelation 4:11

ULT	UST
"Worthy are you, our Lord and God, to receive glory and honor and power, because you have created all things, and by your will they existed and were created."	*"God our Lord, you deserve to have all creatures glorify you and honor you and acknowledge how powerful you are. You deserve this because you created everything. Yes, everything exists just as you determined to create it."*

ULT **Worthy are you, our Lord and God, to receive glory and honor and power**
UST God our Lord, you deserve to have all creatures glorify you and honor you and acknowledge how powerful you are. You deserve this

If your language does not use abstract nouns for the idea of **glory**, **honor**, and **power**, you could express the same ideas in another way. The UST models one way to do this.
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **you have created**
UST you created

For emphasis, the elders are stating the pronoun **you**, whose meaning is already present in the verb **have created**. If your language can state implied pronouns explicitly for emphasis, you may want to use that construction here in your translation. Other languages may have other ways of expressing this emphasis. Alternate translation: [it was you who created]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **they existed and were created**
UST everything exists

The expressions **existed** and **were created** mean similar things. The elders are using the two expressions together for emphasis. If it would be clearer for your readers, you could express the emphasis with a single phrase. Alternate translation: [they came into being]
Support Reference: Doublet

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Lord	Lord
God	God
receive	you deserve to have all creatures … You deserve this
glory	glorify
honor	honor
created	created
created	everything exists
your will	you determined to create it

Revelation 5

Revelation 5 Introduction

Revelation 5 Chapter Introduction

Structure and Formatting

In this chapter, John continues to describe a vision of heaven that God showed him.

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this in verses 9–13.

Religious and Cultural Concepts in This Chapter

Sealed scroll

Kings and important people in John's time wrote important documents on large pieces of paper or animal skin. They then rolled them up and sealed them with wax so they would stay closed. Only the person to whom the document was written had the authority to open it by breaking the seal. In this chapter, "the one who was seated on the throne" had written the scroll. Only the person called "the Lion of the tribe of Judah," "the Root of David" and "the Lamb" had the authority to open it. (See: scroll; and authority)

Twenty-four elders

The 24 elders whom John introduced in chapter 4 appear in this chapter as well. In your translation, you can use the same term for them here as you did there.

Revelation 5:1

ULT	UST
And I saw in the right hand of the one sitting on the throne a scroll, written on the inside and on the back, having been sealed with seven seals.	*Then I saw that the person who was sitting on the throne was holding a scroll in his right hand. He had written words on both sides of the scroll. But he had then sealed the scroll shut with seven pieces of wax, so no one could read what he had written.*

ULT **written on the inside and on the back**

UST He had written words on both sides of the scroll

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [with writing on the front and the back]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **having been sealed with seven seals**

UST But he had then sealed the scroll shut with seven pieces of wax, so no one could read what he had written

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who did the action, the context suggests that it was God. It may be helpful to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: [God had sealed the scroll with seven seals]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
throne	throne
scroll	scroll

Revelation 5:2

ULT	UST
And I saw a mighty angel proclaiming in a loud voice, “Who is worthy to open the scroll and to break its seals?”	*I saw a powerful angel who was asking in a loud voice: “Who is the person who qualifies to break open the pieces of wax on the scroll and then unroll the scroll and read what it says?”*

ULT **I saw**
UST I saw

It may be more natural in your language to say “heard” rather than **saw** in this context. Alternate translation: [I heard]

ULT **to open the scroll and to break its seals**
UST to break open the pieces of wax on the scroll and then unroll the scroll and read what it says

Since someone would need to break the **seals** in order to **open the scroll**, in your translation you may wish to relate these events in the order in which they would have to happen. Alternate translation: [to break the seals and open the scroll]
Support Reference: Order of Events

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
mighty	powerful
angel	angel
proclaiming	who was asking
scroll	scroll
seals	the pieces of wax

Revelation 5:3

ULT	UST
And no one in heaven or on the earth or under the earth was able to open the scroll or to read it.	*Yet no heavenly being, no person on the earth, and no one in the abode of the dead was sufficiently worthy to open the scroll and read it.*

ULT **in heaven or on the earth or under the earth**
UST heavenly … no person on the earth, and no one in the abode of the dead

John is using the main components of creation—**heaven**, **earth**, and the underworld—to mean all of creation. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [anywhere in creation]
Support Reference: Merism

ULT **or to read it**
UST and read it

The word **or** introduces the purpose for which someone would **open the scroll**. Use a natural way in your language for introducing a purpose clause. Alternate translation: [in order to read it]
Support Reference: Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
heaven	heavenly
earth	earth
earth	in the abode of the dead
scroll	scroll

Revelation 5:4

ULT	UST
And I was weeping much because no one was found worthy to open the scroll or to read it.	*When I saw that no one anywhere was sufficiently worthy to open the scroll and read it, I wept bitterly. I wept because I knew that what God had written was important, but I thought that no one would ever find out what he had written.*

ULT **I was weeping much because no one was found worthy to open the scroll or to read it**
UST When I saw that no one anywhere was sufficiently worthy to open the scroll and read it, I wept bitterly. I wept because I knew that what God had written was important, but I thought that no one would ever find out what he had written

If it would be more natural in your language, you could reverse the order of these phrases, since the second phrase gives the reason for the result that the first phrase describes. Alternate translation: [because no one was found worthy to open the scroll or to read it, I was weeping much]

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **no one was found**
UST no one anywhere was

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [the angel did not find anyone]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **no one was found**
UST no one anywhere was

Here the expression **no one was found** could simply mean “there was no one.” You could say that as an alternate translation.

Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
I was weeping	I wept … I wept because I knew that what God had written was important, but I thought that no one would ever find out what he had written
scroll	scroll

Revelation 5:5

ULT	UST
And one of the elders said to me, "Do not weep. Behold, the Lion from the tribe of Judah, the Root of David, has conquered to open the scroll and its seven seals."	*But one of the elders said to me, "You do not need to weep! Here is the person we are looking for! He is the person whom the prophets described as the Lion from the tribe of Judah and as a branch that would grow from David's roots. He is victorious! Therefore, he is sufficiently worthy to break open the seven pieces of wax on the scroll and open the scroll!"*

ULT **the Lion from the tribe of Judah**

UST He is the {person whom the prophets described as the} Lion from the tribe of Judah

This elder is alluding to the prophecy in Genesis 49:8–10 in which Jacob says that a ruler for Israel will come from the **tribe of Judah** and in which Jacob compares that ruler to a strong **Lion**. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [the promised ruler from the tribe of Judah]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **the Root of David**

UST and as a branch that would grow from David's roots

This elder is also alluding to the prophecy in Isaiah 11:1 that speaks of the Messiah as if he were a "shoot" from the "stump of Jesse" (the father of King David), a "branch from his roots." In that prophecy Isaiah then refers to this "shoot" as the "root of Jesse" itself. The elder is speaking similarly here. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [the Descendant of David] or [the Messiah descended from David]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **has conquered to open**

UST He is victorious! Therefore, he is {sufficiently} worthy to break open … open

The words **has conquered** introduce the reason for the result that the words **to open** describe. Use a natural way in your language for introducing a result clause. Alternate translation: [has conquered so as to be worthy to open]

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
elders	elders
Do … weep	to weep
Lion	Lion
tribe	tribe
Judah	Judah
David	David's
scroll	scroll
seals	the … pieces of wax

Revelation 5:6

ULT	UST
And I saw, in the midst of the throne and of the four living creatures and in the midst of the elders, a Lamb standing, as having been slaughtered, having seven horns and seven eyes, which are the seven spirits of God sent into all the earth.	*Then I saw that a lamb was standing by the throne. The four living beings and the elders surrounded him. He was alive, but he had marks that showed that others had once killed him violently. He had seven horns. He also had seven eyes. Those are the seven spirits of God that God sends throughout all the world.*

ULT **as having been**

UST He was alive, but he had marks that showed that others had once killed him violently

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. The meaning is that the Lamb, although he was alive, had marks or cuts that indicated that at one point others had killed him with violence. Alternate translation: [who had marks that showed that others had once killed him violently]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **of God sent**

UST of God that God sends

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [whom God has sent]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
throne	throne
creatures	The … living beings
elders	elders
Lamb	lamb
horns	horns
spirits	spirits
God	God
earth	world

Revelation 5:7

ULT	UST
And he came and took the scroll from the right hand of the one sitting on the throne.	*The Lamb came up to the throne, and the person who was sitting on the throne handed the scroll to him.*

ULT he came

UST The Lamb came up to the throne

The pronoun **he** refers to the Lamb, not to the elder who was speaking with John. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [the Lamb came]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
throne	throne

Revelation 5:8

ULT	UST
And when he took the scroll, the four living creatures and the 24 elders fell before the Lamb, each one having a harp and golden bowls being full of incense, which are the prayers of the saints.	*As soon as the Lamb accepted the scroll, the four living beings and the 24 elders knelt down in front of the Lamb. The elders each held a harp and some golden bowls that contained incense. The incense symbolized the prayers of people who belong to God.*

ULT **fell before**
UST knelt down in front of

Be sure that it is clear in your translation that the living creatures and elders did not fall down accidentally. They bowed down in front of the Lamb as a gesture to honor him. Alternate translation: [bowed down respectfully to]
Support Reference: Symbolic Action

ULT **each one having**
UST The elders each held

It may be helpful to begin a new sentence here. This could mean: (1) that each of the **elders** had a harp and golden bowls of incense. Alternate translation: [Each of the elders had]; or (2) that each of the **living creatures** and **elders** had a harp and golden bowls of incense. Alternate translation: [Each of the living creatures and elders had]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **which are the prayers of the saints**
UST The incense symbolized the prayers of people who belong to God

When John says that these **golden bowls** are the **prayers of the saints**, he likely means by association that the incense in the bowls represents the prayers, since prayers ascend to God in heaven similarly to the way that incense rises through the air and pleasantly attracts attention. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could indicate this by using a singular verb that would refer to the **incense** rather than a plural verb that would refer to the **bowls**. Alternate translation: [which is the prayers of the saints]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **of the saints**
UST of people who belong to God

As the General Introduction to Revelation discusses, John often uses the term **saints** to describe people who believe in Jesus and obey him faithfully. John uses the term by association with the way these people are set apart as holy for God. Your language may have a term or expression of its own that would convey this meaning that you could use throughout the book. You could also use plain language. Alternate translation: [of the disciples of Jesus] or [of believers in Jesus]
Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
scroll	scroll
creatures	living beings
elders	elders
fell	knelt down
Lamb	Lamb
harp	harp
golden	golden
incense	incense
prayers	prayers
saints	of people who belong to God

Revelation 5:9

ULT	UST
And they sing a new song, saying, "You are worthy to take the scroll and to open its seals, because you were slaughtered and with your blood you bought people for God from every tribe and language and people and nation.	*The living beings and the elders sang a song that no one had ever sung before. They sang to the Lamb, "You deserve to receive this scroll and to break open its pieces of wax so that you can read what it says. You deserve this because when you gave up your life, you paid with your own blood to set people free from sin so that they could worship and obey God. You did this for people all over the world.*

ULT **you were slaughtered and with your blood you bought {people} for God**
UST when you gave up your life, you paid with your own blood to set people free from sin so that they could worship and obey God. You did this

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [you allowed people to slaughter you so that with your blood you could buy people for God]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **with your blood**
UST with your own blood

This could mean: (1) the actual **blood** that Jesus offered as a sacrifice for sin. In that case, you could use the word for "blood" in your language with literal meaning and say "with your blood" as the ULT does. (2) the sacrificial death of Jesus, by association with the blood that Jesus shed when he died. Alternate translation: [through your sacrificial death]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **you bought people**
UST you paid … to set people free from sin … You did this

The living creatures and elders are speaking as if the Lamb literally **bought** people for God. They mean that through his sacrificial death, the Lamb saved them by setting them free from the guilt and power of sin. Your language may have a term that you can use in your translation that describes someone paying a price or making a sacrifice to set someone else free. Alternate translation: [you redeemed people]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **from every tribe and language and people and nation**
UST for people all over the world

The terms **tribe**, **language**, **people**, and **nation** mean similar things. John is using the four terms together to make a comprehensive statement. If it would be clearer for your readers, you could express the emphasis with a single phrase. Alternate translation: [from every different people group]
Support Reference: Doublet

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
scroll	scroll
seals	pieces of wax
God	God
tribe	for people all over the world
language	for people all over the world
nation	for people all over the world

Revelation 5:10

ULT	UST
And you made them a kingdom and priests to our God, and they will reign on the earth.”	*You have caused them to become people over whom our God rules and to become people who will lead others to worship God. They will be rulers of the people who live in the world.”*

ULT a kingdom and priests
UST people over whom … rules and to become people who will lead others to worship God

See how you translated the similar phrase in 1:6.

ULT on the earth
UST of the people who live in the world

John is using the term **earth** to mean by association the people who live on the earth. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [over the people of the earth]
Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
a kingdom	people over whom … rules
priests	to become people who will lead others to worship God
God	God
reign	They will be rulers
earth	people who live in the world

Revelation 5:11

ULT	UST
And I looked and heard the sound of many angels around the throne and the living creatures and the elders, and the number of them was myriads of myriads and thousands of thousands,	*As I was seeing these events, I heard many angels singing. These angels surrounded the throne, the living beings, and the elders. There were millions of angels, so many that no one could count how many there were.*

ULT **myriads of myriads and thousands of thousands**
UST millions … so many that no one could count how many there were

Since **myriads** are larger than **thousands** and John wants to convey what a great number of angels he saw and heard, it might be more natural to put the smaller number first and build up to the larger number. Alternate translation: [thousands of thousands and myriads of myriads]
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **myriads of myriads and thousands of thousands**
UST millions … so many that no one could count how many there were

John may be using these multiples of large numbers to indicate implicitly that the number of angels was too great to count. You could indicate that in your translation if it would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [too great to count]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **myriads of myriads**
UST millions … so many that no one could count how many there were

A myriad is a hundred hundred or ten thousand. Your language may have its own term for this number. You could also use a general expression. Alternate translation: [tens of thousands of tens of thousands] or [hundreds of millions]
Support Reference: Numbers

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
angels	angels
throne	throne
creatures	living beings
elders	elders

Revelation 5:12

ULT	UST
saying in a loud voice, "Worthy is the Lamb having been slaughtered to receive power and wealth and wisdom and strength and honor and glory and blessing."	*The angels were singing loudly, "The Lamb who gave up his life deserves for everyone to honor, glorify, and bless him and acknowledge how powerful, wealthy, wise, and strong he is!"*

ULT **having been slaughtered**
UST who gave up his life

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [who allowed others to slaughter him]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **to receive power and wealth and wisdom and strength and honor and glory and blessing**
UST for everyone to honor, glorify, and bless him and acknowledge how powerful, wealthy, wise, and strong he is

If your language does not use abstract nouns for the ideas of **power**, **wealth**, **wisdom**, **strength**, **honor**, **glory**, and **praise**, you could express the same ideas in other ways. See how you translated the similar expression in 4:11.
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Lamb	Lamb
receive	for everyone
wisdom	wise
honor	honor
glory	glorify
blessing	bless him

Revelation 5:13

ULT	UST
And I heard every creature in heaven and on earth and under the earth and on the sea and everything in them saying, "To the one sitting on the throne and to the Lamb be praise and honor and glory and power to the ages of the ages."	*Then I also heard every creature that exists in heaven, on the earth, underneath the earth, and in the sea—yes, every creature in all of those places—singing, "May everyone forever praise and honor and glorify the one sitting on the throne and the Lamb and acknowledge how powerful they are!"*

ULT **every creature in heaven and on earth and under the earth and on the sea and everything in them**

UST every creature that exists in heaven, on the earth, underneath the earth, and in the sea—yes, every creature in all of those places

The phrase **everything in them** means basically the same thing as the phrase **every creature in heaven and on earth and under the earth and on the sea**. The second phrase emphasizes the meaning of the first phrase by repeating the same idea with different words. John is describing his vision in a way reminiscent of Hebrew poetry, which was based on this kind of repetition. It would be good to show this to your readers by including both phrases in your translation rather than combining them. However, if the repetition might be confusing, you could connect the phrases with a word other than **and** in order to show that the second phrase is repeating the first one, not saying something additional. Alternate translation: [every creature in heaven and on earth and under the earth and on the sea, yes, everything in them]

Support Reference: Parallelism

ULT **in heaven and on earth and under the earth**

UST that exists in heaven, on the earth, underneath the earth

John is using the main components of creation—**heaven**, **earth**, the underworld, and the **sea**—to mean all of creation. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. See how you translated the similar expression in 5:3. Alternate translation: [everywhere in creation]

Support Reference: Merism

ULT **To the one sitting on the throne and to the Lamb {be} praise and honor and glory and power**

UST May everyone … praise and honor and glorify the one sitting on the throne and the Lamb and acknowledge how powerful they are

If your language does not use abstract nouns for the idea of **praise**, **honor**, **glory**, and **power**, you could express the same ideas in another way. See how you translated the similar expressions in 4:11 and 5:12.

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **to the ages of the ages**

UST forever

See how you translated the same expression in 1:18. Alternate translation: [forever]

Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
creature	creature
heaven	heaven
earth	earth
earth	earth
throne	throne
Lamb	Lamb
praise	praise
honor	honor
glory	glorify
power	acknowledge how powerful they are
ages	forever
ages	forever

Revelation 5:14

ULT	UST
And the four living creatures said, "Amen!" and the elders fell down and worshiped.	*When the millions of angels and every creature sang these things, the four living beings said, "So be it!" Then the elders knelt down on the ground in front of both God and the Lamb to worship them.*

ULT **the elders fell down and worshiped**
UST the elders knelt down on the ground in front of both God and the Lamb to worship them

Some ancient manuscripts read **the elders fell down and worshiped**. ULT follows that reading. Other ancient manuscripts add "the one who lives to the ages of the ages." If a translation of the Bible exists in your region, you may wish to use the reading that it has. If a translation of the Bible does not exist in your region, you may wish to use the reading of ULT.
Support Reference: Textual Variants

ULT **Amen**
UST So be it

See how you translated **Amen** in 1:6.
Support Reference: Symbolic Language

ULT **fell down**
UST knelt down on the ground in front of both God and the Lamb

Alternate translation: [bowed down respectfully]
Support Reference: Symbolic Action

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
creatures	living beings
Amen	So be it
elders	elders
fell down	knelt down on the ground in front of both God and the Lamb
worshiped	worship

Revelation 6

Revelation 6 Introduction

Revelation 6 Chapter Introduction

Structure and Formatting

This chapter describes what John saw happen when the Lamb opened each of the first six seals on the scroll that God gave him. (The Lamb does not open the seventh seal until chapter 8.)

- The first seal (6:1–2)
- The second seal (6:3–4)
- The third seal (6:5–6)
- The fourth seal (6:7–8)
- The fifth seal (6:9–11)
- The sixth seal (6:12–16)

Religious and Cultural Concepts in This Chapter

Seven seals

See the discussion in the introduction to chapter 5 of the seals that kept important documents secure in this culture.

Four horsemen

As the Lamb opens each of the first four seals, John describes seeing horsemen riding differently colored horses. The colors of the horses may symbolize how each rider will affect the earth. However, it is not necessary to suggest the meaning of these colors in your translation. (See: Symbolic Prophecy)

Translation Issues in This Chapter

Ordinal numbers

John uses the ordinal numbers “second” through “sixth” in verses 3, 5, 7, 9, and 12. If your language does not use ordinal numbers, you can use cardinal numbers or equivalent expressions in your translation. (See: Ordinal Numbers)

Similes

In verses 12–14, John makes several comparisons in order to describe the images he saw in his vision. He compares these images to everyday things. Notes to these verses suggest ways you might indicate the points of these comparisons in your translation. (See: Simile)

Revelation 6:1

ULT	UST
And I saw when the Lamb opened one of the seven seals, and I heard one of the four living creatures saying, as with a voice of thunder, "Come!"	*Then I saw the Lamb open the first of the seven pieces of wax that sealed the scroll. When he did, I heard one of the four living beings say as loudly as a clap of thunder, "Come forth!"*

ULT **as with a voice of thunder**

UST as loudly as a clap of thunder

The point of this comparison is that just as **thunder** is loud, so the **voice** of this living creature was loud. If it would be helpful in your language, you could make this point explicitly. Alternate translation: [in a voice that was as loud as thunder]

Support Reference: Simile

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
I saw	I saw
Lamb	Lamb
seals	sealed
creatures	living beings

Revelation 6:2

ULT	UST
And I looked and behold, a white horse, and the one sitting on it having a bow! And a crown was given to him, and he went out conquering and that he might conquer.	*Then I saw something remarkable: a white horse whose rider was holding a bow and arrows! God gave him a crown to wear in recognition of the victories he was going to win. The rider went out from heaven fully capable to fight and defeat God's enemies.*

ULT **a crown was given to him**

UST God gave him a crown to wear in recognition of the victories he was going to win

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [he received a crown] or [God gave him a crown]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **he went out conquering and that he might conquer**

UST The rider went out from heaven fully capable to fight and defeat God's enemies

John may mean that the rider on the white horse went out "as a conquering one," that is, with all the capacity of a conqueror. In that case, for emphasis he would be using a construction in which a subject and its verb come from the same root. You may be able to use the same construction in your language to express the meaning here. Alternatively, your language may have another way of showing the emphasis. Alternate translation: [he went out as a conqueror who was going to conquer]

Support Reference: Poetry

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
horse	horse
a bow	bow and arrows
crown	crown

Revelation 6:3

ULT	UST
And when he opened the second seal, I heard the second living creature saying, "Come!"	*Then the Lamb opened the second piece of wax that sealed the scroll. When he did, I heard the second living being say, "Come forth!"*

ULT **he opened**
UST the Lamb opened

The pronoun **he** refers to the Lamb. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers, here and in verses 5, 7, 9, and 12. Alternate translation: [the Lamb opened]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **the second seal … the second living creature**
UST the second piece of wax that sealed the scroll … the second living being

As the introduction to this chapter discusses, if your language does not use ordinal numbers, you can use cardinal numbers or equivalent expressions in these instances. Alternate translation: [seal number two … living creature number two]
Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
seal	sealed
creature	living being

Revelation 6:4

ULT	UST
And another horse, fiery red, came out! And to the one sitting on it, it was granted to him to take peace from the earth, and so that they will slaughter one another, and a great sword was given to him.	*Then another horse appeared. It was bright red. There was also a rider sitting on that horse. God gave the rider the power to cause wars on the earth. That way the world's people would kill each other. For this purpose, God gave the rider on the bright red horse a huge sword.*

ULT **to the one sitting on it, it was granted to him**
UST a rider sitting on that horse. God gave … rider the

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [God allowed the one sitting on it]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **to take peace from the earth**
UST the … power to cause wars on the earth

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **peace**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [to keep the earth from being peaceful]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **to take peace from the earth**
UST the … power to cause wars on the earth

John is using the term **earth** to mean by association the people who live on the earth. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [to keep the people living on the earth from being peaceful]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **they will slaughter**
UST the world's people would kill

The pronoun **they** refers generally to the people living on the earth. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [people will slaughter]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **a great sword was given to him**
UST God gave the rider on the bright red horse a huge sword

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [God gave him a great sword]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
horse	horse
peace	the … power to cause wars on the earth
earth	earth
slaughter	the world's people would kill
sword	sword

Revelation 6:5

ULT	UST
And when he opened the third seal, I heard the third living creature saying, "Come!" And I looked and behold, a black horse, and the one sitting on it having a balance in his hand.	*The Lamb then opened the third piece of wax that sealed the scroll. When he did, I heard the third living being say, "Come forth!" I then saw something else remarkable: a black horse whose rider was holding a pair of balance scales!*

ULT **a balance**

UST a pair of balance scales

The word **balance** describes an instrument for determining the weight of an object or comparing the weight of two objects. It consists of a central post with a crossbar from which two pans are hung. An object may be placed in one pan and known weights placed in the other pan until the crossbar remains level, meaning that both pans contain an equal weight. Or one object may be placed in one pan and a different object in the other pan; the pan that hangs lower contains the heavier object. Since John is describing what he saw, it would be appropriate to use the name or a description of the ancient tool rather than use the name of a modern device for weighing things. Alternate translation: [a balancing scale] or [a weighing instrument]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
seal	sealed
creature	living being
horse	horse

Revelation 6:6

ULT	UST
And I heard something like a voice in the midst of the four living creatures saying, "A choenix of wheat for a denarius and three choenices of barley for a denarius, but do not harm the oil and the wine."	*Then I heard a sound like a voice coming from among the four living beings. It said, "Make wheat so scarce that a person will have to work an entire day to earn enough money to buy one liter of it. Also make barley so scarce that a person will have to work an entire day to earn enough money to buy three liters of it. However, make sure that olive oil and wine remain so plentiful that their prices do not increase."*

ULT **saying**
UST It said

This **voice** is giving instructions to the rider on the black horse. You could indicate that in your translation if it would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [saying to the rider on the black horse]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **A choenix of wheat for a denarius and three choenices of barley for a denarius**
UST Make wheat so scarce that a person will have to work an entire day to earn enough money to buy one liter of it. Also make barley so scarce that a person will have to work an entire day to earn enough money to buy three liters of it

The implication is that there would be famine, so that **wheat** and **barley**, the staple crops in this culture, would become scarce and very expensive. (The balance that John describes the third rider holding in the previous verse may symbolize weighing grain for sale.) You could indicate this in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [Create famine that will cause grain to become so scarce that a choenix of wheat will cost a denarius and three choenices of barley will cost a denarius]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **A choenix of wheat … three choenices of barley**
UST Make wheat so scarce that … one liter of it … make barley so scarce that … three liters of it

A **choenix** was a measure equivalent to about one liter or one quart. The plural of choenix is **choenices**. Alternate translation: [one liter of wheat … three liters of barley] or [one quart of wheat … three quarts of barley]
Support Reference: Biblical Volume

ULT **for a denarius … for a denarius**
UST a person will have to work an entire day to earn enough money to buy … a person will have to work an entire day to earn enough money to buy

The **denarius** was a silver coin that was worth a day's wages for a laborer. You could try to express this amount in terms of current monetary values, but that might cause your Bible translation to become outdated and inaccurate, since those values can change over time. So instead you could use a general expression or give the equivalent in wages. Alternate translation, in each instance: [for one silver coin] or [for the pay for one day of work]
Support Reference: Biblical Money

> ULT **do not harm**
> UST make sure that … remain so plentiful that their prices do not increase

If it would be clearer in your language, you could use a positive expression to translate this double negative that consists of the negative particle **not** and the negative verb **harm**. Alternate translation: [be careful to preserve]

Support Reference: Double Negatives

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
creatures	the … living beings
wheat	wheat
barley	barley
oil	oil
wine	wine

Revelation 6:7

ULT	UST
And when he opened the fourth seal, I heard the voice of the fourth living creature saying, "Come!"	*The Lamb then opened the fourth piece of wax that sealed the scroll. When he did, I next heard the fourth living being say, "Come forth!"*

ULT **I heard the voice of the fourth living creature saying**
UST I next heard the fourth living being say

John is using one part of the **fourth living creature**, its **voice**, to mean all of it in the act of speaking. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [I heard the fourth living creature saying]

Support Reference: Synecdoche

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
seal	sealed
creature	the … living being

Revelation 6:8

ULT	UST
And I looked, and behold, a pale horse! And the one sitting on it was named Death, and Hades was following after him. And authority was given to them over one fourth of the earth, to kill with the sword and with famine and with death and by the wild animals of the earth.	*I then saw something else remarkable: a horse that was pale because it was diseased and that had two riders. The name of the first rider was The One Who Causes People to Die. The name of the rider sitting behind him on the horse was The Place Where Dead People Go. God gave these riders the power to kill a quarter of all the people in the world. They could kill them by causing wars or famine or epidemics or by making wild animals come into populated areas and kill people.*

ULT **Hades**
UST The Place Where Dead People Go

See how you translated the term **Hades** in 1:18.
Support Reference: Copy or Borrow Words

ULT **authority was given to them**
UST God gave these riders the power

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [God gave authority to them]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **one fourth of the earth**
UST a quarter of all the people in the world

Here, **the earth** represents the people of the earth. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression from your language or state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [one fourth of the people on the earth]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **one fourth of the earth**
UST a quarter of all the people in the world

Here, **one fourth** means one part out of four equal parts. Alternate translation: [one out of every four people on the earth]
Support Reference: Fractions

ULT **the sword**
UST wars

John is using the term **sword** to mean warfare by association with the way the people of his time used swords as weapons in warfare. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [warfare]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **death**
UST epidemics

John is likely using the general term **death** to mean one specific cause of death, disease. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [disease]

Support Reference: Synecdoche

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
horse	horse
Hades	The Place Where Dead People Go
authority	the power
earth	of all the people in the world
sword	wars
famine	famine
wild animals	making wild animals come into populated areas and kill people
earth	making wild animals come into populated areas and kill people

Revelation 6:9

ULT	UST
And when he opened the fifth seal, I saw under the altar the souls of the ones having been slaughtered because of the word of God and because of the testimony that they were having.	*The Lamb then opened the fifth piece of wax that sealed the scroll. When he did, I saw, at the base of an altar in heaven, the souls of people whom others had killed because they spoke God's message faithfully as reliable witnesses.*

ULT **the altar**
UST of an altar in heaven

John mentions an **altar** here without having described it previously while relating what he saw in this vision. He seems to mean a golden altar that was in front of God's throne, as he later describes in 8:3 and 9:13. You could indicate that in your translation if it would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [a golden altar that was in front of God's throne]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **of the ones having been slaughtered**
UST of people whom others had killed

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [the ones whom people had slaughtered]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **because of the word of God and because of the testimony that they were having**
UST because they spoke God's message faithfully as reliable witnesses

These two phrases mean similar things. John is using repetition to emphasize the idea that the phrases express. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could combine them. Alternate translation: [because they testified to the word of God]
Support Reference: Parallelism

ULT **because of the word of God**
UST because they spoke God's message

John is using the term **word** to mean the message that God communicated to believers by using words and that God wants believers to share by using words. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [because they shared the message from God]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **because of the testimony that they were having**
UST because … faithfully as reliable witnesses

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **testimony**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [because they testified about Jesus]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
seal	sealed
altar	altar
souls	souls
word of God	they spoke God’s message
testimony	witnesses

Revelation 6:10

ULT	UST
And they cried out in a loud voice, saying, "Until when, holy and true Ruler, do you not judge and avenge our blood from the ones living on the earth?"	*These souls called out to God loudly, "You, Master, always do what is right and decide what is right! So please condemn and punish the people on the earth who killed us!"*

ULT **Until when, holy and true Ruler, do you not judge and avenge our blood from the ones living on the earth**

UST You, Master, always do what is right and decide what is right! So please condemn and punish the people on the earth who killed us

The souls are using the question form for emphasis. If you would not use the question form for this purpose in your language, you could translate this as a statement or as an exclamation. Alternate translation: [Holy and true Ruler, we want you to judge and avenge our blood from the ones living on the earth without any further delay!]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **do you not judge and avenge our blood from the ones living on the earth**

UST So please condemn and punish the people on the earth who killed us

Since the souls actually want God to **judge** the **ones living on the earth** and **avenge** their **blood**, it may be more natural to present the phrases in that order. Alternate translation: [do you not judge the ones living on the earth and avenge our blood from them]

Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **avenge our blood from the ones living on the earth**

UST punish the people on the earth who killed us

The souls are using the term **blood** by association to mean their deaths. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [punish the ones living on the earth to avenge our deaths]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **the ones living on the earth**

UST the people on the earth

The souls are implicitly saying that they want God to judge and punish the **ones living on the earth** who killed them. See how you translated this expression in 3:10. Alternate translation: [the worldly people who killed us]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
cried out	These souls called out to God
holy	You … always do what is right
Ruler	Master
judge	condemn
avenge	punish
earth	earth

Revelation 6:11

ULT	UST
And a white robe was given to each of them, and it was said to them that they should wait yet a little time until should be completed both their fellow servants and their brothers who were going to be killed as they also were.	*Then God gave each of them a white flowing robe. God told them to be patient a little longer, because there were others who were also going to die rather than deny their faith in Jesus. But as soon as all of them had died, God would punish the people who had killed them and had killed the people whose souls were now in heaven.*

ULT **a white robe was given to each of them, and it was said to them**
UST God gave each of them a white flowing robe. God told them

If your language does not use these passive forms, you could express the ideas in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [God gave each of them a white robe and told them]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **should be completed both**
UST because there were others … also … rather than deny their faith in Jesus. But as soon as all of them … God would punish the people who had killed them

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [people had killed all of]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **both their fellow servants and their brothers**
UST because there were others … also … rather than deny their faith in Jesus

The terms **fellow servants** and **brothers** mean similar things. The two terms are being used together for emphasis. If it would be clearer for your readers, you could express the emphasis with a single phrase. Alternate translation: [all of those who believed in Jesus as they did]
Support Reference: Doublet

ULT **brothers**
UST because there were others … also … rather than deny their faith in Jesus

Here the term **brothers** describes people who share the same faith. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [fellow believers]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **brothers**
UST because there were others … also … rather than deny their faith in Jesus

Although the term **brothers** is masculine, here the word has a generic sense that includes both men and women. If you wish to retain the expression in your translation, you could word it in a way that is clearly inclusive of both men and women. Alternate translation: [brothers and sisters]
Support Reference: When Masculine Words Include Women

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
robe	robe
time	a
should be completed	But as soon as all of them … God would punish the people who had killed them

Revelation 6:12

ULT	UST
And I saw when he opened the sixth seal, and a great earthquake happened, and the sun became black, like sackcloth made of hair, and the full moon became like blood,	*Then I saw the Lamb open the sixth piece of wax that sealed the scroll. When he did, the earth shook violently. The sun turned very dark, like mourning cloth woven from black goat hair. The moon was full and it became as red as blood.*

ULT **a great earthquake**
UST the earth shook violently

An **earthquake** is a natural disaster in which the ground shakes, often destroying buildings, bridges, and other structures. Your language and culture may have a term for an **earthquake** that you can use in your translation. You could also use a general expression. Alternate translation: [a great shaking of the ground]
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **like sackcloth {made} of hair**
UST like mourning cloth woven from black goat hair

The word **sackcloth** describes clothing for mourning that in this culture was woven from black goat hair. In this culture, the color black was associated with death. Alternate translation: [like mourning clothing] or [like the feathers of a raven]
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **the full moon became like blood**
UST The moon was full and it became as red as blood

The point of this comparison is that just as **blood** is red, the **full moon** turned read. If it would be helpful in your language, you could make this point explicitly. Alternate translation: [the full moon became red like blood]
Support Reference: Simile

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
seal	sealed
sackcloth	mourning cloth woven from … goat hair

Revelation 6:13

ULT	UST
and the stars of the sky fell to the earth, as a fig tree drops its unseasonable fruit, being shaken by a great wind.	*Then the stars fell from the sky down to the earth. They fell just as figs left on a fig tree all fall off when the tree shakes in a very strong wind.*

ULT **the stars of the sky**
UST the stars … the sky … They

It might seem that the expression **the stars of the sky** contains extra information that would be unnatural to express in your language. If so, you can shorten it. Alternate translation: [the stars]
Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

ULT **fell**
UST fell from … fell

The point of this comparison is that just as all the **fruit** on a **fig tree** might fall at once if a **great wind** shook the tree, so John saw all of the **stars** fall at once. If it would be helpful in your language, you could make this point explicitly. Alternate translation: [all fell at once]
Support Reference: Simile

ULT **being shaken by a great wind**
UST when the tree shakes in a very strong wind

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation, with no comma preceding: [when a great wind shakes it]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **as a fig tree drops its unseasonable fruit**
UST just as figs left on a fig tree all fall off

If your readers would not be familiar with a **fig tree**, you could use the name of a fruit tree that they would recognize or you could use a general expression. Alternate translation: [as a fruit tree drops its late-ripening fruit]
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **unseasonable fruit**
UST figs left on

The term **unripe** describes **fruit** that normally remains on a tree and ripens later. Alternate translation: [later-ripening fruit]
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
sky	sky
earth	earth
fig	fig
unseasonable fruit	figs

Revelation 6:14

ULT	UST
And the sky was split like a scroll being rolled up, and all the mountains and islands were removed from their places.	*The sky split open and rolled away in both directions, just as a scroll rolls away in both directions if it splits in two. All the mountains and islands also moved out of their places.*

> ULT **the sky was split like a scroll being rolled up**
> UST The sky split open and rolled away in both directions, just as a scroll rolls away in both directions if it splits in two

If your language does not use these passive forms, you could express the ideas in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [the sky rolled up as a scroll does when it splits]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

> ULT **the sky was split like a scroll being rolled up**
> UST The sky split open and rolled away in both directions, just as a scroll rolls away in both directions if it splits in two

The point of this comparison is that the sky went away, just as a scroll would roll away to the two sides of a surface if it split while someone had it spread out on that surface. If it would be helpful in your language, you could make this point explicitly. Alternate translation: [the sky rolled away and disappeared, just as a scroll rolls up in two pieces if it splits]
Support Reference: Simile

> ULT **were removed from their places**
> UST also moved out of their places

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [moved from their places]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

> ULT **were removed from their places**
> UST also moved out of their places

The implication is that the **mountains** and **islands** disappeared when they **were removed from their places**. You could indicate this explicitly in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [moved from their places and disappeared]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
sky	sky
scroll	scroll

Revelation 6:15

ULT	UST
And the kings of the earth and the magnates and the chiliarchs and the rich and the powerful and every slave and free person hid themselves in the caves and in the rocks of the mountains,	*Then all the people on earth, even kings, high-ranking officials, military officers, rich people, and influential individuals, hid within caves and mountain rocks.*

ULT **chiliarchs**
UST military officers

The word **chiliarchs** describes officers in the Roman army who were in charge of groups of 1,000 soldiers. If your readers would not recognize this term, in your translation you could use a general expression. Alternate translation: [military officers]
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **the rich and the powerful**
UST rich people, and influential individuals

John is using the adjectives **rich** and **powerful** as nouns to mean certain kinds of people. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you can translate these words with equivalent phrases. Alternate translation: [rich people and powerful people]
Support Reference: Nominal Adjectives

ULT **and every slave and free person**
UST all the people … even

John may not be mentioning people who were **slave** and **free** in addition to all of the preceding people on this list. Instead, he may be using the two main civil statuses in his culture, **slave** and **free**, to mean all people. So this would be a summary of everyone on the list. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this in plain language. Alternate translation, preceded by a comma: [indeed, all people, regardless of their status,]
Support Reference: Merism

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
kings	kings
earth	earth
chiliarchs	military officers
slave	all the people
free	all the people

Revelation 6:16

ULT	UST
and they say to the mountains and to the rocks, "Fall on us and hide us from the face of the one sitting on the throne and from the wrath of the Lamb,	*They told the mountains and rocks, "Fall on us and cover us! That way God, who sits on the throne in heaven, will not be able to see us! And that way the Lamb will not be able to punish us!*

ULT **they say to the mountains and to the rocks, "Fall on us and hide us**

UST They told the mountains and rocks, "Fall on us and cover us

The people are addressing things that they know cannot hear them, the **mountains** and the **rocks**, in order to express in a strong way what they are feeling. If your readers might not recognize what the people are doing, you could translate this in a way that would make that clear. Alternate translation: [they were saying that they wished the mountains and rocks would fall on them and hide them]

Support Reference: Apostrophe

ULT **the face**

UST That way … will not be able to see us

The people are using the word **face** to mean by association the area in front of **the one sitting on the throne** where he can see people and things. Alternate translation: [the view]

Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
throne	throne
wrath	that way … will not be able to punish us
Lamb	Lamb

Revelation 6:17

ULT	UST
because the great day of their anger has come, and who is able to stand?”	*For today is the terrible day on which God and the Lamb will punish people who have done wrong, and we know that none of us are innocent!”*

ULT **the great day of their anger**
UST the terrible day on which God and the Lamb will punish people who have done wrong

While this was happening on a certain **day**, the people may be using the word **day** to mean a specific time, the time when God had chosen to judge the world. Alternate translation: [the momentous time when they will punish sin]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **who is able to stand**
UST none of us are innocent

The people are using the question form for emphasis. If you would not use the question form for this purpose in your language, you could translate this as a statement or as an exclamation. Alternate translation: [no one is able to stand!]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **who is able to stand**
UST none of us are innocent

Here the word **stand** means to be declared innocent when judged, as in Psalm 130:3, “If you, Yahweh, would mark iniquities, Lord, who could stand?” which means, “If you, Yahweh, kept a record of sins, no one would be declared innocent.” Alternate translation: [and everyone will be punished, because no one is innocent!]
Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
day	day
of … anger	on which … will punish

Revelation 7

Revelation 7 Introduction

Revelation 7 Chapter Introduction

Structure and Formatting

The events of this chapter take place after the Lamb opens the sixth seal but before he opens the seventh seal. John describes a vision of 144,000 servants of God whom angels mark with a seal. John then describes a second vision about a great multitude praising God.

- The 144,000 servants (7:1–8)
- The great multitude (7:9–17)

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with verses 5–8 and 15–17.

Translation Issues in This Chapter

Large numbers

Translate the large numbers in verses 5–8 in the way that would be most natural in your language. Some languages may need to supply a noun after the number to express the meaning. For example, in verse 5 you might say “144,000” or “one hundred forty-four thousand people.” In verses 6–8 you might say “12,000” or “twelve thousand people.”

The order of the tribes

Translators should be aware that the tribes of the people of Israel are not listed in this chapter in the same order as they are generally listed in the Old Testament. This seems to be intentional, and scholars have offered various interpretations for it. In your translation, it would be appropriate to list the tribes in the order in which John presents them here, rather than listing them in the usual Old Testament order.

Revelation 7:1

ULT	UST
After this, I saw four angels standing at the four corners of the earth, holding the four winds of the earth so that wind would not blow on the land or on the sea or on any tree.	*After these events I saw four angels standing on the earth. One was standing to the north of me, one to the east, one to the south, and one to the west. They were keeping the winds from those directions from blowing on the land or on the sea or against any tree.*

ULT **standing at the four corners of the earth, holding the four winds of the earth**
UST standing on the earth. One was standing to the north of me, one to the east, one to the south, and one to the west. They were keeping the winds from those directions

John is speaking as if the **earth** had **four corners**. He is referring from his own standpoint to locations to the north, south, east, and west of him. If it would be clearer for your readers, you could state the meaning plainly, using your own language's words for these primary directions. Alternate translation: [at places on the earth where they could hold back the north, south, east, and west winds]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **on the land or on the sea or on any tree**
UST on the land or on the sea or against any tree

After John says that the wind would not blow **on the land or on the sea**, he may add **or on any tree** for emphasis, perhaps alluding to his reference in 6:13 to a great wind shaking a tree. In that case the two phrases would mean similar things, as the next two notes explain. John would be using the repetition for emphasis. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could combine the two phrases. Alternate translation: [on any place on the land or in the sea]
Support Reference: Parallelism

ULT **on the land or on the sea**
UST on the land or on the sea

John seems to be using the two main components of the world, the **land** and the **sea**, to mean everywhere in the world. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [anywhere in the world]
Support Reference: Merism

ULT **or on any tree**
UST or against any tree

John may be using one place where the wind might blow, against a **tree**, to mean every place where the wind might blow. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation, preceded by a comma: [no, not anywhere at all]
Support Reference: Synecdoche

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
angels	angels
earth	earth
earth	from those directions
land	land

Revelation 7:2

ULT	UST
And I saw another angel coming up from the rising of the sun, having the seal of the living God. And he cried in a loud voice to the four angels to whom it was given to them to harm the earth and the sea,	*Then I saw another angel coming towards me from the east. This angel was holding a tool that would create the mark of the only true God. This angel called out loudly to the four angels whom God had allowed to keep the winds from blowing on the land and the sea.*

ULT **the rising of the sun**
UST the east

This expression refers to a specific direction. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly, using your own language's term for that direction. Alternate translation: [the east]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **the seal of the living God**
UST a tool that would create the mark of the only true God

In this case the word **seal** refers to a tool that a person would use to compress and mark wax in order to create a "seal" in the sense in which John uses that word in chapters 5 and 6. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [the sealing tool that belongs to the living God]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **to whom it was given to them**
UST whom God had allowed

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [whom God had allowed]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **to harm the earth and the sea**
UST to keep the winds from blowing on the land and the sea

The implication is that these angels would **harm the earth and the sea** by not allowing any winds to blow on them. This would, for example, prevent any rainstorms from forming and watering crops. You could indicate this in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [to harm the earth and the sea by holding back the winds]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
angel	angel
seal	a tool that would create the mark of
God	God
cried	This angel called out
angels	angels
earth	land

Revelation 7:3

ULT	UST
saying, "Do not harm the earth or the sea or the trees until we might seal the servants of our God on their foreheads."	*The angel told the other four angels, "Wait, first we must mark the people who believe in and obey our God with a seal on their foreheads. Until then, do not keep the winds from blowing on the land or the sea or any tree."*

ULT **Do not harm the earth or the sea or the trees**
UST do not keep the winds from blowing on the land or the sea or any tree

If it would be clearer in your language, you could use a positive expression to translate this double negative that consists of the negative particle **not** and the negative verb **harm**. Alternate translation: [allow the winds to blow on the earth and the sea and the trees]

Support Reference: Double Negatives

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
earth	land
seal	seal
servants	people who believe in and obey
God	God

Revelation 7:4

ULT	UST
And I heard the number of the ones having been sealed: 144 thousands, having been sealed from every tribe of the sons of Israel:	*Then the angel and his fellow angels marked all of the people who believed in and obeyed God. I heard someone say how many people they had marked. It was 144, 000 people from every tribe of Israel.*

ULT **of the ones having been sealed**
UST they had marked

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [the ones whom the angels sealed]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **144 thousands**
UST 144, 000 people

As the introduction to this chapter discusses, you may translate the large number here and the large numbers in verses 6–8 in the way that would be most natural in your language. Some languages may need to supply a noun after the number to express the meaning. Alternate translation: [144,000] or [one hundred forty-four thousand people]
Support Reference: Numbers

ULT **having been sealed**
UST It was

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. It may be helpful to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: [The angels had sealed them]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **of the sons of Israel**
UST of Israel

Here the word **sons** could mean: (1) the literal sons of Israel (that is, Jacob) who were the ancestors of the 12 tribes. If this is the meaning, it would be appropriate to retain the term "sons" in your translation. (2) the descendants of Israel (Jacob), who formed 12 tribes. Alternate translation: [of the descendants of Israel]
Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
sealed	they had marked
sealed	It was
tribe	tribe
Israel	Israel

Revelation 7:5

ULT	UST
from the tribe of Judah, 12 thousands having been sealed; from the tribe of Reuben, 12 thousands; from the tribe of Gad, 12 thousands;	*The angels marked 12, 000 people from the tribe of Judah with a seal. They also marked 12, 000 people from the tribe of Reuben. From the tribe of Gad they also marked 12, 000 people.*

ULT **of Judah … of Reuben … of Gad**
UST of Judah … of Reuben … of Gad

The words **Judah**, **Reuben**, and **Gad** are the names of men.
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **12 thousands**
UST 12, 000 people

Alternate translation: [12,000] or [twelve thousand people]
Support Reference: Numbers

ULT **12 thousands having been sealed**
UST The angels marked 12, 000 people … with a seal. They also marked … they also marked

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [the angels sealed 12 thousands]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
tribe	tribe
Judah	Judah
sealed	seal
tribe	tribe
Reuben	Reuben
tribe	tribe
Gad	Gad

Revelation 7:6

ULT	UST
from the tribe of Asher, 12 thousands; from the tribe of Naphtali, 12 thousands; from the tribe of Manasseh, 12 thousands;	*The angels marked 12, 000 people from the tribe of Asher with a seal. They also marked 12, 000 people from the tribe of Naphtali. From the tribe of Manasseh they also marked 12, 000 people.*

ULT **of Asher … of Naphtali … of Manasseh**
UST of Asher … of Naphtali … of Manasseh

The words **Asher**, **Naphtali**, and **Manasseh** are the names of men.
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
tribe	tribe
Asher	Asher
tribe	tribe
Naphtali	Naphtali
tribe	tribe
Manasseh	Manasseh

Revelation 7:7

ULT	UST
from the tribe of Simeon, 12 thousands; from the tribe of Levi, 12 thousands; from the tribe of Issachar, 12 thousands;	*The angels marked 12, 000 people from the tribe of Simeon with a seal. They also marked 12, 000 people from the tribe of Levi. From the tribe of Issachar they also marked 12, 000 people.*

ULT **of Simeon … of Levi … of Issachar**
UST of Simeon … of Levi … of Issachar

The words **Simeon**, **Levi**, and **Issachar** are the names of men.
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
tribe	tribe
Simeon	Simeon
tribe	tribe
Levi	Levi
tribe	tribe
Issachar	Issachar

Revelation 7:8

ULT	UST
from the tribe of Zebulun, 12 thousands; from the tribe of Joseph, 12 thousands; from the tribe of Benjamin, 12 thousands having been sealed.	*The angels marked 12, 000 people from the tribe of Zebulun with a seal. They also marked 12, 000 people from the tribe of Joseph. From the tribe of Benjamin they also marked 12, 000 people with a seal.*

ULT **of Zebulun … of Joseph … of Benjamin**
UST of Zebulun … of Joseph … of Benjamin

The words **Zebulun**, **Joseph**, and **Benjamin** are the names of men.
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **12 thousands … been sealed**
UST The angels marked … with a seal. They also marked … they also marked 12, 000 people with a seal

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [the angels sealed 12 thousands]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
tribe	tribe
Zebulun	Zebulun
tribe	tribe
Joseph	Joseph
tribe	tribe
Benjamin	Benjamin
sealed	seal

Revelation 7:9

ULT	UST
After these things I looked, and behold, a great multitude that, to number it, no one was able, from every nation and tribe and people and language, standing before the throne and before the Lamb, having been clothed in white robes, and palm branches were in their hands,	*After these events, I saw something remarkable: a huge crowd of people! There were so many people in the crowd that no one could count them. They came from every nation, tribe, and people group, and they spoke every language. They all stood in front of the throne, where the Lamb was. They all wore flowing white robes, and they were all holding palm branches.*

ULT **that, to number it, no one was able**
UST There were so many people … that no one could count them

It might seem that this expression contains extra information that would be unnatural to express in your language. If so, you can shorten it. Alternate translation: [that no one was able to number]
Support Reference: When to Keep Information Implicit

ULT **from every nation and tribe and people and language**
UST They came from every nation, tribe, and people group, and they spoke every language

See how you translated the similar expression in 5:9. Alternate translation: [from every different people group]
Support Reference: Doublet

ULT **having been clothed in white robes**
UST They all wore flowing white robes

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [wearing white robes]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **in white robes**
UST flowing white robes

See how you translated the similar expression in 3:4. Alternate translation: [white robes symbolic of their purity]
Support Reference: Symbolic Action

ULT **palm branches**
UST palm branches

In this culture, people would wave **palm branches** on special occasions, especially to celebrate a victory. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could explain the significance of this action. Alternate translation: [palm branches for a victory celebration]
Support Reference: Symbolic Action

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
nation	nation
tribe	tribe
language	language
throne	throne
Lamb	Lamb
robes	robes
palm	palm

Revelation 7:10

ULT	UST
and they cry out in a loud voice, saying, "Salvation is to our God, the one sitting on the throne, and to the Lamb!"	*They were shouting loudly, "Our God, who rules over everything, has saved us! The Lamb has saved us!"*

ULT **Salvation {is} to our God, the one sitting on the throne, and to the Lamb**
UST Our God, who rules over everything, has saved us! The Lamb has saved us

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **Salvation**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [Our God, who is the one sitting on the throne, and the Lamb are the ones who have saved us]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **the one sitting on the throne**
UST who rules over everything

The people in the great multitude are describing God's supreme ruling power and authority by association with the way he is **sitting on the throne**, a symbol of that power and authority. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [the ruler of all]
Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
cry out	They were shouting
Salvation	saved
God	God
throne	who rules over everything
Lamb	Lamb

Revelation 7:11

ULT	UST
And all the angels had stood around the throne and the elders and the four living creatures, and they fell on their faces before the throne and worshiped God,	*Then all the angels stood around the throne, the elders, and the four living beings. The angels all knelt down in front of the throne with their faces on the ground and worshiped God.*

ULT they fell on their faces

UST The angels all knelt down … with their faces on the ground

Be sure that it is clear in your translation that the **angels** and **elders** and **living creatures** did not fall down accidentally. They bowed down in front of the throne as a gesture to honor God. Alternate translation: [they bowed down with their faces to the ground]

Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
angels	angels
throne	throne
elders	elders
creatures	living beings
they fell	The angels all knelt down
throne	throne
worshiped	worshiped
God	God

Revelation 7:12

ULT	UST
saying, "Amen! Praise and glory and wisdom and thanks and honor and power and strength be to our God, to the ages of the ages! Amen!"	*The angels all said, "Yes, may it be so! We praise, glorify, thank, and honor you, our God, forever! We proclaim forever that you are wise, powerful, and strong! May it be so!"*

ULT **Praise and glory and wisdom and thanks and honor and power and strength {be} to our God**

UST We praise, glorify, thank, and honor you, our God … We proclaim … that you are wise, powerful, and strong

If your language does not use abstract nouns for the ideas of **Praise**, **glory**, **wisdom**, **thanks**, **honor**, **power**, and **strength**, you could express the same ideas in other ways. See how you translated the similar expression in 4:11. Alternate translation: [May everyone praise, glorify, thank, and honor our God and acknowledge how wise, powerful, and strong he is]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **to the ages of the ages**

UST forever … forever

See how you translated the same expression in 1:18. Alternate translation: [forever]

Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Amen	Yes, may it be so
Praise	praise
glory	glorify
wisdom	wise
honor	honor
God	God
ages	forever … forever
ages	forever … forever
Amen	May it be so

Revelation 7:13

ULT	UST
And one of the elders responded, saying to me, "These, the ones having been clothed in white robes, who are they, and where have they come from?"	*One of the elders then said to me, "I want to make sure you know who these people are who are wearing white flowing robes and where they have come from."*

ULT **responded, saying to me**
UST said to me

This phrase expresses a single idea by using two words connected with **and**. The word **responded** indicates that this elder was **saying** these things to John in response to what John was seeing in this vision. If it would be more natural in your language, you could express this meaning with an equivalent phrase that does not use "and." Alternate translation: [asked me]
Support Reference: Hendiadys

ULT **These, the ones having been clothed in white robes, who are they, and where have they come from**
UST I want to make sure you know who these people are who are wearing white flowing robes and where they have come from

This elder is using the question form to introduce something he wants to make sure John understands. Since John answers the question in the next verse, it would be appropriate to retain the question form in your translation, but if it would be helpful to your readers, you could word the question in a way that would show its purpose. Alternate translation: [Do you know who these people are who are wearing white robes and where they have come from]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **the ones having been clothed in white robes**
UST are who … wearing white flowing robes

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [the ones wearing white robes]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
elders	elders

Revelation 7:14

ULT	UST
And I said to him, "My lord, you know." And he said to me, "These are the ones coming from the great tribulation, and they have washed their robes and made them white in the blood of the Lamb.	*I answered him, "Sir, I need you to tell me who they are." He then told me: "These are the people who remained faithful to Jesus during a time of great persecution. This showed that they have become pure from sin by trusting in Jesus, who shed his blood for them when he died on the cross.*

ULT **My lord, you know**
UST Sir, I need you to tell me who they are

John is answering the elder politely. You may translate this the way someone would respond politely in your language to a question whose answer they did not know. Alternate translation: [I do not know, please tell me]
Support Reference: Politeness

ULT **the great tribulation**
UST a time of great persecution

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **tribulation**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [the time when believers in Jesus will be greatly persecuted]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **they have washed their robes and made them white in the blood of the Lamb**
UST they have become pure from sin by trusting in Jesus, who shed his blood for them when he died on the cross

As in 3:4 and other passages in the book, **robes** that are **white** represent purity of life and devotion to Jesus. The **blood of the Lamb** is the blood that Jesus shed when he died on the cross as the Savior. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. The UST models one way to do this.
Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
lord	Sir
know	I need you to tell me who they are
tribulation	time of … persecution
robes	they have become pure from sin
Lamb	Jesus

Revelation 7:15

ULT	UST
Because of this they are before the throne of God, and they worship him day and night in his temple. And the one sitting on the throne will dwell with them.	*Therefore, they remain in front of God's throne. They worship God inside his temple without stopping. God, the one who rules from the throne in heaven, will protect them.*

ULT **day and night**
UST without stopping

The elder is using the two main components of time, **day** and **night**, to mean all the time. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [constantly]
Support Reference: Merism

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
throne	throne
God	God's
they worship	They worship
day	without stopping
temple	temple
throne	throne

Revelation 7:16

ULT	UST
They will not hunger anymore, nor will they thirst anymore, nor will the sun fall on them at all, nor any heat,	*God will make sure that they always have enough food to eat. God will also make sure that they always have enough to drink. The rays of the sun will never again burn them. The heat from the sun will never again exhaust them.*

ULT **They will not hunger anymore, nor will they thirst anymore**
UST God will make sure that they always have enough food to eat. God will also make sure that they always have enough to drink

If it would be clearer in your language, you could use a positive expression to translate these double negatives that consist of the negative particle **not** and the negative verbs **hunger** and **thirst**. The UST models one way to do this.
Support Reference: Double Negatives

ULT **nor will the sun fall on them at all, nor any heat**
UST The rays of the sun will never again burn them. The heat from the sun will never again exhaust them

This phrase expresses a single idea by using two words connected with **or**. The word **sun** tells where this **heat** comes from. If it would be more natural in your language, you could express this meaning with an equivalent phrase that does not use "or." Alternate translation: [nor will the heat of the sun fall on them at all]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **nor will the sun fall on them at all, nor any heat**
UST The rays of the sun will never again burn them. The heat from the sun will never again exhaust them

By referring to the **sun** and its **heat**, this elder may mean by association that these people will never again have to work hard in the hot sun to make a living. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and they will no longer have to work hard in the hot sun to make a living]
Support Reference: Metonymy

Revelation 7:17

ULT	UST
because the Lamb at the midst of the throne will shepherd them and guide them to springs of the waters of life, and God will wipe away every tear from their eyes."	*This is because the Lamb who is by the throne will care for them just as a shepherd cares for his sheep. The Lamb will enable them to receive everlasting life, as if they were drinking from springs where fresh, pure water flows. God will help them to stop crying and be joyful."*

ULT **will shepherd them**
UST will care for them just as a shepherd cares for his sheep

The elder is speaking as if Jesus would literally **shepherd** these believers. He means that Jesus will care for them, as a shepherd cares for sheep. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [will take care of them]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **guide them to springs of the waters of life … God will wipe away every tear from their eyes**
UST will enable them to receive everlasting life, as if they were drinking from springs where fresh, pure water flows. God will help them to stop crying and be joyful

These are quotations from the Old Testament, from Isaiah 49:10 and Isaiah 25:8. Since they occur within John's quotation of what this elder told him, they are second-level quotations. You may be able to indicate this by using second-level quotation marks or some other punctuation or convention of your language. You may also wish to use special formatting to set off these quotations, as the ULT does.
Support Reference: Quote Markings

ULT **guide them to springs of the waters of life**
UST will enable them to receive everlasting life, as if they were drinking from springs where fresh, pure water flows

The elder is speaking as if Jesus would literally **guide** these believers to **springs** of water. He is using water to represent the everlasting **life** that Jesus gives believers. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [will give them everlasting life]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **God will wipe away every tear from their eyes**
UST God will help them to stop crying and be joyful

The elder is using the word **tear** to mean by association the sorrow that people feel that leads them to shed tears. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [God will comfort their every sorrow] or [God will comfort them for every sorrow that they have experienced]
Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Lamb	Lamb
throne	throne
shepherd	shepherd
springs	springs
God	God

Revelation 8

Revelation 8 Introduction

Revelation 8 Chapter Introduction

Structure and Formatting

This chapter begins to show what happens when the Lamb opens the seventh seal. God uses the prayers of all believers to cause dramatic things to happen on earth. John then describes what happens when angels sound the first four of seven trumpets.

- The Lamb opens the seventh seal (8:1–5)
- The first trumpet (8:6–7)
- The second trumpet (8:8–9)
- The third trumpet (8:10–11)
- The fourth trumpet (8:12–13)

Translation Issues in This Chapter

Ordinal numbers

John uses the ordinal numbers “first” through “fourth” in verses 7, 8, 10, and 12. If your language does not use ordinal numbers, you can use cardinal numbers or equivalent expressions in your translation. (See: Ordinal Numbers)

The fraction “one third”

Many times in this chapter John uses the expression “one third.” This means one part out of three equal parts. Translate this in the way that would be most natural in your language. (See: Fractions)

Revelation 8:1

ULT	UST
And when he opened the seventh seal, silence happened in heaven for about half an hour.	*Then the Lamb opened the seventh piece of wax that sealed the scroll. When he did, there was no sound at all in heaven for a short time.*

ULT he opened
UST the Lamb opened

The pronoun **he** refers to the Lamb. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [the Lamb opened]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT the seventh seal
UST the seventh piece of wax that sealed the scroll

If your language does not use ordinal numbers, you can use a cardinal number here or an equivalent expression. Alternate translation: [seal number seven] or [the last seal]
Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

ULT for about half an hour
UST for a short time

An **hour** was the shortest interval of time that this culture measured. So **half an hour** may implicitly mean just a short time. You could indicate this in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [for a moment]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
seal	sealed
heaven	heaven

Revelation 8:2

ULT	UST
And I saw the seven angels who stand before God, and seven trumpets were given to them.	*I then saw the seven angels who are God's personal attendants. He gave each of them a trumpet.*

ULT **stand before**
UST are … personal attendants

In this context, while these angels may indeed position themselves in front of God's throne, the phrase **stand before** means to stay in the presence of another person in order to serve that person whenever and however needed. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [who remain ready to serve]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **seven trumpets were given to them**
UST He gave each of them a trumpet

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [God gave each of them a trumpet]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
angels	angels
God	God's
trumpets	trumpet

Revelation 8:3

ULT	UST
And another angel came and was stationed at the altar having a golden censer, and much incense was given to him so that he would offer it with the prayers of all the saints on the golden altar before the throne.	*Another angel then came and stood at the altar. He had a golden bowl for burning incense. God gave him a large quantity of incense to offer with the prayers of all God's people on the golden altar in front of God's throne.*

ULT **was stationed … much incense was given to him**
UST stood … gave him a large quantity of incense

If your language does not use these passive forms, you could express the ideas in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [stationed himself … God gave him much incense]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
angel	angel
altar	altar
golden	golden
incense	incense
prayers	prayers
saints	of … God's people
golden	golden
altar	altar
throne	throne

Revelation 8:4

ULT	UST
And the smoke of the incense, with the prayers of the saints, rose up before God from the hand of the angel.	*The angel started burning the incense. The smoke from the incense burning in the container that the angel was holding went up to God along with the prayers of God's people.*

ULT **from the hand of the angel**
UST that the angel was holding

Here, **hand** refers to the censer in the angel's hand. Alternate translation: [from the censer that the angel was holding]

Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
incense	incense
prayers	prayers
saints	God … of … s people
God	God
angel	angel

Revelation 8:5

ULT	UST
And the angel took the censer and filled it from the fire of the altar and threw it onto the earth, and thunders and sounds and lightnings and an earthquake happened.	*Then the angel took the golden incense bowl and filled it with coals of fire from the altar. He threw these coals and the burning incense onto the earth. When he did, thunder crashed and rumbled, lightning flashed, and the earth shook.*

ULT **filled it from the fire of the altar**

UST filled it with coals of fire from the altar

This is probably a reference to coals that were on **fire** on the altar. Alternate translation: [filled it with burning coals from the fire on the altar]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **threw it**

UST He threw these coals and the burning incense

While the pronoun **it** refers to the **censer** in its first instance, in its second instance it refers to the **fire from the altar**. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [threw the fire] or [threw the burning coals]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
angel	angel
altar	altar
earth	earth

Revelation 8:6

ULT	UST
And the seven angels having the seven trumpets prepared themselves that they might trumpet.	*Then the seven angels, each of whom had one of the seven trumpets, got ready to blow them.*

ULT **trumpets … they might trumpet**
UST one of the … trumpets … to blow them

John is using a construction in which a verb and its object come from the same root. The verb translated **trumpet** has the same root as the word translated **trumpets**. The repetition of the sounds may be intended to have a musical effect. You may be able to use the same construction in your translation if your language has similar words for this kind of instrument and for the action of playing it.

Support Reference: Poetry

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
angels	angels
trumpets	trumpets
trumpet	to blow them

Revelation 8:7

ULT	UST
And the first trumpeted, and hail happened, and fire, mixed with blood, and it was thrown onto the earth, and a third of the earth was burned up, and a third of the trees were burned up, and all the green grass was burned up.	*Then the first angel blew his trumpet, and hail and fire appeared. There was blood in the midst of the hail and fire. All of it poured down onto the earth. The fire burned up one third of everything on the surface of the land, one third of the trees, and all the green grass.*

ULT **the first trumpeted**
UST the first angel blew his trumpet

The word **first** implicitly means the first angel, and the word **sounded** implicitly means that he sounded his trumpet. You could indicate this in your translation if it would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [the first angel sounded his trumpet]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **the first**
UST the first angel

As the introduction to this chapter discusses, if your language does not use ordinal numbers, you can use cardinal numbers or equivalent expressions here and in verses 8, 10, and 12. Alternate translation: [angel number one]
Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

ULT **it was thrown … was burned up … were burned up … was burned up**
UST All of it poured down … The fire burned up

If your language does not use these passive forms, you could express the ideas in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [the angel threw it … burned up … burned up … burned up]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **a third of the earth was burned up, and a third of the trees were burned up, and all the green grass was burned up**
UST The fire burned up one third of everything on the surface of the land, one third of the trees, and all the green grass

If your language does not use this passive form, you could state this in active form. Alternate translation: [it burned up a third of the earth, a third of the trees, and all the green grass]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **and a third of the earth was burned up**
UST The fire burned up one third of everything on the surface of the land

Some ancient manuscripts include the phrase **and a third of the earth was burned up**. The ULT follows that reading. Other ancient manuscripts do not include that phrase. If a translation of the Bible exists in your region, you may wish to use the reading that it uses. If a translation of the Bible does not exist in your region, you may wish to use the reading of ULT.
Support Reference: Textual Variants

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
trumpeted	trumpet
hail	hail
earth	earth
earth	land

Revelation 8:8

ULT	UST
And the second angel trumpeted, and something like a great mountain burning with fire was thrown into the sea, and a third of the sea became blood,	*Then the second angel blew his trumpet, and something that was like a huge mountain that was on fire fell into the ocean. As a result, one third of the ocean became blood,*

ULT **something like a great mountain burning with fire was thrown**
UST something that was like a huge mountain that was on fire fell

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [the angel threw something like a great mountain burning with fire]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **a third of the sea became blood**
UST one third of the ocean became blood

As the introduction to this chapter discusses, the expression **one third** means one part out of three equal parts. Here and throughout the chapter, translate the expression in the way that would be most natural in your language.
Support Reference: Fractions

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
angel	angel
trumpeted	trumpet

Revelation 8:9

ULT	UST
and a third of the creatures having life in the sea died, and a third of the ships were destroyed.	*one third of the living creatures in the ocean died, and one third of the ships in the ocean sank*

> ULT **a third of the ships were destroyed**
> UST one third of the ships in the ocean sank

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [the bloody water destroyed a third of the ships]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
of the creatures	of the … creatures

Revelation 8:11

ULT	UST
And the name of the star is called Wormwood. And a third of the waters became wormwood, and many of the men died from the waters that had been made bitter.	*The name of the star is Bitterness. When it fell into one third of the rivers and springs, their water became poisonous. Many people died from drinking that poisonous water.*

ULT **the name of the star is called Wormwood**
UST The name of the star is Bitterness

It might seem that this expression contains extra information that would be unnatural to express in your language. If so, you can shorten it. Alternate translation: [the name of the star is Wormwood]
Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

ULT **Wormwood**
UST Bitterness

Wormwood is a woody shrub that tastes bitter. Because of its bitter taste, people in this culture believed that the shrub was poisonous. Your language may have a term for this shrub or for a similar one that you can use in your translation. You could also use a general expression. Alternate translation: [Bitter Shrub]
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **became wormwood**
UST became poisonous

John means by association that the water became bitter and poisonous, as if it were the bitter **wormwood** shrub that people in his culture believed was poisonous. Alternate translation: [became poisonous like wormwood]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **many of the men**
UST Many people

John is not referring to a specific group of **men**. He means people in general. Express this in the way that would be most natural in your language. Alternate translation: [many people]
Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

Revelation 8:12

ULT	UST
And the fourth angel trumpeted, and a third of the sun was struck, and a third of the moon and a third of the stars, so that a third of them were darkened, and the day, a third of it did not shine, and likewise the night.	*Then the fourth angel blew his trumpet, and God struck the sun, the moon, and the stars so that they lost their light for one third of the time. The sun did not shine during one third of the day, and the moon and stars did not shine during one third of the night.*

ULT **a third of the sun was struck, and a third of the moon and a third of the stars**
UST God struck the sun, the moon, and the stars … for one third of the time

John is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [a third of the sun was struck, and a third of the moon and a third of the stars were struck]
Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **a third of the sun was struck, and a third of the moon and a third of the stars, so that a third of them were darkened**
UST God struck the sun, the moon, and the stars so that they lost their light for one third of the time

If your language does not use these passive forms, you could express the ideas in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [God struck a third of the sun and a third of the moon and a third of the stars so that a third of them turned dark]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **a third of them were darkened**
UST they lost their light for one third of the time

The phrase **a third of them were darkened** could mean: (1) one third of the time, the sun, moon, and stars were dark, or (2) one third of the sun, one third of the moon, and one third of the stars became dark. You could say either of these things as an alternate translation.
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **the day, a third of it did not shine**
UST The sun did not shine during one third of the day … did not shine during one third of the night

When John says of **a third** of the **day** that **it did not shine**, he means by association that the sun did not shine during a third of the day. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [the sun did not shine during one third of the day]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **and likewise the night**
UST and the moon and stars

John is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [and likewise a third of the night did not shine] or [and likewise the moon and the stars did not shine during one third of the night]
Support Reference: Ellipsis

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
angel	angel
trumpeted	trumpet
day	sun

Revelation 8:13

ULT	UST
And I looked, and I heard an eagle flying in mid-heaven saying in a loud voice, "Woe, woe, woe, to the ones living on the earth from the remaining sounds of the trumpet of the three angels who are going to trumpet."	*Then, as I watched, I heard an eagle that was flying high in the sky shouting loudly, "Three terrible things will happen to the people who live on the earth when the three remaining angels blow their trumpets! They are about to blow them!"*

ULT **eagle**
UST eagle

Some ancient manuscripts read **eagle**. ULT follows that reading. Other ancient manuscripts read "angel." If a translation of the Bible exists in your region, you may wish to use the reading that it uses. If a translation of the Bible does not exist in your region, you may wish to use the reading of ULT.
Support Reference: Textual Variants

ULT **Woe, woe, woe**
UST Three terrible things will happen

The eagle may be repeating the word **woe** for emphasis. If it would not be natural in your language to repeat a word in that way, you could express the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: [What great woe the ones living on the earth will experience] or see the next note for another possibility.
Support Reference: Reduplication

ULT **Woe, woe, woe**
UST Three terrible things will happen

Since 9:12 and 11:14 speak of a first, second, and third "woe," the eagle may be announcing implicitly that three terrible events are about to occur. The UST models a way to express this possible meaning of the phrase **woe, woe, woe**.
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **the remaining sounds of the trumpet of the three angels who are going to trumpet**
UST the three remaining angels blow their trumpets! They are about to blow them

This does not mean that the **three angels** only have one **trumpet** among them. Alternate translation: [the blasts that the remaining three angels will make on their trumpets when they blow them]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
eagle	eagle
mid-heaven	sky
Woe	Three terrible things will happen
woe	Three terrible things will happen
woe	Three terrible things will happen
earth	earth
trumpet	trumpets
trumpet	to blow them
angels	angels

Revelation 9

Revelation 9 Introduction

Revelation 9 Chapter Introduction

Structure and Formatting

In this chapter, John continues to describe what happens when angels sound seven trumpets. (See: Symbolic Prophecy)

- The Fifth Trumpet (9:1–12)
- The Sixth Trumpet (9:13–21)

Religious and Cultural Concepts in This Chapter

Woe

John describes several "woes" in the book of Revelation. This chapter begins to describe the three "woes" announced at the end of Chapter 8. Woes signify calamity, disaster, or terrible events.

Animal imagery

This chapter includes several animals: locusts, scorpions, horses, lions, and snakes. Animals convey different qualities or traits. For example, a lion is powerful and dangerous. Translators should use the same animals in their translation if possible. If the animal is unknown, use a familiar one with similar qualities or traits.

Abaddon and Apollyon

"Abaddon" is a Hebrew word. "Apollyon" is a Greek word. Both words mean "Destroyer." John used the sounds of the Hebrew word and wrote them with Greek letters. The ULT and UST write the sounds of both words with English letters. Translators are encouraged to transliterate these words using the letters of their own language. The original Greek readers would have understood "Apollyon" to mean "Destroyer." So translators may also indicate this meaning in the text or in a footnote. (See: Copy or Borrow Words)

Translation Issues in This Chapter

Simile

John uses many similes in this chapter. They help to describe the images that he sees in his vision. (See: Simile)

Generic Sense

Several times in this chapter John uses the masculine word “men” in a generic sense that includes both men and women. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use a term in your language that is clearly inclusive of both men and women such as “people” or “humanity.” (See: When Masculine Words Include Women)

Revelation 9:1

ULT	UST
And the fifth angel trumpeted, and I saw a star having fallen from the sky to the earth, and the key of the shaft of the abyss was given to it.	*Then the fifth angel blew his trumpet, and I saw a star that had fallen from the sky to the earth. God gave it the key to the deep, dark pit.*

ULT **the fifth angel**
UST the fifth angel

If your language does not use ordinal numbers, you can use a cardinal number here or an equivalent expression. Alternate translation: [angel number five]
Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

ULT **the key of the shaft of the abyss was given to it**
UST God gave it the key to the deep, dark pit

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [the star received the key to the shaft of the abyss]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
angel	angel
trumpeted	trumpet
sky	sky
earth	earth
of the shaft	pit
abyss	to the deep, dark pit

Revelation 9:2

ULT	UST
And he opened the shaft of the abyss, and smoke went up from the shaft like the smoke of a great furnace, and the sun and the air were darkened from the smoke of the shaft.	*When he opened that pit, a huge amount of smoke rose from it, as if it were a great burning furnace. The smoke prevented anyone from seeing the light of the sun and the sky.*

ULT **smoke went up from the shaft like the smoke of a great furnace**
UST a huge amount of smoke rose from it, as if it were a great burning furnace

The point of this comparison is that a large quantity of **smoke** came from the **shaft**, just as a **great furnace** would give off a large quantity of smoke. If it would be helpful in your language, you could make this point explicitly. Alternate translation: [a large quantity of smoke went up from the shaft, as does from a huge furnace]

Support Reference: Simile

ULT **the sun and the air were darkened from the smoke of the shaft**
UST The smoke prevented anyone from seeing the light of the sun and the sky

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [the smoke from the shaft darkened the sun and the air]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
shaft	pit
abyss	pit
shaft	it
furnace	furnace
of the shaft	smoke

Revelation 9:3

ULT	UST
And locusts came from the smoke onto the earth, and power was given to them as scorpions of the earth have power.	*Then locusts came out of the smoke and started swarming the earth. God gave these locusts the power to sting people just as scorpions sting people.*

ULT **power was given to them**
UST God gave these locusts the power to sting people

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [God gave them power]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **power was given to them as scorpions of the earth have power**
UST God gave these locusts the power to sting people just as scorpions sting people

The point of this comparison is that just as **scorpions of the earth** have the power to hurt people by stinging them, so these **locusts** from the abyss had the power to hurt people in that same way. If it would be helpful in your language, you could make this point explicitly. Alternate translation: [to hurt people by stinging them, just as scorpions on earth do]
Support Reference: Simile

ULT **scorpions**
UST scorpions

A **scorpion** is an insect with a poisonous stinger at the end of its long tail. The sting can cause severe pain or even death. If your readers would not be familiar with what a **scorpion** is, in your translation you could use the name of a comparable insect or animal in your area. Alternate translation: [deadly stinging insects]
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
locusts	locusts
earth	earth
earth	scorpions

Revelation 9:4

ULT	UST
And it was told to them that they should not harm the grass of the earth or any green plant or any tree, if not the men who did not have the seal of God on their foreheads.	*God told the locusts that they should not eat up all the grass on the ground and all the plants and all the leaves on the trees as locusts usually do. God told the locusts just to sting the people who did not have the mark on their foreheads that showed they belonged to God.*

ULT **it was told to them**
UST God told the locusts that they

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [God commanded them]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **it was told to them that they should not harm the grass of the earth or any green plant or any tree, if not the men who did not have the seal of God on {their} foreheads**
UST God told the locusts that they should not eat up all the grass on the ground and all the plants and all the leaves on the trees {as locusts usually do}. God told the locusts just to sting the people who did not have the mark on their foreheads that showed they belonged to God

Having a direct quotation here may be more natural in your language. Alternate translation: [And they were told, “Do not harm the grass of the earth or any green plant or any tree, but only the men who do not have the seal of God on their foreheads.”]
Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

ULT **the men**
UST the people

As the introduction to this chapter discusses, here and in several other places in this chapter John uses the masculine word **men** in a generic sense that includes both men and women. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use a term in your language that is clearly inclusive of both men and women. Alternate translation: [the people]
Support Reference: When Masculine Words Include Women

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
earth	on the ground
seal	mark … that showed they belonged
God	God

Revelation 9:5

ULT	UST
And it was given to them that they should not kill them, but that they would be tormented for five months and their torment would be like the torment of a scorpion when it might strike a man.	*God did not allow the locusts to kill those people. Instead, the locusts kept torturing people for five months. The pain those people felt was like the pain that a scorpion causes when it stings someone.*

ULT **it was given to them that they should not kill them, but that they would be tormented**
UST God did not allow the locusts to kill those people. Instead, the locusts kept torturing people

If your language does not use these passive forms, you could express the ideas in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [God did not allow the locusts to kill these people but to torment them for five months]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **it was given to them that they should not kill them**
UST God did not allow the locusts to kill those people

The **them** refers in its first instance to the locusts John describes in 9:3 and in its second instance the people John describes in 9:4 who did not have the seal of God on their foreheads. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [it was given to the locusts that they should not kill these people]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **their torment {would be} like the torment of a scorpion when it might strike a man**
UST The pain those people felt was like the pain that a scorpion causes when it stings someone

The point of this comparison is that just as the sting of a **scorpion** is very painful, the **torment** that people would experience after these locusts stung them would be very painful. If it would be helpful in your language, you could make this point explicitly. Alternate translation: [their torment when the locusts stung them would be very painful, as the sting of a scorpion is very painful for a person]
Support Reference: Simile

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
tormented	the locusts kept torturing people
months	months
torment	The pain … people felt
torment	the pain

Revelation 9:6

ULT	UST
And in those days, men will seek death, but they will certainly not find it, and they will long to die, but death flees from them.	*During the time when the locusts torture people who refuse to belong to God, those people will be in so much pain that they will want to die. But God will make sure those people stay alive to experience the punishment for their sin.*

ULT **in those days**
UST During the time when the locusts torture people who refuse to belong to God

John is using the term **days** to refer to a specific time. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [at that time]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **men will seek death, but they will certainly not find it, and they will long to die, but death flees from them**
UST those people {will be in so much pain that they} will want to die. But God will make sure those people stay alive to experience the punishment for their sin

These two phrases mean similar things. John is using repetition to emphasize the idea that the phrases express. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could combine the phrases. Alternate translation: [even though people will want very much to die, they will not be able to die]
Support Reference: Parallelism

ULT **death**
UST to die

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **death**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [to die]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **death flees from them**
UST God will make sure those people stay alive to experience the punishment for their sin

John is speaking figuratively of **death** as if it were a living thing that could run away or flee. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [they will not be able to die]
Support Reference: Personification

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
days	the time
seek	will be in so much pain that … will want

Revelation 9:7

ULT	UST
And the appearance of the locusts was like horses prepared for war. And on their heads were something like crowns resembling gold, and their faces were like faces of men.	*The locusts looked like horses that were ready for battle. They had what looked like golden crowns on their heads. Their faces were like human faces.*

ULT **prepared for war**
UST that were ready for battle

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [wearing armor for war]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
locusts	locusts
horses	horses
crowns	crowns
gold	golden

Revelation 9:8

ULT	UST
And they had hair like the hair of women, and their teeth were as of lions,	*They had long hair like women's long hair. Their teeth were as strong as lions' teeth.*

ULT **hair like the hair of women**
UST long hair like women's long hair

In this culture women typically wore their hair long. So the point of this comparison is that the locusts had long **hair**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could make this point explicitly. Alternate translation: [hair that was long like the hair of women]
Support Reference: Simile

ULT **their teeth were as of lions**
UST Their teeth were as strong as lions' teeth

John is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [their teeth were as the teeth of lions]
Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **their teeth were as of lions**
UST Their teeth were as strong as lions' teeth

The point of this comparison is that the locusts had **teeth** that were sharp, large, and strong, like the teeth of **lions**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could make this point explicitly. Alternate translation: [their teeth were sharp, large, and strong like lions' teeth]
Support Reference: Simile

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
lions	lions' teeth

Revelation 9:9

ULT	UST
and they had breastplates like iron breastplates, and the sound of their wings was like the sound of many chariots of horses running into battle.	*They wore breastplates made of metal. When they were flying, their wings made a noise like the roar of many horses pulling chariots and rushing into battle.*

ULT **they had breastplates like iron breastplates**
UST They wore breastplates made of metal

John is speaking as if these locusts literally had **breastplates**. He probably means that the skin on the front of their bodies was very hard. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [the hard skin on the front of their bodies was like iron breastplates]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **they had breastplates like iron breastplates**
UST They wore breastplates made of metal

The point of this comparison is that the skin on the front of the locusts' bodies was very strong, as if it were made of **iron**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could make this point explicitly. Alternate translation: [the hard skin on the front of their bodies was very strong, like an iron breastplate]
Support Reference: Simile

ULT **iron breastplates**
UST breastplates made of metal

A **breastplate** was a piece of armor that covered and protected the chest. If your readers would not be familiar with what a breastplate is, in your translation you could use the name of a comparable object in your culture, or you could use a general expression. Alternate translation: [pieces of armor made of iron to protect a soldier's chest]
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **the sound of their wings {was} like the sound of many chariots of horses**
UST When they were flying, their wings made a noise like the roar of many horses pulling chariots

The point of this comparison is that the **wings** of all the locusts flying around made a very loud **sound**, like **the sound of chariots**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could make this point explicitly. Alternate translation: [the sound of their wings was very loud, like the sound of many chariots of horses]
Support Reference: Simile

ULT **of … chariots of horses**
UST of … horses pulling chariots

John is using this possessive form to describe **chariots** that **horses** pull into battle. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this meaning without using a possessive form. Alternate translation: [horse-drawn chariots]
Support Reference: Possession

> ULT **running into battle**
> UST and rushing into battle

John is speaking as if these **chariots** were themselves literally **running into battle**, though it is the **horses** pulling the chariots which would be running and the drivers of the chariots who would be hurrying to get into the **battle**. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [whose drivers are hurrying them into battle]
Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
breastplates	breastplates
breastplates	breastplates
chariots	chariots
horses	horses

Revelation 9:10

ULT	UST
And they have tails and stingers as scorpions do, and in their tails is their power to harm men for five months.	*They had tails like the tails of scorpions. With these tails they could sting people. Their power to harm people during those five months was in their tails.*

ULT **scorpions**
UST the tails of scorpions

See how you translated the term “scorpion” in 9:3.
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **for five months**
UST during those five months

This could mean implicitly: (1) that the locusts had power for five months to harm people. Alternate translation: [over a period of five months]; or (2) that the locusts could sting people and the people would be in pain for five months. Alternate translation: [with a sting that will cause them pain for five months]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
months	months

Revelation 9:11

ULT	UST
They have over them a king, the angel of the abyss. His name in Hebrew is Abaddon, and in Greek he has the name Apollyon.	*The king who ruled over them was the angel of the deep, dark pit. His name in the Hebrew language is Abaddon. In the Greek language it is Apollyon. Both of these names mean Destroyer.*

ULT **of the abyss**
UST of the deep, dark pit

See how you translated the term **abyss** in 9:1.
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **the angel of the abyss. His name in Hebrew {is} Abaddon, and in Greek he has the name Apollyon**
UST the angel of the deep, dark pit. His name in the Hebrew language is Abaddon. In the Greek language it is Apollyon. Both of these names mean Destroyer

The word **Abaddon** is a Hebrew name that John spells out using Greek letters so that his readers will know how it sounds. John then tells his readers a Greek name, **Apollyon**, with the same meaning, so that his readers will know what it means. Both names mean Destroyer. In your translation you can spell both names the way they sound in your language and then explain their meaning. Alternate translation: [His Hebrew name is Abaddon and his Greek name is Apollyon; both names mean Destroyer]
Support Reference: Copy or Borrow Words

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
king	king
angel	angel
abyss	of the deep, dark pit
Hebrew	Hebrew
Greek	Greek

Revelation 9:12

ULT	UST
The first woe has passed. Behold, two woes are still coming after these things.	*After five months the locusts went away. That ended the first terrible event. But be aware that two more terrible events are still to come.*

ULT **The first woe has passed**
UST After five months the locusts went away. That ended the first terrible event

See how you translated the term **woe** in 8:13. Alternate translation: [One terrible event is over]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **The first woe**
UST the first terrible event

If your language does not use ordinal numbers, you could use a cardinal number here or an equivalent expression. Alternate translation: [woe number one]
Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

ULT **woe**
UST terrible event

See how you translated the term **woe** in 8:13. Alternate translation: [terrible event]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
woe	terrible event
woes	terrible events

Revelation 9:13

ULT	UST
And the sixth angel trumpeted, and I heard a voice from the horns of the golden altar before God,	*Then the sixth angel blew his trumpet, and I heard a voice from the four corners of the golden altar that is in God's presence.*

ULT **the sixth angel**
UST the sixth angel

If your language does not use ordinal numbers, you could use a cardinal number here or an equivalent expression. Alternate translation: [angel number six]
Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

ULT **a voice**
UST a voice

John is using one part of a person, his **voice**, to represent all of the person in the act of speaking. John does not say who the speaker was, but it may have been God. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression from your culture or state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [someone speaking]
Support Reference: Synecdoche

ULT **horns**
UST four corners

John is referring to the horn-shaped extensions that were at each of the four corners of the top of the altar. He calls them **horns** by association with their shape. If it would be clearer for your readers, in your translation you could just refer to the "corners" of the altar, as UST does.
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **before God**
UST that is in God's presence

Here the word **before** means "in front of" or "in the presence of" another person. The Jews believed that God was especially present at his **altar**. Alternate translation: [that is in the presence of God]
Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
angel	angel
trumpeted	trumpet
horns	four corners
golden	golden
altar	altar
God	God's

Revelation 9:14

ULT	UST
saying to the sixth angel, the one having the trumpet, "Release the four angels having been bound at the great river Euphrates."	*The voice was saying to the sixth angel, the one who had the trumpet, "Release the four angels whom I have bound at the great river Euphrates."*

ULT **to the sixth angel**
UST to the sixth angel

If your language does not use ordinal numbers, you can use a cardinal number here or an equivalent expression. Alternate translation: [to angel number six]
Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

ULT **having been bound**
UST whom I have bound

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. The text does not say who **bound** these **four angels**, but it implies that God did it or commanded his own angels to do it. Alternate translation: [whom God had bound] or [whom God had commanded his own angels to bind]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **Euphrates**
UST Euphrates

The word **Euphrates** is the name of a river.
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
angel	angel
trumpet	trumpet
angels	angels
bound	bound
Euphrates	Euphrates

Revelation 9:15

ULT	UST
And the four angels having been prepared for the hour and day and month and year were released so that they might kill a third of men.	*Then those four angels went free. They had been waiting for that exact moment. They went free so they could enable their soldiers to kill one third of humanity.*

ULT **the four angels having been prepared for the hour and day and month and year were released**

UST those four angels went free. They had been waiting for that exact moment. They went free

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [the sixth angel released the four angels whom God had prepared for the hour and day and month and year]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **the hour and day and month and year**

UST that exact moment

These words all refer to specific periods of time. John is using them together to emphasize that this is a very specific time. If it would be clearer for your readers, you could express the emphasis with a single phrase. Alternate translation: [that specific time]

Support Reference: Doublet

ULT **a third of men**

UST one third of humanity

A **third** means one part out of three equal parts. Alternate translation: [one out of every three men]

Support Reference: Fractions

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
angels	angels
hour	moment
day	exact moment
month	exact moment
year	exact moment

Revelation 9:16

ULT	UST
And the number of the horse soldiers was two myriads of myriads; I heard their number.	*I heard someone say how many soldiers there were riding on horses. The number was 200, 000, 000.*

ULT **the number of the horse soldiers {was} two myriads of myriads; I heard their number**
UST I heard someone say how many soldiers there were riding on horses. The number was 200, 000, 000

John typically says **I heard** or "I saw" before describing what he heard or saw, so it might be more natural to put that information first. Alternate translation: [I heard the number of the horse soldiers; it was two myriads of myriads]
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **was two myriads of myriads**
UST 200, 000, 000

A myriad is a hundred hundreds, or ten thousand. Express this number in the way that would be most natural in your language. See how you translated a similar large number in 5:11. Alternate translation: [200,000,000]
Support Reference: Numbers

Revelation 9:17

ULT	UST
And thus in the vision I saw the horses and the ones riding on them: having fiery and hyacinth and sulfurous breastplates. And the heads of the horses were as heads of lions, and from their mouths comes fire and smoke and sulfur.	*In the vision I saw what the horses and the soldiers who rode them looked like. The soldiers wore breastplates that were red like fire, blue like sapphire, and yellow like sulfur. The heads of the horses were like the heads of lions. From their mouths came fire, smoke, and fumes of burning sulfur.*

ULT **fiery and hyacinth and sulfurous breastplates**

UST breastplates that were red like fire, blue like sapphire, and yellow like sulfur

John is describing the colors of the **breastplates** by association with other things that are those colors. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use objects from your own culture that are these colors or express the meaning plainly. See, for example, how you translated the word “fiery” in 6:3. Alternate translation: [breastplates that were fiery red, hyacinth blue, and sulfur yellow] or [bright red, dark blue, and brilliant yellow breastplates]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **hyacinth**

UST blue like sapphire

A **hyacinth** is a plant in the lily family that has dark blue flowers on spikes. If your readers would not be familiar with what a hyacinth is, in your translation you could use the name of a plant or other object in your culture that is the same color as hyacinth flowers, or you could use a general expression. Alternate translation: [dark blue]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
vision	vision
horses	horses
sulfurous	sulfur
breastplates	breastplates
horses	horses
lions	lions
sulfur	sulfur

Revelation 9:18

ULT	UST
By these three plagues, by the fire and the smoke and the sulfur coming out from their mouths, a third of men were killed.	*Those three things—the fire, the smoke, and the burning sulfur from the horses' mouths—killed one third of humanity.*

ULT **By these three plagues, by the fire and the smoke and the sulfur coming out from their mouths, a third of men were killed**

UST Those three things—the fire, the smoke, and the burning sulfur from the horses' mouths—killed one third of humanity

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [These three plagues of fire and of smoke and of sulfur coming out from their mouths killed a third of men]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
plagues	things
sulfur	sulfur

Revelation 9:20

ULT	UST
And the rest of men, the ones not killed in these plagues, did not repent of the works of their hands, so that they will not worship demons and idols of gold and silver and bronze and stone and wood, which are able neither to see nor to hear nor to walk.	*But there were still people whom the plagues of fire and smoke and burning sulfur did not kill. Those people did not stop doing sinful things. They also did not stop worshiping demons and idols that they had made of gold, silver, bronze, stone, and wood. The people did not stop worshiping the idols even though they were lifeless statues that could not help people.*

ULT **the ones not killed in these plagues**
UST whom the plagues of fire and smoke and burning sulfur did not kill

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [the ones whom these plagues did not kill]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **of the works of their hands**
UST Those people did … stop doing sinful things

John is using one part of these people, their **hands**, to represent all of each person in the act of doing **works**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression from your culture or state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [of the works they were doing]
Support Reference: Synecdoche

ULT **which are able neither to see nor to hear nor to walk**
UST even though they were lifeless statues that could not help people

The terms **see** and **hear** and **walk** all describe things that living beings are able to do. John is using the three terms together to emphasize that **idols** are not alive and cannot do anything for those who **worship** them. If it would be clearer for your readers, you could express the emphasis with a single phrase. Alternate translation: [which are not alive at all]
Support Reference: Doublet

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
plagues	plagues
repent	Those people did … stop doing
worship	worshiping
demons	demons
idols	idols
gold	gold
silver	silver
bronze	bronze

Revelation 10

Revelation 10 Introduction

Revelation 10 Chapter Introduction

Structure and Formatting

In this chapter John begins to describe a vision he had of a mighty angel holding a scroll. John is viewing what is happening from the perspective of earth, which is why he speaks of this angel "coming down from heaven." This vision takes place between the blowing of the sixth and seventh trumpets.

Religious and Cultural Concepts in This Chapter

Seven thunders

In this chapter John describes seven thunders making sounds that he could understand as words. However, translators should use their normal word for "thunder" when translating these verses. (See: Personification; and Symbolic Prophecy)

"The mystery of God"

This refers to some aspect of the hidden plan of God. It is not necessary to know what this mystery is when translating this phrase.

Translation Issues in This Chapter

Simile

In this chapter John uses similes to help him describe the face, legs, and voice of a mighty angel. Translators should represent other objects in this chapter, such as the rainbow and the cloud, with their normal meanings. (See: Simile)

Revelation 10:1

ULT	UST
And I saw another mighty angel coming down from heaven clothed in a cloud, with a rainbow above his head and his face like the sun and his feet like pillars of fire	*Then in the vision I saw another mighty angel come down out of heaven. A cloud surrounded him. There was a rainbow over his head. His face shone brightly like the sun. His legs glowed like columns of fire.*

ULT **clothed in a cloud**
UST A cloud surrounded him

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [whose clothing was a cloud]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **clothed in a cloud**
UST A cloud surrounded him

John speaks of the angel as if he were wearing **a cloud** as his clothing. This expression could be understood as figurative. However, because very unusual things were often seen in visions, it could also be understood as a literally true statement in its context. Alternate translation: [in the midst of a cloud]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **and his face like the sun and his feet like pillars of fire**
UST His face shone brightly like the sun. His legs glowed like columns of fire

The point of these comparisons is that the angel's **face** was very bright, like the **sun**, and that the angel's **feet** were glowing like **fire**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could make these points explicitly. It may be helpful to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: [The angel's face was very bright, like the sun, and his feet were glowing as if they were on fire]
Support Reference: Simile

ULT **his feet**
UST His legs

Since John compares the **feet** of the angel to **pillars**, it is likely that by **feet** he means "legs" by association. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [his legs]
Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
mighty	mighty
angel	angel
heaven	heaven
pillars	columns

Revelation 10:2

ULT	UST
and having in his hand an opened little scroll. And he put his right foot on the sea and his left on the land,	*He had in his hand a small scroll that was open. He set his right foot on the ocean and his left foot on the land.*

ULT **an opened little scroll**
UST a small scroll that was open

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [a little scroll that he had opened]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **and {his} left**
UST and his left foot

John is using the adjective **left** as a noun to mean a certain one of the angel's feet. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you could translate this word with an equivalent phrase. Alternate translation: [and his left foot]
Support Reference: Nominal Adjectives

Revelation 10:3

ULT	UST
and he shouted in a loud voice, as a lion roars, and when he shouted, the seven thunders spoke their own voices.	*He shouted something in a voice as loud as the roar of a lion. As he shouted, I heard seven thunderclaps. In the thunder were words that I could understand.*

ULT **in a loud voice, as a lion roars**
UST in a voice as loud as the roar of a lion

The point of this comparison is probably that the **loud voice** of the angel commanded attention like the roar of a **lion**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could make this point explicitly. Alternate translation: [in a loud voice that commanded attention as does a lion's roar]
Support Reference: Simile

ULT **the seven thunders spoke**
UST I heard seven thunderclaps

John speaks of these **seven thunders** as if he assumes that his readers will know what or who they are, but he has not introduced or explained them earlier in the book and interpreters are not certain of their identity. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could introduce them in such a way as to indicate that John has not identified them previously. Alternate translation: [seven thunders spoke]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **the seven thunders spoke**
UST I heard seven thunderclaps

This expression could mean that thunder **spoke** or sounded **seven** times, rather than that **seven** different **thunders spoke**. You could say that in your translation or indicate this possibility in a footnote. Alternate translation: [thunder spoke seven times] or [thunder sounded seven times]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **spoke their own voices**
UST I heard … In the thunder were words that I could understand

It might seem that the expression **spoke their own voices** contains extra information that would be unnatural to express in your language. If so, you could shorten it. Alternate translation: [spoke]
Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
he shouted	He shouted something
lion	lion
he shouted	he shouted

Revelation 10:4

ULT	UST
And when the seven thunders spoke, I was going to write, but I heard a voice from heaven saying, "Seal what the seven thunders said and do not write it."	*I was about to record what the thunders had said. But then a voice from heaven told me, "Keep secret what the thunders said! Do not write it down!"*

ULT **I was going to write**
UST I was about to record

The implication is that John was going to write down what the seven thunders had said. You can provide this information in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [I was going to write down what they had said]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **Seal what the seven thunders said and do not write it**
UST Keep secret what the thunders said! Do not write it down

The voice spoke as if John should literally **seal** what the thunders said. However, since the voice then specified that John was not to write anything down, the voice meant that John should keep secret what the thunders said. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [Keep secret what the seven thunders said by not writing it down]
Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
heaven	heaven
Seal	Keep secret

Revelation 10:5

ULT	UST
And the angel whom I saw standing on the sea and on the land raised his right hand to heaven	*Then the angel whom I had seen standing on the ocean and the land raised his right hand toward heaven in order to swear an oath.*

ULT **raised his right hand to heaven**
UST raised his right hand toward heaven in order to swear an oath

The angel **raised his right hand to heaven** as a symbolic action to show that he was swearing an oath by God. If this would not be clear to your readers, you could explain the significance of this action. Alternate translation: [raised his right hand to heaven to show that he swearing an oath by God]

Support Reference: Symbolic Action

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
angel	angel
land	land
heaven	heaven

Revelation 10:6

ULT	UST
and swore by the one living to the ages of the ages, who created heaven and the things in it and the earth and the things in it and the sea and the things in it, "There will be no more time,	*He asked God, who lives forever and who created everything that exists, to confirm that what he said was true. The angel said that God would no longer delay in doing what he had planned to do.*

ULT **by the one living to the ages of the ages**
UST God, who lives forever

John assumes that his readers will understand that the angel is referring to God with this expression. You can indicate that explicitly in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [by the eternal God]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **to the ages of the ages**
UST forever

This expression refers to endless future time. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [for all eternity]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **heaven and the {things} in it and the earth and the {things} in it and the sea and the {things} in it**
UST everything that exists

The angel is using the three parts of creation to mean all of creation. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [the entire creation]
Support Reference: Merism

ULT **no more time**
UST no longer delay in doing what he had planned to do

In this context, the word **time** means a delay. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [no further delay]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
swore	He asked … to confirm that what he said was true
ages	forever
ages	forever
created	created
heaven	everything that exists
earth	everything that exists

Revelation 10:7

ULT	UST
but in the days of the sound of the seventh angel, when he is going to trumpet, then the mystery of God will be accomplished, just as he proclaimed to his own servants the prophets."	*He said that when the time came for the seventh angel to blow his trumpet, then God would finish his secret plan. That is what God told his servants the prophets long ago.*

ULT **but in the days of the sound of the seventh angel, when he is going to trumpet**
UST He said that when the time came for the seventh angel to blow his trumpet

These two phrases mean similar things. The angel is using repetition to emphasize the idea that the phrases express. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could combine them. Alternate translation: [but in the days when the seventh angel is going to sound a trumpet]
Support Reference: Parallelism

ULT **of the sound of the seventh angel**
UST the seventh angel to blow his trumpet

This possessive form does not describe what the **seventh angel** sounds like. Instead, it describes a **sound** that the seventh angel will make. Alternate translation: [when the seventh angel makes a sound]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **in the days of the sound**
UST when the time came for … to blow his trumpet

The angel is using the term **days** idiomatically to refer to a specific time. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [at the time of the sound]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **the mystery of God will be accomplished**
UST God would finish his secret plan

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [God will accomplish his mystery]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
days	time came for
angel	angel
trumpet	trumpet
mystery	secret plan
God	his
servants	servants
prophets	prophets

Revelation 10:8

ULT	UST
And the voice that I heard from heaven was speaking with me again and saying: "Go, take the opened scroll in the hand of the angel standing on the sea and on the land."	*Then the one whom I had heard speak from heaven spoke to me again. He said, "Go and take the open scroll from the hand of the angel who is standing on the ocean and on the land."*

ULT **the opened scroll in the hand of the angel standing on the sea and on the land**
UST the open scroll from the hand of the angel who is standing on the ocean and on the land

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [the scroll that the angel standing on the sea and on the land has opened and is holding in his hand]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
heaven	heaven
scroll	scroll
angel	angel

Revelation 10:10

ULT	UST
And I took the little scroll from the hand of the angel and ate it, and it was sweet like honey in my mouth, but when I had eaten it, my stomach was made bitter.	*So I took the little scroll from the angel's hand and ate it. When I ate it, it tasted sweet like honey, but after I ate it, my stomach hurt.*

> ULT **my stomach was made bitter**
> UST my stomach hurt

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [it made my stomach bitter]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
scroll	scroll
angel	angel's
ate	ate
sweet	honey

Revelation 10:11

ULT	UST
And they said to me, "It is necessary for you to prophesy again about many peoples and nations and languages and kings."	*Then someone said to me, "You must speak God's messages again about many nations, many people groups, speakers of many languages, and many kings."*

ULT **they said to me**
UST someone said to me

The pronoun **they** is an indefinite pronoun that does not have a specific referent in the immediate context. John is using this indefinite construction to focus on what he was told rather than on who told it to him. If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate this with a different expression that does not use an indefinite pronoun. Alternate translation: [I was told]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **many peoples and nations and languages and kings**
UST many nations, many people groups, speakers of many languages, and many kings

In this context, the terms **peoples**, **nations**, **languages**, and **kings** mean similar things. John is using the four terms together to make a comprehensive statement. If it would be clearer for your readers, you could express the emphasis with a single phrase. Alternate translation: [every different people group]

Support Reference: Doublet

ULT **many peoples and nations and languages and kings**
UST many nations, many people groups, speakers of many languages, and many kings

The angel is referring to speakers of various languages by association with the **languages** themselves, and John is referring to the subjects of various kingdoms by association with their **kings**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [many peoples and nations and speakers of many languages and subjects of many kingdoms]

Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
prophesy	speak God's messages
nations	people groups
languages	languages
kings	kings

Revelation 11

Revelation 11 Introduction

Revelation 11 Chapter Introduction

Structure and Formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with verses 15 and 17–18.

Woes

In 8:13, an angel announced three "woes" that the people living on the earth would suffer. Chapter 9 described the first woe. This chapter describes a second one.

Religious and Cultural Concepts in This Chapter

Gentiles

The word "Gentiles" here refers to ungodly people groups and not Gentile Christians. (See: godly, godliness, ungodly, godless, ungodliness, godlessness)

Two witnesses

This chapter describes two witnesses. Scholars have many different ideas about who they are. Translators do not need to understand their exact identities in order to translate this chapter accurately. (See: prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess)

Revelation 11:1

ULT	UST
And a reed like a measuring rod was given to me, saying, "Get up and measure the temple of God and the altar and the ones worshiping in it.	*Then an angel gave me a reed similar to a measuring stick. God said to me, "Go to my temple, measure it and the altar in it, and count the people who are worshiping there.*

ULT **a reed like a measuring rod was given to me, saying**
UST an angel gave me a reed similar to a measuring stick. God said to me

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who did the action, the context suggests that it was Jesus, since the same person speaks of "my two witnesses" in verse 3. Alternate translation: [Jesus gave me a reed like a measuring rod and said]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **a reed like a measuring rod**
UST a reed similar to a measuring stick

The point of this comparison is that this **reed** was long and straight and John could use it to mark off distances as he could with a **measuring rod**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could make this point explicitly. Alternate translation: [a reed that was long and straight so that I could use it to mark off distances, as I could with a measuring rod]

Support Reference: Simile

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
a reed	a reed
a measuring rod	a measuring stick
temple	temple
God	my
altar	altar
worshiping	worshiping

Revelation 11:2

ULT	UST
But cast out the courtyard outside the temple and do not measure it, for it has been given to the Gentiles, and they will trample the holy city for 42 months.	*But do not measure the courtyard outside of the temple building. I have given that to the non-Jewish people groups. As a result, they will oppress the people who live in the city of Jerusalem for 42 months.*

ULT **cast out the courtyard outside the temple and do not measure it**
UST do not measure the courtyard outside of the temple building

These two phrases mean similar things. John is using repetition to emphasize the idea that the phrases express. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could combine them. Alternate translation: [do not include the courtyard outside the temple in your measurements]
Support Reference: Parallelism

ULT **cast out the courtyard outside the temple**
UST do … measure the courtyard outside of the temple building

The person who is giving John these instructions is speaking as if John should literally **cast out** the courtyard, that is, fling it away through the air. He means that John should exclude the courtyard from his measurements. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [exclude the courtyard outside the temple]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **it has been given to the Gentiles**
UST I have given that to the non-Jewish people groups

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who did the action, the context suggests that it was God. Alternate translation: [God has given it to the Gentiles]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **holy city**
UST people who live in the city of Jerusalem

The person speaking with John assumes that he will understand that by **the holy city** he means Jerusalem. You could say that explicitly if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [the city of Jerusalem]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
temple	temple
Gentiles	to the non-Jewish people groups
trample	they will oppress
holy	people who live in the city of Jerusalem
months	months
holy city	people who live in the city of Jerusalem

Revelation 11:3

ULT	UST
And I will grant to my two witnesses, and they will prophesy for 1, 260 days, clothed in sackcloth."	*I will send two witnesses to announce what I reveal to them for 1, 260 days. They will show they are sad about the people's sin by wearing rough clothes that someone has woven from goat hair."*

ULT **I will grant**
UST I will send

The person speaking with John is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [I will grant authority]
Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **clothed in sackcloth**
UST They will show they are sad about the people's sin by wearing rough clothes that someone has woven from goat hair

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [wearing sackcloth]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **in sackcloth**
UST rough clothes that someone has woven from goat hair

See how you translated the word **sackcloth** in 6:12. These **witnesses** wore sackcloth while prophesying in order to show their sorrow and grief over the sins that people were committing against God. If this would not be clear to your readers, you could explain the significance of this action. Alternate translation: [sackcloth to show their grief and sorrow over sin]
Support Reference: Symbolic Action

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
witnesses	witnesses
prophesy	to announce what I reveal to them
days	days
sackcloth	rough clothes that someone has woven from goat hair

Revelation 11:4

ULT	UST
These are the two olive trees and the two lampstands that stand before the Lord of the earth.	*Those witnesses are the ones whom the two olive trees and the two lampstands represent. Those trees and lampstands are in the presence of the Lord, who rules the earth.*

ULT **These are the two olive trees and the two lampstands that stand before the Lord of the earth**

UST Those witnesses are the ones whom the two olive trees and the two lampstands represent. Those trees and lampstands are in the presence of the Lord, who rules the earth

The **two olive trees** and the **two lampstands** symbolize these witnesses, but they are not literally the witnesses. Alternate translation: [The two olive trees and the two lampstands that stood before the Lord of the earth represent these witnesses]

Support Reference: Symbolic Language

ULT **These are the two olive trees and the two lampstands that stand before the Lord of the earth**

UST Those witnesses are the ones whom the two olive trees and the two lampstands represent. Those trees and lampstands are in the presence of the Lord, who rules the earth

John assumes that his readers will understand that he is alluding to the vision had by the prophet Zechariah, who saw **two olive trees** and **two lampstands** in Zechariah 4:2–6. In that vision, the trees and lampstands represented the governor, Zerubbabel, and the high priest, Joshua, who led the rebuilding of the temple despite opposition. In the same way, the two witnesses in John's vision will faithfully call people to obey God despite opposition. You could indicate that explicitly in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [These two witnesses will serve God faithfully despite opposition just as Zerubbabel and Joshua did, whom the prophet Zechariah saw depicted as two olive trees and two lampstands in a vision that God gave him]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **that stand before**

UST are in the presence

In this context, the phrase **stand before** means to stay in the presence of another person in order to serve them whenever needed. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [who faithfully serve]

Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
olive	olive
lampstands	lampstands
Lord	Lord
earth	earth

Revelation 11:5

ULT	UST
And if anyone wishes to harm them, fire comes out from their mouth and devours their enemies, and if anyone should wish to harm them, he must be killed in this way.	*Now if anyone tries to harm those witnesses, they breathe fire out of their mouths and burn them up. In this way the two witnesses will certainly kill anyone who wants to harm them.*

ULT **fire comes out from their mouth**
UST they breathe fire out of their mouths

In a context such as this, your language might say "goes" instead of **comes**. Alternate translation: [fire goes out from their mouth]
Support Reference: Go and Come

ULT **their mouth**
UST of their mouths

Since John is referring to two people, it might be more natural in your language to use the plural form of **mouth** or the dual form if your language has it. Alternate translation: [their mouths]
Support Reference: Collective Nouns

ULT **devours their enemies**
UST burn them up

John is speaking as if **fire** literally **devours** or eats up anyone who would **wish to harm** these witnesses. He means that the fire destroys them completely. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [destroys their enemies completely]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **and if anyone should wish to harm them, he must be killed in this way**
UST In this way the two witnesses will certainly kill anyone who wants to harm them

This clause is essentially a repetition of the first clause in the verse. John is speaking in something like Hebrew poetry, which was based on this kind of repetition. It would be good to show this to your readers by including both phrases in your translation rather than combining them. However, if such repetition would not be natural in your language, you could connect the clauses with a word other than **and** in order to show that the second clause is repeating the first one, not saying something additional. It may be helpful to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: [Yes, if anyone should wish to harm them, he must be killed in this way]
Support Reference: Parallelism

ULT **he must be killed**
UST the two witnesses will certainly kill anyone

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [he must die]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
devours	burn … up
enemies	them

Revelation 11:6

ULT	UST
They have authority to close up the sky so that no rain might fall during the days of their prophesy, and they have power over the waters to turn them into blood and to strike the earth with every plague as often as they may desire.	*Those witnesses will have the authority to command no rain to fall from the sky during the time that they are announcing what God reveals to them. They also will have the authority to cause the water in lakes and streams to become blood. They will also have the authority to make many kinds of plagues happen on the earth. They will do these things when they sense that this will emphasize their message from God.*

ULT **to close up the sky so that no rain might fall**
UST to command no rain to fall from the sky

John is speaking as if these witnesses could literally **close up** the sky. As he goes on to say, he means that they will be able to prevent it from raining. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [to keep any rain from falling from the sky]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **during the days**
UST during the time that

John is using the term **days** to refer to a specific time. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [during the time]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
authority	authority
sky	sky
days	during the time that
prophesy	are announcing what God reveals to them
earth	earth
plague	plagues

Revelation 11:7

ULT	UST
And when they finish their testimony, the beast coming up from the abyss will make war against them, and he will conquer them and kill them.	*But when they have finished announcing their message from God, the beast that comes up from the deep, dark pit will attack them. The beast will defeat them and kill them.*

ULT **the beast coming up from the abyss**
UST the beast that comes up from the deep, dark pit

John describes this **beast** starting in 13:1, so you do not need to explain anything about it here.
Support Reference: When to Keep Information Implicit

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
testimony	announcing … message from God
beast	beast
abyss	deep, dark pit

Revelation 11:8

ULT	UST
And their corpses will be in the public square of the great city, which is spiritually called Sodom and Egypt, where also their Lord was crucified.	*Now the two witnesses were announcing God's message in the great city that people symbolically call Sodom because its people are very evil. People also call that city Egypt because its people treat God's people badly. That is also the city where Jesus, whom the witnesses were serving, died on a cross. To insult the witnesses, the people of the city will not bury their bodies. They will leave their bodies lying in the city's open area.*

ULT **of the great city**
UST the great city

John assumes that his readers will understand that by **the great city** he means Jerusalem. You could say that explicitly if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [Jerusalem]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **which is spiritually called**
UST that people symbolically call … People … call that city … That is … the city

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [which we may spiritually call]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **which is spiritually called Sodom and Egypt**
UST that people symbolically call Sodom because its people are very evil. People also call that city Egypt because its people treat God's people badly. That is … the city

The point of these comparisons is that God once destroyed Jerusalem because its people were so wicked, like **Sodom**, and that Jerusalem oppressed people who belonged to God, like **Egypt**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could make this point explicitly. Alternate translation: [which God destroyed for wickedness as he destroyed Sodom and which oppressed God's people as did Egypt]
Support Reference: Simile

ULT **their Lord**
UST Jesus, whom the witnesses were serving

John is referring to Jesus by a respectful title. Use a form for addressing someone respectfully in your language. Alternate translation: [their Lord Jesus]
Support Reference: Politeness

ULT **was crucified**
UST died on a cross

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [suffered crucifixion]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
called	call
Sodom	Sodom
Egypt	Egypt
Lord	Jesus, whom … were serving
crucified	died on a cross

Revelation 11:9

ULT	UST
And those from people and tribe and language and nation look at their corpses for three and a half days, and they do not permit their corpses to be placed in a tomb.	*Individuals from many people groups, tribes, language groups, and nations will look at those dead bodies for three and a half days. But the people of the city will not allow anyone to bury those bodies.*

ULT **those from people and tribe and language and nation look at**
UST Individuals from many people groups, tribes, language groups, and nations will look at

The terms **people**, **tribe**, **language**, and **nation** mean similar things. John is using the four terms together to make a comprehensive statement. If it would be clearer for your readers, you could express the emphasis with a single phrase. Alternate translation: [those from many different people groups look at]
Support Reference: Doublet

ULT **those from people and tribe and language and nation look at**
UST Individuals from many people groups, tribes, language groups, and nations will look at

John is referring to speakers of various languages by association with the **language** that each one speaks. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [those from different people groups and tribes, speakers of various languages, and those from other nations look at]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **they do not permit their corpses to be placed in a tomb**
UST the people of the city will not allow anyone to bury those bodies

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [they do not permit anyone to place their corpses in a tomb]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **they do not permit their corpses to be placed in a tomb**
UST the people of the city will not allow anyone to bury those bodies

Leaving the **corpses** of the witnesses in the street, rather than burying them, is a symbolic action by which the people of Jerusalem show how much they hated the witnesses. If this would not be clear to your readers, you could explain the significance of this action. Alternate translation: [out of hatred they do not permit anyone to place their corpses in a tomb]
Support Reference: Symbolic Action

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
tribe	tribes
language	language
nation	nations
days	days
tomb	to bury

Revelation 11:10

ULT	UST
And the ones living on the earth rejoice over them and celebrate and send gifts to one another, because these two prophets tormented the ones living on the earth.	*When the people who do not honor God see that the witnesses are dead, they will be very glad and hold a celebration. They will even send gifts to each other to celebrate. They will be so happy because the two prophets are dead who sent plagues that made them suffer.*

ULT **And the ones living on the earth rejoice over them and celebrate and send gifts to one another, because these two prophets tormented the ones living on the earth**
UST When the people who do not honor God see that the witnesses are dead, they will be very glad and hold a celebration. They will even send gifts to each other to celebrate. They will be so happy because the two prophets are dead who sent plagues that made them suffer

If it would be more natural in your language, you could reverse the order of these phrases, since the second phrase gives the reason for the result that the first phrase describes. Alternate translation: [Because these two prophets tormented the ones living on the earth, the ones living on the earth rejoice over them and celebrate and send gifts to one another]
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **rejoice over them and celebrate**
UST see that the witnesses are dead, they will be very glad and hold a celebration

The implication is that people **rejoice over** these witnesses because they are dead. You can provide this information in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [rejoice that they are dead, and they celebrate]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **send gifts to one another**
UST They will … send gifts to each other to celebrate

The people will **send gifts to one another** as a symbolic action to show how happy they are that the witnesses are dead. If this would not be clear to your readers, you could explain the significance of this action. Alternate translation: [send gifts to one another to show how happy they are that the witnesses are dead]
Support Reference: Symbolic Action

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
earth	people who do not honor God
rejoice	glad
tormented	who sent plagues that made … suffer
earth	them
prophets	prophets

Revelation 11:11

ULT	UST
But after three and a half days, a breath of life from God entered into them and they stood on their feet, and great fear fell on the ones seeing them.	*But after three and a half days, God will make them alive again. They will stop lying dead and stand up! The people who see them alive again will be terrified.*

ULT **a breath of life from God entered into them**
UST God will make them alive again

John is speaking of this **breath** as if it were a living thing that **entered into** the bodies of these witnesses on its own. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [God enabled them to live and breathe again]
Support Reference: Personification

ULT **they stood on their feet**
UST They will stop lying dead and stand up

It might seem that this expression contains extra information that would be unnatural to express in your language. If so, you could shorten it. Alternate translation: [they stood up]
Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

ULT **great fear fell on the ones seeing them**
UST The people who see them alive again will be terrified

John is speaking figuratively of **fear** as if it were a living thing that actively **fell** on people who saw the witnesses alive again. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [the ones seeing them became greatly afraid]
Support Reference: Personification

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
days	days
breath	will make them alive again
God	God
fear	will be terrified

Revelation 11:12

ULT	UST
And they heard a loud voice from heaven saying to them, "Come up here!" And they went up into heaven in a cloud, and their enemies watched them.	*Then the two witnesses will hear a loud voice from heaven saying to them: "Come up here!" Then they will go up into heaven in a cloud. Their enemies will watch them go up.*

ULT **they heard … to them … they went up … their … them**
UST the two witnesses will hear … to them … they will go up … Their … them

The pronouns **they**, **their** and **them** all refer to the witnesses, not to the people who were seeing them alive again. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [the witnesses heard … to them … the witnesses went up … their … them]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **Come up here**
UST Come up here

Since the voice is speaking to two people, the implied "you" in the imperative **Come up** would be dual if your language uses that form. Otherwise, it would be plural.
Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
heaven	heaven
heaven	heaven
enemies	enemies

Revelation 11:13

ULT	UST
And at that hour a great earthquake happened, and a tenth of the city fell. And in the earthquake, the names of 7, 000 men were killed, and the rest became terrified and gave glory to the God of heaven.	*At that same time there will be a great earthquake, as a result of which a tenth of the buildings in the city will collapse. That will kill 7, 000 people. The rest of the people will become very afraid and acknowledge that the true God had justly punished them for killing the witnesses.*

ULT **at that hour**
UST At that same time

John is using the term **hour** to refer to a specific time. He does not mean that the earthquake lasted for a full hour. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [at that time]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **a tenth of the city fell**
UST a tenth of the buildings in the city will collapse

John is not speaking of this **tenth of the city** as if it were a living thing that could fall down accidentally. He means that one **tenth** of the buildings in the city collapsed. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [one tenth of the buildings in the city collapsed]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **in the earthquake, the names of 7,000 men were killed**
UST That will kill 7, 000 people

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [the earthquake killed the names of seven thousand men]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **the names of 7,000 men**
UST 7, 000 people

Here, **names** represents people by association with the way that each person has a name. Alternate translation: [seven thousand men]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **of … men**
UST people

Although the term **men** is masculine, John is using the word in a generic sense that includes both men and women. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use a term in your language that is clearly inclusive of both men and women. Alternate translation: [of people]
Support Reference: When Masculine Words Include Women

ULT **gave glory to the God of heaven**

UST acknowledge that the true God had justly punished them for killing the witnesses

This expression does not imply that God lacks glory in any way or that people have glory that they can give to God. It means the people in the city honored God, acknowledging that God was just to punish them with the earthquake for killing the two witnesses. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [honored the God of heaven] or [acknowledged that the God of heaven had done the right thing]

Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
hour	same time
terrified	very afraid
glory	acknowledge that … had justly punished them for killing the witnesses
God	God
heaven	true

Revelation 11:14

ULT	UST
The second woe has passed. Behold, the third woe is coming quickly.	*That will be the second terrible event. Be aware that the third terrible event will happen soon afterwards.*

ULT **The second woe has passed**
UST That will be the second terrible event

See how you translated “The first woe is past” in 9:12. Alternate translation: [The second terrible event is over]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
woe	terrible event
woe	terrible event

Revelation 11:15

ULT	UST
And the seventh angel trumpeted, and loud voices happened in heaven, saying, "The kingdom of the world has become the kingdom of our Lord and of his Christ, and he will reign to the ages of the ages."	*Then the seventh angel blew his trumpet, and voices in heaven shouted loudly, "The Lord our God and the Messiah whom he has appointed will now rule all the people in the world! They will continue to rule those people forever!"*

ULT **the seventh angel**
UST the seventh angel

If your language does not use ordinal numbers, you could use a cardinal number here or an equivalent expression. Alternate translation: [angel number seven]
Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

ULT **The kingdom of the world has become {the kingdom} of our Lord and of his Christ**
UST The Lord our God and the Messiah whom he has appointed will now rule all the people in the world

The kingdom of the world could mean: (1) the system of sinful interests and institutions all over the **world** that is opposed to God. Alternate translation: [The kingdom of our Lord and his Christ will now replace the world-wide system that formerly opposed them]; or (2) the right to rule the people of the world. Alternate translation: [The kingdom of our Lord and his Christ will now include all the people in the world]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **The kingdom of the world has become {the kingdom} of our Lord and of his Christ**
UST The Lord our God and the Messiah whom he has appointed will now rule all the people in the world

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of a **kingdom**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: (1) [Our Lord and his Christ will now rule in place of the world-wide system that formerly opposed them]; or (2) [Our Lord and his Christ will now rule over all the people of the world]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **to the ages of the ages**
UST forever

This expression refers to endless future time. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [for all eternity]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
angel	angel
trumpeted	trumpet
heaven	heaven
kingdom	will now rule
world	world
Lord	Lord
Christ	Messiah
reign	rule
ages	forever
ages	forever

Revelation 11:16

ULT	UST
And the 24 elders sitting on their thrones before God fell upon their faces and worshiped God,	*The 24 elders who sit on thrones around God's throne bowed down with their faces on the ground and worshiped him.*

ULT before God
UST around God's throne

Here the word **before** means "in front of" or "in the presence of" another person. Alternate translation: [in the presence of God]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT fell upon their faces
UST bowed down with their faces on the ground

This expression means that the elders lay down facing the ground. See how you translated the similar expression in 7:11. Alternate translation: [bowed down to the ground]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
elders	elders
thrones	thrones
God	God's
fell	bowed down
worshiped	worshiped
God	him

Revelation 11:17

ULT	UST
saying, "We give thanks to you, Lord God, Ruler of All, the one being and the one having been, because indeed you have taken your great power and have reigned.	*They said: "Lord God, you are the one who rules over everything! You are the one who exists now! You are the one who has always existed! We thank you that you have so powerfully defeated everyone who has rebelled against you, and you now rule over all the people in the world.*

ULT **the one being and the one having been**

UST You are the one who exists now! You are the one who has always existed

Some ancient manuscripts read **the one being and the one having been**. ULT follows that reading. Other ancient manuscripts add "and who is to come." If a translation of the Bible exists in your region, you may wish to use the reading that it uses. If a translation of the Bible does not exist in your region, you may wish to use the reading of ULT.

Support Reference: Textual Variants

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Lord	Lord
God	God
Ruler of All	you are the one who rules over everything
reigned	rule

Revelation 11:18

ULT	UST
And the nations were enraged, but your wrath has come and the time for the dead to be judged, and to give a reward to your servants the prophets and to the saints and to the ones fearing your name, the small and the great, and to destroy the ones destroying the earth."	*The unbelieving people of the nations were raging angrily at you. As a result, you have punished them. You have decided that this is the right time for you to judge all those who have died. You are rewarding your servants who spoke your message and the people who belong to you, You are rewarding all those who honor you, whoever they are. You have decided that it is time for you to destroy the people who have been destroying the earth."*

ULT **the nations were enraged**
UST The unbelieving people of the nations were raging angrily at you

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [the nations were furious]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **your wrath has come and the time for the dead to be judged**
UST you have punished them. You have decided that this is the right time for you to judge all those who have died

John is speaking of God's **wrath** as if it were a living thing that **has come** to the **nations**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [you are now punishing them and judging the dead]
Support Reference: Personification

ULT **your wrath has come and the time**
UST you have punished them. You have decided that this is the right time

John is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [your wrath has come and the time has come]
Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **for the dead to be judged**
UST for you to judge all those who have died

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [for you to judge the dead]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **for the dead**
UST all those who have died

John is using the adjective **dead** as a noun to mean a certain kind of person. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you could translate this word with an equivalent phrase. Alternate translation: [people who have died]
Support Reference: Nominal Adjectives

ULT **to the ones fearing your name**
UST all those who honor you

Here, **name** represents a person by association with the way that each person has a name. Alternate translation: [the ones fearing you]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **the small and the great**
UST whoever they are

The elders are speaking as if unimportant people were literally **small** and as if important people were literally large or **great**. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [the unimportant and the important]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **the small and the great**
UST whoever they are

The elders are using the adjectives **small** and **great** as nouns to mean certain kinds of people. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you could translate these words with equivalent phrases. Alternate translation: [both unimportant people and important people]
Support Reference: Nominal Adjectives

ULT **the small and the great**
UST whoever they are

The elders are using two extremes of people, **small** and **great**, to mean them and everyone in between. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [whatever their status]
Support Reference: Merism

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
nations	nations
wrath	them
time	time
judged	judge
reward	rewarding
servants	servants
prophets	spoke your message
saints	the people who belong to you
fearing	honor
great	whoever they are
destroy	destroy
destroying	destroying
earth	earth

Revelation 11:19

ULT	UST
And the temple of God in heaven was opened and the ark of the covenant of the Lord was seen in his temple. And flashes of lightning and loud sounds and crashes of thunder and an earthquake and a great hailstorm happened.	*Then God opened the doors his temple in heaven, and in it I saw the sacred chest that contains symbols of God's promise. Lightning was flashing. I heard the rumbling of thunder. The earth shook, and large hailstones fell from the sky.*

ULT **the temple of God in heaven was opened and the ark of the covenant of the Lord was seen in his temple**

UST God opened the doors his temple in heaven, and in it I saw the sacred chest that contains symbols of God's promise

If your language does not use these passive forms, you could express the ideas in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [God opened his temple in heaven and I could see the ark of the covenant of the Lord in his temple]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **the temple of God in heaven was opened**

UST God opened the doors his temple in heaven

By this expression, John likely means by association that in his vision, God created some opening that allowed him to see into **the temple of God in heaven**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [God allowed me to look into his temple in heaven]

Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
temple	temple
God	God
heaven	heaven
ark	sacred chest
ark of the covenant	sacred chest that contains symbols of … promise
covenant	that contains symbols of … promise
Lord	God's
temple	it

Revelation 12

Revelation 12 Introduction

Revelation 12 Chapter Introduction

Structure and Formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with verses 10–12.

Religious and Cultural Concepts in This Chapter

Serpent

The book of Revelation uses imagery from the Old Testament. In this chapter, John refers to Satan as the serpent. This image comes from the account of the Garden of Eden when Satan tempted Eve. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Revelation 12:1

ULT	UST
And a great sign was seen in heaven: a woman clothed with the sun, and the moon under her feet, and a crown of 12 stars on her head,	*Then something very significant appeared in the sky. It was a woman who was wearing the sun as her clothing. She was standing on the moon. On her head was a crown that was made of 12 stars.*

ULT **a great sign was seen in heaven**

UST something very significant appeared in the sky

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [people saw a great sign in heaven]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **clothed with the sun**

UST who was wearing the sun as her clothing

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [whom the sun was clothing]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
sign	something … significant
heaven	sky
crown	crown

Revelation 12:2

ULT	UST
and having in the womb, and she cries out, suffering birth pains and being tormented to give birth.	*She was about to have a baby. She was screaming in pain because it was so difficult to deliver her baby.*

ULT having in the womb
UST She was about to have a baby

This expression means that the woman had a child in her **womb**, that is, she was pregnant. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [being pregnant]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT she cries out
UST She was screaming

To call attention to a development in the story, here John uses the present tense in past narration. If it would not be natural to do that in your language, you could use the past tense in your translation. Alternate translation: [she cried out]
Support Reference: Irregular Use of Tenses

ULT suffering birth pains and being tormented to give birth
UST in pain because it was so difficult to deliver her baby

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [suffering birth pains that tormented her as she gave birth]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT suffering birth pains and being tormented
UST in pain because it was so difficult

These two phrases mean similar things. John is using them together for emphasis. If it would be clearer for your readers, you could express the emphasis with a single phrase. Alternate translation: [suffering terrible birth pains]
Support Reference: Doublet

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
womb	She was about to have a baby
cries out	She was screaming

Revelation 12:3

ULT	UST
And another sign was seen in heaven: and behold, a large red dragon having seven heads and ten horns and seven diadems on his heads.	*Then something else significant appeared in the sky. It was a huge red dragon. It had seven heads and ten horns. It had a royal crown on each of its heads.*

ULT **another sign was seen**
UST something else significant appeared

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [people saw another sign]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **a large red dragon**
UST huge red dragon

A **dragon** is a mythical monster that looks like a giant reptile. As 12:9 explains, in this book the dragon represents the devil. If your readers would not be familiar with what a dragon is, you could use a general expression in your translation. Alternate translation: [a large red monster]
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
sign	something … significant
heaven	sky
horns	horns
diadems	crown

Revelation 12:4

ULT	UST
And his tail sweeps away a third of the stars of heaven and hurled them down to the earth. And the dragon stood before the woman being about to give birth so that when she gave birth he might devour her child.	*The dragon's tail dragged a third of the stars out of the sky and threw them onto the earth. The dragon set himself in front of the woman who was about to give birth so that he could eat her child as soon as he was born.*

ULT **sweeps away**
UST dragged … out of

To call attention to a development in the story, here John uses the present tense in past narration. If it would not be natural to do that in your language, you could use the past tense in your translation. Alternate translation: [swept]

Support Reference: Irregular Use of Tenses

ULT **a third**
UST a third

See how you translated this in 8:7. Alternate translation: [one third]

Support Reference: Fractions

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
heaven	sky
earth	earth
devour	he could eat

Revelation 12:5

ULT	UST
And she gave birth to a son, a male, who is going to rule all the nations with an iron scepter. And her child was snatched away to God and to his throne,	*Then the woman gave birth to a son. He is destined to rule all groups of people with complete authority. God snatched away this child for safety and brought him up to his throne in heaven.*

ULT **a son, a male**
UST to a son

The terms **son** and **male** mean similar things. John is using the two terms together for emphasis. If it would be clearer for your readers, you could express the emphasis with a single phrase. Alternate translation: [a boy]
Support Reference: Doublet

ULT **a male**
UST to a son

John is using the adjective **male** as a noun to mean a certain kind of person. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you could translate this word with an equivalent phrase. Alternate translation: [a male child]
Support Reference: Nominal Adjectives

ULT **with an iron scepter**
UST with complete authority

John is speaking as if this child will literally use **an iron scepter** to **rule all the nations**. He means that the child will rule with great strength by association with the way that **iron** is very strong. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. See how you translated the similar phrase in 2:27. Alternate translation: [with great strength] or [with irresistible power]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **an iron scepter**
UST with complete authority

A **scepter** was an ornamental staff or wand that rulers carried or held as a symbol of their authority. If your readers would not be familiar with what a scepter is, in your translation you could use the name of a comparable object in your culture or you could use a general expression. Alternate translation: [a royal staff made of iron]
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **her child was snatched away to God and to his throne**
UST God snatched away this child {for safety} and brought him up to his throne in heaven

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [God snatched away her child to his throne]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

> ULT **to God and to his throne**
> UST to his throne in heaven

This phrase expresses a single idea by using two words connected with **and**. The word **God** tells whose **throne** this is. If it would be more natural in your language, you could express this meaning with an equivalent phrase that does not use "and." Alternate translation: [to God's throne]

Support Reference: Hendiadys

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
to rule	to rule
nations	groups of people
an … scepter	with complete authority
God	throne in heaven
throne	throne

Revelation 12:6

ULT	UST
and the woman fled into the wilderness, where she has a place prepared by God there so that they might nourish her there for 1, 260 days.	*But the woman fled to a desolate region. God had made a place ready for her there where people would take care of her for 1, 260 days.*

ULT **where she has a place prepared by God there**
UST God had made a place ready for her there

It might seem that this expression, which says both **where** and **there**, contains extra information that would be unnatural to express in your language. If so, you could shorten it. Alternate translation: [where she has a place prepared by God]
Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

ULT **where she has a place prepared by God there**
UST God had made a place ready for her there

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [where God has prepared a place for her]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **they might nourish her**
UST people would take care of her

The pronoun **they** is an indefinite pronoun that does not refer to anyone in the immediate context. If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate this with a different expression that does not use an indefinite pronoun. Alternate translation: [she might receive nourishment]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
wilderness	desolate region
God	God
days	days

Revelation 12:8

ULT	UST
But he was not strong enough, nor was a place found for them any longer in heaven.	*But the dragon lost the battle, and God did not allow the dragon and his angels to stay in heaven after that.*

ULT **he was not strong enough**
UST lost the battle

The pronoun **he** refers to the dragon, not to Michael. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [the dragon was not strong enough]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **he was not strong enough**
UST lost the battle

John means by association that the dragon was **not strong enough** to prevail against Michael and his army. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [he was not able to prevail]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **was a place found for them**
UST God did … allow the dragon and his angels to stay

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [could anyone find a place for them]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
heaven	heaven

Revelation 12:9

ULT	UST
And the great dragon was thrown down, the ancient serpent called Diabolos and Satan, the one deceiving the whole world. He was thrown down to the earth and his angels were thrown down with him.	*Instead, God threw the huge dragon out of heaven. That dragon is the same evil spirit who appeared as a serpent long ago. His names are the Devil and Satan. He deceives everyone who lives in the world. God threw him and all of his angels down to the earth.*

ULT **the great dragon was thrown down**
UST God threw the huge dragon out of heaven

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. This could mean: (1) that God threw the dragon down after his angels defeated him. Alternate translation: [God threw down the dragon]; or (2) that Michael threw the dragon down to earth after defeating him in the war that they fought. Alternate translation: [Michael threw down the dragon]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **the ancient serpent called**
UST That dragon is the same evil spirit who appeared as a serpent long ago. His names are

John assumes that his readers will understand that he is alluding to the way the devil appeared in the form of a **serpent** when he tempted Adam and Eve in the Garden of Eden. This story is told in Genesis 3:1–15. You can include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [who tempted Adam and Eve in the form of a serpent, who is called]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **the ancient serpent**
UST That dragon is the same evil spirit who appeared as a serpent long ago

A **serpent** is the same animal that is also called a "snake." It is a reptile that has no legs and so slithers along the ground. If your readers would not be familiar with what a serpent or snake is, you could use a general expression. Alternate translation: [that ancient slithering reptile]
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **called**
UST His names are

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [whom people call]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **Diabolos**
UST the Devil

The word **Diabolos** is a name for the devil. Diabolos means "accuser" in Greek.
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **Satan**
UST Satan

The word **Satan** is a Hebrew name that means “accuser.” So his readers will know how it sounds, John spells it out using Greek letters after giving the Greek equivalent, **Diabolos**, so that his readers will know what it means. In your translation you could spell **Satan** the way it sounds in your language and use the word for “accuser” in your own language in place of **Diabolos** so that your readers will know what it means.

Support Reference: Copy or Borrow Words

ULT **the whole world**
UST everyone who lives in the world

Here the term **world** refers to the people who live in the world. If it would be clearer in your language, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [all the people of the world]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **He was thrown down to the earth and his angels were thrown down with him**
UST God threw him and all of his angels down to the earth

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. This could mean: (1) that God threw the dragon down after his angels defeated him. Alternate translation: [God threw the dragon down to the earth and he threw his angels down with him]; or (2) that Michael threw the dragon and his angels down to earth after defeating them in the war that they fought. Alternate translation: [Michael threw the dragon down to the earth and he threw his angels down with him]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
serpent	serpent
called	His names are
Diabolos	Devil
Satan	Satan
deceiving	deceives
world	world
earth	earth
angels	angels

Revelation 12:10

ULT	UST
And I heard a loud voice in heaven saying, "Now have come the salvation and the power and the kingdom of our God, and the authority of his Christ, because the accuser of our brothers has been thrown down, the one accusing them before our God day and night.	*Then I heard someone in heaven shout loudly, "Now our God has saved his people by his power, and he rules all people! Now his Messiah has begun to rule! This is because God has thrown the accuser of our fellow believers out of heaven. He was continually coming to God and accusing believers of doing wrong things.*

ULT **I heard a loud voice in heaven saying**
UST I heard someone in heaven shout loudly

John is referring to someone speaking by association with the **voice** that the person is using to speak. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [I heard someone saying loudly from heaven]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **Now have come the salvation and the power and the kingdom of our God, and the authority of his Christ**
UST Now our God has saved his people by his power, and he rules all people! Now his Messiah has begun to rule

If your language does not use abstract nouns for the ideas of **salvation**, **power**, **kingdom**, and **authority**, you could express the same ideas in other ways. It may be helpful to make this more than one sentence. Alternate translation: [Now our God has begun to save people. He has acted powerfully to establish his reign. His Christ is reigning with him]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **our … our … our**
UST our … our … God

This **voice** is addressing believers, since he refers to **our brothers**, so by **our** in each instance, the person speaking means himself and his addressees. So use the exclusive form of that word in your translation if your language marks that distinction.
Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

ULT **the accuser of our brothers has been thrown down**
UST God has thrown the accuser of our fellow believers out of heaven

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who did the action, the context suggests that it was God. Alternate translation: [God has thrown down the accuser of our brothers]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **of our brothers**
UST of our fellow believers

John is using the term **brothers** figuratively to mean people who share the same faith. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation, as in UST: [of our fellow believers]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **of our brothers**
UST of our fellow believers

Although the term **brothers** is masculine, here the word has a generic sense that includes both men and women. If you wish to retain the figurative expression in your translation, you could word it in a way that is clearly inclusive of both men and women. Alternate translation: [our brothers and sisters]
Support Reference: When Masculine Words Include Women

ULT **day and night**
UST continually

The voice is using the two parts of a full day, **day** and **night**, to mean all the time. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [all the time]
Support Reference: Merism

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
heaven	heaven
salvation	saved
kingdom of … God	God … he rules all people
authority	has begun to rule
Christ	Messiah
God	God
day	continually

Revelation 12:11

ULT	UST
And they conquered him through the blood of the Lamb and by the word of their testimony, indeed, they did not love their lives unto death.	*But our fellow believers overcame him. This is because the Lamb shed his blood as a sacrifice for them and because they spoke the truth about him to other people. They did not want just to stay alive. They were willing to die if necessary for speaking the truth about him.*

ULT **the blood**
UST shed his blood as a sacrifice for them

This could mean: (1) the actual **blood** that Jesus offered as a sacrifice for sin. In that case, you could use the word for "blood" in your language with literal meaning. (2) the sacrificial death of Jesus by association with the **blood** that Jesus shed when he died. Alternate translation: [the sacrificial death]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **the word of their testimony**
UST they spoke the truth about him to other people

The voice is using the term **word** to indicate that these believers gave their **testimony** to Jesus by speaking words. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [the testimony that they spoke]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **the word of their testimony**
UST they spoke the truth about him to other people

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **word**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [by what they said when they testified to others about Jesus]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **they did not love their lives unto death**
UST They did not want just to stay alive. They were willing to die if necessary for speaking the truth about him

This expression means that these believers did not **love their lives** so much they would refuse **death** even if they needed to die in order to remain faithful to Jesus. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [they did not love their lives so much that they would not die for Jesus]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Lamb	Lamb
testimony	the truth about him to other people
love	They did … want

Revelation 12:12

ULT	UST
Therefore, rejoice, heavens, and the ones dwelling in them! Woe to the earth and the sea, because the devil has gone down to you, having great anger, knowing that he has little time!”	*So all of you living in heaven should rejoice! But terrible things will happen to you people who live on the earth and travel on the ocean because the devil is now among you. He is very angry because he knows that he has only a short time before God judges and punishes him.”*

ULT **rejoice, heavens, and the ones dwelling in them**
UST all of you living in heaven should rejoice

The voice is speaking to the **heavens** as if they were a living thing that could **rejoice**. This may be something that readers could understand literally within the world of this vision. However, if it would be helpful to your readers, you could state the meaning differently. Alternate translation: [all of you who live in the heavens, rejoice in a way that can be heard throughout the heavens]

Support Reference: Personification

ULT **Woe to the earth and the sea**
UST But terrible things will happen to you people who live on the earth and travel on the ocean

The voice is speaking of the **earth** and the **sea** as if they were living things that could suffer **Woe**. This may be something that readers could understand literally within the world of this vision. However, if it would be helpful to your readers, you could state the meaning differently. Alternate translation: [Woe to all the creatures who live on the earth and in the sea]

Support Reference: Personification

ULT **he has little time**
UST he has only a short time before God judges and punishes him

The voice implicitly means that the devil knows that God will soon judge and punish him, and so he has **little time** left in which to resist God and try to turn people away from God. You can provide this information in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [he has little time left in which to keep resisting God]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
heavens	heaven
Woe	But terrible things will happen to
earth	earth
devil	devil
knowing	knows
time	time

Revelation 12:13

ULT	UST
And when the dragon saw that he had been thrown down to the earth, he pursued the woman who had borne the male.	*When the dragon realized that God had thrown him down to the earth, he tried to attack the woman who had given birth to a son.*

ULT **he had been thrown down**
UST God had thrown him down

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who did the action, the context suggests that it was God. Alternate translation: [God had thrown him down]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **the male**
UST a son

John is using the adjective **male** as a noun to mean a certain kind of person. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you could translate this word with an equivalent phrase. Alternate translation: [the male child]
Support Reference: Nominal Adjectives

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
earth	earth
he pursued	he tried to attack

Revelation 12:14

ULT	UST
But two wings of a great eagle were given to the woman so that she might fly to the wilderness, to her place where she is nourished there for a time and times and half a time, away from the face of the serpent.	*But God gave the woman two wings like the wings of a very large eagle. These enabled her to fly away to a desolate region. God had prepared a safe place for her there. In that place, God took care of her for three and one-half years. The serpent, that is, the dragon, was not able to reach her there.*

ULT **two wings of a great eagle were given to the woman**
UST God gave the woman two wings like the wings of a very large eagle

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who did the action, the context suggests that it was God. Alternate translation: [God gave two wings of a great eagle to the woman]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **where she is nourished there**
UST there. In that place, God took care of her

It might seem that this expression, which says both **where** and **there**, contains extra information that would be unnatural to express in your language. If so, you could shorten it. Alternate translation: [where she is nourished]
Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

ULT **for a time and times and half a time**
UST for three and one-half years

Since the vision describes the approximate number of days in three and a half years (1,260) in 12:6 and the number of months in three and a half years (42) in 13:5, it is probable that this number is also three and a half, so **times** means "two times." If your language uses the dual form, you could use that form for the word **times**. Otherwise, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [for a time and two times and half a time]
Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural

ULT **for a time and times and half a time**
UST for three and one-half years

Since this length of time during which the woman is **nourished** seems to be the same as in 12:6, it seems that three and a half years is intended. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could say that explicitly. Alternate translation: [for a year and two years and half a year] or [for three and a half years]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **the face of the serpent**
UST The serpent{, that is, the dragon,} was not able to reach her there

Here the word **face** represents the presence of a person by association with the way people can see the face of someone who is present. Alternate translation: [the presence of the serpent]
Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
eagle	eagle
wilderness	desolate region
time	for three and one-half years
times	for three and one-half years
time	for three and one-half years
serpent	serpent

Revelation 12:15

ULT	UST
And the serpent poured water like a river out from his mouth after the woman so that he might make her stream-borne.	*Then the serpent poured a flood of water out of his mouth toward the woman. He was trying to sweep her away with the water.*

ULT **water like a river**
UST a flood of water

John says that this **water** was **like a river** to emphasize how much water there was. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [a very large volume of water]
Support Reference: Simile

ULT **so that he might make her stream-borne**
UST He was trying to sweep her away with the water

Alternate translation: [in order to create a flood that would carry her away]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
serpent	serpent
stream-borne	sweep … away with the water

Revelation 12:16

ULT	UST
But the earth helped the woman, indeed, the earth opened its mouth and swallowed the river that the dragon poured out from his mouth.	*But the ground helped the woman. The ground opened up a big hole and the flood that the dragon poured out from his mouth went down into the hole.*

ULT **the earth helped the woman**
UST the ground helped the woman

John is speaking of **the earth** as if it were a living thing that **helped** this **woman**. This may be something that readers could understand literally within the world of this vision. However, if it would be helpful to your readers, you could state the meaning differently. Alternate translation: [something happened on the earth that helped the woman]
Support Reference: Personification

ULT **the earth opened its mouth**
UST The ground opened up a big hole

John is speaking as if the earth literally had a **mouth** and **swallowed** this **river**. He means that some kind of chasm opened up in the earth and the river flowed down into it. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [a chasm opened up in the earth and the river flowed down into it]
Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
earth	ground
earth	ground

Revelation 12:17

ULT	UST
And the dragon was enraged at the woman and went off to make war with the rest of her seed, the ones keeping the commandments of God and having the testimony of Jesus.	*Then the dragon was very angry with the woman, so he went away to fight against the rest of her children. They are the people who obey God's commandments and who speak the truth about Jesus.*

ULT **the dragon was enraged**
UST the dragon was very angry

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [this put the dragon in a rage]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **of her seed**
UST of her children

Here the term **seed** means offspring. It is a word picture. Just as plants produce seeds that grow into many more plants, so people can have many offspring. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [of her descendants]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **keeping**
UST They are the people who obey

See how you translated the word **keeping** in 1:3 and in 2:26. Alternate translation: [obeying]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **having the testimony of Jesus**
UST who speak the truth about Jesus

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **testimony**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [testifying to their faith in Jesus]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
seed	of … children
God	God's
testimony	who speak the truth about
Jesus	Jesus

Revelation 12:18

ULT	UST
And he stood on the sand of the sea.	*Then the dragon stood on the ocean shore.*

ULT **And he stood on the sand of the sea**
UST Then the dragon stood on the ocean shore

Some versions number this verse as the first verse of chapter 13. You may want to number the verses according to the main version that your language group uses.

ULT **the sand of the sea**
UST the ocean shore

John is referring to the shore of the sea by association with the sand that is along the shore on the beach. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [the shore of the sea]
Support Reference: Metonymy

Revelation 13

Revelation 13 Introduction

Revelation 13 Chapter Introduction

Structure and Formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the words of verse 10, which are from the Old Testament.

Translation Issues in This Chapter

Similes

John uses many similes in this chapter. They help to describe the images that he sees in his vision. (See: Simile)

Translation Issues in This Chapter

Religious and Cultural Concepts in This Chapter

Leopard, bear, and lion

The book of Revelation uses imagery from the Old Testament. In this chapter, John describes a beast that looked like a leopard, a bear, and a lion. This image comes from the book of Daniel. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Unknown animals

John uses different animals to try to describe what he saw. Some of these animals may not be known in the target language. (See: Translate Unknowns)

Revelation 13:2

ULT	UST
And the beast that I saw was like a leopard and its feet were as of a bear and its mouth was as the mouth of a lion, and the dragon gave to it his power and his throne and great authority.	*This beast was like a leopard, but its feet were like the feet of a bear. Its mouth was like the mouth of a lion. The dragon made the beast very powerful. He also gave him the supreme right to rule over people as their king.*

ULT **a leopard … of a bear … of a lion**
UST a leopard … the feet of a bear … of a lion

A **leopard** is a large, fierce cat that lives in the jungle. A **bear** is a large, heavy, powerful mammal that can be very dangerous if it feels threatened. A **lion** is a large, fierce cat that often lives on the plains. If your readers would not be familiar with these animals, in your translation you could the names of comparable animals that they would recognize, or you could use general descriptions.
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **his power and his throne**
UST very powerful. He also gave him … to rule over people as their king

John is referring to the dragon's right to rule by association with the **throne** on which a ruler would sit. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [his power and his right to rule]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **his power and his throne**
UST very powerful. He also gave him … to rule over people as their king

This phrase expresses a single idea by using two words connected with **and**. The word **throne** tells what kind of **power** the dragon gave to this beast. If it would be more natural in your language, you could express this meaning with an equivalent phrase that does not use "and." Alternate translation: [his ruling power] or [his power to rule]
Support Reference: Hendiadys

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
beast	beast
leopard	leopard
bear	bear
lion	lion
throne	to rule over people as their king
authority	the … right

Revelation 13:3

ULT	UST
And one of its heads was as if it had been slain unto death, but its wound of death had been healed. And the whole earth was astonished after the beast,	*One of the heads of the beast looked as if someone had wounded it so that it had died. But that wound had healed. As a result, all the people of the earth marveled at the beast and obeyed it.*

ULT **it had been slain unto death**
UST someone had wounded it so that it had died

It might seem that the expression **slain unto death** contains extra information that would be unnatural to express in your language. If so, you could shorten it. Alternate translation: [it had been slain]
Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

ULT **it had been slain unto death**
UST someone had wounded it so that it had died

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [someone had slain it]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **its wound of death had been healed**
UST that wound had healed

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [it had recovered from its wound of death]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **wound of death**
UST that wound

John is using a possessive form to describe a **wound** that led to **death**. Alternate translation: [deadly wound]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **the whole earth was astonished**
UST all the people of the earth marveled

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [this astonished the whole earth]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **the whole earth**
UST all the people of the earth

Here the term **earth** refers to the people who live on the earth. If it would be clearer in your language, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [all the people on earth]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **after the beast**
UST at the beast and obeyed it

John is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [and they followed after the beast] or, if you retain the term **earth**, [and it followed after the beast]
Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **after the beast**
UST at the beast and obeyed it

This expression, which is short for “followed after the beast,” means that the people on earth accepted the beast as their ruler. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and they accepted the beast as their ruler] or, if you retain the term **earth**, [and it accepted the beast as its ruler]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
earth	earth
beast	beast

Revelation 13:4

ULT	UST
and they worshiped the dragon because he had given authority to the beast, and they worshiped the beast, saying, "Who is like the beast, and who is able to war with it?"	*They worshiped the dragon because he had given the beast authority to rule over them. They also worshiped the beast. They said, "No one is as powerful as the beast! No one could ever fight against it!"*

ULT **Who {is} like the beast, and who is able to war with it**
UST No one is as powerful as the beast! No one could ever fight against it

The people of the earth are using the question form for emphasis. If you would not use the question form for this purpose in your language, you could translate this as a statement or as an exclamation. Alternate translation: [No one is like the beast, and no one is able to war with it!]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **Who {is} like the beast, and who is able to war with it**
UST No one is as powerful as the beast! No one could ever fight against it

These two phrases mean similar things. The people are using repetition to emphasize the idea that the phrases express. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could combine them. Alternate translation: [Who is strong enough to war with the beast?] or [No one is strong enough to war with the beast!]
Support Reference: Parallelism

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
worshiped	worshiped
authority	authority
beast	beast
worshiped	worshiped
beast	beast
beast	beast

Revelation 13:5

ULT	UST
And to it was given a mouth speaking great things and blasphemies, and authority was given to it to act for 42 months.	*The dragon enabled the beast to speak proudly and to insult God. The dragon also enabled it to rule the people on earth. But God would only allow the beast to rule for 42 months.*

ULT **to it was given**
UST The dragon enabled the beast

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who did the action, the context suggests that it was the dragon. Alternate translation: [the dragon gave it]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **a mouth speaking**
UST to speak

John is referring to the capacity to speak by association with the **mouth** that people use to speak. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [the capacity to speak, and it spoke]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **great things**
UST proudly

The implication is that the beast spoke **great things** about itself. You can provide this information in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [great things about itself] or [boasts]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **authority was given to it**
UST The dragon … enabled it to rule the people on earth

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who did the action, the context suggests that it was the dragon. Alternate translation: [the dragon gave it authority]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
blasphemies	to insult God
authority	to rule the people on earth
months	months

Revelation 13:6

ULT	UST
And it opened its mouth unto blasphemies against God, to blaspheme his name and his dwelling, the ones dwelling in heaven.	*When the beast spoke, it insulted God. It said that God was not really like what people believed him to be like. The beast also insulted the people in heaven among whom God lives.*

ULT **it opened its mouth unto**

UST When the beast spoke, it insulted

John is referring to the beast speaking by association with **it opened its mouth** in order to speak. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [it spoke]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **his name**

UST God was not really like what people believed him to be like

Here the word **name** stands for the reputation of a person. Alternate translation: [his reputation]

Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
blasphemies	it insulted
God	God
blaspheme	It said that … The beast … insulted
dwelling	among whom … lives
heaven	heaven

Revelation 13:7

ULT	UST
And to it was granted to make war with the saints and to conquer them, and authority was given to it over every tribe and people and language and nation.	*The dragon enabled the beast to fight against God's people and conquer them. The dragon also gave the beast the right to rule over people no matter what tribe they came from or what group they belonged to or what language they spoke or where they lived.*

ULT **to it was granted**

UST The dragon enabled the beast

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. This could mean: (1) that the dragon enabled the beast to do this. Alternate translation: [the dragon enabled it]; or (2) that God allowed the beast to do this. Alternate translation: [God allowed it]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **authority was given to it**

UST The dragon … gave the beast the right to rule

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who did the action, the context suggests that it was the dragon. Alternate translation: [the dragon gave it authority]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **every tribe and people and language and nation**

UST people no matter what tribe they came from or what group they belonged to or what language they spoke or where they lived

The terms **tribe**, **people**, **language**, and **nation** mean similar things. John is using the four terms together to make a comprehensive statement. If it would be clearer for your readers, you could express the emphasis with a single phrase. Alternate translation: [every different people group]

Support Reference: Doublet

ULT **every tribe and people and language and nation**

UST people no matter what tribe they came from or what group they belonged to or what language they spoke or where they lived

John is referring to speakers of various languages by association with the **languages** themselves. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [every tribe and people and speakers of every language and every nation]

Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
saints	God’s people
authority	the right to rule
tribe	tribe
language	language
nation	where they lived

Revelation 13:8

ULT	UST
And all the ones living on the earth will worship it, of whom his name has not been written in the Book of Life of the Lamb having been slain from the foundation of the world.	*The names of some of the people living on earth do not appear in the Book of Life. Those people will worship the beast. The Book of Life belongs to the Lamb. The Lamb gave up his life at the beginning of the world in order to become the Savior.*

ULT **of whom his name has not been written in the Book of Life of the Lamb having been slain from the foundation of the world**

UST The names of some … do not appear in the Book of Life … The Book of Life belongs to the Lamb. The Lamb gave up his life at the beginning of the world in order to become the Savior

This could mean implicitly: (1) that the Lamb was slain from the foundation of the world, that is, God's purpose from before all time was for Jesus to give his life as a sacrifice. Alternate translation: [all whose names are not written in the Book of Life that belongs to the Lamb whom God appointed from the foundation of the world to die as a sacrifice]; or (2) that if a person worships the beast, this means that his name was not written in the Book of Life … from the foundation of the world. Alternate translation: [all whose names have not been written in the Book of Life of the Lamb having been slain from the foundation of the world]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **of whom his name has not been written**

UST The names of some … do not appear

Since John is referring to a group of people, it might be more natural in your language to use the plural form of **name**. Alternate translation: [those whose names have not been written]

Support Reference: Collective Nouns

ULT **of whom his name has not been written**

UST The names of some … do not appear

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who did the action, the context suggests that it was God. Alternate translation: [those whose names God has not written]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **having been slain**

UST The Lamb gave up his life … in order to become the Savior

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [whom God appointed to die as a sacrifice]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **from the foundation of the world**

UST at the beginning of the world

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **foundation**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [since God founded the world]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
earth	earth
worship	worship
Book	Book … Book
Book of Life	Book of Life
Lamb	Lamb
foundation	the beginning
the foundation of the world	the beginning of the world
world	world

Revelation 13:9

ULT	UST
If anyone has an ear, let him hear.	*Everyone who wants to understand must listen carefully to this message from God.*

ULT **If anyone has an ear, let him hear**
UST Everyone who wants to understand must listen carefully to this message from God

John is addressing his listeners in the third person. It may be clearer in your language to use the second person. Alternate translation: [If any of you has an ear, you should hear]
Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

ULT **If anyone has an ear**
UST Everyone who wants to understand

John is referring to the ability to hear by association with the way having an **ear** enables people to hear. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [If anyone is able to hear]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **let him hear**
UST must listen carefully to this message from God

If your language does not use the third-person imperative in this way, you could state this in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [may he hear] or [he should hear]
Support Reference: Third-Person Imperatives

Revelation 13:10

ULT	UST
If anyone is for captivity, he departs; if anyone will be killed by the sword, it is necessary for him to be killed by the sword. Here is the endurance and the faith of the saints.	*If anyone's enemies are going to capture him, they will capture him. If anyone's enemies are going to kill him with a sword, they will kill him with a sword. So God's people must endure suffering and remain faithful to him.*

ULT **If anyone {is} for captivity**
UST If anyone's enemies are going to capture him

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **captivity**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [If anyone's enemies are going to take him captive]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **if anyone will be killed by the sword, it is necessary for him to be killed by the sword**
UST If anyone's enemies are going to kill him with a sword, they will kill him with a sword

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [if anyone's enemies will kill him by the sword, it is necessary for them to kill him by the sword]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **if anyone will be killed by the sword, it is necessary for him to be killed by the sword**
UST If anyone's enemies are going to kill him with a sword, they will kill him with a sword

John is referring to execution by association with the way the Romans used a **sword** to execute people. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [if anyone will be executed, it is necessary for him to be executed] or [if anyone's enemies will execute him, it is necessary for them to execute him]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **Here is the endurance and the faith of the saints**
UST So God's people must endure suffering and remain faithful to him

The expression **Here is** introduces something that the speaker is calling for. Alternate translation: [This calls for endurance and faith on the part of the saints]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **Here is the endurance and the faith of the saints**
UST So God's people must endure suffering and remain faithful to him

If your language does not use abstract nouns for the ideas of **endurance** and **faith**, you could express the same ideas in other ways. Alternate translation: [This calls for the saints to endure and to be faithful]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
captivity	enemies are going to capture him
sword	sword
sword	sword
endurance	endure
faith	remain faithful to him
saints	God’s people

Revelation 13:11

ULT	UST
And I saw another beast coming up from the earth, and it had two horns like a lamb but it was speaking like a dragon.	*Then I saw another beast come up from the earth. It had two small horns on its head as a sheep has. But its voice sounded like a dragon's voice.*

ULT **it was speaking like a dragon**

UST its voice sounded like a dragon's voice

The point of this comparison is that this beast was **speaking** in a way that showed it was evil, like the dragon that is a symbol of evil in this book. If it would be helpful in your language, you could make this point explicitly. Alternate translation: [it was speaking in a way that showed it was evil, like a dragon]

Support Reference: Simile

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
beast	beast
earth	earth
horns	horns
lamb	a sheep has

Revelation 13:12

ULT	UST
And it exercises all the authority of the first beast before it, and it makes the earth and the ones living on it that they will worship the first beast, of whom his wound of death had been healed.	*This beast from the earth carries out all the orders of the beast from the sea. It requires the people who live on the earth to worship the beast from the sea. That is the beast that almost died but whose wound healed.*

ULT **before it**
UST This beast from the earth carries out … the orders

Here the word **before** means "in front of" or "in the presence of" another person. Alternate translation: [in its presence]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **of whom his wound of death had been healed**
UST That is the beast that almost died but whose wound healed

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [who had recovered from his wound of death]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **wound of death**
UST that almost died … wound

John is using a possessive form to describe a **wound** that led to **death**. Alternate translation: [deadly wound]
Support Reference: Possession

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
authority	This beast from the earth carries out … the orders
beast	beast
earth	earth
worship	worship
beast	beast

Revelation 13:13

ULT	UST
And it does great signs, so that it might even cause fire to come down from heaven to the earth before men.	*The beast from the earth also did amazing miracles. It even caused fire to fall from the sky onto the earth while people watched.*

ULT **signs**
UST miracles

John is not using the word **signs** here and in the next verse to mean the same thing that he does when he speaks of signs in 12:1 and 12:3. Here he does not mean significant sights, but miracles. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [miracles]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **before men**
UST while people watched

The term **before** here means "in front of." Alternate translation: [in front of men] or [where men could see them]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **men**
UST people

Although the term **man** is masculine, John is using the word in a generic sense that includes both men and women. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use a term in your language that is clearly inclusive of both men and women. Alternate translation: [people]
Support Reference: When Masculine Words Include Women

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
great	amazing
signs	miracles
heaven	sky
earth	earth

Revelation 13:14

ULT	UST
And it deceives the ones living on the earth through the signs that have been granted to it to do before the beast, telling the ones living on the earth to make an image to the beast that has the wound of the sword and has lived.	*The dragon gave the beast from the earth the power to do these miracles on behalf of the beast from the sea. The beast from the earth used the miracles to deceive the people who live on the earth. It told them to make an idol that looked like the beast from the sea. That was the beast that survived a sword wound that seemed to kill it.*

ULT **the signs that have been granted to it to do**
UST The dragon gave the beast from the earth the power to do these miracles … the miracles

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who did the action, the context suggests that it was the dragon. Alternate translation: [the signs that the dragon has granted it to do]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **before the beast**
UST on behalf of the beast from the sea

Here the word **before** means "in front of" or "in the presence of" another person. Alternate translation: [in the presence of the beast]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **to the beast**
UST the beast from the sea

While John says in the next verse that this was an image "of the beast," that is, an image that looked like the beast, here the expression **to the beast** means "in honor of the beast." You can provide this information in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [in honor of the beast]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
deceives	deceive
earth	earth
signs	miracles … the miracles
beast	beast
earth	them
image	an idol that looked like
beast	beast
sword	sword

Revelation 13:15

ULT	UST
And it was granted to it to give breath to the image of the beast so that the image of the beast might even speak and might cause whoever does not worship the image of the beast to be killed.	*The dragon gave the beast from the earth the power to make that idol live. Then the idol that looked like the beast from the sea was able to speak. The beast from the earth then commanded that anyone who refused to worship the idol would be killed.*

ULT **it was granted to it**

UST The dragon gave the beast from the earth the power

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who did the action, the context suggests that it was the dragon. Alternate translation: [the dragon enabled it]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **to give breath to the image of the beast**

UST to make that … live … idol

John is referring to the **image of the beast** coming alive by association with the **breath** that creatures breathe when they are alive. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [to make the image of the beast come alive]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **might cause whoever does not worship the image of the beast to be killed**

UST The beast from the earth … commanded that anyone who refused to worship the idol would be killed

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [might cause people to kill whoever does not worship the image of the beast]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
image	idol
beast	that
image	idol … that looked like
beast	beast
worship	worship
image	idol
beast	idol

Revelation 13:16

ULT	UST
And it causes everyone, the small and the great and the rich and the poor and the free and the slave, that they might give to them a mark on their right hand or on their forehead,	*The beast from the earth also required each person to have a mark on his right hand or on his forehead. This requirement applied to important people and unimportant people. It applied to people who were rich and people who were poor. It applied to free people and to slaves. It applied to everyone!*

ULT **it causes**
UST The beast from the earth … required

The pronoun **it** refers to the second beast, not to the image of the first beast. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [the second beast causes]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **the small and the great and the rich and the poor and the free and the slave**
UST This requirement applied to important people and unimportant people. It applied to people who were rich and people who were poor. It applied to free people and to slaves

John is using the adjectives **small**, **great**, **rich**, **poor**, **free**, and **slave** as nouns to mean certain kinds of people. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you could translate these words with equivalent phrases. Alternate translation: [small people and great people and rich people and poor people and free people and slaves]
Support Reference: Nominal Adjectives

ULT **the small and the great and the rich and the poor and the free and the slave**
UST This requirement applied to important people and unimportant people. It applied to people who were rich and people who were poor. It applied to free people and to slaves

John is using two extremes of importance, **small** and **great**, to mean people across the entire range of importance. John is using two extremes of wealth, **rich** and **poor**, to mean people across the entire range of wealth. John is using two extremes of status, **free** and **slave**, to mean people across the entire range of status. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use equivalent expressions or plain language. Alternate translation: [no matter what their importance and no matter what their wealth and no matter what their status]
Support Reference: Merism

ULT **the small and the great and the rich and the poor and the free and the slave**
UST This requirement applied to important people and unimportant people. It applied to people who were rich and people who were poor. It applied to free people and to slaves

These three phrases mean similar things. John is using repetition to emphasize the idea that the phrases express. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could combine them. Alternate translation: [people of every different kind]
Support Reference: Parallelism

ULT **the small and the great**

UST This requirement applied to important people and unimportant people

John is speaking as if unimportant people were literally **small** and as if important people were literally large or **great**. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [the unimportant and the important] or [unimportant people and important people]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **they might give to them**

UST to have

The pronoun **they** is an indefinite pronoun that does not refer to anyone in the immediate context. If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate this with a different expression that does not use an indefinite pronoun. Alternate translation: [they might have to receive]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
great	important people
free	free
slave	slaves

Revelation 13:17

ULT	UST
and that no one would be able to buy or to sell except the one having the mark, the name of the beast or the number of its name.	*Then the beast from the earth ordered that no one could buy or sell anything if he did not have this mark. This mark was the name of the beast from the sea or the number that stood for its name.*

ULT **the number of its name**

UST the number that stood for its name

In this culture, people used the letters of the alphabet as symbols for numbers as well. As a result, it was possible to add up the values of the letters in someone's name to get the **number** of that **name**. That is what John means implicitly here. If your readers would not be familiar with this practice, you could explain it in your translation. Alternate translation: [the sum of the numerical values of the letters in its name]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
beast	beast

Revelation 13:18

ULT	UST
Here is wisdom: The one having understanding, let him calculate the number of the beast. For it is the number of a man, and its number is 666.	*You must think wisely about this: Anyone who understands things well can figure out the identity of the beast from the sea. That is because the number that stands for its name actually represents the name of a man. That number is 666.*

ULT **Here is wisdom**
UST You must think wisely about this

The expression **Here is** introduces something that the speaker is calling for. Alternate translation: [This calls for wisdom]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **let him calculate**
UST can figure out

If your language does not use the third-person imperative in this way, you could state this in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [may he calculate] or [he should calculate]
Support Reference: Third-Person Imperatives

ULT **the number of the beast**
UST the identity

See the note about "the number of its name" in 13:17. Here John means implicitly that this number is the sum of the numerical values of the letters in the name of a certain man. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could say that explicitly. Alternate translation: [the sum of the numerical values of the letters in the name of a certain man]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
wisdom	You must think wisely about this
understanding	understands
beast	τοῦ θηρίου

Revelation 14

Revelation 14 Introduction

Revelation 14 Chapter Introduction

Translation Issues in This Chapter

Harvest

Harvest is when people go out to gather ripe food from plants. Jesus used this as a metaphor to teach his followers that they need to go and tell other people about him so those people can be part of God's kingdom. This chapter speaks symbolically of two harvests. The first is a harvest of grain. This may mean the time when Jesus gathers in his people from the whole earth. The second harvest is of grapes. This may mean the time when God gathers in wicked people to punish them. (See: Metaphor; and faith)

Revelation 14:1

ULT	UST
And I looked and behold, the Lamb standing on Mount Zion, and with him were 144 thousands having his name and the name of his Father written on their foreheads.	*But then I saw the Lamb standing on Mount Zion in Jerusalem. With him were 144, 000 people. He had written his name and his Father's name on their foreheads.*

ULT **Mount Zion**
UST Mount Zion in Jerusalem

The word **Zion** is the name of the mountain on which the city of Jerusalem is located.
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **were 144 thousands**
UST were 144, 000 people

See how you translated this in Revelation 7:4. Alternate translation: [one hundred forty-four thousand]
Support Reference: Numbers

ULT **having his name and the name of his Father written on their foreheads**
UST He had written his name and his Father's name on their foreheads

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. It may be helpful to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: [His name and the name of his Father appeared in writing on their foreheads]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **of … Father**
UST Father's

Father is an important title that describes the relationship between God and Jesus. Be sure to retain this title in your translation.
Support Reference: Translating Son and Father

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Lamb	Lamb
Mount Zion	Mount Zion
Father	Father's

Revelation 14:2

ULT	UST
And I heard a sound from heaven like the sound of many waters and like the sound of great thunder, and the sound that I heard was like harpists harping on their harps.	*I also heard a sound from heaven. It was as loud as the sound of a huge waterfall or of mighty thunder. It also sounded like many people playing on harps.*

ULT **like the sound of many waters and like the sound of great thunder**
UST It was as loud as the sound of a huge waterfall or of mighty thunder

The point of these comparisons is that the **sound** John **heard** was loud and powerful. If it would be helpful in your language, you could make this point explicitly. Alternate translation: [that was loud and powerful, like the sound of many waters and like the sound of booming thunder]
Support Reference: Simile

ULT **of many waters**
UST of a huge waterfall

By **sound of many waters**, John could mean a loud waterfall or raging floodwaters. See how you translated the similar expression in 1:15. Alternate translation: [of a waterfall] or [of raging floodwaters]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **was like harpists harping on their harps**
UST sounded like many people playing on harps

The point of this comparison is that the **sound** that John **heard** was also beautiful and melodious. (John explains in the next verse that it was the sound of a great number of people singing.) If it would be helpful in your language, you could make this point explicitly. Alternate translation: [beautiful and melodious, like harpists harping on their harps]
Support Reference: Simile

ULT **was like harpists harping on their harps**
UST sounded like many people playing on harps

John's repetitive use of three words with the root "harp" seems to imitate the sound of music. You may wish to use three similar words in your translation if that is possible in your language.
Support Reference: Poetry

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
heaven	heaven
harps	harps

Revelation 14:3

ULT	UST
And they sing a new song before the throne and before the four living creatures and the elders, and no one was able to learn the song except the 144 thousands having been bought from the earth.	*This sound was of the people I saw singing a new song. They were standing in front of the throne and the four living creatures and the elders. The Lamb had saved these 144, 000 people from among all the people on the earth. Only they could learn that song.*

ULT **they sing**
UST the people I saw singing

The pronoun **they** refers to the **144 thousands** whom John describes in 14:1 and later in this verse. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [the 144 thousands sing] or [the 144,000 people sing]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **no one was able to learn the song except the 144 thousands**
UST these 144, 000 people … Only they could learn that song

If it would appear in your language that John was contradicting himself by saying that **no one** could learn the song and then naming people who could learn the song, you could reword this to avoid using an exception clause. Alternate translation: [the only ones who were able to learn the song were the 144 thousands]
Support Reference: Connect — Exception Clauses

ULT **having been bought**
UST The Lamb had saved

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who did the action, 5:9 indicates that it was the Lamb. Alternate translation: [whom the Lamb bought]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **having been bought**
UST The Lamb had saved

John is speaking as if the Lamb literally **bought** these people. He means that through his sacrificial death, the Lamb saved them by setting them free from the guilt and power of sin. Your language may have a term that you can use in your translation that describes someone paying a price or making a sacrifice to set someone else free. See what you did in 5:9. Alternate translation: [whom the Lamb redeemed]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **from the earth**
UST from among all the people on the earth

John is referring to the inhabitants of the earth by association with the **earth** on which they live. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [from among the inhabitants of the earth]
Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
throne	throne
creatures	creatures
elders	elders
earth	earth

Revelation 14:4

ULT	UST
These are they who have not been defiled with women, for they are virgins. These are the ones following the Lamb wherever he goes. These have been bought from among men as first fruits for God and for the Lamb,	*Those 144, 000 people are spiritually pure, as virgins are morally pure. They have not made themselves impure by worshiping any false god. They are the ones who accompany Jesus, the one who is like a lamb, wherever he goes. They represent all those whom he has saved so far from among the people of the earth. Those who have believed in Jesus will share their faith and lead many others to believe in God and Jesus.*

ULT **These are they who have not been defiled with women, for they are virgins**
UST Those 144, 000 people are spiritually pure, as virgins are morally pure. They have not made themselves impure by worshiping any false god … are

John is speaking as if the people who are singing have literally never had sexual relations. In context, he most likely means that they have not worshiped idols. Having sexual relations outside of marriage, or not waiting until marriage to have sexual relations, is a common Old Testament image for idol worship. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [These are they who have not worshiped idols, for they are faithful to God]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **have not been defiled with women**
UST have not made themselves impure by worshiping any false god

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. John is not saying that women make men **defiled**. He is saying that sexual relations outside of marriage are sinful. In your translation, be sure that this is clear to your readers. Alternate translation: [have not committed immoral acts with women]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **the ones following the Lamb wherever he goes**
UST the ones who accompany Jesus, the one who is like a lamb, wherever he goes

This statement may be one that readers could understand literally within the world of this vision. However, in the New Testament, **following** someone often means being that person's disciple and obeying his teaching. That could be what John means here. Alternate translation: [the ones who obey the Lamb no matter what he asks]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **These have been bought**
UST They represent all those whom he has saved so far

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. See what you did in 14:3. Alternate translation: [The Lamb bought them]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **These have been bought**
UST They represent all those whom he has saved so far

See how you translated this in 14:3. Alternate translation: [These the Lamb redeemed]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **from among men**
UST from among the people of the earth

Although the term **man** is masculine, John is using the word in a generic sense that includes both men and women. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use a term in your language that is clearly inclusive of both men and women. Alternate translation: [from among humanity]
Support Reference: When Masculine Words Include Women

ULT **as first fruits for God and for the Lamb**
UST Those who have believed in Jesus will share their faith and lead many others to believe in God and Jesus

John is speaking as if these people were literally the **first fruits** of a harvest. He means that they are the first of many people who will eventually believe in Jesus. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [as the first of many people who will believe in God and Jesus]
Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
defiled	have … made themselves impure
virgins	virgins
Lamb	lamb
have been bought	all those whom he has saved so far
as first fruits	Those who have believed in Jesus will share their faith and lead many others to believe
God	God
Lamb	Jesus

Revelation 14:5

ULT	UST
and no lie has been found in their mouth, for they are blameless.	*These people never denied Jesus. They always lived pure lives.*

ULT **no lie has been found in their mouth**
UST These people never denied Jesus

Since John is referring to a group of people, it might be more natural in your language to use the plural form of **mouth**. Alternate translation: [no lie has been found in their mouths]
Support Reference: Collective Nouns

ULT **no lie has been found in their mouth**
UST These people never denied Jesus

Here the expression **has been found** means "could be found" or "was there." Alternate translation: [there was no lie in their mouths]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **no lie has been found in their mouth**
UST These people never denied Jesus

John is referring to people speaking by association with the way that a person speaks with his **mouth**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [they have told no lies]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **no lie has been found in their mouth**
UST These people never denied Jesus

If it would be clearer in your language, you could use a positive expression to translate this double negative that consists of the negative particle **no** and the negative word **lies**. Alternate translation: [they have always told the truth]
Support Reference: Double Negatives

ULT **no lie has been found in their mouth**
UST These people never denied Jesus

The implication is that these people have told **no lie** about who Jesus is, despite the pressure they have been facing to deny that he is Lord and Savior. You can provide this information in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [they have always told the truth about who Jesus is]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **for they are blameless**
UST They always lived pure lives

Some ancient manuscripts read **for they are blameless**. ULT follows that reading. Other ancient manuscripts add "before the throne of God." If a translation of the Bible exists in your region, you may wish to use the reading that it uses. If a translation of the Bible does not exist in your region, you may wish to use the reading of ULT.
Support Reference: Textual Variants

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
blameless	pure lives

Revelation 14:6

ULT	UST
And I saw another angel flying in midair, having the eternal gospel to proclaim to the ones living on the earth, even to every nation and tribe and language and people,	*Then I saw another angel flying through the sky. He was bringing God's eternal good news from heaven so that he could proclaim it to the people who live on earth. He will proclaim it to every nation, to every tribe, to speakers of every language, and to every people group.*

ULT **to every nation and tribe and language and people**

UST to every nation, to every tribe, to speakers of every language, and to every people group

The terms **nation**, **tribe**, **language**, and **people** mean similar things. John is using the four terms together to make a comprehensive statement. If it would be clearer for your readers, you could express the emphasis with a single phrase. Alternate translation: [every different people group]

Support Reference: Doublet

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
angel	angel
eternal	eternal
gospel	good news
earth	earth
nation	nation
tribe	tribe
language	language

Revelation 14:7

ULT	UST
saying in a loud voice, "Fear God and give him glory, because the hour of his judgment has come, and worship the one having made the heaven and the earth and the sea and the springs of water."	*He said in a loud voice, "Honor God and praise him because it is now time for him to judge everyone! Worship him because he is the one who created heaven and earth and the ocean and the fresh water."*

ULT **the hour of his judgment has come**
UST it is now time for him to judge everyone

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **judgment**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [the hour has come when he will judge]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **the hour of his judgment has come**
UST it is now time for him to judge everyone

The angel is using the word **hour** by association to mean a specific time. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [the time of his judgment has come] or [the time has come when he will judge]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **the heaven and the earth and the sea and the springs of water**
UST heaven and earth and the ocean and the fresh water

The angel is using four main components of creation to mean all of creation. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [everything that exists]
Support Reference: Merism

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Fear	Honor
God	God
glory	praise him
hour	time
judgment	judge
worship	Worship
heaven	heaven
earth	earth
springs	the fresh

Revelation 14:8

ULT	UST
And another, a second, followed, saying, "Fallen, fallen has Babylon the Great, who caused all the nations to drink from the wine of the passion of her immorality!"	*And then another angel came after that one. This angel said, "The very evil city of Babylon has now become a complete ruin! Babylon forced the people of every nation to be unfaithful to God by worshiping idols."*

ULT **Fallen, fallen has Babylon the Great**
UST The very evil city of Babylon has now become a complete ruin

This second angel is speaking as if Babylon has literally **fallen** down. He means that the city has been destroyed. The repetition of the word **fallen** is emphatic and indicates complete destruction. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [Babylon the Great has been completely destroyed] or [God has completely destroyed Babylon the Great]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **Babylon the Great**
UST The very evil city of Babylon

The word **Babylon** is the name of an ancient city that founded an empire whose armies destroyed Jerusalem and the temple in 586 B.C.
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **Babylon the Great**
UST The very evil city of Babylon

Since the ancient city of Babylon was destroyed centuries earlier, the angel is not speaking literally of that city. The angel is using **Babylon** to symbolize some other city or empire. The specific identity of that city or empire is a matter of interpretation rather than translation. Alternate translation: [the great city that is like Babylon] or [the great empire that is like Babylon]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **who caused all the nations to drink**
UST Babylon forced the people of every nation to be unfaithful to God by worshiping idols

The angel is speaking of the city of **Babylon** as if it were a living thing that **caused** the nations **to drink** from a certain cup. The angel means that the rulers of the city did this, symbolically (See: next note). If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [whose rulers caused all the nations to drink]
Support Reference: Personification

ULT **all the nations**
UST the people of every nation

The angel says **all** here as a generalization for emphasis. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use a different way to express the emphasis. Alternate translation: [nations throughout the world]
Support Reference: Hyperbole

ULT **caused all the nations to drink from the wine of the passion of her immorality**
UST forced the people of every nation to be unfaithful to God by worshiping idols

This second angel is speaking as if Babylon has literally caused the nations to **drink** a certain kind of **wine**. This means, in the first instance, that Babylon led the nations to commit sexual immorality with her. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [caused all the nations to give in to passions that led them to commit sexual immorality with her]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **from the wine of the passion of her immorality**
UST forced … to be unfaithful to God by worshiping idols

In the second instance, as in 14:3, having immoral sexual relations is a symbolic image for worshiping idols. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [to worship idols as she did]

Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Babylon	Babylon
nations	people
wine	forced … to be unfaithful to God by worshiping idols
immorality	forced … to be unfaithful to God by worshiping idols

Revelation 14:10

ULT	UST
he will also drink from the wine of the wrath of God having been poured undiluted into the cup of his anger, and he will be tormented with fire and sulfur before the holy angels and before the Lamb.	*God will duly punish them. They will stagger from the punishment as if they had drunk strong wine. He will torment them in burning sulfur as his holy angels and the Lamb are watching.*

ULT **he will also drink from the wine of the wrath of God having been poured undiluted into the cup of his anger**

UST God will duly punish them. They will stagger from the punishment as if they had drunk strong wine

The angel is speaking as if anyone who worships the beast will literally **drink** a certain kind of **wine** from a certain **cup**. He means symbolically that God will make such a person experience the just consequences of his actions. Within this image, the fact that the wine is **undiluted** means that God will not show him mercy as he judges him. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [God will make him experience the just consequences of his actions and in his anger God will not show him any mercy]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **of God having been poured**

UST God will duly punish … will stagger from the punishment as if they had drunk strong wine

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [that God has poured]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **he will be tormented**

UST He will torment them

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [God will torment him]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **fire and sulfur**

UST burning sulfur

This phrase expresses a single idea by using two words connected with **and**. The word **fire** describes the state of the **sulfur**. If it would be more natural in your language, you could express this meaning with an equivalent phrase that does not use "and." Alternate translation: [fiery sulfur]

Support Reference: Hendiadys

ULT **before the holy angels and before the Lamb**

UST as his holy angels and the Lamb are watching

Here the word **before** means "in front of" or "in the presence of" another person. Alternate translation: [in the presence of the holy angels and in the presence of the Lamb]

Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
wine	wine
wrath	God will duly punish … will stagger from the punishment as if they had drunk strong wine
God	God
of … anger	God will duly punish … will stagger from the punishment as if they had drunk strong wine
tormented	torment
sulfur	sulfur
holy	holy
angels	angels
Lamb	Lamb

Revelation 14:11

ULT	UST
And the smoke of their torment goes up to the ages of the ages, and they have no rest day and night, the ones worshiping the beast and his image and if anyone receives the mark of his name.	*The smoke from the fire that torments them will rise forever. God will torment them all the time without stopping. This is what will happen to the people who worship the beast and its image or who allow someone to write its name on them."*

ULT **of their torment**
UST from the fire that torments them

The third angel is referring to the burning sulfur with which God is tormenting these people by association with the **torment** itself. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [of the burning sulfur with which God is tormenting them]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **to the ages of the ages**
UST forever

This expression refers to endless future time. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [for all eternity]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **day and night**
UST all the time

The angel is using the two parts of a full day, **day** and **night**, to mean all the time. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [at any time]
Support Reference: Merism

ULT **if anyone receives**
UST who allow someone to write … on them

The angel is using a characteristic expression of the Greek language. Alternate translation: [anyone who receives]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
torment	torments
the	forever
ages	forever
day	all the time
worshiping	worship
beast	beast
image	image
receives	allow someone to write … on them

Revelation 14:12

ULT	UST
Here is the endurance of the saints, the ones keeping the commandments of God and the faith of Jesus.”	*God’s people are those who obey what God commands and who trust in Jesus. They must continue to do these things faithfully because those who disobey God and deny Jesus will experience these torments.*

ULT **Here is the endurance of the saints**
UST God’s people are … They must continue to do these things faithfully because those who disobey God and deny Jesus will experience these torments

The expression **Here is** introduces something that the speaker is calling for. Alternate translation: [This calls for endurance on the part of the saints]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **keeping the commandments of God and the faith of Jesus**
UST obey what God commands and who trust in Jesus

See how you translated the word **keeping** in 1:3 and in 2:26. Alternate translation: [obeying the commandments of God and maintaining their faith in Jesus]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **the faith of Jesus**
UST who trust in Jesus

In this possessive form, **Jesus** is the object rather than the subject of **faith**. That is, this does not mean the faith that Jesus has, it means the faith that people have in Jesus. Alternate translation: [faith in Jesus]
Support Reference: Possession

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
endurance	continue to do these things faithfully
saints	God’s people are
God	God
faith	who trust in
Jesus	Jesus

Revelation 14:13

ULT	UST
And I heard a voice from heaven saying, "Write, 'Blessed are the dead dying in the Lord from now on.'" "Yes," says the Spirit, "so they will rest from their labors, for their deeds follow with them."	*Then I heard someone speaking from heaven and saying, "Write this: How fortunate from now on are those who die as faithful believers in Jesus." The Holy Spirit says, "Yes, after they die, they will no longer have to endure suffering. Instead, it will be clear that they were doing the right things."*

ULT **a voice from heaven saying**
UST someone speaking from heaven and saying

John is referring to someone speaking by association with the **voice** that the person is using to speak. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation, as in UST: [I heard someone speaking from heaven and saying]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **saying, "Write, 'Blessed {are} the dead dying in the Lord from now on**
UST and saying, "Write this: How fortunate from now on are those who die as faithful believers in Jesus

If it would be clearer in your language, you could translate this so there is no quotation within a quotation. Alternate translation: [that told me to write, "Blessed are the dead dying in the Lord from now on"]
Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **the dead dying**
UST those who die as faithful believers in Jesus

The person speaking is using the adjective **dead** as a noun to mean a certain kind of person. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you could translate this word with an equivalent phrase. Alternate translation: [people who die if they die]
Support Reference: Nominal Adjectives

ULT **dying in the Lord from now on**
UST from now on … die as faithful believers in Jesus

The expression **dying in the Lord** means to die while still maintaining faith in Jesus. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [who die from now on while still maintaining their faith in Jesus]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **in the Lord**
UST as faithful believers in Jesus

The person speaking is referring to Jesus by a respectful title. Use a form for addressing someone respectfully in your language. Alternate translation: [in the Lord Jesus]
Support Reference: Politeness

ULT **so**
UST after they die

The word translated **so** introduces a result of the action that the previous sentence describes. If it would be helpful in your language, you could refer back to that action. Alternate translation: [because they are blessed as a result of dying in the Lord,]
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **their deeds follow with them**
UST it will be clear that they were doing the right things

John is speaking of the **deeds** of these people who have died **in the Lord** as if those deeds could **follow** the people as they come into the presence of God. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [God will acknowledge as they come into his presence that they have served him diligently]
Support Reference: Personification

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
heaven	heaven
Blessed	How fortunate … are
in the Lord	in Jesus
Lord	as faithful believers in Jesus
Spirit	Holy Spirit
labors	they will no longer have to endure suffering

Revelation 14:14

ULT	UST
And I looked and behold, a white cloud, and sitting on the cloud one like a son of man, having a golden crown on his head and a sharp sickle in his hand.	*Then I saw something else very significant. I saw a white cloud, and someone was sitting on the cloud who looked like a human being. He was wearing a golden crown on his head. He held a sharp sickle in his hand.*

ULT **one like**
UST who looked like

John is using the adjective **like** as a noun to mean a certain kind of person. ULT adds the word **one** to show that. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you could translate this word with an equivalent phrase. Alternate translation: [a person who looked like a son of man]
Support Reference: Nominal Adjectives

ULT **a son of man**
UST a human being

This could mean: (1) a human being, in a characteristic Hebrew expression that John would be borrowing. Alternate translation, as in UST: [a human being]; or (2) the Messiah, since “the Son of Man” is a title for the Messiah. Alternate translation: [the Messiah, the Son of Man]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **a sharp sickle**
UST a sharp sickle

A **sickle** is a tool with a curved blade that agricultural workers use to cut down standing crops in order to harvest them. If your readers would not be familiar with what a **sickle** is, you could use a general expression. Alternate translation: [a sharp harvesting tool]
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
son of man	a human being
golden	golden
crown	crown

Revelation 14:15

ULT	UST
And another angel came out of the temple, crying out in a loud voice to the one sitting on the cloud: "Extend your sickle and reap, because the time to reap has come, since the harvest of the earth has been ripened."	*Still another angel came out of the temple in heaven. In a loud voice, he said to the one who was sitting on the cloud, "The grain on the earth is ripe. So this is the time to reap it. So use your sickle to reap the grain."*

ULT **has been ripened**

UST is ripe

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [has ripened]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
angel	angel
temple	temple
crying out	he said
reap	reap
time	time
reap	reap
harvest	grain
earth	earth

Revelation 14:16

ULT	UST
And the one sitting on the cloud swung his sickle upon the earth, and the earth was harvested.	*Then the person who looked like a human being and who was sitting on the cloud used his sickle to harvest all of the grain on the earth.*

ULT **the earth was harvested**

UST to harvest all of the grain on the earth

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [he harvested the earth]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
earth	used
earth	earth
harvested	harvest

Revelation 14:18

ULT	UST
And another angel came from the altar, the one having authority over the fire, and he shouted in a loud voice to the one having the sharp sickle, saying, "Send out your sharp sickle and gather the clusters of the grapevine of the earth, for their grapes have ripened."	*One more angel came from the altar. He is the one who takes care of the fire of the altar. He said in a loud voice to the angel who was holding the sickle, "The grapes on the earth are ripe! So use your sickle to cut the bunches of grapes off of the earth's grapevines. Then collect those bunches of grapes."*

ULT **the … the one having authority over … fire**

UST He is the one who takes care of the fire of the altar

John is referring implicitly to the **fire** that burned up sacrifices on the altar. You can provide this information in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [the one responsible for maintaining the altar fire]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
angel	angel
altar	altar
authority	one who takes care of
he shouted	He said
of the grapevine	grapevines
earth	earth's
grapes	grapes

Revelation 14:19

ULT	UST
And the angel swung his sickle to the earth and harvested the grapevine of the earth, and he threw the grapes into the great winepress of the wrath of God.	*So the angel used his sickle to harvest the grapes. Then he threw the grapes into the huge winepress that represents the place where God will punish people for what they have done wrong.*

ULT **winepress**
UST winepress that represents the place where

A **winepress** a large basin made of stone or wood. Workers put grapes in this basin and, with bare feet, trample on the grapes to extract their juice. If your readers would not be familiar with what a **winepress** is, you could use a general expression. Alternate translation: [large basin]
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
angel	angel
earth	used
grapevine	grapes
earth	grapes
winepress	winepress
wrath	will punish people for what they have done wrong
God	God

Revelation 14:20

ULT	UST
And the winepress was trampled outside the city, and blood came out from the winepress up to the bridles of the horses for 1, 600 stadia.	*God trampled the grapes in the winepress outside the city. When he did, blood poured out of the winepress! It flowed in such quantity that it formed a stream that was a meter and a half deep and extended for three hundred kilometers.*

ULT **the winepress was trampled**
UST God trampled the grapes in the winepress

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [workers trampled the winepress]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **the winepress was trampled**
UST God trampled the grapes in the winepress

John is referring to the grapes in the winepress by association with the **winepress** itself. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [workers trampled the grapes in the winepress]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **blood**
UST blood

John is referring to a stream of blood by association with the **blood** that ran out of the winepress. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [a stream of blood]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **up to the bridles of the horses**
UST It flowed in such quantity that it formed a stream that was a meter and a half deep

The word **bridles** describes sets of headgear that riders use to control horses. If your readers would not be familiar with what **bridles** are, you could use an equivalent expression. Alternate translation: [as high as horses' heads]
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **1,600 stadia**
UST three hundred kilometers

The word **stadia** is the plural form of "stadium," which was a distance of about 185 meters. If it would be helpful in your language, you could give the equivalent in modern measurements. Alternate translation: [about 300 kilometers] or [about 200 miles]
Support Reference: Biblical Distance

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
winepress	winepress
winepress	winepress
horses	that was a meter and a half deep

Revelation 15

Revelation 15 Introduction

Revelation 15 Chapter Introduction

Structure and Formatting

In this chapter, John describes events and pictures that occur in heaven.

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with verses 3–4.

Religious and Cultural Concepts in This Chapter

“Victorious over the beast”

These people are spiritually victorious. While most spiritual battles cannot be seen, the book of Revelation pictures spiritual battles as occurring openly. (See: spirit, wind, breath; and Symbolic Prophecy)

“The temple having the tent of witness was open in heaven”

Scripture elsewhere indicates the earthly temple copied God’s perfect dwelling place in heaven. Here John seems to refer to God’s heavenly dwelling place or temple. (See: heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly; and Symbolic Prophecy)

Songs

The book of Revelation often describes heaven as a place where people sing. People there worship God with songs. This illustrates that heaven is a place where God is always worshiped.

Revelation 15:1

ULT	UST
And I saw another great and marvelous sign in heaven: seven angels having seven final plagues, for with them the wrath of God was finished.	*Then something else very significant appeared in the sky. I saw seven angels. God had given them the duty to punish rebellious people in seven different ways. This is the last time that God will punish people this way, because through these punishments he will have given people on earth all of the punishment that they deserve.*

ULT **great and marvelous**
UST very significant

The terms **great** and **marvelous** mean similar things. John is using the two terms together for emphasis. If it would be clearer for your readers, you could express the emphasis with a single phrase. Alternate translation: [amazing]
Support Reference: Doublet

ULT **having seven final plagues**
UST God had given them the duty to punish rebellious people in seven different ways. This is the last time that God will punish people this way

John is speaking of these **plagues** as if they were something that the **seven angels** had in their possession. He means that God had made these angels responsible for administering the plagues. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [who would be responsible for administering seven final plagues]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **the wrath of God was finished**
UST he will have given people on earth all of the punishment that they deserve

John is referring to God's punishments for sin by association with the **wrath** that God feels because of sin. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [the punishments of God were finished]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **the wrath of God was finished**
UST he will have given people on earth all of the punishment that they deserve

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [God finished punishing all wrongdoing]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
sign	something
heaven	sky
angels	angels
plagues	in … ways
wrath	will have given people on earth all of the punishment that they deserve
God	he

Revelation 15:2

ULT	UST
Then I saw as it were a sea of glass having been mixed with fire and the ones being victorious over the beast and over his image and over the number of his name standing on the sea of glass having the harps of God.	*I also saw a great flat area of glass that was sparkling with light. I also saw the people who had overcome the beast by not worshiping it or its image and by not allowing anyone to mark them with the number that represents the beast's name. They were standing on the large flat area of glass. They were holding harps that God had given them.*

ULT **as it were a sea of glass**
UST a great flat area of glass

The point of this comparison is that the large object made of **glass** looked like a **sea**. That is, it was wide and spacious and level. If it would be helpful in your language, you could make this point explicitly. See how you translated the similar expression in 4:6. Alternate translation: [a large glass surface]
Support Reference: Simile

ULT **having been mixed with fire**
UST that was sparkling with light

The point of this further comparison seems to be that the glass sea was sparkling with light or reflecting the flashes of light that came from the nearby throne, as John describes in 4:5. If it would be helpful in your language, you could make this point explicitly. Alternate translation: [that looked as if it was flashing with fire]
Support Reference: Simile

ULT **the ones being victorious over the beast and over his image and over the number of his name**
UST the people who had overcome the beast by not worshiping it or its image and by not allowing anyone to mark them with the number that represents the beast's name

John means implicitly that these people were **victorious** because they did not worship **the beast and his image** and did not accept **the number of his name** on their right hands or foreheads. You can provide this information in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [who had not worshiped the beast or his image and who had not accepted the number of his name as a mark on their right hands or foreheads]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
beast	beast
image	image
harps	harps
God	God

Revelation 15:3

ULT	UST
And they sing the song of Moses the servant of God and the song of the Lamb, saying, "Great and marvelous are your deeds, Lord God, Ruler of All. Righteous and true are your ways, King of the Ages.	*They were singing a song such as God's servant Moses sang long ago. It was the same kind of song that the Lamb now sings. They sang, "Lord God, who rules over everything, all that you do is very marvelous! You always act entirely righteously. You rule as King forever!*

ULT **they sing the song of Moses the servant of God and the song of the Lamb**
UST They were singing a song such as God's servant Moses sang long ago. It was the same kind of song that the Lamb now sings

This could mean implicitly: (1) that these victorious believers sing one song. Alternate translation: [they sing a song that Moses, the servant of God, sang and that the Lamb now sings]; or (2) that these victorious believers sing two songs. Alternate translation: [they sing the song of Moses, the servant of God, and they also sing the song of the Lamb]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **Great and marvelous {are} your deeds**
UST all that you do is very marvelous! You

The terms **Great** and **marvelous** mean similar things. The victorious believers are using the two terms together for emphasis. If it would be clearer for your readers, you could express the emphasis with a single phrase. Alternate translation: [Your deeds are amazing]
Support Reference: Doublet

ULT **Righteous and true {are} your ways**
UST always act entirely righteously. You

The terms **Righteous** and **true** mean similar things. The victorious believers are using the two terms together for emphasis. If it would be clearer for your readers, you could express the emphasis with a single phrase. Alternate translation: [Your ways are completely righteous]
Support Reference: Doublet

ULT **are your ways**
UST always act … You

The victorious believers are singing about God's actions as if they were **ways** or paths that God was walking on. Alternate translation: [are your actions]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **King of the Ages**
UST rule as King forever

The believers are using a possessive form to describe not what God rules over but for how long God will rule. Alternate translation: [you who will be king for all eternity]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **King of the Ages**
UST rule as King forever

Some ancient manuscripts read **King of the Ages**. ULT follows that reading. Other ancient manuscripts read “King of the Nations.” If a translation of the Bible exists in your region, you may wish to use the reading that it uses. If a translation of the Bible does not exist in your region, you may wish to use the reading of ULT.

Support Reference: Textual Variants

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
servant	servant
God	God’s
Lamb	Lamb
Lord	Lord
God	God
Ruler of All	who rules over everything
Righteous	entirely righteously
King	King
Ages	forever

Revelation 15:4

ULT	UST
Who will certainly not fear you, Lord, and glorify your name? For you alone are holy. For all the nations will come and worship before you, because your righteous deeds have been manifested."	*O Lord, everyone will fear you and honor you because you alone are holy. Yes, people from every group will come and bow down to you in worship because you have shown that you have judged everyone in the right way."*

ULT **Who will certainly not fear {you}, Lord, and glorify your name**
UST O Lord, everyone will fear you and honor you

The victorious believers are using the question form for emphasis. If you would not use the question form for this purpose in your language, you could translate this as a statement or as an exclamation. Alternate translation: [Everyone should fear you, Lord, and glorify your name!]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **glorify your name**
UST honor you

Here, **name** represents the character and reputation of person by association with the way that each person has a name. Alternate translation: [praise you for your excellent character]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **before you**
UST to you

Here the word **before** means "in front of" or "in the presence of" another person. Alternate translation: [in your presence]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **your righteous deeds have been manifested**
UST you have shown that you have judged everyone in the right way

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [you have manifested your righteous deeds]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
fear	fear
Lord	Lord
glorify	honor
holy	holy
nations	people from … group
worship	bow down
righteous	the right way

Revelation 15:5

ULT	UST
And after these things I looked, and the temple of the dwelling of the testimony in heaven had been opened.	*Then, after that, I saw that the doors of the temple in heaven were open. That heavenly temple was like the tent on earth that had held the sacred chest.*

ULT **the temple of the dwelling of the testimony in heaven had been opened**
UST the doors of the temple in heaven were open. That heavenly temple was like the tent on earth that had held the sacred chest

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who did the action, the context suggests that it was God. Alternate translation: [God had opened the temple of the tabernacle of the testimony in heaven]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **the temple**
UST the doors of the temple … That heavenly temple was like

When John says that the **temple** had been opened, he means by association that the doors of the temple had been opened and he could see inside. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [the doors of the temple]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **the temple of the dwelling of the testimony**
UST the doors of the temple … That heavenly temple was like the tent on earth that had held the sacred chest

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **testimony**, you could express the same idea in another way. The phrase “the tabernacle of the testimony” is a common Old Testament description of the tent that held the ark of the covenant. John describes in 11:19 how the ark was now in the temple in heaven. Alternate translation: [the temple, that is, the tent holding the ark of the covenant]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
temple	temple
of the dwelling	the tent on earth
testimony	that had held the sacred chest
heaven	heaven

Revelation 15:6

ULT	UST
And the seven angels having the seven plagues came out from the temple, having been clothed with clean, bright linen and with golden sashes having been wrapped around their chests.	*The seven angels whose duty it was to punish rebellious people in seven different ways came out of the temple. The angels were wearing clean, white linen garments. They were also wearing bands of golden fabric around their chests.*

ULT **having the seven plagues**

UST whose duty it was to punish rebellious people in seven different ways

See how you translated the similar expression in 15:1. Alternate translation: [who would be responsible for administering the seven plagues]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **having been clothed with clean, bright linen and with golden sashes having been wrapped around {their} chests**

UST The angels were wearing clean, white linen garments. They were also wearing bands of golden fabric around their chests

If your language does not use these passive forms, you could express the ideas in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. It may be helpful to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: [They were wearing clean, bright linen clothes and they had wrapped golden sashes around their chests]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **linen**

UST linen garments

John is referring to linen clothes by association with the **linen** from which this clothing is made. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [linen clothes]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **linen**

UST linen garments

The word **linen** is the name for a fine, expensive cloth that people make from the strong fibers of the inner bark of the flax plant. If your readers would not be familiar with what linen is, you could use a general expression. Alternate translation: [clothes made from fine, expensive fabric]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
angels	angels
plagues	in … different ways
temple	temple
clean	clean
golden	golden
with … having been wrapped	They were … wearing

Revelation 15:7

ULT	UST
And one of the four living creatures gave to the seven angels seven golden bowls being full of the wrath of the God living to the ages of the ages.	*One of the four living creatures gave each of the seven angels a golden bowl. Inside each bowl was a different kind of punishment for people who had done wrong. The angels would administer these punishments on behalf of God, who lives forever and ever.*

ULT **being full of the wrath of the God**

UST Inside each bowl was a different kind of punishment for people … had done wrong. The angels would administer these punishments on behalf of God, who

John is referring to God's punishments for sin by association with the **wrath** that God feels because of sin. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [being full of punishments from God]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **living to the ages of the ages**

UST who … lives forever and ever

This expression refers to endless future time. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [who lives for all eternity]

Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
creatures	creatures
angels	angels
golden	golden
wrath	a different kind of punishment for people … had done wrong. The angels would administer these punishments on behalf of … who
God	God
ages	forever and ever
ages	forever and ever

Revelation 15:8

ULT	UST
And the temple was filled with smoke from the glory of God and from his power, and no one was able to enter into the temple until the seven plagues of the seven angels were completed.	*Then smoke that expressed the presence of the glorious and all-powerful God filled the temple. The smoke remained there while the angels were administering the plagues. Only after the seven angels finished punishing the people of the earth in seven different ways could anyone enter the temple again.*

ULT **the temple was filled with smoke from the glory of God and from his power**

UST smoke that expressed the presence of the glorious and all-powerful God filled the temple. The smoke remained there while the angels were administering the plagues

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [smoke from the glory of God and from his power filled the temple]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **from the glory of God and from his power**

UST of the glorious and all-powerful God

If your language does not use abstract nouns for the ideas of **glory** and **power**, you could express the same ideas in other ways. Alternate translation: [because God was so glorious and powerful]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **the seven plagues of the seven angels were completed**

UST the seven angels finished punishing the people of the earth in seven different ways

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [the seven angels had completed their seven plagues]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
temple	temple
glory	glorious
God	God
temple	temple
plagues	punishing the people of the earth
angels	angels

Revelation 16

Revelation 16 Introduction

Revelation 16 Chapter Introduction

Structure and Formatting

This chapter continues the vision that John began to describe in chapter 15. Together these two chapters describe the seven plagues that complete the wrath of God. (See: wrath, fury)

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with verses 5–7.

Religious and Cultural Concepts in This Chapter

Seven bowls of God's wrath

This chapter reveals severe judgments. John pictures the execution of these judgments as angels pouring out seven bowls of God's wrath. (See: Metaphor)

Translation Issues in This Chapter

- When John says that an angel "poured out his bowl," he means that the angel poured out what was in his bowl. You can say that in your translation each time. (See: Metonymy)
- In this chapter, John uses adjectives "first" through "seventh" as nouns to identify the angels who pour out the bowls of God's wrath. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you could translate these words with equivalent phrases, for example, "the first angel," "the second angel," and so forth. (See: Nominal Adjectives)
- If your language does not use ordinal numbers, you could use cardinal numbers for these angels, for example, "angel number one," "angel number two," and so forth. (See: Ordinal Numbers)

Revelation 16:1

ULT	UST
And I heard a loud voice from the temple saying to the seven angels, "Go and pour out the seven bowls of the wrath of God onto the earth."	*Next I heard someone in the temple speak in a loud voice to the angels who had the seven bowls. He told them, "Go from here and pour out what you have in your seven bowls onto the earth. This is how God will punish people for their sins."*

ULT **a loud voice from the temple saying**

UST someone in the temple speak in a loud voice … He told them

John is referring to someone speaking by association with the **voice** that the person is using to speak. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [someone speaking loudly from the temple and saying]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **of the wrath of God**

UST This is how God will punish people for their sins

John is referring to God's punishments for sin by association with the **wrath** that God feels because of sin. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [that hold the punishments from God]

Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
temple	temple
angels	angels
wrath	will punish people for their sins
God	God
earth	earth

Revelation 16:2

ULT	UST
And the first went and poured out his bowl on the earth, and a bad and harmful sore happened on the men having the mark of the beast and the ones worshiping its image.	*So the first angel went and poured out what he had in his bowl onto the earth. As a result, terrible sores broke out on the people who had allowed the beast's servants to write the beast's name on them. These were the people who had worshiped the beast's image.*

ULT **the first**
UST the first angel

As the introduction to this chapter discusses, John is using the adjective **first** as a noun to identify this particular angel. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you could translate this word with an equivalent phrase, and you could do the same with the similar expressions that describe the other six angels. Alternate translation: [the first angel]
Support Reference: Nominal Adjectives

ULT **the first**
UST the first angel

As the introduction to this chapter discusses, if your language does not use ordinal numbers, here and for the other six angels you could use a cardinal number or an equivalent expression. Alternate translation: [angel number one]
Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

ULT **a bad and harmful sore**
UST terrible sores

Since John is referring to what happened to each person in a group of people, it might be more natural in your language to use the plural form of **sore**. Alternate translation: [bad and harmful sores]
Support Reference: Collective Nouns

ULT **bad and harmful**
UST terrible

The terms **bad** and **harmful** mean similar things. John is using the two terms together for emphasis. If it would be clearer for your readers, you could express the emphasis with a single phrase. Alternate translation: [very severe]
Support Reference: Doublet

ULT **the men**
UST the people

Although the term **men** is masculine, John is using the word in a generic sense that includes both men and women. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use a term in your language that is clearly inclusive of both men and women. Alternate translation: [the people]
Support Reference: When Masculine Words Include Women

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
earth	earth
beast	beast’s
worshiping	worshiped
image	image

Revelation 16:3

ULT	UST
And the second poured out his bowl into the sea and it became blood as of a corpse, and every living soul in the sea died.	*Then the second angel poured out what he had in his bowl on the ocean. As a result, the water of the sea turned into blood. That blood was decayed and stinky like the blood of a dead person. Every creature that lived in the ocean died.*

ULT **as of a corpse**

UST That blood was decayed and stinky like the blood of a dead person

The point of this comparison is that the sea turned into **blood** that was foul and smelled bad, like the blood of a **corpse**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could make this point explicitly. Alternate translation: [that was foul and smelled bad]

Support Reference: Simile

ULT **every living soul**

UST Every creature that lived

John is referring to living creatures by association with the **soul** or vital breath that keeps them alive. (Sea creatures do not breathe air, but they circulate water comparably to the way land creatures circulate air.) If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [every living creature]

Support Reference: Metonymy

Revelation 16:4

ULT	UST
And the third poured out his bowl into the rivers and the springs of water, and it became blood.	*Then the third angel poured out what he had in his bowl upon the earth's rivers and springs. As a result, the water in them turned into blood.*

ULT **it became**
UST the water in them turned into

The pronoun **it** refers to the **water** in the **rivers** and **springs**. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [the water in them became]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
springs	springs

Revelation 16:5

ULT	UST
And I heard the angel of the waters saying, "You are righteous, the one being and the one who was, the Holy One, because you have judged these.	*Then I heard the angel who was in charge of those waters say to God, "O God, you exist and have always existed. You are supremely holy. You are a fair judge of people.*

ULT **the angel of the waters**
UST the angel who was in charge of those waters

John is using this possessive form to indicate that God had given this **angel** authority over the **waters** (the rivers and springs) and responsibility for maintaining them. The angel is affirming that God has done the right thing even though this has damaged the waters. Alternate translation: [the angel who was responsible for the waters]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **the one being and the one who was, the Holy One**
UST O God, you exist and have always existed. You are supremely holy

Even though the angel is addressing God, the angel is speaking about God in the third person. You could make this clear by using the word "you" in your translation. Alternate translation: [you who are and who were, you who are holy]
Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

ULT **the one being and the one who was, the Holy One**
UST O God, you exist and have always existed. You are supremely holy

Some ancient manuscripts read **the one being and the one who was, the Holy One**. ULT follows that reading. Other ancient manuscripts read "O Lord, the one being and the one who was and who is to be." If a translation of the Bible exists in your region, you may wish to use the reading that it uses. If a translation of the Bible does not exist in your region, you may wish to use the reading of ULT.
Support Reference: Textual Variants

ULT **the Holy One**
UST You are supremely holy

The angel is using the adjective **Holy** as a noun. He is referring to God by one of his essential attributes. ULT adds the word **One** to show that. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you could translate this word with an equivalent phrase. Alternate translation: [the Holy God]
Support Reference: Nominal Adjectives

ULT **these**
UST of people

The pronoun **these** refers to the people who have killed the saints and prophets, as the angel describes in the next verse. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [these people]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
angel	angel
righteous	a fair judge
Holy One	You are supremely holy
judged	of people

Revelation 16:6

ULT	UST
Because they poured out the blood of the saints and prophets, you have also given blood to them to drink; they are worthy."	*The people who rebelled against you murdered your holy people and the prophets. So you are just in punishing them by giving them blood to drink."*

ULT **they poured out the blood of the saints and prophets**
UST The people who rebelled against you murdered your holy people and the prophets

The angel is referring to the fact that these people killed **the saints and prophets** by association with the way they shed their **blood** when they killed them. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [they shed the blood of the saints and prophets when they killed them]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **they are worthy**
UST you are just in punishing them

The angel of the waters means implicitly that the people who killed the saints and prophets are **worthy** of this punishment, that is, they deserve it. You can provide this information in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. It may be helpful to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: [They deserve this punishment]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
saints	your holy people
prophets	prophets

Revelation 16:7

ULT	UST
And I heard the altar saying, "Yes, Lord God, Ruler of All, your judgments are true and righteous."	*Then I heard the altar answer, "Yes, Lord God, you who rule over everything, you punish people completely fairly."*

ULT **I heard the altar saying**
UST I heard the altar answer

John is describing the **altar** as a living thing that can speak. As the General Introduction to Revelation discusses, within the world of this vision, this is not a figure of speech and so you can translate it literally even if your language does not use figures of speech.
Support Reference: Personification

ULT **are true and righteous**
UST completely fairly

The terms **true** and **righteous** mean similar things. The altar is using the two terms together for emphasis. If it would be clearer for your readers, you could express the emphasis with a single phrase. Alternate translation: [entirely righteous]
Support Reference: Doublet

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
altar	altar
Lord	Lord
God	God
Ruler of All	you who rule over everything
judgments	punish people
righteous	completely fairly

Revelation 16:8

ULT	UST
And the fourth poured out his bowl on the sun, and it was granted to it to scorch men with fire.	*Then the fourth angel poured out what he had in his bowl on the sun. As a result, the sun became so hot that it burned people very badly.*

ULT **it was granted to it**
UST the sun became

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who did the action, the context suggests that it was God. Alternate translation: [God permitted it]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **it was granted to it**
UST the sun became

John is speaking of the **sun** as if it were a living thing that could receive permission to do something. As the General Introduction to Revelation discusses, within the world of this vision, this may not be a figure of speech, and so you could translate it literally even if your language does not use figures of speech. However, if it would be clearer in your language, you could consider it a figure of speech and provide an equivalent translation. Alternate translation: [God caused it]
Support Reference: Personification

ULT **men**
UST people

Although the term **men** is masculine, John is using the word in a generic sense that includes both men and women. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use a term in your language that is clearly inclusive of both men and women. Alternate translation: [people]
Support Reference: When Masculine Words Include Women

ULT **fire**
UST very badly

John is speaking as if the sun were literally scorching people with **fire**. He means that the sun's rays became so hot that they burned people just as badly as fire burns people. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [the heat of its rays]
Support Reference: Metaphor

Revelation 16:9

ULT	UST
And men were scorched a great scorch and they blasphemed the name of the God having authority over these plagues, but they did not repent to give him glory.	*Because the sun burned people so badly, they said evil things about God because he had the power to punish them in these ways. But they still refused to stop doing wrong things and they still refused to praise him.*

ULT **men were scorched a great scorch**
UST the sun burned people so badly

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [the sun scorched men greatly]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **they blasphemed the name of the God**
UST they said evil things about God

Here, **name** represents the character and reputation of person by association with the way that each person has a name. Alternate translation: [they maligned the character of the God]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **they did not repent to give him glory**
UST they still refused to stop doing wrong things and they still refused to praise him

In the Bible, a person giving God **glory** often means that person acknowledging that he has sinned and that God is justly punishing him. Alternate translation: [they did not repent of their sin and acknowledge that God was punishing them for it justly]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **to give him glory**
UST to praise him

If you wish to retain the biblical idiom in your translation but your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **glory**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [and glorify him]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
blasphemed	they said evil things about
God	God
authority	the power
plagues	to punish them
repent	to stop doing wrong things
glory	to praise

Revelation 16:10

ULT	UST
And the fifth poured out his bowl on the throne of the beast, and its kingdom became darkened. And they were chewing their tongues from the pain,	*Then the fifth angel poured out what he had in his bowl on the throne of the beast. As a result, it became dark where the beast ruled. Because it was like night all the time, the people whom the beast ruled could feel the pain of their terrible sores even more. So they were biting their tongues because of this pain.*

ULT **its kingdom became darkened**
UST it became dark where the beast ruled. Because it was like night all the time, the people whom the beast ruled could feel the pain of their terrible sores even more

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who did the action, the context suggests that it was God. Alternate translation: [God darkened its kingdom]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **its kingdom became darkened**
UST it became dark where the beast ruled. Because it was like night all the time, the people whom the beast ruled could feel the pain of their terrible sores even more

John does not say specifically how God **darkened** the entire area where the beast ruled and so you may not wish to offer any explicit explanation in your translation. However, if your language would not describe something like this without saying how it happened, you could suggest an explanation. Alternate translation: [God made thick clouds cover the sun in order to darken its kingdom] or [God caused an eclipse of the sun in order to darken its kingdom]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **its kingdom**
UST where the beast ruled

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of a **kingdom**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [the area that the beast ruled as king]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **they were chewing their tongues**
UST they were biting their tongues

The pronoun **they** refers to the people whom God afflicted with painful sores, as John describes in 16:2 and as he makes clear in the next verse. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [the people whom God had punished with sores were chewing their tongues]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
throne	throne
beast	beast
kingdom	where … ruled
tongues	tongues

Revelation 16:11

ULT	UST
and they blasphemed the God of heaven because of their pain and because of their sores, but they did not repent of their deeds.	*They also said evil things about God who rules in heaven because their sores were so painful. But they refused to stop doing wrong things.*

ULT **because of their pain and because of their sores**
UST because their sores were so painful

This phrase expresses a single idea by using two words connected with **and**. The word **pain** tells what kind of **sores** these were. If it would be more natural in your language, you could express this meaning with an equivalent phrase that does not use "and." Alternate translation: [because of their painful sores]

Support Reference: Hendiadys

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
blasphemed	They … said evil things about
God	God
heaven	heaven
repent	to stop doing

Revelation 16:12

ULT	UST
And the sixth poured out his bowl upon the great river, the Euphrates, and its water was dried up so that the way of the kings from the rising of the sun might be prepared.	*Then the sixth angel poured out what he had in his bowl on the Euphrates River. As a result, the water in the river dried up so that the rulers from the eastern countries could cross it with their armies.*

ULT **the Euphrates**
UST Euphrates

The word **Euphrates** is the name of a river. See how you translated it in 9:14.
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **its water was dried up so that the way of the kings from the rising of the sun might be prepared**
UST the water in the river dried up so that the rulers from the eastern countries could cross it with their armies

If your language does not use these passive forms, you could express the ideas in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who did the action, the context suggests that it was God. Alternate translation: [God dried up its water in order to prepare the way for the kings from the rising of the sun]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **from the rising of the sun**
UST from the eastern countries

This expression refers to a particular direction from the perspective of the speaker. Your language may have its own way of referring to this direction. Alternate translation: [from the east]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Euphrates	Euphrates
kings	the rulers

Revelation 16:13

ULT	UST
And I saw, out from the mouth of the dragon and out from the mouth of the beast and out from the mouth of the false prophet, three unclean spirits like frogs,	*Then I saw three evil spirits that looked like frogs. One came out of the mouth of the dragon. One came out of the mouth of the beast. And one came out of the mouth of the false prophet.*

ULT **like frogs**

UST that looked like frogs

John does not seem to be drawing a comparison between these **unclean spirits** and **frogs** in order to indicate something about the character of the spirits. Rather, he seems to be describing the appearance of the spirits. This appearance may have some symbolic significance, but that is a matter of interpretation rather than translation. Alternate translation: [that looked like frogs]

Support Reference: Simile

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
beast	beast
false prophet	false prophet
unclean spirits	evil spirits

Revelation 16:14

ULT	UST
for they are spirits of demons performing signs, who go out to the kings of the whole world to gather them together for battle on the great day of God, the Ruler of All.	*Now those spirits were demons that were able to do miracles. They went out to the rulers of the entire earth to gather their armies. Those armies will fight a battle on the important day when Almighty God punishes his enemies.*

ULT **signs**
UST miracles

John is using the word **signs** here in the same sense as in 13:13. See how you translated the word there. Alternate translation: [miracles]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
spirits	spirits
demons	demons
signs	miracles
kings	rulers
world	of the … earth
gather	gather
day	day
God	God
Ruler of All	Almighty

Revelation 16:15

ULT	UST
(“Behold! I am coming like a thief! Blessed is the one watching and keeping his garments so that he might not walk around naked and they see his indecency.”)	*(I heard the Lord Jesus say, “You must listen carefully to me: I am coming unexpectedly, like a thief. It will be good for people who stay alert and keep on living in the right way. They will not feel shame when I return. They will be just like a person who keeps his clothes on so that he does not feel shame in front of other people.”)*

In this verse, Jesus breaks into John’s narrative of his vision to address the believers who are listening to it or reading it. ULT puts the verse in parentheses to show this. There may be a comparable convention in your language that you can use in your translation. You can also state explicitly that the Lord Jesus said this, as UST does.
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **I am coming like a thief**
UST I am coming unexpectedly, like a thief

The point of this comparison is that Jesus **is coming** at a time when people will not be expecting him, just as a **thief** comes when people are not expecting him. If it would be helpful in your language, you could make this point explicitly. Alternate translation: [I am coming at a time when you are not expecting me]
Support Reference: Simile

ULT **keeping his garments so that he might not walk around naked and they see his indecency**
UST keep on living in the right way. They will not feel shame when I return. They will be just like a person who keeps his clothes on so that he does not feel shame in front of other people

As the General Introduction to Revelation discusses, here the term “keeping” means “preserving,” that is, maintaining the **garments** in good repair. This represents living in a way that pleases God. Walking around **naked** similarly stands for living in a way that displeases God, that is, committing sins. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [continuing to live in a way that pleases God and not committing sins that others can see]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **keeping his garments**
UST keep on living in the right way

This expression means to keep one’s **garments** on, that is, to continue to wear clothes. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [continuing to wear clothes]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and they see his indecency**
UST They will not feel shame when I return … he does … feel shame in front of other people

The pronoun **they** is an indefinite pronoun that does not refer to anyone in the immediate context. If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate this with a different expression that does not use an indefinite pronoun. Alternate translation: [so that people can see his indecency]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **indecency**
UST will not feel shame when I return … does … feel shame

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **indecency**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [indecent behavior]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
thief	thief
Blessed	It will be good for
watching	people who stay alert

Revelation 16:16

ULT	UST
And they brought them together at the place called Armageddon in Hebrew.	*The evil spirits gathered the rulers at a place whose name in the Hebrew language is Armageddon.*

ULT they brought them together
UST The evil spirits gathered the rulers

The pronoun **they** refers to the spirits of demons that John describes in 16:14 and the pronoun **them** refer to the kings John describes in that same verse. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [the spirits of demons brought the kings together]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT called
UST whose name … is

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [that people call]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT Armageddon
UST Armageddon

The word **Armageddon** is a Hebrew word that John spells out using Greek letters so his readers will know how it sounds. In your translation you can spell it the way it sounds in your language.
Support Reference: Copy or Borrow Words

ULT Armageddon
UST Armageddon

The word **Armageddon** is the name of a valley.
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
they brought … together	gathered
called	whose name … is
Hebrew	Hebrew

Revelation 16:17

ULT	UST
And the seventh poured out his bowl upon the air, and a loud voice came out from the temple from the throne, saying, "It has happened!"	*Then the seventh angel poured what he had in his bowl into the air. As a result, someone said with a loud voice from the throne in the temple, "God has now finished punishing rebellious people."*

ULT **a loud voice came out from the temple from the throne, saying**

UST someone said with a loud voice from the throne in the temple

John is referring to someone speaking by association with the **voice** that the person is using to speak. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [I heard the one who was sitting on the throne in the temple say loudly]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **It has happened**

UST God has now finished punishing rebellious people

This expression means that the speaker has accomplished what he intended to do. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly, indicating that God is the one sitting on the **throne** in the **temple**. Alternate translation: [I, God, have accomplished what I intended to do]

Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
temple	temple
throne	throne

Revelation 16:18

ULT	UST
And lightning and sounds and thunder happened, and a great earthquake happened, such as had not happened since man had been on the earth, so powerful an earthquake, so great.	*Then lightning flashed, thunder rumbled, and the earth shook violently. There had not been such a powerful earthquake during the whole time that people have lived on the earth.*

ULT **sounds and thunder**
UST thunder rumbled

This phrase expresses a single idea by using two words connected with **and**. The word **sounds** describes what the **thunder** produced. If it would be more natural in your language, you could express this meaning with an equivalent phrase that does not use “and.” Alternate translation: [crashes of thunder]
Support Reference: Hendiadys

ULT **man**
UST people

Although the term **man** is masculine, John is using the word in a generic sense that includes both men and women. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use a term in your language that is clearly inclusive of both men and women. Alternate translation: [humanity]
Support Reference: When Masculine Words Include Women

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
a … earthquake	earth
earth	earth

Revelation 16:19

ULT	UST
And the great city came into three parts and the cities of the nations fell, and Babylon the Great was remembered before God to give to her the cup of the wine of the wrath of his anger.	*As a result of this earthquake, the giant city split into three parts. God also destroyed the cities in the other nations. God did not forget that the people of Babylon had sinned very much. So he made them experience the punishments they so justly deserved.*

ULT **the great city**
UST the giant city

John assumes that his readers will understand that by **the great city** he means **Babylon the Great**, as he says later in the verse. You can use the name here as well if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [Babylon the Great]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **the cities**
UST the cities

John is using these **cities** as a whole to mean the individual parts of them, that is, their buildings. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [the buildings in the cities]
Support Reference: Synecdoche

ULT **fell**
UST God … destroyed

John is not speaking of these **cities** or their buildings as if they were living things that could fall down accidentally. He means that the buildings in the cities collapsed. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [collapsed]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **Babylon the Great was remembered before God to give to her**
UST God did not forget that the people of Babylon had sinned very much. So he made them

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [God remembered Babylon the Great to give to her]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **Babylon the Great was remembered before God to give to her**
UST God did not forget that the people of Babylon had sinned very much. So he made them

John is not suggesting that God had forgotten about Babylon the Great but now **remembered** the city. He is using a common biblical expression that means that God took action with regard to a person or entity of which he was already aware, either to help or to punish. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [God punished Babylon the Great by giving her]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **Babylon the Great was remembered**
UST did not forget that the people of Babylon had sinned very much

John is referring to the people who live in the city of **Babylon** by association with that city itself. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [the people who lived in the great city of Babylon were remembered]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **to give to her the cup of the wine of the wrath of his anger**
UST So he made them experience the punishments they so justly deserved

John is alluding to what the angel said in 14:10 about the "wine of the wrath" of God's "anger" that was in his "cup." It is likely that he is therefore referring symbolically, as the angel was, to God making people and entities experience the just consequences of their actions. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [to make her experience the just consequences of her actions that have made God so angry]
Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
nations	nations
Babylon	Babylon
God	God
wine	experience the punishments they so justly deserved
wrath	experience the punishments they so justly deserved
of … anger	experience the punishments they so justly deserved

Revelation 16:20

ULT	UST
And every island fled, and the mountains were not found.	*Also as a result of the earthquake, every island disappeared, and the mountains became flat land.*

ULT **And every island fled, and the mountains were not found**
UST Also as a result of the earthquake, every island disappeared, and the mountains became flat land

John means implicitly that these things also happened as a result of the earthquake. You can provide this information in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. UST models one way to do that.
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **fled**
UST disappeared

John is speaking of each **island** as if it were a living thing that **fled**. He means that the islands disappeared beneath the surface of the ocean. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [sank into the ocean]
Support Reference: Personification

ULT **the mountains were not found**
UST the mountains became flat land

Here the expression **were not found** means “could not be found” or “were not there.” Alternate translation: [there were no mountains anymore]
Support Reference: Idiom

Revelation 16:21

ULT	UST
And great hail, about a talent in weight, comes down from heaven upon men, and men blasphemed God because of the plague of hail, because that plague is exceedingly great.	*Then huge hailstones, each weighing 33 kilograms, fell from the sky onto people. Then people said evil things about God because he had punished them in this terrible way with those huge, heavy hailstones.*

ULT **great hail, about a talent in weight**
UST huge hailstones, each weighing 33 kilograms

John is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [great hail, in hailstones weighing about a talent each]
Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **about a talent in weight**
UST each weighing 33 kilograms

A talent was a weight of about 33 kilograms or about 70 pounds. If it would be helpful in your language, you could give the equivalent in modern measurements. Alternate translation: [in hailstones weighing about 33 kilograms each] or [in hailstones weighing about 70 pounds each]
Support Reference: Biblical Weight

ULT **men … men**
UST people … people

Although the term **men** is masculine, John is using the word in a generic sense that includes both men and women. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use a term in your language that is clearly inclusive of both men and women. Alternate translation: [people]
Support Reference: When Masculine Words Include Women

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
hail	hailstones
heaven	sky
blasphemed	said evil things about
God	God
plague	with those huge, heavy hailstones
hail	hailstones
plague	he had punished them

Revelation 17

Revelation 17 Introduction

Revelation 17 Chapter Introduction

Structure and Formatting

This chapter begins to describe how God will destroy the entity that the book of Revelation calls Babylon.

Religious and Cultural Concepts in This Chapter

The great prostitute

Those who have sex with prostitutes are unfaithful to God's purposes for sexual relations to take place within marriage. The "great prostitute" in this chapter may therefore represent some person or entity that leads people to be unfaithful to God spiritually. But it is not necessary to try to identify this person or entity in your translation. (See: Symbolic Prophecy)

Seven hills

An angel tells John in 17:9, "The seven heads are seven hills where the woman is sitting." This could mean that the woman represents the city of Rome, which is known as the City of Seven Hills. However, since this is a matter of interpretation rather than translation, it would not be appropriate to say explicitly in your translation that the seven hills indicate the city of Rome.

Translation Issues in This Chapter

Metaphors

John uses many different metaphors in this chapter. He explains some of their meanings, but allows them to remain relatively unclear. The translator should do the same. (See: Metaphor)

Translation Issues in This Chapter

"The beast that you saw was and is not but is about to come up"

This and similar phrases in this chapter contrast the beast with Jesus. Jesus is called "the one who is and who was and who is to come" elsewhere in the book of Revelation. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Paradox

A paradox is a statement that asserts as true two things that seemingly cannot both be true at the same time. This sentence in 17:11 is a paradox: "the beast … is itself also an eighth, but it

is from the seven.” The translator should not attempt to explain how both of these things can be true; that should remain a paradox.

Revelation 17:1

ULT	UST
And one of the seven angels holding the seven bowls came and spoke with me, saying, "Come, I will show you the judgment of the great prostitute sitting on many waters,	*One of the seven angels who had the bowls came over to me. He said, "Come with me. I want to show you how God will punish the evil prostitute whom you saw sitting near a great river.*

ULT **the judgment of the great prostitute**
UST how God will punish the evil prostitute

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **judgment**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [how God will judge the great prostitute]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **of the great prostitute sitting on many waters**
UST the evil prostitute whom you saw sitting near a great river

Since the angel explains the meaning of the **great prostitute** in verse 18 and the meaning of the **waters** in verse 15, you do not need to say anything in your translation about their meaning here.
Support Reference: When to Keep Information Implicit

ULT **sitting on many waters**
UST whom you saw sitting near a great river

The angel is using the word **waters** to mean a specific body of water by association. The phrase **sitting on many waters** is an allusion to Jeremiah 51:13, where the same phrase describes the ancient city of Babylon and its location on the great Euphrates River. (The Hebrew word that Jeremiah uses can mean both "sit" and "dwell.") If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [who lives next to a great river]
Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
angels	angels
judgment	how God will punish
prostitute	prostitute

Revelation 17:2

ULT	UST
with whom the kings of the earth committed sexual immorality and the ones living on the earth were intoxicated from the wine of her sexual immorality."	*The kings of the earth have worshiped the idols she wanted them to worship. The people they rule have also worshiped those idols. It was as if they had gotten drunk on wine that she gave them."*

ULT **with whom the kings of the earth committed sexual immorality**
UST The kings of the earth have worshiped the idols she wanted them to worship. The

The angel is speaking as if the **kings of the earth** had literally **committed sexual immorality** with this prostitute. But that is not literally the case even within the world of this vision, since the angel explains in verse 18 that the prostitute symbolizes a city. So the sexual immorality likely symbolizes idolatry and, in light of chapter 18, greed. It may be helpful to begin a new sentence here. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [The kings of the earth joined her in being idolatrous and greedy]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **the ones living {on} the earth were intoxicated from the wine of her sexual immorality**
UST people they rule have also worshiped those idols. It was as if they had gotten drunk on wine that she gave them

The angel is speaking as if the **sexual immorality** of the prostitute had been **wine** and that the **ones inhabiting the earth** had literally been **intoxicated** by that wine. But once again these things are not literally the case even within the world of this vision. The sexual immorality likely represents idolatry and greed and the intoxication likely represents deception. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [she deceived the ones inhabiting the earth to make them indulge in idolatry and greed]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **the ones living {on} the earth were intoxicated from the wine of her sexual immorality**
UST people they rule have also worshiped those idols. It was as if they had gotten drunk on wine that she gave them

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [the wine of her sexual immorality intoxicated the ones inhabiting the earth]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
kings	kings
earth	earth
sexual immorality	have worshiped the idols
earth	people they rule
were intoxicated	drunk
wine	wine
sexual immorality	have also worshiped those idols

Revelation 17:3

ULT	UST
And he carried me away in the Spirit to a wilderness, and I saw a woman sitting on a scarlet beast being full of blasphemous names, having seven heads and ten horns.	*Then the Holy Spirit inspired me so that I could see and hear things in a vision. The angel carried me away to a desolate area. There I saw a woman who was riding on a red beast. The beast had written names all over itself. They were names that insulted God. The beast had seven heads and ten horns.*

ULT **he carried me away in the Spirit to a wilderness**

UST the Holy Spirit inspired me so that I could see and hear things in a vision. The angel carried me away to a desolate area

See how you translated the expression **in the Spirit** in 1:10 and 4:2. Alternate translation: [as he carried me away to a wilderness, the Holy Spirit inspired me so that I could receive further revelation]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **being full of blasphemous names**

UST The beast had written names all over itself. They were names that insulted God

This expression means that **blasphemous names** were written all over this **beast**. Your language may have its own way of stating this. Alternate translation: [covered with blasphemous names]

Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Spirit	Holy Spirit
wilderness	a desolate area
beast	beast
blasphemous	They were names that insulted God
horns	horns

Revelation 17:4

ULT	UST
And the woman was clothed in purple and scarlet and adorned with gold and precious stone and pearls, holding in her hand a golden cup being full of abominations and the impurities of her sexual immorality,	*Now the woman was wearing purple and red clothes. She had gold jewelry with precious stones and pearls. She held a golden cup in her hand. That cup was full of something to drink that stands for the awful things she does when she commits sexual immorality.*

ULT **the woman was clothed in purple and scarlet and adorned with gold and precious stone and pearls**
UST the woman was wearing purple and red clothes. She had gold jewelry with precious stones and pearls

John is referring to the clothing and jewelry that the **woman** was wearing by association with the materials out of which they were made. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [the woman was clothed in purple and scarlet robes and adorned with gold jewelry in which precious stones and pearls were set]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **the woman was clothed in purple and scarlet and adorned with gold and precious stone and pearls**
UST the woman was wearing purple and red clothes. She had gold jewelry with precious stones and pearls

If your language does not use these passive forms, you could express the ideas in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [the woman was wearing purple and scarlet clothing and she had adorned herself with gold jewelry in which precious stones and pearls were set]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **precious stone**
UST precious stones

The term **precious stone** refers to a beautiful and valuable piece of mineral or rock, such as is often used in jewelry. It may be more natural in your language to use a plural form here. Alternate translation: [gemstones]
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **pearls**
UST pearls

The word **pearls** describes beautiful and valuable white beads that form inside the shell of a certain kind of small animal that lives in the ocean.
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

> ULT **of abominations and the impurities**
> UST the awful things she does

This phrase expresses a single idea by using two words connected with **and**. The word **abominations** describes the **impurities** of the woman's conduct. If it would be more natural in your language, you could express this meaning with an equivalent phrase that does not use "and." Alternate translation: [the abominable impurities]

Support Reference: Hendiadys

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
purple	purple
gold	gold
golden	golden
abominations	the awful things she does
sexual immorality	sexual immorality

Revelation 17:5

ULT	UST
and on her forehead had been written a name, a mystery: Babylon the Great, the Mother of Prostitutes and of the Abominations of the Earth.	*And there was a name in writing on her forehead. The name had a secret meaning. That name was: The Great Babylon, the Mother of Prostitutes and of the Immoral Things in the World.*

ULT **on her forehead had been written**
UST in writing on her forehead

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [someone had written on her forehead]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **a name, a mystery**
UST a name … The name had a secret meaning

This phrase expresses a single idea by using two words together. The word **mystery** tells what kind of **name** was written on the woman's forehead. If it would be more natural in your language, you could express this meaning with an equivalent phrase. Alternate translation: [a mysterious name] or [a name that had a symbolic meaning]
Support Reference: Hendiadys

ULT **a name, a mystery**
UST a name … The name had a secret meaning

Some interpreters consider the word **mystery** to be part of the name of this woman. Alternate translation: [a name: Mystery,]
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
mystery	The name had a secret meaning
Babylon	Babylon
Prostitutes	Prostitutes
Abominations	of the Immoral Things
Earth	in the World

Revelation 17:6

ULT	UST
And I saw the woman being drunk from the blood of the saints and from the blood of the witnesses of Jesus and, having seen her, I wondered a great wonder.	*I saw that the woman had become drunk because she had drunk the blood of God's people. Those people had suffered for proclaiming the truth about Jesus. When I saw her, that astonished me completely.*

ULT **from the blood of the saints and from the blood of the witnesses of Jesus**
UST because she had drunk the blood of God's people. Those people had suffered for proclaiming the truth about Jesus

These two phrases mean similar things. John is using repetition to emphasize the idea that the phrases express. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could combine them. Alternate translation: [from the blood of the saints who had borne witness to Jesus]

Support Reference: Parallelism

ULT **I wondered a great wonder**
UST that astonished me completely

John is using a construction in which a verb and its object come from the same root. You may be able to use the same construction in your language to express the meaning here. Alternatively, your language may have its own way of expressing the same meaning. Alternate translation: [I wondered greatly]

Support Reference: Poetry

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
drunk	drunk
saints	of God's people
witnesses	Those people had suffered for proclaiming the truth
Jesus	Jesus

Revelation 17:7

ULT	UST
But the angel said to me, "Why are you wondering? I will tell to you the mystery of the woman and of the beast carrying her having the seven heads and the ten horns.	*The angel said to me, "This should not astonish you. I will explain to you the hidden meaning of the woman and of the beast on which she rides. That beast has seven heads and ten horns.*

ULT **Why are you wondering**
UST This should not astonish you

The angel is using the question form for emphasis. If you would not use the question form for this purpose in your language, you could translate this as a statement or as an exclamation. Alternate translation: [You do not need to wonder!]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
angel	angel
mystery	hidden meaning
beast	beast
carrying	on which … rides
horns	horns

Revelation 17:8

ULT	UST
The beast that you saw was and is not but is about to come up from the abyss, and it is going to destruction, and the ones living on the earth whose names have not been written in the Book of Life from the foundation of the world will wonder, seeing the beast that was and is not but will come.	*The beast that you saw lived previously. Now he is no longer alive. But he is about to come back up from the deep, dark pit. Eventually God will destroy him. But this beast will appear again after having lived previously and then dying. Seeing him will astonish the people on the earth whose names God did not write in the Book of Life before he created the world.*

ULT **it is going to destruction**
UST God will destroy him

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **destruction**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [is going to be destroyed]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **have not been written**
UST God did not write

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who did the action, the context suggests that it was God. Alternate translation: [God has not written]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **from the foundation of the world**
UST before he created the world

See how you translated this expression in 13:8. Alternate translation: [since God founded the world]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
beast	beast
abyss	deep, dark pit
earth	earth
Book	Book
Book of Life	Book of Life
foundation	he created
the foundation of the world	created
world	world
beast	beast

Revelation 17:9

ULT	UST
Here is the mind having wisdom: The seven heads are seven hills where the woman is sitting on them, and they are seven kings;	*People need to think wisely to understand this: The seven heads of the beast that the woman is riding represent seven hills. Those are the seven hills of the city that the woman represents. The heads also represent seven rulers.*

ULT **Here {is} the mind having wisdom**
UST People need to think wisely to understand this

The expression **Here is** introduces something that the speaker is calling for. Alternate translation: [This calls for a mind that has wisdom]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **Here {is} the mind having wisdom**
UST People need to think wisely to understand this

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **wisdom**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [This calls for a wise mind]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **where the woman is sitting on them**
UST that the woman represents

It might seem that this expression contains extra information that would be unnatural to express in your language. If so, you could shorten it. Alternate translation: [where the woman is sitting]
Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
mind	to think
wisdom	wisely
kings	rulers

Revelation 17:10

ULT	UST
the five have fallen, the one is, the other has not yet come, and when he comes, it is necessary for him to remain a little.	*Five of those rulers have died. One is still alive. The seventh ruler has not yet come. And when he comes, he will rule for only a short time.*

ULT **the five … the one … the other**
UST Five of those rulers … One … The seventh ruler

John is using the adjectives **five**, **one**, and **other** as nouns to mean these kings. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you could translate these words with equivalent phrases. Alternate translation: [the first five kings … one more of the kings … the other king]
Support Reference: Nominal Adjectives

ULT **have fallen**
UST have died

The angel is speaking of these **five** kings as if they have literally **fallen**. He means that they have died. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [have died]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **a little**
UST for only a short time

The angel is using the adjective **little** as a noun to mean a certain length of time. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you could translate this word with an equivalent phrase. Alternate translation: [for a little while]
Support Reference: Nominal Adjectives

Revelation 17:11

ULT	UST
And the beast that was and is not is itself also an eighth, but it is from the seven and is going to destruction.	*The beast that lived previously and then was not alive will be an eighth ruler. He is actually one of those seven rulers. God will certainly destroy him.*

ULT **an eighth … the seven**
UST an eighth ruler … of those seven rulers

The angel is using the adjectives **eighth** and **seven** as nouns to mean these kings. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you could translate this word with an equivalent phrase. Alternate translation: [an eighth king … the seven kings]
Support Reference: Nominal Adjectives

ULT **an eighth**
UST an eighth ruler

If your language does not use ordinal numbers, you could use a cardinal number here or an equivalent expression. Alternate translation: [king number eight]
Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

ULT **is going to destruction**
UST God will certainly destroy him

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **destruction**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [is going to be destroyed]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
beast	beast

Revelation 17:12

ULT	UST
And the ten horns that you saw are ten kings who have not yet received a kingdom, but they are receiving authority as kings with the beast for one hour.	*Now the ten horns that you saw represent ten rulers who have not yet begun to rule. But they will rule people together with the beast, though only for a short time.*

ULT **a kingdom**
UST have … begun to rule

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of a **kingdom**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [authority to rule as kings]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **for one hour**
UST though only for a short time

In the ancient world, an **hour** was the shortest time span that people envisioned. In this context, the term does not mean a literal hour of 60 minutes. It means the shortest time imaginable. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [for just a little while]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
horns	horns
kings	rulers
received	have … begun to rule
kingdom	have … begun to rule
receiving	they will rule people
authority	they will rule people
kings	they will rule people
beast	beast
hour	though only for a short time

Revelation 17:13

ULT	UST
These have one mind, and they give their power and authority to the beast.	*Those rulers will all agree to do the same thing. As a result, they will give the beast their power to rule.*

ULT **These have one mind**
UST Those rulers will all agree to do the same thing

This expression means to be in complete agreement. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [These kings are in complete agreement]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **their power and authority**
UST their power to rule

The terms **power** and **authority** mean similar things. The angel is using the two terms together for emphasis. If it would be clearer for your readers, you could express the emphasis with a single phrase. Alternate translation: [all of their authority]
Support Reference: Doublet

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
mind	will all agree to do the same thing
authority	power to rule
beast	beast

Revelation 17:14

ULT	UST
They will make war against the Lamb, but the Lamb will conquer them because he is Lord of lords and King of kings and the ones with him are called and chosen and faithful.”	*The rulers and the beast will fight against the Lamb. He will defeat them because he is the Lord who rules over all other lords and the King who rules over all other kings. The people who are with him are the ones whom God has chosen and called to himself and who keep serving him faithfully.”*

ULT **the ones with him {are} called and chosen and faithful**

UST The people who are with him are the ones whom God has chosen and called to himself and who keep serving him faithfully

The words **called** and **chosen** are not passive verbal forms, they are adjectives. However, if your language does not use passive forms, it might be clearer for your readers to use expressions that do not seem to be passive verbal forms. Alternate translation: [God has called and chosen the ones with him and they are faithful]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Lamb	Lamb
Lamb	He
Lord	Lord
lords	lords
King	King
kings	kings
called	called
chosen	chosen
faithful	who keep serving him faithfully

Revelation 17:15

ULT	UST
And he says to me, "The waters that you saw, where the prostitute sits, are peoples and multitudes and nations and languages.	*Then the angel said to me, "The waters that you saw in the city where the prostitute sits represent a large number of people from many different backgrounds.*

ULT **are peoples and multitudes and nations and languages**
UST represent a large number of people from many different backgrounds

The terms **peoples**, **multitudes**, **nations**, and **languages** mean similar things. John is using the four terms together to make a comprehensive statement. If it would be clearer for your readers, you could express the emphasis with a single phrase. Alternate translation: [every different people group]
Support Reference: Doublet

ULT **languages**
UST a large number of people from many different backgrounds

The angel is referring to speakers of various languages by association with the **languages** themselves. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [speakers of various languages]
Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
prostitute	prostitute
nations	a large number of people from many different backgrounds
languages	a large number of people from many different backgrounds

Revelation 17:16

ULT	UST
And the ten horns that you saw and the beast, they will hate the prostitute and they will make her desolated and naked and they will consume her flesh and they will burn her completely with fire,	*And the ten horns that you saw represent rulers. They and the beast will hate the prostitute. So they will plunder the city and leave nothing in it. Then they will destroy the city the way a wild animal devours another animal. They will burn down the city completely.*

ULT **they will make her desolated and naked**
UST plunder the city and leave nothing in it … will

The terms **desolated** and **naked** mean similar things. John is using the two terms together for emphasis. If it would be clearer for your readers, you could express the emphasis with a single phrase. Alternate translation: [they will take away everything she has]
Support Reference: Doublet

ULT **desolated**
UST plunder … will

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [desolate]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **they will consume her flesh**
UST they … destroy the city the way a wild animal devours another animal

The angel is speaking as if these **horns** (that is, these kings) and the **beast** will literally **consume** the **flesh** of the **prostitute**. But even within the world of this vision, that is not literally true. This is a common biblical image for destroying someone. If it would be clearer in your language, and especially if it would be helpful to your readers to know that cannibalism has no part in God's judgments against evil, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [they will destroy her]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **they will burn her completely with fire**
UST They will burn down the city completely

It might seem that this expression contains extra information that would be unnatural to express in your language. If so, you could shorten it. Alternate translation: [they will burn her up completely]
Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
horns	horns
beast	beast
prostitute	prostitute
desolated	plunder … will
they will consume	devours

Revelation 17:17

ULT	UST
for God has put into their hearts to do his purpose and to do one purpose and to give their kingdom to the beast until the words of God will be fulfilled.	*They will do that because God has caused them to decide to do what he wants them to do. As a result, they will all agree together to let the beast have their power to rule until God has accomplished what he said.*

ULT **God has put into their hearts**
UST God has caused them to decide

Here the **heart** represents the desires. Alternate translation: [God has put into their desires]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **God has put into their hearts**
UST God has caused them to decide

The angel is speaking as if God has literally **put** something into the **hearts** of these kings. He means that God has led them to want to do something. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [God has led them to have the desire]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **to do his purpose and to do one purpose and**
UST to do what he wants them to do. As a result, they will all agree together to

This phrase expresses a single idea by using two shorter phrases connected with **and**. The phrase **to do one purpose** tells how the kings will **do his purpose**, that is, God's purpose. If it would be more natural in your language, you could express this meaning with an equivalent phrase that does not use "and." Alternate translation: [to do God's purpose by agreeing]
Support Reference: Hendiadys

ULT **to do one purpose**
UST they will all agree together to

This expression means to be in complete agreement. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [to be in complete agreement]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **their kingdom**
UST their power to rule

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of a **kingdom**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [their authority to rule as kings]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **their kingdom**
UST their power to rule

Since the angel is referring to things that belong to several people, it might be more natural in your language to use the plural form of **kingdom**. Alternate translation: [their kingdoms]
Support Reference: Collective Nouns

> ULT **until the words of God will be fulfilled**
> UST until God has accomplished what he said

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [until God has fulfilled his words]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

> ULT **until the words of God will be fulfilled**
> UST until God has accomplished what he said

The angel is using the term **words** to mean things that God has spoken by using words. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [until God has fulfilled what he has spoken]

Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God
kingdom	power to rule
beast	beast
God	God
fulfilled	has accomplished

Revelation 17:18

ULT	UST
And the woman whom you saw is the great city having a kingdom over the kings of the earth.”	*And the prostitute that you saw represents the very evil city whose leaders rule over the other rulers in the world.”*

ULT **the great city having a kingdom over**
UST the very evil city whose leaders rule over

The angel is referring to the king who rules from the **great city** by association with that city itself. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [the great city whose king has a kingdom over]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **the great city having a kingdom over**
UST the very evil city whose leaders rule over

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **kingdom**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [the great city that rules over] or [the great city whose king rules over]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
kingdom	whose leaders rule
kings	other rulers
earth	in the world

Revelation 18

Revelation 18 Introduction

Revelation 18 Chapter Introduction

Structure and Formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with all or part of verses 1–8, 10, 16–17, and 19–24.

Translation Issues in This Chapter

"in one hour"

Characters in the narrative use the expression "in one hour" in verses 10, 17, and 19. In the ancient world, an "hour" was the shortest time span that people envisioned. In this context, the term does not mean a literal hour of 60 minutes. It means the shortest time imaginable. You may wish to translate this phrase with a comparable phrase in your language such as "in such a short time." (See: Idiom)

"woe, woe"

In verses 10, 16, and 19, kings and merchants repeat the word "woe" for emphasis. If it would not be natural in your language to repeat a word like that, you could express the emphasis in another way, for example, by using a different expression and including the word "very," as the UST does.

"she," "her"

People in this culture conventionally referred to cities by using feminine pronouns. Accordingly, throughout this chapter, various speakers refer to the city of Babylon as "she" and "her." Your language may use a different gender, so you might say "it" and "its" in your translation. You could also use a noun and say "that city." (See: Pronouns — When to Use Them)

"will not be see/heard/found anymore"

In verses 21, 22, and 23, an angel speaks a series of similar phrases describing what will not be "found" or "heard" or "seen" in Babylon "anymore." The repetition of such phrases is a figure of speech for emphasis. The angel is emphasizing how thoroughly God will destroy Babylon. If possible, use similar statements in your own translation. You may also wish to make each of these verses a separate paragraph, as ULT does, or use formatting in some other way to highlight the repeated phrases. (See: Litany)

Revelation 18:1

ULT	UST
After these things I saw another angel coming down from heaven, having great authority, and the earth was illuminated by his glory.	*After this I saw another angel coming down from heaven. God had given great authority to this angel. The angel was shining so brightly that he lit up the earth.*

ULT the earth was illuminated by his glory

UST The angel was shining so brightly that he lit up the earth

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [his glory illuminated the earth]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
angel	angel
heaven	heaven
authority	authority
earth	earth
glory	was shining so brightly that

Revelation 18:2

ULT	UST
And he cried out in a mighty voice, saying, "Babylon the Great has fallen! And she has become a habitation of demons and a hold of every unclean spirit and a hold of every unclean and detested bird.	*The angel shouted very loudly, "God is about to destroy the evil city of Babylon completely. People will no longer live in the ruins of the city. All kinds of evil spirits will live there. All kinds of disgusting scavenger birds will also live there.*

ULT **Babylon the Great has fallen**
UST God is about to destroy the evil city of Babylon completely

See how you translated the similar expression in 14:8. Alternate translation: [Babylon the Great has been destroyed] or [God has destroyed Babylon the Great]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **Babylon the Great has fallen**
UST God is about to destroy the evil city of Babylon completely

Some ancient manuscripts read, **Babylon the Great has fallen**. ULT follows that reading. Other ancient manuscripts read, "Fallen, fallen is Babylon the Great." If a translation of the Bible exists in your region, you may wish to use the reading that it uses. If a translation of the Bible does not exist in your region, you may wish to use the reading of ULT.
Support Reference: Textual Variants

ULT **she has become**
UST People will no longer live in the ruins of the city. All kinds of evil spirits will live there

As the introduction to this chapter discusses, the pronoun **she** refers to the city of Babylon. People in this culture conventionally referred to cities with feminine pronouns. Your language may use a different gender. You could also use a noun. Alternate translation: [it has become] or [that city has become]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **a habitation of demons and a hold of every unclean spirit**
UST People will no longer live in the ruins of the city. All kinds of evil spirits will live there

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. The second emphasizes the meaning of the first by repeating the same idea with different words. The angel is speaking in a Hebrew style of poetry, and Hebrew poetry was based on this kind of repetition. It would be good to show this to your readers by including both phrases in your translation rather than combining them. However, if such repetition would not be natural in your language, you could connect the phrases with a word other than **and** in order to show that the second phrase is repeating the first one, not saying something additional. Alternate translation: [an abode of demons, yes, a hold of every unclean spirit]
Support Reference: Parallelism

ULT **a hold of every unclean spirit and a hold of every unclean and detested bird**
UST People will no longer live in the ruins of the city. All kinds of evil spirits will live there. All kinds of disgusting scavenger birds will also live there

The angel says **every** here as a generalization for emphasis. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use a different way to express the emphasis. Alternate translation: [she has become overrun with unclean spirits and with unclean and detested birds]
Support Reference: Hyperbole

ULT **a hold of every unclean spirit and a hold of every unclean and detested bird**
UST People will no longer live in the ruins of the city. All kinds of evil spirits will live there. All kinds of disgusting scavenger birds will also live there

The angel is speaking as if these spirits and birds were literally in a **hold**, that is, a prison or other place where they were watched or guarded and could not leave. He means that the spirits and birds are now able to linger in the ruins of Babylon. Your language may have terms for places where animals and birds stay. Alternate translation: [a den of every unclean spirit and a roost of every unclean and detested bird]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **of … unclean and detested bird**
UST disgusting scavenger birds

The terms **unclean** and **detested** mean similar things. The angel is using the two terms together for emphasis. If it would be clearer for your readers, you could express the emphasis with a single phrase. Alternate translation: [loathsome bird]
Support Reference: Doublet

ULT **of … unclean and detested bird**
UST disgusting scavenger birds

The angel assumes that his listeners will understand that these birds are **unclean** and **detested** according to the law of Moses because they eat dead animals. You can say that explicitly in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [unclean and detested bird that eats dead animals] or [loathsome bird that eats dead animals]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **detested**
UST disgusting scavenger

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [detestable]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
cried out	The angel shouted
mighty	very loudly
Babylon	Babylon
demons	evil spirits
detested	disgusting scavenger
unclean spirit	evil spirits

Revelation 18:3

ULT	UST
For all the nations have drunk from the wine of her immoral passion and the kings of the earth have committed sexual immorality with her and the merchants of the earth have become rich from the power of her luxury."	*God is going to destroy Babylon because that evil city influenced many people groups to devote themselves to idol worship. Babylon influenced the rulers of those groups, and they made their people worship idols. Babylon also set an example of living in luxury. This made people in other places want to live in the same way. Those who sold luxury goods made a lot of money selling the goods to those people."*

ULT **all the nations have drunk from the wine of her immoral passion**
UST that evil city influenced many people groups to devote themselves to idol worship

See how you translated the similar expression in 17:2. Here, as there, this statement is not intended literally even within the world of this vision. Alternate translation: [all the nations have indulged in idolatry and greed with her]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **all the nations**
UST many people groups

The angel says **all** here as a generalization for emphasis. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use a different way to express the emphasis. Alternate translation: [nations throughout the world]
Support Reference: Hyperbole

ULT **the kings of the earth have committed sexual immorality with her**
UST Babylon influenced the rulers of those groups, and they made their people worship idols

See how you translated the similar expression in 17:2. This statement too is not intended literally. Alternate translation: [the kings of the earth have joined her in being idolatrous and greedy]
Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
nations	people groups
wine	influenced … to devote themselves to idol worship
immoral	influenced … to devote themselves to idol worship
kings	rulers
earth	of those groups
sexual immorality	influenced … and they made their people worship idols
earth	Those who sold luxury goods

Revelation 18:4

ULT	UST
And I heard another voice from heaven saying, "Come out from her, my people, so that you might not share in her sins and so that you might not receive from her plagues.	*Then I heard someone else speak from heaven. He said, "My people, run away from that evil city of Babylon! If you stay there, you may sin as the people there do. And if you sin as they do, I will punish you in the same way that I will punish them.*

ULT **I heard another voice from heaven saying**

UST I heard someone else speak from heaven. He said

John is referring to someone speaking by association with the **voice** that the person is using to speak. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [I heard someone speaking from heaven and saying]

Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
heaven	heaven
you might … share	as … do
sins	sin
receive	I will punish you
plagues	in the same way that I will punish
my people	My people

Revelation 18:5

ULT	UST
For her sins have been heaped as far as heaven, and God has remembered her offenses.	*Run away because the people of that evil city have sinned very greatly and God is now going to punish them for what they have done."*

ULT **her sins have been heaped as far as heaven**
UST the people of that evil city have sinned very greatly

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. This could mean: (1) Alternate translation: [the heap of her sins is as high as heaven]; or (2) Alternate translation: [the heap of her sins is as high as the sky]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **her sins have been heaped as far as heaven**
UST the people of that evil city have sinned very greatly

The voice is speaking as if the **sins** of Babylon were literally in a very high pile. He means that Babylon has committed very many sins. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [she has committed very many sins]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **God has remembered her offenses**
UST God is now going to punish them for what they have done

The voice is not suggesting that God had forgotten about Babylon but has now **remembered** the city's **offenses**. The angel is using a common biblical expression that means that God has taken action with regard to a person or entity of which he was already aware, either to help or to punish. See how you translated the similar expression in 16:19. Alternate translation: [God has punished her for her offenses]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
sins	sinned
heaven	very greatly
God	God

Revelation 18:6

ULT	UST
Give back to her even as she has given, and double doubles to her according to her deeds; in the cup that she mixed, mix double for her.	*The voice from heaven told the angels whom God had assigned to punish Babylon, "Punish the people of that city just as much as they harmed other people. In fact, cause them to suffer twice as much as they caused other people to suffer.*

ULT Give back to her even as she has given, and double doubles {to her} according to her deeds

UST The voice from heaven told the angels whom God had assigned to punish Babylon, "Punish the people of that city just as much as they harmed other people. In fact, cause them to suffer twice as much as they caused other people to suffer

The voice from heaven is using a characteristic form of Hebrew speech. The voice is naming a number and then, for emphasis, naming the next higher number. An example of this is in Amos 1:3, "For three sins of Damascus, even for four, I will not turn away punishment." If it might seem to your readers that the voice from heaven was contradicting itself, first saying to punish Babylon one way (just as much as the city hurt others) and then saying to punish Babylon a different way (twice as much as the city hurt others), you could show in your translation that this is actually a progression for emphasis. UST models one way to do this.

Support Reference: Parallelism

ULT Give back … double … to her … mix

UST The voice from heaven told the angels whom God had assigned to punish Babylon, "Punish … cause them to suffer

All of these imperatives are plural. (They seem to address the angels whom God has appointed to punish Babylon, as UST indicates.) So use plural imperatives in your translation if your language marks that distinction.

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

ULT double doubles {to her} according to her deeds; in the cup that she mixed, mix double for her

UST cause them to suffer twice as much as they caused other people to suffer

These two phrases mean similar things. The voice from heaven is using repetition to emphasize the idea that the phrases express. The first phrase expresses it literally and the second phrase expresses it figuratively. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could combine the two phrases. UST models one way of doing this.

Support Reference: Parallelism

ULT double doubles to her

UST cause them to suffer twice as much

The voice is using a construction in which a verb and its object come from the same root. You may be able to use the same construction in your language to express the meaning here. Alternatively, your language may have its own way of expressing the same meaning. Alternate translation: [repay her double]

Support Reference: Poetry

> ULT **in the cup that she mixed, mix double for her**
> UST cause them to suffer twice as much as they caused other people to suffer

The voice is speaking as if Babylon had literally **mixed** a **cup** of wine for others to drink. This is a reprise of the image in 14:8. However, the emphasis here is on how drinking too much wine makes a person stagger. This is an image of how Babylon will stagger from God's punishments. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [punish her in a way that will make her stagger twice as much as she made others stagger]

Support Reference: Metaphor

Revelation 18:7

ULT	UST
As much as she glorified herself and lived in luxury, give her just as much torture and grief. For she says in her heart, 'I sit as a queen and I am not a widow and I will certainly not see mourning.'	*The people of the city of Babylon honored themselves. They indulged in pleasures. To the same extent that they did that, torment them and cause them to grieve. Do that because they were confident that they would always rule other people. They were confident that they could provide themselves with everything they needed. They were confident that nothing bad would ever happen to them.*

ULT **she says in her heart, 'I sit {as} a queen and I am not a widow and I will certainly not see mourning**

UST they were confident … they would always rule other people. They were confident that they could provide themselves with everything they needed. They were confident that nothing bad would ever happen to them

If it would be clearer in your language, you could translate this so that there is not a quotation within a quotation. Alternate translation: [she says in her heart that she sits as a queen and that she is not a widow and that she will not see mourning at all]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **she says in her heart**

UST they were confident

Here the **heart** figuratively represents the thoughts and motives. Alternate translation: [she thinks to herself]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **I sit {as} a queen**

UST they would always rule other people

Here the word **sit** means "to be." If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [I am a queen]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **I am not a widow**

UST they could provide themselves with everything they needed

Babylon is referring to herself as not being dependent on anyone by association with the way that a **widow** in this culture likely would be dependent on others. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [I am not dependent on anyone]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **I will certainly not see mourning**

UST nothing bad would ever happen to them

Here the word **see** means "to experience." If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [I will not experience any mourning at all]

Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
glorified	The people of the city of Babylon honored
torture	torment
grief	cause them to grieve
queen	they would always rule other people
mourning	bad

Revelation 18:8

ULT	UST
Because of this in one day her plagues will come: death and mourning and famine, and she will be consumed by fire, for the Lord God judging her is mighty."	*Because the people of Babylon are so wicked, terrible things will happen to them all at once. Some will die and others will mourn for them. People will be hungry because they will have no food. The city will burn up completely. The Lord God is able to punish her in these ways because he is mighty."*

ULT **in one day**
UST all at once

The voice is using the term **day** to mean a short time. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [in just a short time]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **she will be consumed by fire**
UST The city will burn up completely

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [fire will consume her]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
day	all at once
plagues	terrible things
mourning	mourn
famine	People will be hungry because they will have no food
Lord	Lord
God	God
judging	is able to punish … in these ways
mighty	mighty

Revelation 18:9

ULT	UST
And the kings of the earth, the ones having committed sexual immorality and having lived in luxury with her, will weep and wail over her when they see the smoke of her burning,	*The rulers of the peoples who live on earth worshiped idols with the people of Babylon. They indulged in pleasures with the people of Babylon. So they will mourn greatly for the city when they see it burning up.*

ULT **And the kings of the earth**
UST The rulers of the peoples who live on earth … So

Some versions continue the quotation of the voice from heaven that begins in verse 4 through to the end of this chapter. If a translation of the Bible exists in your region, you may wish to punctuate the quotation the way it does. If a translation of the Bible does not exist in your region, you may wish to punctuate the quotation the way ULT does and end it with verse 8.
Support Reference: Quote Markings

ULT **the … ones having committed sexual immorality**
UST The … worshiped idols

Here as in 14:3, committing **sexual immorality** is a symbolic image for worshiping idols. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [the ones having worshiped idols]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **will weep and wail**
UST they will mourn greatly

The terms **weep** and **wail** mean similar things. John is using the two terms together for emphasis. If it would be clearer for your readers, you could express the emphasis with a single phrase. Alternate translation: [will weep bitterly]
Support Reference: Doublet

ULT **the smoke of her burning**
UST it burning up

John is referring to the fire that will burn Babylon by association with the **burning** itself. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [the smoke from the fire that is burning her]
Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
kings	rulers of the peoples
earth	earth
sexual immorality	worshiped idols
will weep	they will mourn greatly

Revelation 18:10

ULT	UST
standing from afar because of the fear of her torment, saying, "Woe, woe, the great city, Babylon, the mighty city! For in one hour your judgment has come."	*Those rulers will stand far away from Babylon because they will be afraid that God will punish them too if they get too close. They will say, "How very terrible it is for the Great Babylon, that strong city! God is punishing the people who live there so quickly!"*

ULT **because of the fear of her torment**
UST because they will be afraid that God will punish them too

John is referring to the fire that is burning up and tormenting Babylon by association with the **torment** itself. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [because they are afraid of the fire that is tormenting her]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **Woe, woe**
UST How very terrible it is for

As the introduction to this chapter discusses, the speakers are repeating the word **woe** for emphasis. If it would not be natural in your language to repeat a word like that, you could express the emphasis in another way, for example, by using a different expression and including the word "very," as the UST does.
Support Reference: Reduplication

ULT **For in one hour your judgment has come**
UST God is punishing the people who live there so quickly

The kings are speaking directly to the city of Babylon even though they know that the city cannot hear them. They are doing this to show in a very strong way to the people who can hear them, their fellow kings, how they feel about what is happening to Babylon. If someone speaking your language would not do this, you could translate this as the merchants speaking to one another about Babylon rather than to Babylon. Alternate translation: [For in one hour her judgment has come]
Support Reference: Apostrophe

ULT **in one hour**
UST so quickly

As the introduction to this chapter discusses, in the ancient world, an **hour** was the shortest time span that people envisioned. In contexts such as this one, the term does not mean a literal hour of sixty minutes. It means the shortest time imaginable. Alternate translation: [in such a short time]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **your judgment has come**
UST God is punishing the people who live there

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **judgment**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [God has judged you]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
fear	afraid
torment	that God will punish them
Woe	How very terrible it is for
woe	How very terrible it is for
Babylon	Babylon
hour	so quickly
judgment	God is punishing

Revelation 18:11

ULT	UST
And the merchants of the earth weep and mourn for her, because no one buys their cargo anymore—	*And the merchants of the earth will mourn greatly for the city because no one living there will ever again buy the things that they have to sell.*

ULT **weep and mourn**
UST will mourn greatly

The terms **weep** and **mourn** mean similar things. John is using the two terms together for emphasis. If it would be clearer for your readers, you could express the emphasis with a single phrase. Alternate translation: [weep bitterly]
Support Reference: Doublet

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
earth	earth
weep	will mourn greatly
mourn	mourn

Revelation 18:12

ULT	UST
cargo of gold and silver and precious stone and pearls and fine linen and purple cloth and silk and scarlet cloth and every citron wood and every ivory vessel and every vessel from the costliest wood and bronze and iron and marble	

ULT **precious stone**
UST precious stones

See how you translated the term **precious stone** in 17:4. Alternate translation: [gemstones]
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **fine linen and purple cloth and silk and scarlet cloth**
UST expensive cloth made of fine linen and silk, expensive cloth that is dyed purple and crimson

See how you translated **fine linen**, the term for an expensive cloth made from flax, in 15:6; **purple cloth** is a dark red-blue cloth that was very expensive at this time; **silk** is a soft, strong cloth made from the fine string that silkworms make when they form their cocoons; **scarlet cloth** was an expensive red cloth. If some or all of these terms might be unfamiliar to your readers, you could use a general expression in your translation. Alternate translation: [many kinds of expensive cloth]
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **every citron wood and every ivory vessel and every vessel from the costliest wood and bronze and iron and marble**
UST many kinds of scented wood and many kinds of items made of ivory, the most expensive wood, bronze, iron, and marble … and … and

John says **every** in these cases as a generalization for emphasis. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use a different way to express the emphasis. Alternate translation: [many kinds of fragrant wood and many kinds of ivory vessels and many kinds of vessels made from precious wood and bronze and iron and marble]
Support Reference: Hyperbole

ULT **every citron wood**
UST many kinds of scented wood

The wood of the **citron** tree is desirable because it is fragrant. If your readers would not be familiar with **citron wood**, you could use a general expression. Alternate translation: [every fragrant wood]
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **every citron wood**
UST many kinds of scented wood

Since there is only one kind of **citron** tree, by **every citron wood**, John means by association many kinds of wood that are fragrant like citron wood. Alternate translation: [every fragrant wood]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **ivory vessel**
UST items made of ivory

The word **ivory** describes a beautiful, hard, white material that people get from the tusks or teeth of very large animals such as elephants and walruses. Alternate translation: [beautiful containers made from tusks] or [containers made from valuable animal teeth]
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **marble**
UST marble

The word **marble** describes a beautiful, valuable stone that people use in buildings and to make statues, furniture, and many other things. If your readers might not be familiar with marble, you could use a general expression in your translation. Alternate translation: [beautiful stone]
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
gold	gold
silver	silver
purple	purple
bronze	bronze

Revelation 18:13

ULT	UST
and cinnamon and spice and incense and myrrh and frankincense and wine and oil and fine flour and wheat and cattle and sheep and horses and chariots and bodies and souls of men.	

ULT **cinnamon and spice**
UST cinnamon, spices … as slaves

Since **cinnamon** is one kind of **spice**, John means implicitly that cinnamon was one example of the spices that the merchants sold. You can indicate this your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [cinnamon and other spices]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **cinnamon and spice**
UST cinnamon, spices … as slaves

The word **cinnamon** describes a fragrant spice that people make from the bark of a certain tree. If your readers would not be familiar with what cinnamon is, you could use a general term. Alternate translation: [spice from tree bark and other spices]
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **incense and myrrh and frankincense**
UST incense, myrrh, frankincense

Since **myrrh** and **frankincense** are two kinds of **incense**, John means implicitly that these are two examples of the incense that the merchants sold. You can indicate this your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [myrrh and frankincense and other kinds of incense]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **bodies and souls of men**
UST human beings as slaves

In this context, the expressions **bodies** and **souls of men** mean the same thing. John is using the two terms together for emphasis. He is first stating how things look on the outside: The bodies of the slaves whom the merchants are trading appear to be just another physical cargo. But John is then stating the real truth: This traffic in slaves is a traffic in human souls. You could indicate this in your translation. Alternate translation: [slaves, that is, the souls of men]
Support Reference: Doublet

ULT **souls of men**
UST human beings

Although the term **men** is masculine, John is using the word in a generic sense that includes both men and women. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use a term in your language that is clearly inclusive of both men and women. Alternate translation: [human souls]
Support Reference: When Masculine Words Include Women

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
incense	incense
myrrh	myrrh
frankincense	frankincense
wine	wine
oil	oil
wheat	grain
cattle	cattle
sheep	sheep
horses	horses
chariots	chariots
souls	beings

Revelation 18:14

ULT	UST
And your autumn fruit of the desire of your soul has gone away from you, and all the luxurious and the splendid has perished from you, and they will certainly not be found any longer.	*Yes, the good things the people of Babylon longed to have are gone! God has punished them by destroying their many valuable possessions! They have lost those possessions permanently.*

ULT **your autumn fruit of the desire of {your} soul has gone away from you, and all the luxurious and the splendid has perished from you**
UST the good things the people of Babylon longed to have are gone! God has punished them by destroying their many valuable possessions

As John relates this vision, here he addresses something that he knows cannot hear him, the city of Babylon in the vision, in order to show his readers in a strong way how he feels about it. If someone speaking your language would not do this, you could translate this as John speaking about Babylon rather than to Babylon. Alternate translation: [her autumn fruit, the desire of her soul, has gone away from her, and all the luxurious and the splendid has perished from her]
Support Reference: Apostrophe

ULT **your autumn fruit of the desire of {your} soul**
UST the good things the people of Babylon longed to have

In this possessive form, **fruit** is the object of **desire** rather than the result of **desire**. That is, this does not mean fruit that the soul's desire has borne, but it means fruit that the soul desires to have. Alternate translation: [the autumn fruit that your soul desires to have]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **your autumn fruit of the desire of {your} soul has gone away**
UST the good things the people of Babylon longed to have are gone

Here the term **soul** represents the whole person by association with the way that each person has a soul. Alternate translation: [the autumn fruit that you desired has gone away]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **autumn fruit**
UST the good things

John is referring to ripe fruit by association with the way fruit ripens in the **autumn**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [ripe fruit]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **autumn fruit … has gone away**
UST the good things … are gone

John is using **autumn fruit** to represent the rich pleasures that Babylon desired. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [rich pleasures … have gone away]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **all the luxurious and the splendid has perished from you, and they will certainly not be found any longer**

UST God has punished them by destroying their many valuable possessions! They have lost those possessions permanently

These two phrases mean similar things. John is using repetition to emphasize the idea that the phrases express. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could combine them. Alternate translation: [all the luxurious and the splendid has perished from you forever]

Support Reference: Parallelism

ULT **all the luxurious and the splendid**

UST their many valuable possessions

John is using the adjectives **luxurious** and **splendid** as nouns to mean certain kinds of goods. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you could translate this phrase with an equivalent one. Alternate translation: [all the luxurious and splendid goods] or [everything that is luxurious and splendid]

Support Reference: Nominal Adjectives

ULT **all the luxurious and the splendid**

UST their many valuable possessions

The terms **luxurious** and **splendid** mean similar things. John is using the two terms together for emphasis. If it would be clearer for your readers, you could express the emphasis with a single phrase. Alternate translation: [all the very luxurious goods]

Support Reference: Doublet

ULT **they will certainly not be found any longer**

UST They have lost those possessions permanently

Here the expression **will not be found** means “will not be able to be found” or “will not be there.” Alternate translation: [they will not be there any longer]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **they will certainly not be found any longer**

UST They have lost those possessions permanently

The merchants are actually using a double negative here, “they will not be found at all no longer.” The second negative does not cancel the first to create a positive meaning. If for emphasis your language uses double negatives that do not cancel one another, it would be appropriate to use that construction here in your translation.

Support Reference: Double Negatives

ULT **they will certainly not be found**

UST They have lost those possessions

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [certainly no one will find them]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
fruit	the good things
desire	longed to have
soul	the people of Babylon
perished	God has punished them by destroying

Revelation 18:15

ULT	UST
The merchants of these things, having become rich, will stand afar off from her because of the fear of her torment, weeping and mourning,	*Many merchants earned a lot of money by selling these things. Those merchants will stand far away from Babylon because they will be afraid that God will punish them too if they get too close. They will mourn greatly*

ULT **because of the fear of her torment**

UST because they will be afraid that God will punish them too if they get too close

See how you translated this same expression in 18:10. Alternate translation: [because they are afraid of the fire that is tormenting her]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **weeping and mourning**

UST They will mourn greatly

The terms **weeping** and **mourning** mean similar things. John is using the two terms together for emphasis. If it would be clearer for your readers, you could express the emphasis with a single phrase. Alternate translation: [weeping bitterly]

Support Reference: Doublet

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
fear	afraid
torment	that God will punish them too if they get too close
weeping	They will mourn greatly
mourning	mourn

Revelation 18:16

ULT	UST
saying, "Woe, woe to the great city having been dressed in fine linen and purple and scarlet and adorned with gold and precious stones and pearls,	*and they will say, "Very terrible things have happened to that great city! That city was like a woman who dressed in clothes made of fine linen and expensive cloth dyed purple and crimson and who wore gold jewelry with precious stones and pearls.*

ULT **having been dressed in fine linen and purple and scarlet and adorned with gold and precious stones and pearls**
UST That city was like a woman who dressed in clothes made of fine linen and expensive cloth dyed purple and crimson and who wore gold jewelry with precious stones and pearls

The merchants are speaking as if the city of Babylon had literally been **dressed** in expensive clothing and **adorned** with jewels. They mean that the people of the city lived in luxury. Even if your language does not ordinarily use figures of speech, you may wish to preserve this figure of speech in your translation so that your readers can see how the merchants were speaking about Babylon. One way to do that would be to translate it as a simile, as UST does.
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **having been dressed in fine linen and purple and scarlet and adorned**
UST That city was like a woman who dressed in clothes made of fine linen and expensive cloth dyed purple and crimson and who wore

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [that dressed in fine linen and purple and scarlet and adorned herself]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **fine linen and purple and scarlet … gold and precious stones and pearls**
UST clothes made of fine linen and expensive cloth dyed purple and crimson … gold jewelry with precious stones and pearls

See how you translated each of these terms in 18:12.
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Woe	Very terrible things have happened to
woe	Very terrible things have happened to
purple	purple
gold	gold

Revelation 18:17

ULT	UST
for in one hour so much wealth has been destroyed.” And every shipmaster and every one sailing to a place and sailors and as many as work the sea stood from afar	*But God has destroyed all these expensive things so quickly!” Every ship captain, every ship passenger, all sailors, and all others who do work involving the ocean will stand far away from the city.*

ULT **so much wealth has been destroyed**

UST God has destroyed all these expensive things

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who did the action, the context suggests that it was God. Alternate translation: [God has destroyed so much wealth]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **shipmaster**

UST ship captain

The word **shipmaster** refers to a particular member of a ship’s crew. In this context, this could mean: (1) the captain of a ship. Alternate translation, as in UST: [ship captain]; or (2) the person who steers a ship. Alternate translation: [navigator]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **as many as work the sea**

UST all others who do work involving the ocean

John is using this general expression to mean anyone else who, like the previous three kinds of people he mentions in this verse, earns a living from the sea in some way. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [as many others as earn their living from the sea]

Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
hour	so quickly
has been destroyed	God has destroyed
work	work

Revelation 18:18

ULT	UST
and were crying out, seeing the smoke of her burning, saying, “What is like the great city?”	*When they see the smoke of the fire that is burning there, they will shout, “No other city has ever been like that great city!”*

ULT **the smoke of her burning**
UST the smoke of the fire that is burning there

See how you translated the same expression in 18:9. Alternate translation: [the smoke from the fire that is burning her]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **What {is} like the great city**
UST No other city has ever been like that great city

The sea workers are using the question form for emphasis. If you would not use the question form for this purpose in your language, you could translate this as a statement or as an exclamation. Alternate translation: [Nothing is like the great city!]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **What**
UST No other city has ever been

By **What**, the sea workers implicitly mean “What city.” You can say this explicitly in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [What city] or, in an exclamation, [No other city]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
crying out	they will shout

Revelation 18:19

ULT	UST
And they threw dust on their heads and cried out, weeping and mourning, saying, "Woe, woe, the great city, by which all the ones having ships in the sea became rich from her wealth, for in one hour she has been destroyed."	*They will even throw dust on their heads to show that they are sad. Then they will shout in great distress, "Very terrible things have happened to Babylon. The people who lived in that city bought many expensive things, so that people who owned ships earned a lot of money by transporting those things there. God has destroyed that city so quickly!"*

ULT **they threw dust on their heads**
UST They will … throw dust on their heads to show that they are sad

The sea workers **threw dust on their heads** as a symbolic action to show how distressed they were that Babylon had been destroyed. If this would not be clear to your readers, you could explain the significance of this action. Alternate translation: [they threw dust on their heads to show how distressed they were]
Support Reference: Symbolic Action

ULT **weeping and mourning**
UST in great distress

The terms **weeping** and **mourning** mean similar things. John is using the two terms together for emphasis. If it would be clearer for your readers, you could express the emphasis with a single phrase. Alternate translation: [weeping bitterly]
Support Reference: Doublet

ULT **ships in the sea**
UST ships

It might seem that the expression **ships in the sea** contains extra information that would be unnatural to express in your language. If so, you could shorten it. Alternate translation: [ships]
Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

ULT **she has been destroyed**
UST God has destroyed that city

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who did the action, the context suggests that it was God. Alternate translation: [God has destroyed her]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
cried out	they will shout
weeping	in great distress
mourning	in great distress
Woe	Very terrible things have happened to
woe	Very terrible things have happened to
hour	so quickly
she has been destroyed	God has destroyed that city

Revelation 18:20

ULT	UST
(“Rejoice over her, heaven, also you saints and apostles and prophets, for God has judged your judgment against her!”)	*Then someone spoke from heaven saying, “You who live in heaven, rejoice over what has happened to Babylon! You who are God’s people, including you apostles and prophets, rejoice because God has justly punished the people of that city because they harmed you so badly!”*

ULT **Rejoice**
UST Then someone spoke from heaven saying … rejoice

The sea workers finish speaking at the end of verse 19. Someone else begins speaking here. It would be appropriate to show this in your translation by using whatever punctuation or convention your language uses to show the end of one quotation and the beginning of another.
Support Reference: Quote Markings

ULT **Rejoice**
UST Then someone spoke from heaven saying … rejoice

In this verse, someone breaks into John’s narrative of his vision to speak directly to the audience in heaven and on earth. ULT puts the verse in parentheses to show this. There may be a comparable convention in your language that you can use in your translation. You can also state explicitly who is speaking, as UST does. That speaker could be: (1) the voice from heaven that spoke in 18:4–8 or another voice from heaven. (2) Jesus, as in 16:15. (3) John himself.
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **Rejoice**
UST Then someone spoke from heaven saying … rejoice

The implied “you” in the imperative **Rejoice** is singular here because this imperative addresses **heaven**. The pronoun **you** is plural because it addresses the **saints and apostles and prophets**. So use a singular imperative and a plural pronoun in your translation if your language marks that distinction.
Support Reference: Forms of ‘You’ — Singular

ULT **heaven**
UST You who live in heaven

The speaker is referring to everyone who lives in heaven by association with **heaven** itself. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [all of you who live in heaven]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **God has judged your judgment against her**
UST rejoice … God has justly punished the people of that city because they harmed you so badly

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **judgment**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [God has judged her for what she did to you]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

> ULT **God has judged your judgment against her**
> UST rejoice … God has justly punished the people of that city because they harmed you so badly

The speaker is using a construction in which a verb and its object come from the same root. You may be able to use the same construction in your language to express the meaning here. Alternatively, your language may have its own way of describing this. Alternate translation: [she deserved to be judged for what she did to you, and God has indeed judged her]

Support Reference: Poetry

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
heaven	heaven
saints	You who are God's people
apostles	apostles
prophets	prophets
God	God
judged	has justly punished
judgment	because they harmed … so badly

Revelation 18:21

ULT	UST
And a mighty angel took up a stone like a great millstone and threw it into the sea, saying, "Thus Babylon, the great city, will be thrown down with violence, and she will certainly not be seen anymore,	*Then a mighty angel picked up a boulder the size of a large stone for grinding grain and he threw it into the ocean. Then he said, "God will destroy the great city of Babylon abruptly! It will disappear completely, just as that stone disappeared into the ocean! Babylon will be gone forever!*

ULT **a stone like a great millstone**
UST a boulder the size of a large stone for grinding grain

The point of this comparison is that the **stone** that the **angel took up** was very large and heavy and so it made a tremendous, dramatic splash when it hit the **sea**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could make this point explicitly. Alternate translation: [a stone that was very large and heavy like a great millstone]
Support Reference: Simile

ULT **a … millstone**
UST a … stone for grinding grain

A **millstone** is a large, flat, round stone that people use to crush kernels of grain against a second **millstone**, processing the grain into food for humans. If your readers would not be familiar with what a millstone is, in your translation you could use the name of a comparable object in your culture or you could use a general expression.
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **Thus Babylon, the great city, will be thrown down with violence**
UST God will destroy the great city of Babylon abruptly … just as that stone disappeared into the ocean

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who did the action, the context suggests that it was God. Alternate translation: [God will throw down Babylon, the great city]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **Thus Babylon, the great city, will be thrown down with violence**
UST God will destroy the great city of Babylon abruptly … just as that stone disappeared into the ocean

The angel is speaking as if Babylon will literally be **thrown down** as if from a height. He means that the city will be completely destroyed. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [God will completely destroy Babylon, the great city]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **with violence**
UST abruptly

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **violence**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [violently]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **she will certainly not be seen anymore**
UST It will disappear completely … Babylon will be gone forever

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [no one at all will see her anymore]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
mighty	mighty
angel	angel
great	large
Babylon	Babylon

Revelation 18:22

ULT	UST
and the sound of harpists and musicians and flutists and trumpeters will certainly not be heard in you anymore, and every craftsman will certainly not be found in you anymore, and the sound of a mill will certainly not be heard in you anymore.	*In that city there will never again be anyone playing harps, singing, playing flutes, or blowing trumpets. There will no longer be any skilled workers making things. There will never again be people grinding grain at the mills.*

ULT **and the sound of harpists and musicians and flutists and trumpeters will certainly not be heard**

UST there will never again be anyone playing harps, singing, playing flutes, or blowing trumpets

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [and no one at all will hear the sound of harpists and musicians and flutists and trumpeters]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **in you … in you … in you**

UST In that city … There will no longer be … There will never again be

The angel is speaking directly to the city of Babylon even though he knows that the city cannot hear him. He is doing this to show in a very strong way to the people who can hear them, probably "heaven" and the "saints and apostles and prophets" from verse 20, how he feels about what is happening to Babylon. If someone speaking your language would not do this, you could translate this as the angel speaking about Babylon rather than to Babylon. Alternate translation: [in her … in her … in her]

Support Reference: Apostrophe

ULT **every craftsman will certainly not be found**

UST There will no longer be any skilled workers making things

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [no one at all will find a craftsman]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **every craftsman will certainly not be found**

UST There will no longer be any skilled workers making things

Here the expression **will not be found** means "will not be able to be found" or "will not be there." Alternate translation: [no craftsman will be there]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **the sound of a mill will certainly not be heard**

UST There will never again be people grinding grain at the mills

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [no one at all will hear the sound of a mill]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
harpists	harps
flutists	flutes
trumpeters	trumpets

Revelation 18:23

ULT	UST
And the light of a lamp will certainly not shine in you anymore, and the voice of a bridegroom and a bride will certainly not be heard in you anymore, for your merchants were the great ones of the earth because all the nations were deceived by your sorcery.	*No lamp will ever again shine there. There will never again be the happy voices of any bridegroom and his bride. God will destroy this city because its merchants were the most important people in the world. They were so prosperous because it was as if the city used witchcraft to get every people group to live as its people did.*

ULT **in you … in you**
UST there … be

As in verse 22, for emphasis the angel is speaking directly to the city of Babylon even though he knows that the city cannot hear him. If someone speaking your language would not do this, you could translate this as the angel speaking about Babylon rather than to Babylon. Alternate translation: [in her … in her]
Support Reference: Apostrophe

ULT **the voice of a bridegroom and a bride will certainly not be heard**
UST There will never again be the happy voices of any bridegroom and his bride

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [no one at all will hear the voice of a bridegroom and a bride]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **the voice**
UST the happy voices

Since the angel is referring to two people, it might be more natural in your language to use the plural form of **voice** or the dual form if your language marks that distinction. Alternate translation: [the voices]
Support Reference: Collective Nouns

ULT **all the nations were deceived by your sorcery**
UST it was as if the city used witchcraft to get every people group to live as its people did

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [you deceived all the nations by your sorcery]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **all the nations were deceived by your sorcery**
UST it was as if the city used witchcraft to get every people group to live as its people did

The angel is speaking as if these Babylon had literally used **sorcery** to deceive the nations. He likely means that Babylon made living in excessive luxury seem attractive and acceptable. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [you influenced all the nations to try to live in luxury]
Support Reference: Metaphor

> ULT **all the nations**
> UST every people group

The angel says **all** here as a generalization for emphasis. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use a different way to express the emphasis. Alternate translation: [nations throughout the world]

Support Reference: Hyperbole

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
lamp	lamp
bridegroom	bridegroom
bride	bride
earth	in the world
nations	people group
deceived	to get … to live as its people did
sorcery	witchcraft

Revelation 18:24

ULT	UST
And in her was found the blood of prophets and saints and of all the ones having been slain on the earth."	*The city is also guilty of killing the prophets and others of God's people. Indeed, because it used violence and set an example of violence, it is guilty of every murder that people committed on the earth!"*

ULT **was found**
UST The city is … guilty of killing

Here the expression **was found** means "could be found" or "was there." Alternate translation: [was]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **in her was found the blood of prophets and saints**
UST The city is … guilty of killing the prophets and others of God's people

The implication is that this **blood** is evidence that Babylon is guilty of killing the **prophets and saints**. You can provide this information in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [she was clearly guilty of killing prophets and saints]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **of all the ones having been slain on the earth**
UST every murder that people committed on the earth

This could mean: (1) that the angel is saying **all** here as a generalization for emphasis. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use a different way to express the emphasis. Alternate translation: [of ones having been slain throughout the earth]; or (2) that the angel is using a passive verbal form (See: next note) to refer to all the other **ones**, besides **prophets** and **saints**, whom Babylon slew. Alternate translation: [of all the other ones she slew on the earth]
Support Reference: Hyperbole

ULT **of all the ones having been slain**
UST every murder that people committed

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [of all the ones she slew]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
prophets	prophets
saints	others of God's people
earth	earth

Revelation 19

Revelation 19 Introduction

Revelation 19 Chapter Introduction

Structure and Formatting

- Verses 1–4 conclude the topic of the destruction of Babylon.
- Verses 5–10 introduce the topic of the wedding of the Lamb.
- Verses 11–21 describe the destruction of the beast and the false prophet.

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with verses 1–8.

Religious and Cultural Concepts in This Chapter

Songs

The book of Revelation often describes heaven as a place where people sing. They worship God with songs. This illustrates that heaven is a place where God is always worshiped. (See: heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly)

Wedding celebration

The wedding celebration or feast is an important image in Scripture. Jewish culture often pictured paradise, or life with God after death, as a feast. Here, the wedding feast is for the Lamb, who is Jesus, and his bride, meaning all his people.

Translation Issues in This Chapter

“Hallelujah”

The word **Hallelujah** occurs in verses 1, 3, 4, and 6. This is a Hebrew word that John spells out using Greek letters so that his readers will know how it sounds. The word is a plural imperative that means, “Praise Yahweh!” In your translation, you could spell this word the way it sounds in your language, or you could translate its meaning by using a phrase such as, “Praise God.” (See: Copy or Borrow Words)

“us/our”

In verses 1, 5, and 6, speakers say “our,” and in verse 7 a speaker says “us.” In each case the speaker is referring to himself and to his addressees, so use the inclusive form of those words in your translation if your language marks that distinction. (See: Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’)

Revelation 19:1

ULT	UST
After these things I heard as it were the loud voice of a large crowd in heaven saying, "Hallelujah! Salvation and glory and power to our God,	*Next I heard what sounded like a huge crowd in heaven. They were shouting, "Hallelujah! God has saved us! Our God is glorious and mighty!*

ULT **Salvation and glory and power to our God**
UST God has saved us! Our God is glorious and mighty

If your language does not use abstract nouns for the ideas of **salvation**, **glory**, and **power**, you could express the same ideas in another way. Alternate translation: [Worship God as the one who saves us and who is glorious and powerful]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **our**
UST Our

As the introduction to this chapter discusses, here and throughout the chapter it would be appropriate to use the inclusive form of **our** and "us" in your translation if your language marks that distinction.
Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
heaven	heaven
Salvation	saved
glory	glorious
God	God

Revelation 19:2

ULT	UST
for his judgments are true and righteous, for he has judged the great prostitute who was corrupting the earth with her sexual immorality, and he has avenged the blood of his servants from her hand."	*Praise him because he judges completely fairly! He has punished the evil city that was like a prostitute, because the people of that city persuaded many other people to act immorally as they did. Praise him because he has punished them for murdering his servants!"*

ULT **are true and righteous**
UST completely fairly

The terms **true** and **righteous** mean similar things. John may be using the two terms together for emphasis. If it would be clearer for your readers, you could express the emphasis with a single phrase. Alternate translation: [entirely righteous]
Support Reference: Doublet

ULT **the blood**
UST for murdering

John is referring to the death of God's **servants** by association with the **blood** that they shed when they were killed. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [the death]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **of his servants from her hand**
UST them … his servants

John is using one part of the **great prostitute**, her **hand**, to represent all of her in the act of killing or shedding the **blood** of God's **servants**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression from your culture or state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [of his servants, whom she killed]
Support Reference: Synecdoche

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
judgments	judges
righteous	completely fairly
judged	He has punished
prostitute	prostitute
corrupting	persuaded
earth	many other people
sexual immorality	to act immorally as … did
avenged	he has punished
servants	servants

Revelation 19:3

ULT	UST
And they spoke a second time: "Hallelujah! Yes, the smoke of her rises to the ages of the ages."	*The crowd shouted again, saying, "Hallelujah! The smoke of the fire that is burning that city will go up forever!"*

ULT a second time
UST The crowd shouted again

John is using the adjective **second** as a noun to mean a certain time. ULT adds the word **time** to show that. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you could translate this word with an equivalent phrase. Alternate translation: [again]
Support Reference: Nominal Adjectives

ULT the smoke of her
UST The smoke of the fire that is burning that city

See how you translated the similar expression in 18:9. Alternate translation: [the smoke from the fire that is burning her]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT to the ages of the ages
UST forever

This expression refers to endless future time. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [for all eternity]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
ages	forever
ages	forever

Revelation 19:4

ULT	UST
And the 24 elders and the four living creatures fell down and worshiped God, the One sitting on the throne, saying, "Amen. Hallelujah!"	*Then the 24 elders and the four living creatures prostrated themselves and worshiped God, who sits on the throne. They said: "It is true! Hallelujah!"*

ULT **fell down and worshiped God**
UST prostrated themselves and worshiped God

Be sure that it is clear in your translation that the **elders** and **living creatures** did not fall down accidentally. Rather, bowing or lying down in front of God was a sign of humility and respect. Alternate translation: [bowed down in front of God to worship him]
Support Reference: Symbolic Action

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
elders	elders
creatures	creatures
fell down	prostrated themselves
worshiped	worshiped
God	God
throne	throne
Amen	It is true

Revelation 19:5

ULT	UST
And a voice came out from the throne, saying, "Praise our God, all his servants and the ones fearing him, the small and the great."	*Then someone spoke from the throne and said, "All of you who are his servants, praise our God! All of you who honor him, praise him, every one of you!"*

ULT **all his servants and the ones fearing him**
UST All of you who are his servants … All of you who honor … him

The voice is actually not speaking in the third person about the people whom he wants to **Praise … God**. The voice is using a vocative form. However, if your language does not have a vocative form and it might appear as if the voice is using the third person for people whom he is addressing, you could use the second person in your translation. Alternate translation: [you his servants and you who fear him]
Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

ULT **the ones fearing him**
UST All of you who honor … him

In this context, the word **fearing** does not mean to be afraid but to show respect and reverence. Alternate translation: [the ones who revere him] or [you who revere him]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **the small and the great**
UST every one of you

The voice is speaking as if unimportant people were literally **small** and as if important people were literally large or **great**. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [the unimportant and the important]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **the small and the great**
UST every one of you

The voice is using the adjectives **small** and **great** as nouns to mean certain kinds of people. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you could translate these words with equivalent phrases. Alternate translation: [both unimportant people and important people]
Support Reference: Nominal Adjectives

ULT **the small and the great**
UST every one of you

The voice is using two extremes of people, **small** and **great**, to mean them and everyone in between. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [whatever your status]
Support Reference: Merism

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
throne	throne
Praise	praise
God	God
servants	servants
fearing	All of you who honor

Revelation 19:6

ULT	UST
And I heard as it were the sound of a great crowd and as it were the sound of many waters and as it were the sound of powerful thunder, saying, "Hallelujah! For the Lord our God, the Ruler of All, reigns.	*Then I heard something like the noise of a huge crowd of people. They were making a loud sound like the sound of a huge waterfall or loud claps of thunder. They were shouting, "Hallelujah! Our Lord God, who rules over everything, reigns!*

ULT **as it were the sound of a great crowd and as it were the sound of many waters and as it were the sound of powerful thunder**

UST something like the noise of a huge crowd of people. They were making a loud sound like the sound of a huge waterfall or loud claps of thunder

The point of this comparison is that the **sound** was very loud. If it would be helpful in your language, you could make this point explicitly. Alternate translation: [a sound that was very loud, like the sound of a great crowd or many waters or powerful thunder]

Support Reference: Simile

ULT **of many waters**

UST of a huge waterfall

By **many waters**, John could mean a loud waterfall or raging floodwaters. See how you translated the similar expression in 1:15. Alternate translation: [of a waterfall] or [of raging floodwaters]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **our**

UST Our

The person speaking here is likely continuing to address those who serve and fear God. So by **our**, the speaker means himself and them, so use the inclusive form of that word in your translation if your language marks that distinction.

Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
powerful	loud
Lord	Lord
God	God
Ruler of All	rules over everything
reigns	reigns

Revelation 19:7

ULT	UST
Let us rejoice and exult and give glory to him because the wedding of the Lamb has come and his bride has made herself ready	*We should truly celebrate, and we should honor him because now is the time for the Lamb to be united with the woman he is marrying. She has dressed for the wedding.*

ULT **Let us rejoice and exult**
UST We should truly celebrate

The terms **rejoice** and **exult** mean similar things. The sound is using the two terms together for emphasis. If it would be clearer for your readers, you could express the emphasis with a single phrase. Alternate translation: [Let us rejoice greatly]
Support Reference: Doublet

ULT **give glory to him**
UST we should honor him

The expression **give glory to him** does not mean that God lacks glory in any way or that people have glory that they can give to God. It means to honor God. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [honor him]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **the wedding of the Lamb has come**
UST now is the time for the Lamb to be united with

If you would not speak in your language of an event as if it **has come**, you could express this in the way that is most natural in your language. Alternate translation: [it is time for the wedding of the Lamb]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
rejoice	We should truly celebrate
exult	We should truly celebrate
glory	we should honor
Lamb	Lamb
bride	the woman

Revelation 19:8

ULT	UST
and it has been granted to her that she might be dressed in bright, clean fine linen." (For fine linen is the righteous acts of the saints.)	*God has given her clean white clothes to wear. They are fine-linen clothes." (That fabric represents the right things that God's people do.)*

ULT it has been granted to her that she might be dressed
UST God has given her … clothes to wear

If your language does not use these passive forms, you could express the ideas in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who has done the action, the context suggests that it was God. Alternate translation: [God has granted to her that she might dress]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT For fine linen is the righteous acts of the saints
UST That fabric represents the right things that God's people do

Here John provides some background information about the symbolism in his vision in order to help his readers understand what he is describing. ULT shows that this is background information by putting it in parentheses. This information is helpful for understanding the symbolic significance of **fine linen** and for understanding the symbolism of the book generally. See what you did with the similar background information in 1:20. Alternate translation: [The bride in my vision dressed in fine linen because that bright, clean fabric symbolically represents the righteous acts of the saints]

Support Reference: Background Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
righteous	right things that … do
saints	God's people

Revelation 19:9

ULT	UST
And he says to me, "Write, 'Blessed are the ones having been called to the supper of the wedding of the Lamb.'" And he says to me, "These are true words of God."	*Then the angel said to me, "Write how fortunate the people are whom God invites to the feast when the Lamb marries his wife!" He also said to me, "God has said this, and it is true!"*

ULT **he says**
UST the angel said

The pronoun **he** probably refers to the same angel who began to speak to John in 17:1. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [The angel who told me he would show me the judgment of the great prostitute said]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **Write, 'Blessed {are} the ones having been called to the supper of the wedding of the Lamb**
UST Write how fortunate the people are whom God invites to the feast when the Lamb marries his wife

If it would be clearer in your language, you could translate this so that there is not a quotation within a quotation. Alternate translation: [Write that the ones having been invited to the wedding supper of the Lamb are blessed]
Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **the ones having been called**
UST the people … whom God invites

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who did the action, the context suggests that it was God. Alternate translation: [the ones whom God has called]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **These are true words of God**
UST God has said this, and it is true

The angel is using the term **words** to mean the saying that he told John to **Write** by using words. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [This is something that God has truly said]
Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Blessed	how fortunate … are
supper	feast
Lamb	Lamb
God	God

Revelation 19:10

ULT	UST
And I fell before his feet to worship him, but he says to me, "See not! I am a fellow servant of you and your brothers having the testimony of Jesus. Worship God! For the testimony of Jesus is the spirit of prophecy."	*Immediately I prostrated myself in front of the angel to worship him. But he said to me, "Do not worship me! I am just your fellow servant and the fellow servant of other believers who speak the truth about Jesus. God has sent me here to serve you by helping you understand the prophetic vision he has given you because you want to speak the truth about Jesus. God is the one you should worship!"*

ULT **I fell before his feet**
UST I prostrated myself in front of the angel

Be sure that it is clear in your translation that John did not fall down accidentally. Rather, bowing or lying down in front of this angel was a sign of humility and respect. Alternate translation: [I bowed down at his feet] or [I bowed down to the ground in front of him]
Support Reference: Symbolic Action

ULT **See not**
UST Do not worship me

The angel is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [See that you do not do that]
Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **See not**
UST Do not worship me

The angel is using the term **See** to mean by association that John should give careful attention to what he is doing. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [Watch out! Do not do that!] or [Be careful not to do that]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **your brothers**
UST of other believers

The angel is using the term **brothers** figuratively to mean people who share the same faith. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [your fellow believers]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **your brothers**
UST of other believers

Although the term **brothers** is masculine, here the word has a generic sense that includes both men and women. If you wish to retain the figurative expression in your translation, you could word it in a way that is clearly inclusive of both men and women. Alternate translation: [your brothers and sisters]
Support Reference: When Masculine Words Include Women

> ULT **having the testimony of Jesus**
> UST who speak the truth about Jesus

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **testimony**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [who testify to their faith in Jesus]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

> ULT **having the testimony of Jesus**
> UST who speak the truth about Jesus

In this possessive form, **Jesus** is the object rather than the subject of **testimony**. That is, this does not mean testimony that Jesus himself gives; it means testimony that believers give about their faith in Jesus. Alternate translation: [who testify to their faith in Jesus]
Support Reference: Possession

> ULT **the testimony of Jesus is the spirit of prophecy**
> UST the prophetic vision he has given you because you want to speak the truth about Jesus

The angel is speaking of **prophecy** as if it were a living thing that had a **spirit**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [the impulse to testify to Jesus is what inspires prophecy]
Support Reference: Personification

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
I fell	I prostrated myself
worship	worship
testimony	who speak the truth about
Jesus	Jesus
Worship	worship
God	God
testimony	to speak the truth about
Jesus	Jesus
spirit	because you want
prophecy	the prophetic vision he has given you

Revelation 19:11

ULT	UST
And I saw heaven having been opened and behold, a white horse and the one riding on it, being called Faithful and True, and he judges and makes war in righteousness,	*Then I saw the heavens open up, and I saw something amazing: Jesus riding on a white horse! Those who truly know Jesus call him Always Trustworthy. He judges all people according to what is right, and he fights against people who do what is wrong.*

ULT **I saw heaven having been opened**
UST I saw the heavens open up

When John says that **heaven** had been opened, he likely means by association that in his vision, God created some opening that allowed him to see into heaven. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [God allowed me to look into heaven]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **heaven having been opened**
UST the heavens open up

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who did the action, the context suggests that it was God. Alternate translation: [that God had opened heaven]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **the one riding on it, being called Faithful and True**
UST Jesus riding on … white … Those who truly know Jesus call him Always Trustworthy

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [the one whom people call Faithful and True riding on it]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **the one riding on it, being called Faithful and True**
UST Jesus riding on … white … Those who truly know Jesus call him Always Trustworthy

This could mean: (1) that **Faithful** and **True** are two names by which people call Jesus. Alternate translation: [the one riding on it, two of whose names are Faithful and True]; or (2) that "faithful" and "true" are two qualities that people ascribe to Jesus. Alternate translation: [the one riding on it, whom people acknowledge to be faithful and true]
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **Faithful and True**
UST Always Trustworthy

The terms **Faithful** and **True** mean similar things. John is mentioning the two names together for emphasis. If it would be clearer for your readers, you could express the emphasis with a single phrase. Alternate translation: [Supremely Faithful] or [Entirely True]
Support Reference: Doublet

> ULT **in righteousness**
> UST according to what is right … people who do what is wrong

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **righteousness**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [righteously]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
heaven	heavens
horse	horse
called	call
Faithful	Trustworthy
judges	judges
righteousness	according to what is right … people who do what is wrong

Revelation 19:12

ULT	UST
his eyes also being a flame of fire, and many crowns being on his head, having a name written that no one knows except himself,	*Now his eyes shone like a burning flame. He wore many royal crowns on his head. There was a name on his clothing. Only he knows what that name means.*

ULT **his eyes also {being} a flame of fire**
UST Now his eyes shone like a burning flame

John is speaking as if the **eyes** of the one riding on the white horse were actually a **flame of fire**. This is something that could be taken literally within the world of the vision, but it is more likely that John means this as a comparison, as in 1:14 and 2:18. In that case, the point of the comparison would be that Jesus has eyes that are so bright and lively that they resemble a burning flame. See how you translated this earlier in the book. Alternate translation: [whose eyes also glow like a flame of fire]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **being a flame of fire**
UST shone like a burning flame

It might seem that the expression **a flame of fire** contains extra information that would be unnatural to express in your language. If so, you could shorten it. Alternate translation: [flames]
Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

ULT **written**
UST on his clothing

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [in writing]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **that no one knows except himself**
UST Only he knows what that name means

If it would appear in your language that John was contradicting himself by saying that **no one** knows this **name** and then saying that someone does know this name, you could reword this to avoid using an exception clause. Alternate translation: [that only he knows]
Support Reference: Connect — Exception Clauses

ULT **that no one knows except himself**
UST Only he knows what that name means

It may be helpful to begin a new sentence here. This could mean: (1) that no one except Jesus **knows** the meaning of the **name**. Alternate translation: [Only he knows the meaning of that name]; or (2) that no one except Jesus **knows** what the **name** is. Alternate translation: [Only he knows what that name is]
Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
crowns	crowns
knows	knows

Revelation 19:13

ULT	UST
and having been clothed with a robe dipped in blood; and his name is called the Word of God.	*Blood covered the cloak that he was wearing. Another of his names is the Word of God.*

ULT **having been clothed with a robe dipped in blood**
UST Blood covered the cloak that he was wearing

If your language does not use these passive forms, you could express the ideas in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [wearing a robe that he had dipped in blood]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **his name is called**
UST of his names is

It might seem that the expression **his name is called** contains extra information that would be unnatural to express in your language. If so, you could shorten it. Alternate translation: [his name is] or [he is called]
Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

ULT **his name is called**
UST of his names is

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [people call him]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
robe	the cloak that he was wearing
called	is
Word of God	Word of God

Revelation 19:14

ULT	UST
And the armies in heaven were following him on white horses, having been clothed in fine linen, white and clean.	*The heavenly armies were following him. They were riding on white horses. They were wearing clean, white linen clothes.*

ULT **having been clothed in fine linen**

UST They were wearing … linen clothes

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [wearing fine linen]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
heaven	heavenly
horses	horses

Revelation 19:15

ULT	UST
And from his mouth goes out a sharp sword so that with it he might strike the nations, and he will rule them with an iron scepter, and he tramples the winepress of the wine of the wrath of the fury of God, the Ruler of All.	*Jesus had a sharp sword extending from his mouth. He will use it to defeat the rebellious people groups. He himself will rule them so powerfully that no one will be able to resist him. He will destroy his enemies as if they were grapes that he was crushing in a winepress. He will do this for God, who rules over everything and will punish his enemies thoroughly because of their sins.*

ULT **from his mouth goes out a sharp sword**

UST Jesus had a sharp sword extending from his mouth

Be sure it is clear in your translation, here and for the similar expression in verse 21, that this means that the blade of the **sword** was sticking out of **his mouth**. The sword itself was not in motion. See how you translated the similar phrase in 1:16.

Support Reference: Symbolic Language

ULT **with an iron scepter**

UST so powerfully that no one will be able to resist him

See how you translated the similar phrase in 2:27 and 12:5. Alternate translation: [with great strength] or [with irresistible power]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **he tramples the winepress of the wine**

UST He will destroy his enemies as if they were grapes that he was crushing in a winepress

John is referring to the grapes in the winepress by association with the **winepress** itself. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [he tramples the grapes in the winepress to make the wine]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **of the wrath of the fury**

UST and will punish his enemies thoroughly because of their sins

The terms **wrath** and **fury** mean similar things. John is using the two terms together for emphasis. If it would be clearer for your readers, you could express the emphasis with a single phrase. Alternate translation: [of the great wrath]

Support Reference: Doublet

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
sword	sword
nations	rebellious people groups
will rule	will rule
an … scepter	so powerfully that no one will be able to resist him
winepress	winepress
wine	his enemies as if they were grapes … in a winepress
wrath	and will punish his enemies thoroughly because of their sins
fury	and will punish his enemies thoroughly because of their sins
God	God
Ruler of All	who rules over everything

Revelation 19:16

ULT	UST
And he has a name written on his robe and on his thigh: King of Kings and Lord of Lords.	*A title appeared on his cloak at his thigh: "This is the King who rules over all other kings and the Lord who rules over all other lords."*

ULT he has a name written
UST A title appeared

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [he has written a name]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT on {his} robe and on his thigh
UST on his cloak at his thigh

This phrase expresses a single idea by using two phrases connected with **and**. The phrase **on his thigh** tells where **on his robe** this name is written. If it would be more natural in your language, you could express this meaning with an equivalent phrase that does not use "and." Alternate translation: [on his robe at his thigh]
Support Reference: Hendiadys

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
robe	his cloak
King	King
Kings	kings
Lord	Lord
Lords	lords

Revelation 19:17

ULT	UST
And I saw an angel standing in the sun, and he cried out in a loud voice, saying to all the birds flying in midheaven, "Come, be gathered together for the great supper of God,	*Then I saw an angel standing in the light of the sun. He called loudly to all the flesh-eating birds flying high in the sky, "Come and gather for the large feast that God is providing for you!*

ULT **in the sun**

UST in the light of the sun

John is referring to the light of the sun by association with **the sun** itself. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [in bright sunlight]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **be gathered together**

UST and gather

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [gather together]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
angel	angel
cried out	He called
gathered	gather
supper	feast
God	God

Revelation 19:18

ULT	UST
so that you might eat the flesh of kings and the flesh of chiliarchs and the flesh of the mighty and the flesh of horses and of the ones sitting on them and the flesh of all, both of free and of slaves and of small and of great."	*Come and eat the flesh of God's enemies who will die in this battle! Eat the flesh of kings, of army commanders, of people who fought powerfully, of horses and their riders, and the flesh of many other kinds of people."*

ULT **of chiliarchs**
UST of army commanders

The word **chiliarchs** describes officers in the Roman army who were in charge of groups of 1,000 soldiers. Alternate translation: [commanders]
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **of the mighty … of free … of small … of great**
UST of people who fought powerfully … of many other kinds of people

John is using these adjectives as nouns to mean a certain kinds of persons. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. (All of these adjectives are plural.) If not, you could translate these words with equivalent phrases. Alternate translation: [of mighty people … of free people … of small people … of great people]
Support Reference: Nominal Adjectives

ULT **of all, both of free and of slaves and of small and of great**
UST of many other kinds of people

John is using two extremes of status, whether people are **free** or **slaves**, to mean people across the entire range of status. John is using two extremes of importance, whether people are **small** or **great**, to mean people across the entire range of importance. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use equivalent expressions or plain language. Alternate translation: [of all people, no matter what their status and no matter what their importance]
Support Reference: Merism

ULT **of all, both of free and of slaves and of small and of great**
UST of many other kinds of people

These two phrases mean similar things. John is using repetition to emphasize the idea that the phrases express. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could combine them. Alternate translation: [of people of every different kind]
Support Reference: Parallelism

ULT **of small and of great**
UST of many other kinds of people

John is speaking as if unimportant people were literally **small** and as if important people were literally large or **great**. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [of the unimportant and of the important] or [of unimportant people and of important people]
Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
kings	kings
of chiliarchs	commanders
mighty	of people who fought powerfully
horses	horses
free	of many other kinds of people
of slaves	of many other kinds of people

Revelation 19:19

ULT	UST
And I saw the beast and the kings of the earth and their armies having been gathered to make war with the one sitting on the horse and with his army.	*Then I saw the beast and the kings of earth with their armies. They had gathered together to fight against the rider on the horse and his army.*

ULT **I saw the beast and the kings of the earth and their armies having been gathered**
UST I saw the beast and the kings of earth with their armies. They had gathered together

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [I saw that the beast and the kings of the earth and their armies had gathered]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
beast	beast
kings	kings
earth	earth
gathered	gathered
horse	horse

Revelation 19:20

ULT	UST
And the beast was captured and with him the false prophet having performed signs before him, by which he deceived the ones having received the mark of the beast and the ones worshiping his image. The two were thrown living into the lake of fire burning with sulfur.	*But the rider on the white horse captured the beast and the false prophet. The false prophet is the one who had performed miracles in the beast's presence. By doing that he had deceived the people who had accepted the beast's mark on their foreheads and who had worshiped its image. Then God threw the beast and the false prophet alive into the fiery lake of burning sulfur.*

ULT **the beast was captured**
UST the rider on the white horse captured the beast

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [the army of the one sitting on the horse captured the beast]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **before him**
UST in the beast's presence

Here the word **before** means "in front of" or "in the presence of" another person. Alternate translation: [in his presence]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **The two were thrown**
UST Then God threw the beast and the false prophet

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [the one riding on the horse threw the two]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **The two**
UST the beast and the false prophet

John is using the adjective **two** as a noun to mean two particular beings. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you could translate this word with an equivalent phrase. Alternate translation: [The beast and the false prophet]
Support Reference: Nominal Adjectives

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
beast	beast
captured	captured
false prophet	false prophet
signs	miracles
deceived	deceived
received	who had accepted
beast	beast’s
worshiping	worshiped
image	image
sulfur	of burning

Revelation 19:21

ULT	UST
And the rest were killed by the sword of the one sitting on the horse, coming out from his mouth, and all the birds were gorged with their flesh.	*And the rider on the horse killed the rest of their armies with his sword, the one that extended from his mouth. Birds came and ate as much as they wanted of the flesh of the people and horses that he had killed.*

ULT **the rest were killed by the sword of the one sitting on the horse, coming out from his mouth**

UST the rider on the horse killed the rest of their armies with his sword, the one that extended from his mouth

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [the one sitting on the horse killed the rest with the sword coming out from his mouth]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **the rest**

UST the … rest of their armies

By **the rest**, John implicitly means the rest of the beast's soldiers. You can provide this information in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [the rest of the beast's soldiers]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **were gorged with their flesh**

UST came and ate as much as they wanted of the flesh of the people and horses that he had killed

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [gorged themselves on their flesh]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
sword	sword
horse	horse

Revelation 20

Revelation 20 Introduction

Revelation 20 Chapter Introduction

Religious and Cultural Concepts in This Chapter

The thousand-year reign of Christ

In this chapter, Jesus is said to reign for a thousand years, at the same time when Satan is bound. Some scholars believe that this refers to a future period of time, while others believe that it refers to Jesus reigning now from heaven. It is not necessary to decide between these options in order to translate this passage accurately. (See: prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess)

Final rebellion

This chapter also describes what happens after the thousand years. At that time, Satan and many people will attempt to rebel against Jesus. This will result in God's ultimate and final victory over sin and evil. (See: sin, sinful, sinner, sinning; and evil, wicked, wickedness, unpleasant; and eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever)

Great white throne

This chapter ends with a vision of God sitting on a "great white throne" and judging all the people who have ever lived. God separates people who believe in Jesus from those who do not believe in him. (See: judge, judgment; and heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly; and faith)

Translation Issues in This Chapter

The Book of Life

This symbolically represents eternal life. Those possessing eternal life are said to have their names written in this Book of Life. However, since this is something that John actually saw in his vision, it would be appropriate to preserve this image in your translation. (See: Metaphor)

Translation Issues in This Chapter

Hades and the lake of fire

These appear to be two distinct places. Hades appears to be the place where souls go after physical death, while the lake of fire appears to be the place where people experience spiritual death. The translator should be careful to choose appropriate language to describe each place, showing that these are not both the same place. (See: hell, lake of fire)

Revelation 20:2

ULT	UST
And he seized the dragon, the ancient serpent, who is the devil and Satan, and bound him for a thousand years.	*The angel seized the dragon. That dragon is the ancient serpent—the devil, that is, Satan. The angel bound him with the chain. That chain would hold him for a thousand years.*

ULT **the ancient serpent, who is the devil and Satan**
UST That dragon is the ancient serpent—the devil, that is, Satan

John assumes that his readers will understand that the phrase **the ancient serpent** is an allusion to the way **the devil** appeared in the form of a serpent to Adam and Eve in the Garden of Eden, as Genesis 3:1–15 describes. You can indicate this explicitly in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [who appeared in the form of a serpent to Adam and Eve in the Garden of Eden, who is the devil and Satan]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **the ancient serpent, who is the devil and Satan**
UST That dragon is the ancient serpent—the devil, that is, Satan

It may be easier for your readers to recognize the allusion that John is making if you put the information that the dragon represents **the devil and Satan** before the information that this is also **the ancient serpent**. Alternate translation: [who is the devil and Satan, who appeared in the form of a serpent to Adam and Eve in the Garden of Eden]
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **the devil and Satan**
UST the devil, that is, Satan

The word **devil** and the name **Satan** refer to the same person. John is using the two terms together for emphasis. If it would be clearer for your readers, you could express the emphasis with a single phrase. Alternate translation: [the devil himself]
Support Reference: Doublet

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
seized	seized
serpent	serpent
devil	devil
Satan	Satan
bound	bound
years	years

Revelation 20:3

ULT	UST
And he threw him into the abyss and shut it and sealed it over him so that he would not deceive the nations anymore until the thousand years were ended. After that, it is necessary for him to be released for a short time.	*The angel threw him into the deep, dark pit. He shut the door of the pit, locked it, and sealed it to prevent anyone from opening it. He did this so that Satan would no longer deceive the many people groups until after those thousand years. At that time, God will release Satan for a short time.*

ULT **until the thousand years were ended**
UST until after those thousand years

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [until the thousand years had ended]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **it is necessary for him to be released**
UST God will release Satan

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who will do the action, the context suggests that it may be the angel who has "the key to the abyss," as 20:1 describes. Alternate translation: [God will command the angel to release him]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
abyss	deep, dark pit
sealed	sealed
deceive	deceive
nations	many people groups
years	years
to be released	release
time	time

Revelation 20:4

ULT	UST
And I saw thrones, and they sat on them and judgment was given to them, both the souls of the ones having been beheaded for the testimony of Jesus and for the word of God and those who did not worship the beast or his image and did not receive the mark on the forehead or on their hand. And they lived and reigned with Christ for a thousand years.	*Then I saw thrones on which people were sitting. God made those people judges. I also saw the souls of other people whose enemies had killed them by cutting their heads off. Their enemies did that because they had spoken the truth from God about Jesus. I also saw the souls of other people whose enemies had not killed them but who had refused to worship the beast or its image. They had not allowed the beast's servants to put the beast's mark on them, either on their foreheads or on their hands. They all became alive again and they ruled with the Messiah during those thousand years.*

ULT **they sat on them and judgment was given to them**
UST on which people were sitting. God made those people judges

The pronouns **they** and **them** refer to people whom John describes in the rest of the verse. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [and these are the ones who sat on them and to whom judgment was given:]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **judgment was given to them**
UST God made those people judges

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who did the action, the context suggests that it was God. Alternate translation: [God gave judgment to them]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **judgment was given to them**
UST God made those people judges

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **judgment**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [God gave them authority to judge]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **of the ones having been beheaded**
UST of other people whose enemies had killed them by cutting their heads off

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [of the ones whom the Roman government had beheaded]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **for the testimony of Jesus and for the word of God**
UST Their enemies did that because they had spoken the truth from God about Jesus

These two phrases mean similar things. John is using repetition to emphasize the idea that the phrases express. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could combine them. Alternate translation: [for proclaiming the message from God about Jesus]
Support Reference: Parallelism

ULT **the testimony of Jesus**
UST they had spoken the truth … about Jesus

In this possessive form, **Jesus** is the object rather than the subject of **testimony**. That is, this does not mean testimony that Jesus gives; it means testimony that people give about their faith in Jesus. Alternate translation: [testifying to Jesus]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **the word of God**
UST from God

John is using the term **word** to mean the message that these believers had shared by using words. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [sharing the message from God]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **on the forehead or on their hand**
UST on them, either on their foreheads or on their hands

In this verse, the words **forehead** and **hand** are singular in form, but they refer to all of them as a group. If it would be helpful in your language, you could say this plainly. Alternate translation: [on their foreheads or on their hands]
Support Reference: Collective Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
thrones	thrones
judgment	judges
souls	souls
testimony	they had spoken the truth … about
Jesus	Jesus
word of God	from God
worship	worship
beast	beast
image	image
receive	They had … allowed the beast's servants to put
reigned	ruled
Christ	Messiah
years	years

Revelation 20:5

ULT	UST
(The rest of the dead did not live until the thousand years were ended.) This is the first resurrection.	*These were the people who lived again the first time that God caused dead people to live again. The rest of the people who had died did not live again until after those thousand years.*

ULT **The rest of the dead did not live until the thousand years were ended**
UST The rest of the people who had died did not live again until after those thousand years

With this sentence, John is providing background information that will help readers understand what happens next in the story. ULT puts the sentence in parentheses to show that. In your translation, present this information in a way that would be natural in your own language and culture.
Support Reference: Background Information

ULT **The rest of the dead did not live until the thousand years were ended**
UST The rest of the people who had died did not live again until after those thousand years

It may be more natural in your language to state this positively. Alternate translation: [The rest of the dead only lived again once the thousand years had ended]

ULT **of the dead**
UST of the people who had died

John is using the adjective **dead** as a noun to mean a certain kind of person. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you could translate this word with an equivalent phrase. Alternate translation: [the people who had died]
Support Reference: Nominal Adjectives

ULT **until the thousand years were ended**
UST until after those thousand years

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [until the thousand years had ended]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **the first resurrection**
UST the first time that God caused dead people to live again

If your language does not use ordinal numbers, you could use a cardinal number here or an equivalent expression. Alternate translation: [resurrection number one]
Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
years	years
resurrection	that God caused dead people to live again

Revelation 20:6

ULT	UST
Blessed and holy is the one having a part in the first resurrection! Over these the second death has no power, but they will be priests of God and of Christ and they will reign with him for a thousand years.	*God will be pleased with those who live again this first time. Yes, God will consider them to belong to him in a special way. They will not die a second time. Instead, they will be priests who serve God and the Messiah. They will rule with the Messiah during those thousand years.*

ULT **Blessed and holy {is} the one having a part in the first resurrection**
UST God will be pleased with those who live again this first time. Yes, God will consider them to belong to him in a special way

Here, **the one having a part in the first resurrection** does not refer to a specific person. It refers to anyone whom God restores to life at this time. Express this in the way that would be most natural in your language. Since John says **these** in the next sentence, it may be helpful to use a plural form in this sentence as well. Alternate translation: [Blessed and holy are all those who have a part in the first resurrection]
Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

ULT **Over these the second death has no power**
UST They will not die a second time

John is speaking of **the second death** as if it were a living thing which could have **power** over someone, that is, as if it could make someone do what it wanted that person to do. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [These people will not experience the second death]
Support Reference: Personification

ULT **the second death**
UST will not die a second time

If your language does not use ordinal numbers, you could use a cardinal number here or an equivalent expression. Alternate translation: [death number two]
Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Blessed	God will be pleased with
holy	God will consider them to belong to him in a special way
resurrection	those who live again
priests	priests
God	God
Christ	Messiah
reign	rule
years	years

Revelation 20:7

ULT	UST
But when the thousand years are ended, Satan will be released from his prison,	*At the end of the thousand years, God will release Satan from the deep, dark pit.*

ULT **when the thousand years are ended**
UST At the end of the thousand years

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [at the end of the thousand years]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **Satan will be released**
UST God will release Satan

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. See how you translated the similar expression in 20:3. Alternate translation: [God will command the angel who has the key to the abyss to release Satan]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
years	years
Satan	Satan

Revelation 20:8

ULT	UST
and he will go out to deceive the nations at the four corners of the earth, Gog and Magog, to gather them together to battle, of whom their number will be like the sand of the sea.	*Satan will go out to deceive the rebellious people groups all over the earth. These are the nations that the prophet Ezekiel called Gog and Magog. Satan will gather them to fight against God's people. There will be so many of them fighting against God's people that no one will be able to count them, just as no one can count the grains of sand on the ocean shore.*

ULT **at the four corners of the earth**
UST all over the earth

John is speaking as if the **earth** literally had **four corners**. He means the most distant places on the earth. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [at the most distant places on the earth]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **at the four corners of the earth**
UST all over the earth

John is using the most distant places on the earth to mean those places and everything between them and his location. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [everywhere in the world]
Support Reference: Merism

ULT **Gog and Magog**
UST These are the nations that the prophet Ezekiel called Gog and Magog

The word **Gog** is the name of a ruler whom the prophet Ezekiel addresses in Ezekiel 38:1–39:20. The word **Magog** is the name of the land that he ruled.
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **Gog and Magog**
UST These are the nations that the prophet Ezekiel called Gog and Magog

John is using the ruler named **Gog** and his land of **Magog** symbolically to represent the **nations** whom the devil will deceive. He means that these nations will form a great army together and attack the people of God, just as Ezekiel described Gog gathering a great coalition of peoples against Israel. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [forming a great coalition of peoples]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **of whom their number**
UST There will be so many of them fighting against God's people that no one will be able to count them

It might seem that the expression **of whom their number** contains extra information that would be unnatural to express in your language. If so, you could shorten it. Alternate translation: [whose number]
Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

ULT **will be like the sand of the sea**

UST just as no one can count the grains of sand on the ocean shore

The point of this comparison is that the **number** of soldiers in this army will be very large, just as the number of grains of **sand** on the shore of the **sea** is very large. If it would be helpful in your language, you could make this point explicitly. Alternate translation: [will be very large, like the number of grains of sand on the seashore]

Support Reference: Simile

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
deceive	deceive
nations	rebellious people groups
earth	earth
gather	gather

Revelation 20:9

ULT	UST
And they went up on the breadth of the earth and surrounded the encampment of the saints and the beloved city, but fire came down from heaven and devoured them.	*They will march from many places on the earth. They will surround the army of God's people where it is in battle formation. That will be at Jerusalem, the city that God loves. But God will send fire down from heaven and it will burn up all of his enemies.*

ULT **the beloved city**
UST Jerusalem, the city that God loves

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation, as in UST: [the city that God loves]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **the beloved city**
UST Jerusalem, the city that God loves

John assumes that his readers will understand that by **the beloved city** he means Jerusalem. You can use that name in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [the city of Jerusalem]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **fire came down from heaven and devoured them**
UST God will send fire down from heaven and it will burn up all of his enemies

John is speaking of this **fire** as if it were a living thing that **came down from heaven** and **devoured** this army by itself. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [God sent fire down from heaven, and it devoured them]
Support Reference: Personification

ULT **devoured them**
UST it will burn up all of his enemies

John is speaking as if this **fire** literally **devoured** or ate up the nations that attacked the **saints**. He means that the fire destroyed them completely. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [destroyed them completely]
Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
earth	earth
saints	of God's people
beloved	that God loves
heaven	heaven
devoured	it will burn up

Revelation 20:10

ULT	UST
And the devil deceiving them was thrown into the lake of fire and sulfur where the beast and the false prophet were, and they will be tormented day and night to the ages of the ages.	*Then God will throw the devil, who had deceived those people, into the lake of burning sulfur. This is also where God had thrown the beast and the false prophet. As a result, they will continually suffer severely forever.*

ULT **the devil deceiving them was thrown**
UST God will throw the devil, who had deceived those people

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who did the action, the context suggests that it was God. Alternate translation: [God threw the devil who was deceiving them]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **of fire and sulfur**
UST of burning sulfur

This phrase expresses a single idea by using two words connected with **and**. The word **fire** describes the state of the **sulfur**. If it would be more natural in your language, you could express this meaning with an equivalent phrase that does not use "and." Alternate translation: [of fiery sulfur]
Support Reference: Hendiadys

ULT **them**
UST those people

The pronoun **them** refers to the nations whom **the devil** deceived. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [the nations]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **they will be tormented**
UST they will … suffer severely

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who will do the action, the context suggests that it will be God. Alternate translation: [God will torment them]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **day and night**
UST continually

John is using the two parts of a full day, **day** and **night**, to mean all the time. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [all the time]
Support Reference: Merism

ULT **to the ages of the ages**
UST forever

This expression refers to endless future time. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [for all eternity]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
devil	devil
deceiving	deceived
sulfur	sulfur
beast	beast
false prophet	false prophet
tormented	they will … suffer severely
day	continually
ages	forever
ages	forever

Revelation 20:11

ULT	UST
And I saw a great white throne and the one sitting on it, from whose face earth and heaven fled, and no place was found for them.	*Then I saw a huge white throne on which God was sitting. He was so fearsome that the land and the sky disappeared completely when he appeared.*

ULT **from whose face**
UST He was so fearsome that … when he appeared

Here the word **face** represents the presence of a person by association with the way people can see the face of someone who is present. Alternate translation: [from whose presence]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **earth and heaven fled, and no place was found for them**
UST the land and the sky disappeared completely

These two phrases mean similar things. John is using repetition to emphasize the idea that the phrases express. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could combine them. Alternate translation: [earth and heaven vanished entirely]
Support Reference: Parallelism

ULT **earth and heaven fled**
UST the land and the sky disappeared

John is speaking of **earth and heaven** as if they were living things that **fled**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [earth and heaven disappeared]
Support Reference: Personification

ULT **no place was found for them**
UST completely

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [no one found a place for them]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **no place was found for them**
UST completely

This expression means “no place could be found for them” or “they were no longer there.” Alternate translation: [they were no longer there]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
throne	throne
earth	land
heaven	sky

Revelation 20:12

ULT	UST
And I saw the dead, both the great and the small, standing before the throne, and books were opened, and another book was opened, which is the Book of Life. And the dead were judged from the things written in the books, according to their deeds.	*Then I saw people of all kinds who had died but who were now alive again standing in front of God's throne. God opened the books in which he records what people do. God also opened another book, the Book of Life. God writes in that book the names of people who have eternal life. God judged the people who had died and who were now alive again according to what they had done, which he had recorded in the books.*

ULT **the dead … the dead**
UST people … who had died but who were now alive again … the people who had died and who were now alive again

John is using the adjective **dead** as a noun to mean a certain kind of person. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you could translate this word with an equivalent phrase. Alternate translation: [the people who had died … the people who had died]
Support Reference: Nominal Adjectives

ULT **both the great and the small**
UST of all kinds

The voice is speaking as if important people were literally large or **great** and as if unimportant people were literally **small**. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [both the important and the unimportant]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **both the great and the small**
UST of all kinds

The voice is using the adjectives **great** and **small** as nouns to mean certain kinds of people. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you could translate these words with equivalent phrases. Alternate translation: [both important people and unimportant people]
Support Reference: Nominal Adjectives

ULT **both the great and the small**
UST of all kinds

The voice is using two kinds of people, **great** and **small**, to mean all kinds of people. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [people of every status]
Support Reference: Merism

> ULT **books were opened, and another book was opened**
> UST God opened the books in which he records what people do. God also opened another book

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who did the action, the context suggests that it was God. Alternate translation: [God opened books, and God opened another book]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

> ULT **the dead were judged from the {things} written in the books**
> UST God judged the people who had died and who were now alive again … which he had recorded in the books

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who did the action, the context suggests that it was God. Alternate translation: [God judged the dead from the things he had written in the books]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
throne	throne
books	the books in which he records what people do
book	book
judged	judged
books	books

Revelation 20:13

ULT	UST
And the sea gave up the dead in it, and Death and Hades gave up the dead in them, and they were judged, each one, according to their deeds.	*The people whose bodies were in the sea became alive again, and the people whose bodies were in graves on the land also became alive again. They all stood in front of God's throne, and God judged each of them according to what each one had done.*

ULT **the sea gave up the dead in it, and Death and Hades gave up the dead in them**
UST The people whose bodies were in the sea became alive again, and the people whose bodies were in graves on the land also became alive again

John is speaking of the **sea** and of **Death** and **Hades** as if these were living things that actively **gave up** the people who had died and who were in them. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [the people who had died who were in the sea and in Death and Hades were not able to hide in those places]
Support Reference: Personification

ULT **the dead in it … the dead in them**
UST The people whose bodies were in the sea became alive again … the people whose bodies were in graves on the land also became alive again

John is using the adjective **dead** as a noun to mean a certain kind of person. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you could translate this word with an equivalent phrase. Alternate translation: [the people who had died who were in it … the people who had died who were in them]
Support Reference: Nominal Adjectives

ULT **Death and Hades gave up the dead in them**
UST the people whose bodies were in graves on the land also became alive again

In this context, **Death** and **Hades** are two names for the same place. John is using the names together for emphasis. If it would be clearer for your readers, you could express the emphasis with a single phrase. Alternate translation: [the underworld gave up every single person who had died who was in it] or [not a single person who had died who was in the underworld was able to hide there]
Support Reference: Doublet

ULT **they were judged**
UST They all stood in front of God's throne, and God judged

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who did the action, the context suggests that it was God. Alternate translation: [God judged them]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Hades	the people whose bodies were in graves on the land also became alive again
judged	judged

Revelation 20:14

ULT	UST
And Death and Hades were thrown into the lake of fire. This is the second death, the lake of fire.	*Then God took the place where souls went after dying physically and threw that place itself into the burning lake. The burning lake is where people go when they die spiritually.*

ULT **Death and Hades were thrown**
UST God took the place where souls went after dying physically and threw that place itself

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who did the action, the context suggests that it was God. Alternate translation: [God threw Death and Hades]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **Death and Hades were thrown**
UST God took the place where souls went after dying physically and threw that place itself

In this context, **Death** and **Hades** are two names for the same place. John is using the names together for emphasis. If it would be clearer for your readers, you could express the emphasis with a single phrase. Alternate translation: [the entire underworld was thrown] or [God threw the entire underworld]
Support Reference: Doublet

ULT **the second death**
UST people go when they die spiritually

If your language does not use ordinal numbers, you could use a cardinal number here or an equivalent expression. Alternate translation: [death number two]
Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Hades	place where souls went after dying physically … place itself

Revelation 20:15

ULT	UST
And if anyone was not found written in the Book of Life, he was thrown into the lake of fire.	*Then God saw whose names he had written in the book that lists the people who have eternal life. If someone's name was not in that book, God threw him into the burning lake.*

ULT **And if anyone was not found written in the Book of Life, he was thrown**
UST Then God saw whose names he had written in the book that lists the people who have eternal life. If someone's name was not in that book, God threw him

If your language does not use these passive forms, you could express the ideas in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who did the action, the context suggests that in each case it was God. Alternate translation: [if God did not find that he had written someone in the Book of Life, he threw him]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **anyone**
UST someone's name

John is using the term **anyone** by association to mean "anyone's name." If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [anyone's name] or [someone's name]

Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Book of Life	book that lists the people who have eternal life … book

Revelation 21

Revelation 21 Introduction

Revelation 21 Chapter Introduction

Structure and Formatting

This chapter gives a detailed picture of the new Jerusalem.

Religious and Cultural Concepts in This Chapter

Second death

Death is a type of separation. The first death is physically dying, when the soul is separated from the body. The second death is being eternally separated from God. (See: soul, self; and eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever)

Translation Issues in This Chapter

Book of Life

This is a metaphor for eternal life. Those possessing eternal life are said to have their names written in this Book of Life. (See: Metaphor)

Translation Issues in This Chapter

New heaven and new earth

It is unclear whether this is an entirely new heaven and earth or something remade out of the present heaven and earth. The same is also true of the new Jerusalem. It is possible that this will affect translation in some languages.

“her”

People in this culture conventionally referred to cities by using feminine pronouns. John says “her” throughout his description of the new Jerusalem in order to mean that city. Your language may use a different gender, for example, you might say “it” and “its” instead of “her.” You could also use a noun and say “that city.” (See: Pronouns — When to Use Them)

“every precious stone”

In verses 19 and 20, John lists the precious stones that were the foundations of the city. In some cases, it is not certain exactly which precious stones these names describe. When the reference of a name is uncertain, ULT spells out the name using English letters. If your readers would not be familiar with some of the precious stones listed here, or if you are not certain

what stone a name describes, in your translation you can spell the names the way they sound in your language. (See: Copy or Borrow Words)

Revelation 21:1

ULT	UST
And I saw a new heaven and a new earth, for the first heaven and the first earth had gone away, and the sea was no more.	*Then I saw a new heaven and a new earth. The first heaven and the first earth had disappeared, and the oceans no longer existed.*

ULT **the first heaven and the first earth**
UST The first heaven and the first earth

If your language does not use ordinal numbers, you could use cardinal numbers here or equivalent expressions. Alternate translation: [heaven number one and earth number one] or [the former heaven and the former earth]
Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

ULT **had gone away**
UST had disappeared

John is speaking of **the first heaven and the first earth** as if they were living things that **had gone away** on their own. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [no longer existed]
Support Reference: Personification

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
heaven	heaven
earth	earth
heaven	heaven
earth	earth

Revelation 21:2

ULT	UST
And I saw the holy city, new Jerusalem, coming down out of heaven from God, prepared like a bride adorned for her husband.	*I saw the city of Jerusalem, which is special to God, in a new form. It was coming down to earth from God in heaven. The city looked very beautiful, like a bride on her wedding day.*

ULT **prepared like a bride adorned for her husband**
UST The city looked very beautiful, like a bride on her wedding day

If your language does not use these passive forms, you could express the ideas in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who did the action, the context suggests that it was God. It may be helpful to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: [God had prepared the city the way a bride adorns herself for her husband]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **prepared like a bride adorned for her husband**
UST The city looked very beautiful, like a bride on her wedding day

The point of this comparison is that the city looked beautiful, just as a bride makes herself beautiful to please her husband on their wedding day. If it would be helpful in your language, you could make this point explicitly. It may be helpful to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: [God had made the city beautiful, just as a bride makes herself beautiful for her husband on their wedding day]
Support Reference: Simile

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
holy	which is special to God
Jerusalem	Jerusalem
heaven	heaven
God	God
bride	bride
holy city	city … which is special to God

Revelation 21:3

ULT	UST
And I heard a great voice from the throne saying, "Behold! The dwelling of God is with men, and he will dwell with them, and they will be his people, and God himself will be with them.	*Then I heard a loud voice calling out from the throne of God. The voice said, "Listen to this! Now God will live right where people live! They will belong to him, and God himself will stay with them.*

ULT **The dwelling of God {is} with men, and he will dwell with them**
UST God will live right where people live

These two phrases mean similar things. John is using repetition to emphasize the idea that the phrases express. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could combine them. Alternate translation: [God will now tabernacle right in the midst of men]
Support Reference: Parallelism

ULT **The dwelling of God {is} with men, and he will dwell with them**
UST God will live right where people live

John is using a noun and a verb from the same root together for emphasis. You may be able to do the same thing in your own language. Alternate translation: [The house of God is with men, and he will house with them]
Support Reference: Poetry

ULT **men**
UST people

Although the term **men** is masculine, John is using the word in a generic sense that includes both men and women. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use a term in your language that is clearly inclusive of both men and women. Alternate translation: [people]
Support Reference: When Masculine Words Include Women

ULT **God himself will be with them**
UST God himself will stay with them

Some ancient manuscripts read, **God himself will be with them**. ULT follows that reading. Other ancient manuscripts add "as their God." If a translation of the Bible exists in your region, you may wish to use the reading that it uses. If a translation of the Bible does not exist in your region, you may wish to use the reading of ULT.
Support Reference: Textual Variants

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
throne	throne
dwelling	will live right where … live
God	God
God	God
they … people	They will belong to

Revelation 21:4

ULT	UST
And he will wipe away every tear from their eyes, and death will not be any longer, nor grieving, nor crying, nor pain. They will not be any longer; the first things have gone away."	*He will comfort them so that they are no longer sad. None of them will ever again die or mourn or cry or suffer pain. God has taken away those things, so they are gone forever."*

ULT **he will wipe away every tear from their eyes**
UST He will comfort them so that they are no longer sad

By using one thing that a person might do to console another person, John is representing all that someone might do to console someone else. If it would be helpful in your language, you could name something that someone might do similarly in your culture, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [God will console them]
Support Reference: Synecdoche

ULT **death will not be any longer, nor grieving, nor crying, nor pain**
UST None of them will ever again die or mourn or cry or suffer pain

John is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [death will not be any longer, and grieving will not be any longer, and crying will not be any longer, and pain will not be any longer]
Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **the first things**
UST those things

John is using the adjective **first** as a noun to mean a certain kind of thing. ULT adds the word **things** to show that. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you could translate this word with an equivalent phrase. Alternate translation: [the things that existed first]
Support Reference: Nominal Adjectives

ULT **the first things**
UST those things

If your language does not use ordinal numbers, you could use a cardinal number here or an equivalent expression. Alternate translation: [the former things]
Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

ULT **have gone away**
UST God has taken away

John is speaking of **the first things** as if they were living things that **have gone away** on their own. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [no longer exist]
Support Reference: Personification

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
grieving	mourn
crying	cry

Revelation 21:5

ULT	UST
And the one sitting on the throne said, "Behold! I make all things new." And he says to me, "Write, for these words are trustworthy and true."	*Then God said from the throne, "Listen to this! I am now making everything new!" He also said to me, "Write these things that I have told you. You can be confident that I will certainly cause them to happen."*

ULT **these words are**

UST these things that I have told you. You can be confident that I will certainly cause them to happen

God is using the term **word** to mean the statement that he has just made by using words. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [what I have just said is]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **trustworthy and true**

UST You can be confident that I will certainly cause them to happen

The terms **trustworthy** and **true** mean similar things. God on the throne is using the two terms together for emphasis. If it would be clearer for your readers, you could express the emphasis with a single phrase. Alternate translation: [entirely trustworthy]

Support Reference: Doublet

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
throne	throne
trustworthy	You can be confident that I will certainly cause them to happen

Revelation 21:6

ULT	UST
And he said to me, "It has happened! I am the Alpha and the Omega, the beginning and the end. To the one thirsting I will give freely from the spring of the water of life.	*He also said to me, "I have completed all these things! I am the one who began all things and the one who will cause all things to end. To everyone who wants it, I will freely give everlasting life, as if I were giving them a drink from a spring whose water keeps people alive.*

ULT **the Alpha and the Omega, the beginning and the end**
UST I am the one who began all things and the one who will cause all things to end

These two phrases mean similar things. John is using repetition to emphasize the idea that the phrases express. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could combine them. Alternate translation: [the very beginning and the very end]
Support Reference: Parallelism

ULT **the Alpha and the Omega, the beginning and the end**
UST I am the one who began all things and the one who will cause all things to end

God is using two pairs of extremes, the **Alpha** and the **Omega** and the **beginning** and the **end**, to mean those extremes and everything in between. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [the one who began everything and who will finish everything]
Support Reference: Merism

ULT **the Alpha and the Omega**
UST I am the one who began all things and the one who will cause all things to end

God is speaking as if he were literally two letters of the alphabet. **Alpha** is the first letter of the Greek alphabet and **Omega** is the last letter, so God means that he has existed from all eternity and will exist to all eternity. If your language uses figures of speech, you could use the first and last letters of your own alphabet. Alternatively, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [the A and the Z] or [the First and the Last]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **To the one thirsting I will give freely from the spring of the water of life**
UST To everyone who wants it, I will freely give everlasting life, as if I were giving them a drink from a spring whose water keeps people alive

God is speaking as if he would literally give **water** to someone who was **thirsting**. He is using thirst to represent a person's desire for everlasting life and he is using drinking life-giving water to represent that person receiving everlasting life. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [I will give everlasting life to the one who eagerly desires to have it]
Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
freely	freely
spring	spring

Revelation 21:7

ULT	UST
The one conquering will inherit these things, and I will be his God, and he will be my son.	*I will give this to all who are victorious over Satan. And I will be their God, and they will be my children.*

ULT **The one conquering**
UST to all who are victorious over Satan

The one conquering does not refer to a specific person. It refers to anyone who conquers in the sense that Jesus uses that term in the letters to the seven churches and as John uses it in 20:11. Express this in the way that would be most natural in your language. Alternate translation: [Everyone who conquers]
Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

ULT **I will be his God, and he will be my son**
UST I will be their God, and they will be my children

Although the term **son** is masculine, God is using the word in a generic sense that includes both men and women. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use a term in your language that is clearly inclusive of both men and women. Alternate translation: [I will be the God of that person, and that person will be my child]
Support Reference: When Masculine Words Include Women

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
inherit	I will give
God	God

Revelation 21:8

ULT	UST
But for the cowardly and the unbelieving and the abhorred and murderers and fornicators and sorcerers and idolaters and all liars, their place will be in the lake burning with fire and sulfur, which is the second death."	*But all the others will suffer in the lake of burning sulfur. That is what it means to die a second time. Those who are cowards will suffer this way. So will those who do not believe in me, those who do detestable things, those who murder people, those who sin sexually, those who practice witchcraft, those who worship idols, and all those who tell lies."*

ULT **But for the cowardly and the unbelieving**
UST But all the others … Those who are cowards … those who do not believe in me

John is using the adjectives **cowardly** and **unbelieving** as nouns to mean certain kinds of people. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you could translate these words with equivalent phrases. Alternate translation: [for cowardly people and unbelieving people]
Support Reference: Nominal Adjectives

ULT **the abhorred**
UST those who do detestable things

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [those who do things that make God abhor them]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **with fire and sulfur**
UST of burning sulfur

This phrase expresses a single idea by using two words connected with **and**. The word **fire** describes the state of the **sulfur**. If it would be more natural in your language, you could express this meaning with an equivalent phrase that does not use "and." Alternate translation: [with fiery sulfur]
Support Reference: Hendiadys

ULT **the second death**
UST to die a second time

If your language does not use ordinal numbers, you could use a cardinal number here or an equivalent expression. Alternate translation: [death number two]
Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the unbelieving	believe
the abhorred	those who do detestable things
fornicators	those who sin sexually
sorcerers	witchcraft
idolaters	idols
sulfur	sulfur

Revelation 21:9

ULT	UST
And one of the seven angels holding the seven bowls being full of the seven last plagues came and spoke with me, saying, "Come, I will show you the bride, the wife of the Lamb."	*Then an angel came to me. He was one of the seven angels who had the seven bowls of the wine that caused the seven last ways of suffering. He said to me, "Come with me. I will show you the people who will live together with the Lamb forever!"*

ULT **the bride, the wife of the Lamb**

UST the people who will live together with the Lamb forever

The angel is speaking as if the new Jerusalem were literally a **bride** who was going to marry the **Lamb**. He means that God's people will now be united forever with Jesus their Savior. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [how the people of God will be united forever with Jesus]

Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
angels	angels
bride	people who will live together with … forever
Lamb	Lamb
plagues	the … ways of suffering

Revelation 21:10

ULT	UST
And he carried me away in the Spirit to a great and high mountain, and he showed me the holy city, Jerusalem, coming down out of heaven from God,	*Then the Holy Spirit inspired me so that I could see and hear things in a vision. The angel took me to the top of a very high mountain. There he showed me the city that is special to God, the new Jerusalem. It was coming down out of heaven from God.*

ULT **he carried me away in the Spirit to a great and high mountain**

UST the Holy Spirit inspired me so that I could see and hear things in a vision. The angel took me to the top of a very high mountain

See how you translated the expression **in the Spirit** in 1:10 and 4:2. Alternate translation: [as he carried me away to a great and high mountain, the Holy Spirit inspired me so that I could receive further revelation]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **great and high**

UST very high

The terms **great** and **high** mean similar things. John is using the two terms together for emphasis. If it would be clearer for your readers, you could express the emphasis with a single phrase. Alternate translation, as in UST: [very high]

Support Reference: Doublet

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Spirit	Holy Spirit
holy	that is special to God
Jerusalem	Jerusalem
heaven	heaven
God	God
holy city	city that is special to God

Revelation 21:11

ULT	UST
having the glory of God, its brilliance being like a most precious stone, like a stone of jasper shining like crystal.	*The city was shining with brilliant light that came from God himself. It was sparkling like a priceless jasper gemstone, and it was clear like crystal.*

ULT **its brilliance {being} like a most precious stone**
UST The city … was sparkling like … priceless jasper

The point of this comparison is that the **brilliance** or luster of the city was bright and beautiful. If it would be helpful in your language, you could make this point explicitly. Alternate translation: [its brilliance was bright and beautiful, like that of a most precious stone]
Support Reference: Simile

ULT **being like a most precious stone, like a stone of jasper**
UST like a priceless jasper gemstone

These two phrases mean the same thing. The first is a general statement and the second is a specific example. John is using repetition to emphasize the idea that the phrases express. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could combine them. Alternate translation: [like a very precious jasper stone]
Support Reference: Parallelism

ULT **of jasper shining like crystal**
UST jasper … and it was clear like crystal

See how you translated the word **jasper** in 4:3 and the word **crystal** in 4:6.
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
glory	brilliant light
God	God

Revelation 21:12

ULT	UST
Having a great and high wall having 12 gates and 12 angels at the gates and names having been written that are the 12 tribes of the sons of Israel.	*A very high wall surrounded the city. The wall had twelve gates. An angel stood at each gate. The names of the twelve tribes of Israel appeared over the gates. Each gate had the name of one tribe.*

ULT **Having a great and high wall**
UST A very high wall surrounded the city

The terms **great** and **high** mean similar things. John is using the two terms together for emphasis. If it would be clearer for your readers, you could express the emphasis with a single phrase. It may be helpful to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: [The city had a very high wall]
Support Reference: Doublet

ULT **names having been written that are the 12 tribes**
UST The names of the twelve tribes … appeared over the gates. Each gate had the name of one tribe

John is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [names having been written on the gates that are the names of the 12 tribes]
Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **names having been written**
UST The names … appeared over the gates. Each gate had the name of one tribe

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who did the action, the context suggests that it was God. Alternate translation: [names that God had written]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **of the sons of Israel**
UST of Israel

Here, **sons** figuratively means "descendants." John is identifying the Israelites as descendants of their ancestor Israel (who was also known as Jacob). If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [of the people of Israel]
Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
gates	gates
angels	angel
gates	gate
12 tribes of the sons of Israel	twelve tribes of Israel
tribes	tribes
Israel	Israel

Revelation 21:15

ULT	UST
And the one speaking with me had a golden measuring rod so that he might measure the city and her gates and her wall.	*The angel who was speaking to me carried a golden measuring rod. He used it to measure the city, its gates, and its wall.*

ULT her gates and her wall
UST its gates, and its wall

As the introduction to this chapter discusses, people in this culture conventionally referred to cities by using feminine pronouns. Your language may use a different gender. You could also use a noun and say “that city.” Alternate translation: [its gates and its wall] or [the gates and wall of that city]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
golden	golden
a … rod	a … measuring rod
gates	gates

Revelation 21:16

ULT	UST
And the city is laid out square, and her length is as much as the width. And he measured the city with the rod to 12, 000 stadia: Her length and width and height are equal.	*The city was square in shape, that is, it was as long as it was wide. After the angel measured the city with his rod, he reported that it was 2, 200 kilometers long and that its width and height were the same as its length.*

ULT **12,000 stadia**

UST 2, 200 kilometers

The word **stadia** is the plural form of "stadium," which was a distance of about 185 meters. If it would be helpful in your language, you could give the equivalent in modern measurements. However, you might also wish to retain the ancient measurement, since there may be some symbolic significance to the number 12,000. Alternate translation: [about 2,200 kilometers] or [about 1,300 miles]

Support Reference: Biblical Distance

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
with the rod	with his rod

Revelation 21:17

ULT	UST
And he measured her wall, 144 cubits by the measurement of a man, which is of an angel.	*He measured its wall and reported that it was 66 meters high. The angel used the measurement that people normally use.*

ULT he measured her wall, 144 cubits
UST He measured its wall and reported that it was 66 meters high

John is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [he measured her wall and found it to be 144 cubits]
Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT 144 cubits
UST 66 meters high

This could be the measurement: (1) of the height of the wall. Alternate translation: [144 cubits high]; or (2) of the thickness of the wall. Alternate translation: [144 cubits thick]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT 144 cubits
UST 66 meters high

A **cubit** was the measurement of the distance from a person's elbow to his longest fingertip, typically about half a meter or about 18 inches. If it would be helpful in your language, you could give the equivalent in modern measurements. However, you might also wish to retain the ancient measurement, since there may be some symbolic significance to the number 144. Alternate translation: [about 70 meters] or [about 200 feet]
Support Reference: Biblical Distance

ULT by the measurement of a man, which is of an angel
UST The angel used the measurement that people normally use

Since **cubits** were the distance from an elbow to a fingertip, John needs to specify from what size person the angel determined this measurement. This could mean: (1) that the angel appeared to John in human form and so the distance from his elbow to his fingertip was the same as that of a human. It may be helpful to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: [The angel appeared in human form, and so he used an ordinary human cubit to measure]; or (2) that the angel may have been a giant compared with humans, but the angel still used a human-sized cubit. Alternate translation: [The angel used the cubit measure that people ordinarily use]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
angel	angel

Revelation 21:18

ULT	UST
And the material of her wall is jasper, and the city is pure gold, like pure glass.	*The stones of the city wall were like the green stone that people call jasper. The buildings of the city were pure gold and they showed reflections the way clear glass does.*

> ULT **is pure gold, like pure glass**
> UST pure gold and they showed reflections the way clear glass does

The point of this comparison is that the **gold** from which the city was made was clear and bright, just as **pure glass** has no imperfections that keep it from reflecting light or letting light through. Alternate translation: [is gold that is as clear and bright as pure glass]

Support Reference: Simile

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
pure	pure
gold	gold
pure	clear

Revelation 21:19

ULT	UST
The foundations of the wall of the city were adorned with every precious stone. The first foundation was jasper, the second sapphire, the third chalcedony, the fourth emerald,	*The foundations of the city wall were beautiful precious stones. Each foundation was a different stone. The first foundation stone was jasper. The second foundation stone was sapphire. The third foundation stone was chalcedony. The fourth foundation stone was emerald.*

ULT **The foundations of the wall of the city were adorned**

UST The foundations of the city wall … beautiful

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who did the action, the context suggests that it was God. Alternate translation: [God had adorned the foundations of the wall of the city]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **with every precious stone**

UST were … precious stones. Each foundation was a different stone

John says **every** here as a generalization for emphasis. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use a different way to express the emphasis. Alternate translation: [with many different precious stones]

Support Reference: Hyperbole

ULT **the second sapphire, the third chalcedony, the fourth emerald**

UST The second foundation stone was sapphire. The third foundation stone was chalcedony. The fourth foundation stone was emerald

John is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [the second foundation was sapphire, the third foundation was chalcedony, the fourth foundation was emerald]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **The first foundation {was} jasper, the second sapphire, the third chalcedony, the fourth emerald**

UST The first foundation stone was jasper. The second foundation stone was sapphire. The third foundation stone was chalcedony. The fourth foundation stone was emerald

If your language does not use ordinal numbers, you could use cardinal numbers here or equivalent expressions. Alternate translation: [Foundation number one was jasper, foundation number two was sapphire, foundation number three was chalcedony, foundation number four was emerald]

Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

ULT **was jasper … sapphire … chalcedony … emerald**
UST was jasper … was sapphire … was chalcedony … was emerald

As the introduction to this chapter discusses, in some cases it is not certain what precious stones the names in this verse and the next verse describe. When the reference of a name is uncertain, ULT spells out the name using English letters. If your readers would not be familiar with some of the precious stones listed here, in your translation you can spell their names the way they sound in your language.

Support Reference: Copy or Borrow Words

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
foundations	foundations
foundation	foundation

Revelation 21:20

ULT	UST
the fifth sardonyx, the sixth carnelian, the seventh chrysolite, the eighth beryl, the ninth topaz, the tenth chrysoprase, the eleventh jacinth, the twelfth amethyst.	*The fifth foundation stone was sardonyx. The sixth foundation stone was carnelian. The seventh foundation stone was chrysolite. The eighth foundation stone was beryl. The ninth foundation stone was topaz. The tenth foundation stone was chrysoprase. The eleventh foundation stone was jacinth. And the twelfth foundation stone was amethyst.*

> ULT **the fifth sardonyx, the sixth carnelian, the seventh chrysolite, the eighth beryl, the ninth topaz, the tenth chrysoprase, the eleventh jacinth, the twelfth amethyst**
> UST The fifth foundation stone was sardonyx. The sixth foundation stone was carnelian. The seventh foundation stone was chrysolite. The eighth foundation stone was beryl. The ninth foundation stone was topaz. The tenth foundation stone was chrysoprase. The eleventh foundation stone was jacinth. And the twelfth foundation stone was amethyst

John is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [the fifth foundation was sardonyx, the sixth foundation was carnelian, the seventh foundation was chrysolite, the eighth foundation was beryl, the ninth foundation was topaz, the tenth foundation was chrysoprase, the eleventh foundation was jacinth, the twelfth foundation was amethyst]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

> ULT **the fifth sardonyx, the sixth carnelian, the seventh chrysolite, the eighth beryl, the ninth topaz, the tenth chrysoprase, the eleventh jacinth, the twelfth amethyst**
> UST The fifth foundation stone was sardonyx. The sixth foundation stone was carnelian. The seventh foundation stone was chrysolite. The eighth foundation stone was beryl. The ninth foundation stone was topaz. The tenth foundation stone was chrysoprase. The eleventh foundation stone was jacinth. And the twelfth foundation stone was amethyst

If your language does not use ordinal numbers, you could use cardinal numbers here or equivalent expressions. Alternate translation: [foundation number five was sardonyx, foundation number six was carnelian, foundation number seven was chrysolite, foundation number eight was beryl, foundation number nine was topaz, foundation number ten was chrysoprase, foundation number eleven was jacinth, foundation number twelve was amethyst]

Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

Revelation 21:21

ULT	UST
And the 12 gates were 12 pearls; each one of the gates individually was from one pearl, and the street of the city was pure gold, like transparent glass.	*The twelve gates of the city were each huge pearls. Each gate was a single pearl. The city streets were pure gold and they showed reflections the way clear glass does.*

ULT **each one of the gates individually**
UST Each gate

It might seem that this phrase contains extra information that would be unnatural to express in your language. If so, you could shorten it. Alternate translation: [each of the gates]
Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

ULT **was pure gold, like transparent glass**
UST were pure gold and they showed reflections the way clear glass does

See how you translated the similar expression in 21:18. Alternate translation: [was gold that was as clear and bright as transparent glass]
Support Reference: Simile

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
gates	gates
gates	gate
pure	pure
gold	gold

Revelation 21:22

ULT	UST
And I saw no temple in her, for the Lord God, the Ruler of All, is her temple, and the Lamb.	*There was no temple in the city. That was because the Lord God himself, who rules over all, and the Lamb were there. So there was no need for a temple.*

ULT **the Lord God, the Ruler of All, is her temple, and the Lamb**
UST the Lord God himself, who rules over all, and the Lamb … So there was no need for a temple

It may be more natural to put the information about the **Lamb** with the information about the **Lord God**. Alternate translation: [the Lord God, the Ruler of All, and the Lamb are her temple]
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **the Lord God, the Ruler of All, is her temple, and the Lamb**
UST the Lord God himself, who rules over all, and the Lamb … So there was no need for a temple

Since John has just said that there is **no temple** in the city, he does not mean that the **Lord God** and the **Lamb** are literally a temple. Rather, he means that the people in the city can be in God's presence all the time without having to go to a temple. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [the Lord God, the Ruler of All, and the Lamb are always present in the city]
Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
temple	temple
Lord	Lord
God	God
the Ruler of All	who rules over all
temple	temple
Lamb	Lamb

Revelation 21:23

ULT	UST
And the city has no need of the sun, nor of the moon, that they might illumine her, for the glory of God illumined her, and her lamp is the Lamb.	*Now the city will not need the sun or the moon for light, because the light coming from God and from the Lamb will be all the light that it needs.*

ULT **nor of the moon**

UST or the moon

John is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [nor does the city have need of the moon]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **her lamp {is} the Lamb**

UST from the Lamb will be all the light that … needs

John is speaking as if the **Lamb** were literally a **lamp** that lit up the city. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [her light is the Lamb] or [its light is the Lamb] or [the light of that city is the Lamb]

Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
glory	light coming
God	God
lamp	will be all the light that … needs
Lamb	Lamb

Revelation 21:24

ULT	UST
And the nations will walk by the light of her, and the kings of the earth bring their glory into her.	*The way people live in the city will be an example to all of the world's people groups. The rulers of the earth will bring their treasures into the city to honor God and the lamb.*

ULT **the nations will walk by the light of her**
UST The way people live in the city will be an example to all of the world's people groups

John is speaking as if the **nations** would literally know where to **walk** because they would see well by the **light** from the city. In this context, the word **walk** figuratively means how people live and behave, and so the word **light** represents good guidance about how to live and behave. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [the people in the city will live in such a way as to guide the nations about how to live as God wishes]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **the nations**
UST all of the world's people groups

Some ancient manuscripts read **the nations**. ULT follows that reading. Other ancient manuscripts read "the nations that are saved." If a translation of the Bible exists in your region, you may wish to use the reading that it uses. If a translation of the Bible does not exist in your region, you may wish to use the reading of ULT.

Support Reference: Textual Variants

ULT **the kings of the earth bring their glory into her**
UST The rulers of the earth will bring their treasures into the city to honor God and the lamb

By **their glory**, John may mean by association symbols of royal power, such as crowns, scepters, and robes. He may be describing a situation like the one in 4:10, where he saw the 24 elders "lay their crowns before the throne" to acknowledge God as the Supreme Ruler. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [the kings of the earth will come into the city and lay their royal crowns, scepters, and robes before God's throne to acknowledge him as the Supreme Ruler]

Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
nations	people groups
kings	rulers
earth	earth
glory	treasures

Revelation 21:25

ULT	UST
And her gates will certainly not be shut by day, for night will not be there.	*It will never be night in the city. So no one will ever shut the gates of the city as one usually does at the end of a day.*

ULT **her gates will certainly not be shut**
UST no one will ever shut the gates of the city

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [no one at all will shut her gates]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **her gates will certainly not be shut**
UST no one will ever shut the gates of the city

If it would be clearer in your language, you could use a positive expression to translate this double negative that consists of the negative particle **not** and the negative verb **shut**. Alternate translation: [her gates will always be open]
Support Reference: Double Negatives

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
gates	gates
day	day

Revelation 21:26

ULT	UST
And they will bring the glory and the honor of the nations into her,	*The people of the world will also bring their wealth into the city.*

ULT **they will bring the glory and the honor of the nations**
UST The people of the world will … bring their wealth

The pronoun **they** seems to refer to people from the **nations**. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [the people of the nations will bring their glory and honor]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **they will bring the glory and the honor of the nations**
UST The people of the world will … bring their wealth

John is likely referring to wealth, by association with the way wealth is stored in things that are considered to have **glory** and **honor**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or express the meaning plainly. This could mean: (1) that the nations will send valuable gifts to God in the city as expressions of their devotion. Alternate translation: [they will bring valuable gifts from the nations]; or (2) that the nations will send tribute payments to God. Alternate translation: [they will bring tribute from the nations]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **the glory and the honor**
UST their wealth

The terms **glory** and **honor** mean similar things. John is using the two terms together for emphasis. If it would be clearer for your readers, you could express the emphasis with a single phrase. Alternate translation: [the splendor]
Support Reference: Doublet

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
glory	wealth
honor	wealth
nations	The people of the world

Revelation 21:27

ULT	UST
but everything unclean will certainly not enter into her and the one doing abomination and falsehood, if not the ones having been written in the Book of Life of the Lamb.	*But nothing that is morally impure will ever enter that city. No one who does things that God considers detestable and no one who tells lies will ever enter it. Only those people whose names God has written in the book that belongs to the Lamb will be there. That is the book that lists the names of people who have everlasting life.*

ULT **everything unclean will certainly not enter into her and the one doing abomination and falsehood**

UST nothing that is morally impure will ever enter that city. No one who does things that God considers detestable and no one who tells lies will ever enter it

It may be more natural to put the information about **the one doing abomination and falsehood** with the information about the **everything unclean**. Alternate translation: [everything unclean and the one doing abomination and falsehood will not at all enter into her]

Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **the one doing abomination and falsehood**

UST that … No one who does things … God considers detestable and no one who tells lies

If your language does not use abstract nouns for the ideas of **abomination** and **falsehood**, you could express the same ideas in other ways. Alternate translation: [anyone who does abominable things and tells lies]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **if not**

UST Only … will be there

This expression limits the meaning of **enter** to the people it introduces. Your language may have its own way of expressing this idea. Alternate translation: [but only]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **the ones having been written**

UST those people whose names God has written

John is referring to the names of people by association with the people themselves. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [the ones whose names have been written]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **the ones having been written**

UST those people whose names God has written

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who did the action, the context suggests that it was God. Alternate translation: [the ones whom God has written] or [the ones whose names God has written]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
unclean	that is morally impure
abomination	that … things … God considers detestable
Book	book
Book of Life	book … That is the book that lists the names of people who have everlasting life
Lamb	Lamb

Revelation 22

Revelation 22 Introduction

Revelation 22 Chapter Introduction

Structure and Formatting

This chapter emphasizes that Jesus is coming soon.

Religious and Cultural Concepts in This Chapter

Tree of life

There is probably an intended connection between the tree of life in the Garden of Eden and the tree of life mentioned in this chapter. The curse that began in Eden will end at this time.

Translation Issues in This Chapter

Alpha and omega

These are the names of the first and last letters in the Greek alphabet. The ULT spells out their names in English. This strategy can serve as a model for translators. Some translators, however, may decide to use the first and last letters in their own alphabet. That would be A and Z in English.

Revelation 22:1

ULT	UST
And he showed to me the river of the water of life, clear as crystal, flowing out from the throne of God and of the Lamb,	*Then the angel showed me the river that causes people who drink from it to live forever. The water was sparkling and clear like crystal. The river was flowing out from the thrones where God and the Lamb were sitting.*

ULT **he showed**

UST the angel showed

The pronoun **he** refers to the angel who had one of the seven bowls, who began speaking to John in 21:9 and who was showing him the new Jerusalem. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [the angel who had been showing me the city showed]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **from the throne of God and of the Lamb**

UST from the thrones where God and the Lamb were sitting

John is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. That may help clarify that **God** and **the Lamb** do not share a single throne. Alternate translation: [from the throne of God and from the throne of the Lamb]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
throne	thrones
God	God
Lamb	Lamb

Revelation 22:2

ULT	UST
in the middle of its public square. And on this side and on that side of the river was the tree of life, bearing 12 fruits, giving its fruit according to each month, and the leaves of the tree are for the healing of the nations.	*It flowed down through the middle of the city's open area. On each side of the river was a tree with fruit that causes people who eat it to live forever. These trees produce fruit 12 times a year. They produce a crop each month. The people groups use the leaves of the trees as medicine.*

ULT **in the middle of its public square. And**
UST It flowed down through the middle of the city's open area

This phrase could refer implicitly to: (1) where the river flowed. That is the interpretation that ULT and UST follow. (2) where the tree of life was. In that case this would be the beginning of a new sentence. Alternate translation: [In the middle of its public square and]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
fruits	fruit
fruit	a crop
month	month
nations	The people groups use

Revelation 22:3

ULT	UST
And there will no longer be any curse, and the throne of God and of the Lamb will be in it, and his servants will serve him.	*There will never be anyone or anything there that God will curse. The throne of God and of the Lamb will be in the city. God's servants will worship him there.*

ULT **the throne of God and of the Lamb**
UST The throne of God and of the Lamb

John is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. That may help clarify that **God** and **the Lamb** do not share a single throne. Alternate translation: [the throne of God and the throne of the Lamb]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
curse	curse
throne	throne
God	God
Lamb	Lamb
servants	servants
serve	will worship … there

Revelation 22:4

ULT	UST
And they will see his face, and his name will be on their foreheads.	*They will see him face to face, and his name will appear on their foreheads.*

ULT **his face**

UST him face to face

John is using one part of God, his **face**, to represent all of God as his servants see him. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression from your culture or state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [him]

Support Reference: Synecdoche

Revelation 22:5

ULT	UST
And there will be no more night, and they have no need of the light of a lamp or of the light of the sun, because the Lord God will shine on them, and they will reign to the ages of the ages.	*There will never again be night. God's servants will not need the light of a lamp or the light of the sun because the Lord God will shine his light upon them. They will rule forever.*

ULT **to the ages of the ages**
UST forever

This expression refers to endless future time. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [for all eternity]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
lamp	lamp
Lord	Lord
God	God
reign	rule
ages	forever
ages	forever

Revelation 22:6

ULT	UST
And he said to me, "These words are trustworthy and true, and the Lord, the God of the spirits of the prophets, has sent his angel to show his servants what must happen soon."	*The angel said to me: "These things that God has shown you are true, and he will certainly make them happen. The Lord God who inspires the prophets sent his angel to show the people who serve him the events that must happen soon."*

ULT **he said**
UST The angel said

The pronoun **he** refers to the same angel as in verse 1. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [the angel said]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **These words are**
UST These things that God has shown you

The angel is using the term **words** to mean what he has been telling John by using words. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [What I have been telling you is]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **trustworthy and true**
UST are true, and he will certainly make them happen

The terms **trustworthy** and **true** mean similar things. The angel is using the two terms together for emphasis. If it would be clearer for your readers, you could express the emphasis with a single phrase. Alternate translation: [entirely trustworthy]
Support Reference: Doublet

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
trustworthy	he will certainly make them happen
Lord	Lord
God	God
spirits	who inspires
prophets	prophets
angel	angel
servants	serve

Revelation 22:7

ULT	UST
“And behold, I am coming quickly! Blessed is the one keeping the words of the prophecy of this book.”	*Jesus says to all his people, “Listen to this! I am coming soon; God will abundantly bless everyone who obeys the prophetic message in this book.”*

ULT **And behold**

UST Jesus says to all his people, “Listen to this

John assumes that his readers will understand that Jesus is speaking in this verse. You could say that explicitly if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [Then Jesus said, “And behold]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **the words of the prophecy of this book**

UST the prophetic message in this book

Jesus is using the term **words** to mean what John has written in this **book**, using words, to describe the **prophecies** that God gave to him. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [what you have said in this book about the prophecies God gave you]

Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Blessed	bless
prophecy	prophetic

Revelation 22:8

ULT	UST
And I, John, am the one seeing and hearing these things. And when I heard and saw them, I fell down to worship at the feet of the angel showing me these things.	*I, John, am the one who heard and saw in a vision these things that I have written down. When I had heard and seen them, I immediately lay down in front of the angel who had shown me these things in order to worship him.*

ULT **I fell down**

UST I immediately lay down … in order to worship him

This expression means that John lay down facing the ground. See how you translated the similar expression in 7:11. Alternate translation: [I bowed down]

Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
John	John
I fell down	I immediately lay down … in order to worship him
worship	worship
angel	angel

Revelation 22:9

ULT	UST
But he says to me, "See not! I am a fellow servant of you and of your brothers the prophets and of the ones keeping the words of this book. Worship God!"	*But he said to me, "Do not worship me! I am just a servant of God like you! I am also a servant like your fellow believers who are the prophets, and like those who obey the message in this book. Instead, worship God!"*

ULT **See not**
UST Do not worship me

The angel is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [See that you do not do that]
Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **See not**
UST Do not worship me

The angel is using the term **See** to mean by association that John should give careful attention to what he is doing. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [Watch out! Do not do that!] or [Be careful not to do that]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **of your brothers the prophets**
UST like your fellow believers who are the prophets

The angel is using the term **brothers** figuratively to mean fellow prophets. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [of your fellow prophets]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **of your brothers the prophets**
UST like your fellow believers who are the prophets

Although the term **brothers** is masculine, here the word has a generic sense that includes both men and women. If you wish to retain the figurative expression in your translation, you could word it in a way that is clearly inclusive of both men and women. Alternate translation: [of your brothers and sisters the prophets]
Support Reference: When Masculine Words Include Women

ULT **the words of this book**
UST the message in this book

The angel is using the term **words** to mean what John has said in **this book** by using words. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [what you have said in this book]
Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
prophets	prophets
Worship	worship
God	God

Revelation 22:10

ULT	UST
And he says to me, "Do not seal the words of the prophecy of this book, for the time is near.	*He also said to me, "Do not keep secret the message about what God has foretold in this book, because it is almost time for him to fulfill this message.*

ULT **Do not seal**
UST Do not keep secret

If it would be clearer in your language, you could use a positive expression to translate this double negative that consists of the negative particle **not** and the negative verb **seal**. Alternate translation: [Leave open]
Support Reference: Double Negatives

ULT **Do not seal**
UST Do not keep secret

The angel is speaking as if John might literally **seal** his **book** closed once he has written it. The angel means that John should tell others what he has written in the book and not keep those things to himself. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [Widely proclaim]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **the words of the prophecy of this book**
UST the message about what God has foretold in this book

The angel is using the term **words** to mean what John has said in **this book** by using words to describe the **prophecy** that God gave him. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [what you have said in this book about the prophecy God gave you]
Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
seal	Do … keep secret
prophecy	about what God has foretold
time	time

Revelation 22:11

ULT	UST
Let the one being unrighteous still be unrighteous, and let the filthy one still be filthy, and let the righteous one still do righteousness, and let the holy one still be holy.	*Since that time is near, if those who act in an evil manner want to continue to act that way, let them continue to do so. If those who are vile want to continue to be vile, let them continue to do so. God will soon punish them for that. But those who are acting righteously should continue to act righteously. Those who are acting as people should who belong to God should continue to act that way."*

ULT **Let the one being unrighteous still be unrighteous, and let the filthy {one} still be filthy, and let the righteous {one} still do righteousness, and let the holy {one} still be holy**
UST Since that time is near, if those who act in an evil manner want to continue to act that way, let them continue to do so. If those who are vile want to continue to be vile, let them continue to do so. God will soon punish them for that. But those who are acting righteously should continue to act righteously. Those who are acting as people should who belong to God should continue to act that way

If your language does not use third-person imperatives in this way, you make these statements in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [May the one being unrighteous still be unrighteous, and may the filthy one still be filthy, and may the righteous one still do righteousness, and may the holy one still be holy] or [The one being unrighteous should still be unrighteous, and the filthy one should still be filthy, and the righteous one should do righteousness, and the holy one should still be holy]
Support Reference: Third-Person Imperatives

ULT **Let the one being unrighteous still be unrighteous**
UST Since that time is near, if those who act in an evil manner want to continue to act that way, let them continue to do so … God will soon punish them for that

In this verse, the angel is using a series of similar phrases in order to emphasize the idea that the phrases express. Try to translate each of these phrases in such a way as to show their similarity. You may also wish to summarize the idea behind the phrases beforehand, if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [The time is so near that it is too late for people to change the way they are living. So let the one being unrighteous still be unrighteous]
Support Reference: Litany

ULT **the one being unrighteous … the filthy one … the righteous one … the holy one**
UST Since that time is near, if those who act in an evil manner want to continue to act that way … those who are vile want to continue … be vile … God will soon punish them for that … those who are acting righteously … Those who are acting as people should who belong to God

These phrases do not refer to specific people. They refer to anyone who has the quality that they name. Express this in the way that would be most natural in your language. Alternate translation: [anyone who is unrighteous … anyone who is filthy … anyone who is righteous … anyone who is holy]
Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

ULT **the filthy one … the righteous one … the holy one**
UST those who are vile want to continue … be vile … those who are acting righteously … Those who are acting as people should who belong to God

John is using the adjectives **filthy**, **righteous**, and **holy** as nouns to mean certain kinds of people. ULT adds **one** in each case to show that. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you could translate these words with equivalent phrases. Alternate translation: [the person who is filthy … the person who is righteous … the person who is holy]
Support Reference: Nominal Adjectives

ULT **let the filthy {one} still be filthy**
UST those who are vile want to continue to be vile, let them continue to do so

The angel is speaking as if someone who does wrong were literally **filthy** or dirty. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [let the person who is wicked still be wicked]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **righteousness**
UST act righteously

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **righteousness**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [what is right]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
unrighteous	who act in an evil manner want to continue to act that way
unrighteous	let them … do so
righteous	are acting righteously
righteousness	act righteously
holy	who are acting as people should who belong to God
holy	act that way

Revelation 22:12

ULT	UST
Behold, I am coming quickly, and my reward is with me, to render to each one as his work is.	*Jesus says to all people: "Listen! I am coming soon! And I will punish or reward everyone according to what each one has done.*

ULT Behold

UST Jesus says to all people: "Listen

John assumes that his readers will understand that Jesus continues speaking in this verse and continues speaking through verse 16. You could indicate that explicitly if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [Then Jesus said, "Behold]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
reward	reward

Revelation 22:13

ULT	UST
I am the Alpha and the Omega, the first and the last, the beginning and the end.	*I am the one who began all things and the one who will cause all things to end. I am before all things and I am at the end of all things.*

ULT **the Alpha and the Omega, the first and the last, the beginning and the end**
UST the one who began all things and the one who will cause all things to end … before all things and … at the end of all things

These three phrases mean similar things. Jesus is using repetition to emphasize the idea that the phrases express. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could combine them. Alternate translation: [the very beginning and the very end]
Support Reference: Parallelism

ULT **the Alpha and the Omega, the first and the last, the beginning and the end**
UST the one who began all things and the one who will cause all things to end … before all things and … at the end of all things

Jesus is using three pairs of extremes, the **Alpha** and the **Omega**, the **first** and the **last**, and the **beginning** and the **end**, to mean those extremes and everything in between. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [the one who began everything and who will finish everything]
Support Reference: Merism

ULT **the Alpha and the Omega**
UST the one who began all things and the one who will cause all things to end

See how you translated this in 21:6.
Support Reference: Metaphor

Revelation 22:14

ULT	UST
Blessed are the ones washing their robes so that their authority over the tree of life will be and they may enter into the city by the gates.	*God is very pleased with the people who stop living in wrong ways and start living in right ways. Because they do that, those people will be able to eat the fruit of the tree that enables people to live forever. They will be able to go through the gates into the holy city.*

ULT **the ones washing their robes**
UST who stop living in wrong ways and start living in right ways

Jesus is speaking as if people who repent of their sins and start living in a way that pleases God are literally **washing their robes**. See how you translated the similar expression in 7:14.
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **the ones washing their robes**
UST who stop living in wrong ways and start living in right ways

Some ancient manuscripts read **the ones washing their robes**. ULT follows that reading. Other ancient manuscripts read "the ones doing his commandments." If a translation of the Bible exists in your region, you may wish to use the reading that it uses. If a translation of the Bible does not exist in your region, you may wish to use the reading of ULT.
Support Reference: Textual Variants

ULT **their authority over the tree of life will be**
UST those people will be able to eat the fruit of the tree that enables people to live forever

If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning of this expression plainly. Alternate translation: [they will have the right to eat from the tree of life]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Blessed	God is very pleased with the people
robes	stop living in wrong ways and start living in right ways
authority	those people will be able to eat the fruit
gates	gates

Revelation 22:15

ULT	UST
Outside are dogs and sorcerers and the sexually immoral and murderers and idolaters and everyone loving and doing falsehood.	*But others will not enter that city. This includes people who do wicked things, practice witchcraft, sin sexually, murder others, worship idols, or lie continually.*

ULT **dogs**
UST people who do wicked things

In this culture, people considered **dogs** to be dirty and bothersome animals. So this is not a positive statement, as it would be in some other cultures where dogs are cherished as household pets and as helpful workers and companions. It may be helpful to use an expression in your translation that will clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [dirty animals]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **dogs**
UST people who do wicked things

Jesus is speaking as if wicked people were literally **dogs**. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [wicked people]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **the sexually immoral**
UST sin sexually

Jesus is using the adjective **sexual immoral** as a noun to mean a certain kind of person. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you could translate this word with an equivalent phrase. Alternate translation: [people who are sexually immoral]
Support Reference: Nominal Adjectives

ULT **loving and doing**
UST continually

This phrase expresses a single idea by using two words connected with **and**. The word **loving** tells in what way these people are **doing** falsehood. If it would be more natural in your language, you could express this meaning with an equivalent phrase that does not use “and.” Alternate translation: [eagerly doing]
Support Reference: Hendiadys

ULT **falsehood**
UST lie

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **falsehood**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [what is false] or [what is wrong]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
sorcerers	witchcraft
immoral	sin sexually
idolaters	idols
loving	continually

Revelation 22:16

ULT	UST
I, Jesus, have sent my angel to testify these things to you concerning the churches. I am the root and the offspring of David, the bright morning star."	*I, Jesus, sent my angel to announce these things that will affect you groups of believers. Mysteriously, I am both the ancestor of King David and his descendant whom the prophets promised would come. I am the one who is like the bright morning star."*

ULT **to testify these things to you concerning the churches**

UST to announce these things that will affect you groups of believers

Here the word **you** is plural. Alternate translation: [to testify to all of you in the churches about these things that concern you]

Support Reference: Forms of You

ULT **the root and the offspring of David**

UST Mysteriously … both the ancestor of King David and his descendant whom the prophets promised would come

Jesus is speaking as if here were literally the **root** of a tree. He means that David came from him, just as a tree comes from its roots. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [both the source and the offspring of David]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **the bright morning star**

UST the one who is like the bright morning star

Jesus is also speaking of himself as if he were the bright **star** that sometimes appears early in the **morning** and indicates that a new day is about to begin. Alternate translation: [the sign that God is beginning a new era]

Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jesus	Jesus
angel	angel
testify	to announce
churches	that will affect … groups of believers
David	David

Revelation 22:17

ULT	UST
And the Spirit and the Bride say, "Come!" And let the one hearing say, "Come!" And the one thirsting, let him come. The one desiring, let him take the water of life freely.	*The Holy Spirit and the people who belong to God say, "Come!" Whoever hears this should also say, "Come!" Everyone who wants everlasting life should receive it! God will give everlasting life as a free gift to everyone who desires it!*

ULT **the Bride**
UST the people who belong to God

In keeping with the symbolism of his vision, John is speaking of the church as if it were literally the **Bride** of Jesus. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [the church]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **say, "Come … let the one hearing say, "Come**
UST say, "Come!" Whoever hears this should … say, "Come

In both cases, the implied "you" in the imperative **Come** is singular, so use a singular form if your language marks that distinction. If it does not, you could indicate the addressee in another way. The addressee could be: (1) Jesus, who says in verses 12 and 20, "I am coming quickly," and to whom John says explicitly in v. 20, "Come, Lord Jesus!" Alternate translation: [say to Jesus, "Come!" … let the one hearing say to Jesus, "Come!"]; or (2) the **one thirsting**, whom John mentions in the next sentence. Alternate translation: [say to the one thirsting, "Come!" … let the one hearing say to the one thirsting, "Come!"]
Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

ULT **Come … Come**
UST Come … Come

These are imperatives, but they communicate polite requests rather than commands. For each instance, use a form in your language that communicates a polite request. It may be helpful to add an expression such as "please." Alternate translation: [Please come … Please come]
Support Reference: Imperatives — Other Uses

ULT **let the one hearing say … the one thirsting, let him come. The one desiring, let him take**
UST Whoever hears this should … say … Everyone who wants everlasting life should receive it! God will give … to everyone who desires it

If your language does not use the third-person imperative in this way, you could state this in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [may the one hearing say … may the one thirsting come … may the one desiring take] or [the one hearing should say … the one thirsting should come … the one desiring should take]
Support Reference: Third-Person Imperatives

ULT **the one hearing … the one thirsting … The one desiring**
UST Whoever hears this … Everyone who wants everlasting life … to everyone who desires it

These phrases do not refer to specific people. They refer to anyone who has the quality that they name. Express this in the way that would be most natural in your language. Alternate translation: [anyone who hears … anyone who thirsts … anyone who desires]
Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

ULT **And the one thirsting, let him come. The one desiring, let him take the water of life freely**
UST Everyone who wants everlasting life should receive it! God will give everlasting life as a free gift to everyone who desires it

In 21:6, God spoke as if he would literally give "water" to someone who was "thirsting." He was using thirst to represent a person's desire for everlasting life and he was using drinking life-giving water to represent that person receiving everlasting life. John is echoing the same image here. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [Let the one who wants to have everlasting life come. Let the one who desires everlasting life receive it freely]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **And the one thirsting, let him come. The one desiring, let him take the water of life freely**
UST Everyone who wants everlasting life should receive it! God will give everlasting life as a free gift to everyone who desires it

These two sentences mean basically the same thing. John is speaking in something like Hebrew poetry, which was based on this kind of repetition. It would be good to show this to your readers by including both phrases in your translation rather than combining them. However, if such repetition would not be natural in your language, you could connect the clauses with a word other than **and** in order to show that the second clause is repeating the first one, not saying something additional. Alternate translation: [Let the one who is thirsting come, yes, let the one desiring take the water of life freely] or [Let the one who wants to have everlasting life come, yes, let the one who desires everlasting life receive it freely]
Support Reference: Parallelism

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Spirit	Holy Spirit
Bride	people who belong to God
freely	free

Revelation 22:18

ULT	UST
I testify to everyone hearing the words of the prophecy of this book: If anyone might add to them, God will add to him the plagues written in this book.	*I, John, solemnly warn everyone who hears the message about what I have foretold in this book: If anyone adds anything to this message, God will punish him in the ways that this book tells about.*

ULT **I**
UST I, John

The pronoun **I** refers to John. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [I, John,]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **hearing the words of the prophecy of this book … to them**
UST who hears the message about what I have foretold in this book … to this message

John is using the term **words** to mean what he has written about in **this book** by using words. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [the prophecy I have written about in this book … to what I have written]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **written**
UST that … tells about

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [that I have written about]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
testify	solemnly warn
prophecy	about what I have foretold
God	God
plagues	in the ways

Revelation 22:19

ULT	UST
And if anyone might take away from the words of the book of this prophecy, God will take away his share from the tree of life and from the holy city written in this book.	*And if anyone takes away any of the message about the things I have foretold in this book, God will take away that person's right to eat fruit from the tree that enables people to live forever. God will also take away that person's right to enter the new Jerusalem. I describe both these things in this book.*

ULT **the words of the book of this prophecy**
UST the message about the things I have foretold in this book

John is using the term **words** to mean what he has written about in **this book** by using words. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [the prophecy I have written about in this book]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **the tree of life**
UST the tree that enables people to live forever

Some ancient manuscripts read **the tree of life**. ULT follows that reading. Other ancient manuscripts read "the Book of Life." If a translation of the Bible exists in your region, you may wish to use the reading that it uses. If a translation of the Bible does not exist in your region, you may wish to use the reading of ULT.
Support Reference: Textual Variants

ULT **written**
UST I describe both these things

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [that I have written about]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
prophecy	about the things I have foretold
God	God
holy	new Jerusalem
holy city	new Jerusalem

Revelation 22:20

ULT	UST
The one testifying these things says, "Yes! I am coming quickly." Amen! Come, Lord Jesus!	*Jesus, who says that all these things are true, says, "Certainly I am coming soon!" I, John, reply, "May it be so! Lord Jesus, come!"*

ULT **The one testifying these things**
UST who says that all these things are true

John assumes that his readers will understand that by **the one testifying** he means Jesus. You could say that explicitly if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [Jesus, the one who testifies these things,]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **Amen**
UST I, John, reply, "May it be so

See how you translated the term **Amen** in 1:6.
Support Reference: Copy or Borrow Words

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
testifying	who says that all … are true
Amen	I, John, reply, "May it be so
Lord	Lord
Jesus	Jesus

Revelation 22:21

ULT	UST
The grace of the Lord Jesus be with the saints. Amen.	*I pray that our Lord Jesus will continue to act kindly to all of you who are God's people. May it be so!*

ULT **The grace of the Lord Jesus {be} with the saints**
UST I pray that our Lord Jesus will continue to act kindly to all of you who are God's people

John is ending the book of Revelation by asking God to bless the **saints**, that is, the people who belong to God. In your translation, use a form that speakers of your language would recognize as a blessing. Alternate translation: [May the Lord Jesus bless all of you who belong to God by giving you his grace]
Support Reference: Blessings

ULT **The grace of the Lord Jesus {be} with**
UST I pray that our Lord Jesus will continue to act kindly to

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **grace**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [May the Lord Jesus be gracious to]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
grace	I pray that … will continue to act kindly
Lord	Lord
Jesus	Jesus
saints	all of you who are God's people
Amen	May it be so

Appendix: Translation Academy

First, Second or Third Person

Normally a speaker refers to himself as "I" and the person he is speaking to as "you." Sometimes in the Bible a speaker refers to himself or to the person he is speaking to with terms other than "I" or "you."

Description

- First person — This is how a speaker normally refers to himself. English uses the pronouns "I" and "we." (Also: me, my, mine; us, our, ours)
- Second person — This is how a speaker normally refers to the person or people he is speaking to. English uses the pronoun "you." (Also: your, yours)
- Third person — This is how a speaker refers to someone else. English uses the pronouns "he," "she," "it," and "they." (Also: him, his, her, hers, its; them, their, theirs) Noun phrases like "the man" or "the woman" are also third person.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses the third person to refer to himself or to the people he is speaking to. Readers might think that the speaker was referring to someone else. They might not understand that he meant "I" or "you."

Examples From the Bible

Sometimes people used the third person instead of "I" or "me" to refer to themselves.

> But David said to Saul, "**Your servant** used to keep **his** father's sheep." (1 Samuel 17:34 ULT)

David referred to himself in the third person as "your servant" and used "his." He was calling himself Saul's servant in order to show his humility before Saul.

> Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said,
> "… Do you have an arm like **God's**? Can you thunder with a voice like **his**?" (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)

God referred to himself in the third person with the words "God's" and "his." He did this to emphasize that he is God, and he is powerful.

Sometimes people use the third person instead of "you" or "your" to refer to the person or people they are speaking to.

> Abraham answered and said, "Look, I have undertaken to speak to my Lord, even though I am only dust and ashes!" (Genesis 18:27 ULT)

Abraham was speaking to the Lord, and referred to the Lord as "My Lord" rather than as "you." He did this to show his humility before God.

> So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if **each of you** does not forgive **his** brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)

After saying "each of you," Jesus used the third person "his" instead of "your."

Translation Strategies

If using the third person to mean "I" or "you" would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

(1) Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun "I" or "you."
(2) Simply use the first person ("I") or second person ("you") instead of the third person.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun "I" or "you."

> But David said to Saul, "**Your servant** used to keep **his** father's sheep." (1 Samuel 17:34)
>
> > But David said to Saul, "**I, your servant**, used to keep **my** father's sheep."

(2) Simply use the first person ("I") or second person ("you") instead of the third person.

> Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, "… Do you have an arm like **God's**? Can you thunder with a voice like **his**?" (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)
>
> > Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, "… Do you have an arm like **mine**? Can you thunder with a voice like **mine**?"
>
> So also my heavenly Father will do to you if **each of you** does not forgive **his** brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)
>
> > So also my heavenly Father will do to you if **each of you** does not forgive **your** brother from your heart.

Revelation References:

Revelation 1:1 Revelation 1:4 Revelation 1:4 Revelation 2 Introduction Revelation 2:7 Revelation 2:7 Revelation 2:8 Revelation 3:22 Revelation 13:9 Revelation 16:5 Revelation 19:5

Abstract Nouns

Description

Abstract nouns are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, or situations. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as happiness, weight, unity, friendship, health, and reason. This is a translation issue because some languages may express a certain idea with an abstract noun, while others would need a different way to express it.

Remember that nouns are words that refer to a person, place, thing, or idea. Abstract nouns are the nouns that refer to ideas. These can be attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even relationships between those ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as joy, peace, creation, goodness, contentment, justice, truth, freedom, vengeance, slowness, length, weight, and many, many more.

Some languages, such as Biblical Greek and English, use abstract nouns a lot. They provide a way of giving names to actions or qualities. With names, people who speak these languages can talk about the concepts as though they were things. For example, in languages that use abstract nouns, people can say, "I believe in the forgiveness of sin." But some languages do not use abstract nouns very much. In these languages, speakers may not have the two abstract nouns "forgiveness" and "sin," but they would express the same meaning in other ways. For example, they would express, "I believe that God is willing to forgive people after they have sinned," by using verb phrases instead of nouns for those ideas.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

The Bible that you translate from may use abstract nouns to express certain ideas. Your language might not use abstract nouns for some of those ideas. Instead, it might use phrases to express those ideas. Those phrases will use other kinds of words such as adjectives, verbs, or adverbs to express the meaning of the abstract noun. For example,

"What is its **weight**?" could be expressed as "How much does it **weigh**?" or "How **heavy** is it?"

Examples From the Bible

> From **childhood** you have known the sacred writings … (2 Timothy 3:15a ULT)

The abstract noun "childhood" refers to when someone was a child.

> But **godliness** with **contentment** is great **gain**. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

The abstract nouns "godliness" and "contentment" refer to being godly and content. The abstract noun "gain" refers to something that benefits or helps someone.

> Today **salvation** has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

The abstract noun "salvation" here refers to being saved.

> The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **slowness** to be (2 Peter 3:9a ULT)

The abstract noun "slowness" refers to the lack of speed with which something is done.

> He will both bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the **purposes** of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5b ULT)

The abstract noun "purposes" refers to the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.

Translation Strategies

If an abstract noun would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun. Alternative translations are indented below the Scripture example.

> … from **childhood** you have known the sacred writings … (2 Timothy 3:15a ULT)
>
> > Ever since **you were a child** you have known the sacred writings.

But **godliness** with **contentment** is great **gain**. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

> But **being godly** and **content** is very **beneficial**. But we **benefit** greatly when we **are godly** and **content**. But we **benefit** greatly when we **honor and obey God** and when we are **happy with what we have**.

Today **salvation** has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

> Today the people in this house **have been saved** … Today God **has saved** the people in this house …

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **slowness** to be. (2 Peter 3:9a ULT)

> The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **moving slowly** to be.

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the **purposes** of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5b ULT)

> He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal **the things that people want to do and the reasons that they want to do them**.

Revelation References:

Revelation 1:1 Revelation 1:2 Revelation 1:4 Revelation 1:6 Revelation 1:9 Revelation 2:19 Revelation 3:10 Revelation 4:9 Revelation 4:11 Revelation 5:12 Revelation 5:13 Revelation 6:4 Revelation 6:9 Revelation 7:10 Revelation 7:12 Revelation 7:14 Revelation 9:6 Revelation 11:15 Revelation 12:10 Revelation 12:11 Revelation 12:17 Revelation 13:8 Revelation 13:10 Revelation 13:10 Revelation 14:7 Revelation 15:5 Revelation 15:8 Revelation 16:9 Revelation 16:10 Revelation 16:15 Revelation 17:1 Revelation 17:8 Revelation 17:8 Revelation 17:9 Revelation 17:11 Revelation 17:12 Revelation 17:17 Revelation 17:18 Revelation 18:10 Revelation 18:20 Revelation 18:21 Revelation 19:1 Revelation 19:10 Revelation 19:11 Revelation 20:4 Revelation 21:27 Revelation 22:11 Revelation 22:15 Revelation 22:21

Active or Passive

Some languages use both active and passive sentences. In active sentences, the subject does the action. In passive sentences, the subject is the one that receives the action. Here are some examples with their subjects bolded:

- Active: **My father** built the house in 2010.
- Passive: **The house** was built in 2010.

Translators whose languages do not use passive sentences will need to know how they can translate passive sentences that they find in the Bible. Other translators will need to decide when to use a passive sentence and when to use the active form.

Description

Some languages have both active and passive forms of sentences.

- In the active form, the subject does the action and is always mentioned.
- In the passive form, the action is done to the subject, and the one who does the action is not always mentioned.

In the examples of active and passive sentences below, we have bolded the subject.

- active: **My father** built the house in 2010.
- passive: **The house** was built by my father in 2010.
- passive: **The house** was built in 2010. (This does not tell who did the action.)

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

All languages use active forms. Some languages use passive forms, and some do not. Some languages use passive forms only for certain purposes, and the passive form is not used for the same purposes in all of the languages that use it.

Purposes for the Passive

- The speaker is talking about the person or thing the action was done to, not about the person who did the action.
- The speaker does not want to tell who did the action.
- The speaker does not know who did the action.

Translation Principles Regarding the Passive

- Translators whose language does not use passive forms will need to find another way to express the idea.
- Translators whose language has passive forms will need to understand why the passive is used in a particular sentence in the Bible and decide whether or not to use a passive form for that purpose in his translation of the sentence.

Examples From the Bible

> Then their shooters shot at your soldiers from off the wall, and some of the king's servants **were killed**, and your servant Uriah the Hittite **was killed** too. (2 Samuel 11:24 ULT)

This means that the enemy's shooters shot and killed some of the king's servants, including Uriah. The point is what happened to the king's servants and Uriah, not who shot them. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on the king's servants and Uriah.

> When the men of the city arose early in the morning, and see, the altar of Baal **was torn down**. (Judges 6:28a ULT)

The men of the town saw what had happened to the altar of Baal, but they did not know who broke it down. The purpose of the passive form here is to communicate this event from the perspective of the men of the town.

> It would be better for him if a millstone **were put** around his neck and he **were thrown** into the sea. (Luke 17:2a ULT)

This describes a situation in which a person ends up in the sea with a millstone around his neck. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on what happens to this person. Who does these things to the person is not important.

Translation Strategies

If your language would use a passive form for the same purpose as in the passage that you are translating, then use a passive form. If you decide that it is better to translate without a passive form, here are some strategies that you might consider.

(1) Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who or what did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.
(2) Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who or what did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."
(3) Use a different verb.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.

> A loaf of bread **was given** him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21b ULT)
>
> > **The king's servants gave** Jeremiah a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

(2) Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."

> It would be better for him if a millstone **were put** around his neck and he **were thrown** into the sea. (Luke 17:2a ULT)
>
> > It would be better for him if **they were to put** a millstone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea.
> > It would be better for him if **someone were to put** a heavy stone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea.

(3) Use a different verb in an active sentence.

> A loaf of bread **was given** him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21 ULT)
>
> > He **received** a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

Revelation References:

Revelation 1:3 Revelation 1:9 Revelation 1:13 Revelation 1:15 Revelation 2:10 Revelation 2:11 Revelation 2:13 Revelation 2:17 Revelation 2:17 Revelation 2:27 Revelation 3:2 Revelation 3:5 Revelation 3:8 Revelation 3:18 Revelation 3:18 Revelation 4:1 Revelation 4:4 Revelation 5:1 Revelation 5:1 Revelation 5:4 Revelation 5:6 Revelation 5:6 Revelation 5:9 Revelation 5:12 Revelation 6:2 Revelation 6:4 Revelation 6:4 Revelation 6:8 Revelation 6:9 Revelation 6:11 Revelation 6:11 Revelation 6:13 Revelation 6:14 Revelation 6:14 Revelation 7:2 Revelation 7:4 Revelation 7:4 Revelation 7:5 Revelation 7:8 Revelation 7:9 Revelation 7:13 Revelation 8:2 Revelation 8:3 Revelation 8:7 Revelation 8:7 Revelation 8:8 Revelation 8:9 Revelation 8:12 Revelation 9:1 Revelation 9:2 Revelation 9:3 Revelation 9:4 Revelation 9:5 Revelation 9:7 Revelation 9:14 Revelation 9:15 Revelation 9:18 Revelation 9:20 Revelation 10:1 Revelation 10:2 Revelation 10:7 Revelation 10:8 Revelation 10:10 Revelation 11:1 Revelation 11:2 Revelation 11:3 Revelation 11:5 Revelation 11:8 Revelation 11:8 Revelation 11:9 Revelation 11:13 Revelation 11:18 Revelation 11:18 Revelation 11:19 Revelation 12:1 Revelation 12:1 Revelation 12:2 Revelation 12:3 Revelation 12:5 Revelation 12:6 Revelation 12:8 Revelation 12:9 Revelation 12:9 Revelation 12:9 Revelation 12:10 Revelation 12:13 Revelation 12:14 Revelation 12:17 Revelation 13:3 Revelation 13:3 Revelation 13:3 Revelation 13:5 Revelation 13:5 Revelation 13:7 Revelation 13:7 Revelation 13:8 Revelation 13:8 Revelation 13:10 Revelation 13:12 Revelation 13:14 Revelation 13:15 Revelation 13:15 Revelation 14:1 Revelation 14:3 Revelation 14:4 Revelation 14:4 Revelation 14:10 Revelation 14:10 Revelation 14:15 Revelation 14:16 Revelation 14:20 Revelation 15:1 Revelation 15:4 Revelation 15:5 Revelation 15:6 Revelation 15:8 Revelation 15:8 Revelation 16:8 Revelation 16:9 Revelation 16:10 Revelation 16:12 Revelation 16:16 Revelation 16:19 Revelation 17:2 Revelation 17:4 Revelation 17:5 Revelation 17:8 Revelation 17:14 Revelation 17:16 Revelation 17:17 Revelation 18:1 Revelation 18:2 Revelation 18:5 Revelation 18:8 Revelation 18:14 Revelation 18:16 Revelation 18:17 Revelation 18:19 Revelation 18:21 Revelation 18:21 Revelation 18:22 Revelation 18:22 Revelation 18:22 Revelation 18:23 Revelation 18:23 Revelation 18:24 Revelation 19:8 Revelation 19:9 Revelation 19:11 Revelation 19:11 Revelation 19:12 Revelation 19:13 Revelation 19:13 Revelation 19:14

Revelation 19:16 Revelation 19:17 Revelation 19:19 Revelation 19:20 Revelation 19:20 Revelation 19:21 Revelation 19:21 Revelation 20:3 Revelation 20:3 Revelation 20:4 Revelation 20:4 Revelation 20:5 Revelation 20:7 Revelation 20:7 Revelation 20:9 Revelation 20:10 Revelation 20:10 Revelation 20:11 Revelation 20:12 Revelation 20:12 Revelation 20:13 Revelation 20:14 Revelation 20:15 Revelation 21:2 Revelation 21:8 Revelation 21:12 Revelation 21:19 Revelation 21:25 Revelation 21:27 Revelation 22:18 Revelation 22:19

Apostrophe

Description

An apostrophe is a figure of speech in which a speaker turns his attention away from his listeners and speaks to someone or something that he knows cannot hear him. He does this to tell his listeners his message or feelings about that person or thing in a very strong way.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Many languages do not use apostrophe, and readers could be confused by it. They may wonder who the speaker is talking to, or think that the speaker is crazy to talk to things or people who cannot hear.

Examples from the Bible

> Mountains of Gilboa, let there not be dew or rain on you. (2 Samuel 1:21a ULT)

King Saul was killed on Mount Gilboa, and David sang a sad song about it. By telling these mountains that he wanted them to have no dew or rain, he showed how sad he was.

> Jerusalem, Jerusalem, who kills the prophets and stones those sent to you. (Luke 13:34a ULT)

Jesus was expressing his feelings for the people of Jerusalem in front of his disciples and a group of Pharisees. By speaking directly to Jerusalem as though its people could hear him, Jesus showed how deeply he cared about them.

> He cried against the altar by the word of Yahweh: “**Altar**, **altar**! This is what Yahweh says, ‘See, … on you they will burn human bones.’” (1 Kings 13:2 ULT)

The man of God spoke as if the altar could hear him, but he really wanted the king, who was standing there, to hear him.

Translation Strategies

If apostrophe would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. But if this way of speaking would be confusing to your people, let the speaker continue speaking to the people that are listening to him as he tells **them** his message or feelings about the people or thing that cannot hear him. See the example below.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

> He cried against the altar by the word of Yahweh: "**Altar**, **altar**! This is what Yahweh says, 'See, … on you they will burn human bones.'" (1 Kings 13:2 ULT)
>
> > He said this about the altar: "This is what Yahweh says **about this altar.** 'See, … they will burn people's bones on **it**.'"
>
> **Mountains of Gilboa**, let there not be dew or rain on **you.** (2 Samuel 1:21a ULT)
>
> > **As for these mountains of Gilboa**, let there not be dew or rain on **them**.

Revelation References:

Revelation 6:16 Revelation 18:10 Revelation 18:14 Revelation 18:22 Revelation 18:23

Double Negatives

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that each express the meaning of "not." Double negatives mean very different things in different languages. To translate sentences that have double negatives accurately and clearly, you need to know what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express this idea in your language.

Description

Negative words are words that have in them the meaning "not." Examples in English are "no," "not," "none," "no one," "nothing," "nowhere," "never," "nor," "neither," and "without." Also, some words have prefixes or suffixes that mean "not," such as the bolded parts of these words: "**un**happy," "**im**possible," and "use**less**." Some other kinds of words also have a negative meaning, such as "lack" or "reject," or even "fight" or "evil."

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that each have a negative meaning.

> We did this **not** because we have **no** authority … (2 Thessalonians 3:9a ULT)
>
> And this was **not** done **without** an oath! (Hebrews 7:20a ULT)
>
> Be sure of this—the wicked person will **not** go **un**punished. (Proverbs 11:21a ULT)

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Double negatives mean very different things in different languages.

- In some languages, such as English, a second negative in a clause cancels the first one, creating a positive sentence. So, "He is not unintelligent" means "He is intelligent."

- In some languages, such as French and Spanish, two negative words in a clause do not cancel each other to become a positive. The Spanish sentence, “No vi a nadie,” literally says “I did not see no one.” It has both the word ‘no’ next to the verb and ‘nadie,’ which means “no one.” The two negatives are seen as in agreement with each other, and the sentence means, “I did not see anyone.”
- In some languages, a double negative creates a stronger negative statement.
- In some languages, a double negative creates a positive sentence, but it is a weak statement. So, “He is not unintelligent” means, “He is somewhat intelligent.”
- In some languages, including the languages of the Bible, a double negative can produce a stronger positive meaning than a simple positive statement. So, “He is not unintelligent” can mean “He is very intelligent.” In this case, the double negative is actually the figure of speech called litotes.

Biblical Greek can do all of the above. So to translate sentences with double negatives accurately and clearly in your language, you need to know what each double negative means in the Bible and how to express the same idea in your language.

Examples From the Bible

The Greek of John 15:5 says:

> χωρὶς ἐμοῦ **οὐ** δύνασθε ποιεῖν **οὐδέν**
>
> Without me **not** you can do **nothing**

We cannot reproduce this double negative in the English ULT because in English, a second negative in a clause cancels the first one. In English, and perhaps in your language, we need to choose only one of the negatives and say either:

Without me, you can do **nothing**.
or:
Without me, you **cannot** do anything.

> … in order **not** to be **unfruitful**. (Titus 3:14b ULT)

This means “in order to be fruitful.”

> A prophet is **not without** honor (Mark 6:4 ULT)

This means “a prophet is honored.”

> I do **not** want you to be **ignorant**. (1 Corinthians 12:1)

This means “I want you to be knowledgeable.”

Translation Strategies

If the way that the double negative is used in the Bible is natural and has the same meaning as in your language, consider using it in the same way. Otherwise, you could consider these strategies:

(1) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.
(2) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a negative statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove one of the two negatives.
(3) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a stronger negative statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove one of the two negatives and add a strengthening word.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.

> For we do **not** have a high priest who **cannot** feel sympathy for our weaknesses. (Hebrews 4:15a ULT)
>
> > “For we have a high priest who can feel sympathy for our weaknesses.”

> … in order **not** to be **unfruitful**. (Titus 3:14b ULT)
>
> > “… so that they may be fruitful.”

(2) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a negative statement, and if

it would not do that in your language, remove one of the two negatives.

> χωρὶς ἐμοῦ **οὐ** δύνασθε ποιεῖν **οὐδέν**
>
> Without me **not** you can do **nothing** (John 15:5)

> > Without me, you can do **nothing**.
>
> or:
> Without me, you **cannot** do anything.

(3) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a stronger negative statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove one of the two negatives and add a strengthening word.

> ...ἰῶτα ἓν ἢ μία κεραία **οὐ μὴ** παρέλθῃ ἀπὸ τοῦ νόμου (Matthew 5:18)
>
> ...iota one or one serif **not not** may pass away from the law

> > ...**not even** one iota or one serif may pass away from the law
>
> or:
> ...**certainly no** iota or serif may pass away from the law

Revelation References:

Revelation Introduction Revelation 1:17 Revelation 2:3 Revelation 2:11 Revelation 2:13 Revelation 2:24 Revelation 3:4 Revelation 3:5 Revelation 3:8 Revelation 3:11 Revelation 4:8 Revelation 6:6 Revelation 7:3 Revelation 7:16 Revelation 14:5 Revelation 18:14 Revelation 21:25 Revelation 22:10

Doublet

Description

We are using the word "doublet" to refer to two words or phrases that are used together and either mean the same thing or mean very close to the same thing. Often they are joined with the word "and." Unlike Hendiadys, in which one of the words modifies the other, in a doublet the two words or phrases are equal and are used to emphasize or intensify the one idea that is expressed by the two words or phrases.

A very similar issue is the repetition of the same word or phrase for emphasis, usually with no other words between them. Because these figures of speech are so similar and have the same effect, we will treat them here together.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

In some languages people do not use doublets. Or they may use doublets, but only in certain situations, so a doublet might not make sense in their language in some verses. People might think that the verse is describing two ideas or actions, when it is only describing one. In this case, translators may need to find some other way to express the meaning expressed by the doublet.

Examples From the Bible

> He has one people **scattered** and **dispersed** among the peoples (Esther 3:8 ULT)

The bolded words mean the same thing. Together they mean the people were spread out.

> He attacked two men **more righteous** and **better** than himself. (1 Kings 2:32b ULT)

This means that they were "much more righteous" than he was.

> You have decided to prepare **false** and **deceptive** words. (Daniel 2:9b ULT)

This means that they had decided to lie, which is another way of saying that they intended to deceive people.

> … like of a lamb **without blemish** and **without spot**. (1 Peter 1:19b ULT)

This means that he was like a lamb that did not have any defect—not even one.

> Then they approached {and} woke him up, saying, **"Master! Master!** We are perishing!" (Luke 8:24 ULT)

The repetition of "Master" means that the disciples called to Jesus urgently and continually.

Translation Strategies

If a doublet would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, consider these strategies.

(1) Translate only one of the words or phrases.
(2) If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words or phrases and add a word that intensifies it such as "very" or "great" or "many."
(3) If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language's ways of doing that.

Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate only one of the words.

> You have decided to prepare **false** and **deceptive** words. (Daniel 2:9b ULT)
>
> > "You have decided to prepare **false** things to say."

(2) If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as "very" or "great" or "many."

> He has one people **scattered** and **dispersed** among the peoples (Esther 3:8 ULT)
>
> > "He has one people **very spread out**."

(3) If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language's ways of doing that.

> … like a lamb **without blemish** and **without spot**. (1 Peter 1:19b ULT)
>
> - English can emphasize this with "any" and "at all."
>
> > "… like a lamb **without any blemish at all**."

> Then they approached {and} woke him up, saying, **"Master! Master!** We are perishing!" (Luke 8:24 ULT)
>
> > Then they approached {and} woke him up, **urgently shouting, "Master!** We are perishing!"

Revelation References:

Revelation 1:2 Revelation 1:7 Revelation 1:14 Revelation 1:18 Revelation 3:14 Revelation 3:17 Revelation 3:19 Revelation 4:11 Revelation 5:9 Revelation 6:11 Revelation 7:9 Revelation 9:15 Revelation 9:20 Revelation 10:11 Revelation 11:9 Revelation 12:2 Revelation 12:5 Revelation 13:7 Revelation 14:6 Revelation 15:1 Revelation 15:3 Revelation 15:3 Revelation 16:2 Revelation 16:7 Revelation 17:13 Revelation 17:15 Revelation 17:16 Revelation 18:2 Revelation 18:9 Revelation 18:11 Revelation 18:13 Revelation 18:14 Revelation 18:15 Revelation 18:19 Revelation 19:2 Revelation 19:7 Revelation 19:11 Revelation 19:15 Revelation 20:2 Revelation 20:13 Revelation 20:14 Revelation 21:5 Revelation 21:10 Revelation 21:12 Revelation 21:26 Revelation 22:6

Ellipsis

Description

An ellipsis[^1] occurs when a speaker or writer leaves out one or more words that normally should be in the sentence. The speaker or writer does this because he knows that the hearer or reader will understand the meaning of the sentence and supply the words in his mind when he hears or reads the words that are there. For example:

> So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, **nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous**. (Psalm 1:5 ULT)

There is ellipsis in the second part because "nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous" is not a complete sentence. The speaker assumes that the hearer will understand what it is that sinners will not do in the assembly of the righteous by filling in the action from the previous clause. With the action filled in, the complete sentence would read:

> > So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor **will** sinners **stand** in the assembly of the righteous.

[^1]: English has a punctuation symbol which is also called an ellipsis. It is a series of three dots (…) used to indicate an intentional omission of a word, phrase, sentence or more from text without altering its original meaning. This translationAcademy article is not about the punctuation mark, but about the concept of omission of words that normally should be in the sentence.

Two Types of Ellipsis

1. A Relative Ellipsis happens when the reader has to supply the omitted word or words from the context. Usually the word is in the previous sentence, as in the example above.
2. An Absolute Ellipsis happens when the omitted word or words are not in the context, but the phrases are common enough in the language that the reader is expected to supply what is missing from this common usage or from the nature of the situation.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Readers who see incomplete sentences or phrases may not know that there is information missing that the writer expects them to fill in. Or readers may understand that there is information missing, but they may not know what information is missing because they do not know the original biblical language, culture, or situation as the original readers did. In this case, they may fill in the wrong information. Or readers may misunderstand the ellipsis if they do not use ellipsis in the same way in their language.

Examples From the Bible

Relative Ellipsis

> He makes Lebanon skip like a calf **and Sirion like a young ox**. (Psalm 29:6 ULT)

The writer wants his words to be few and to make good poetry. The full sentence with the information filled in would be:

> > He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and **he makes** Sirion **skip** like a young ox.
>
> Watch carefully, therefore, how you walk —**not as unwise but as wise**. (Ephesians 5:15b ULT)

The information that the reader must understand in the second parts of these sentences can be filled in from the first parts:

> > Watch carefully, therefore, how you walk—**walk** not as unwise but **walk** as wise,

Absolute Ellipsis

> Then when he had come near, he asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” And so he said, “Lord, **that I might recover my sight**.” (Luke 18:40b-41 ULT)

It seems that the man answered in an incomplete sentence because he wanted to be polite and not directly ask Jesus for healing. He knew that Jesus would understand that the only way he could receive his sight would be for Jesus to heal him. The complete sentence would be:

> > “Lord, **I want you to heal me so** that I might receive my sight.”

> To Titus, a true son in our common faith. Grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Savior. (Titus 1:4 ULT)

The writer assumes that the reader will recognize this common form of a blessing or wish, so he does not need to include the full sentence, which would be:

> > To Titus, a true son in our common faith. **May you receive** grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Savior.

Translation Strategies

If ellipsis would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

> So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor **sinners in the assembly** of the righteous. (Psalm 1:5 ULT)

> > So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, and **sinners will not stand in the assembly** of the righteous.

> Then when he had come near, he asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” And so he said, “Lord, **that I might recover my sight**.” (Luke 18:40b-41 ULT)

> > Then when the man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” He said, “Lord, **I want you to heal me** that I might receive my sight.”

> He makes Lebanon skip like a calf **and Sirion like a young ox**. (Psalm 29:6 ULT)

> > He makes Lebanon skip like a calf, and **he makes** Sirion **skip** like a young ox.

Revelation References:

Revelation 1:16 Revelation 1:20 Revelation 2:16 Revelation 2:19 Revelation 2:22 Revelation 2:28 Revelation 3:20 Revelation 4:1 Revelation 4:2 Revelation 8:12 Revelation 8:12 Revelation 9:8 Revelation 11:3 Revelation 11:18 Revelation 13:3 Revelation 16:21 Revelation 19:10 Revelation 21:4 Revelation 21:12 Revelation 21:17 Revelation 21:19 Revelation 21:20 Revelation 21:23 Revelation 22:1 Revelation 22:3 Revelation 22:9

Order of Events

Description

In the Bible, events are not always told in the order in which they occurred. Sometimes the author wanted to discuss something that happened at an earlier time than the event that he just talked about. This can be confusing to the reader.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Readers might think that the events happened in the order that they are told. It is important to help them understand the correct order of events.

Examples From the Bible

> He even added this to them all: he locked John up in prison. Now it came about, when all the people were baptized, Jesus also was baptized. (Luke 3:20-21 ULT)

This could sound like John baptized Jesus after John was locked up in prison, but John baptized Jesus before John was locked up in prison.

> Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carrying seven trumpets of rams' horns before Yahweh went forward and blew the trumpets, and the ark of the covenant of Yahweh followed after them. But Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout nor let your voice be heard, nor let any word leave your mouth until the day I tell you to shout. Then you must shout." (Joshua 6:8,10 ULT)

This could sound like Joshua gave the order not to shout after the army had already started their march, but he had given that order before they started marching.

> Who is worthy to open the scroll and break its seals? (Revelation 5:2b ULT)

This sounds like a person must first open the scroll and then break its seals, but the seals that lock the scroll must be broken before the scroll can be unrolled.

Translation Strategies

(1) If your language uses phrases or time words to show that an event happened before one that was already mentioned, consider using one of them.
(2) If your language uses verb tense or aspect to show that an event happened before one that was already mentioned, consider using that. (See the section on "Aspect" of Verbs.)
(3) If your language prefers to tell events in the order that they occurred, consider reordering the events so they they are in that order. This may require putting two or more verses together (like 5-6). (See Verse Bridges.)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If your language uses phrases, time words or tenses to show that an event happened before the one just mentioned, consider using one of them.

> 20 he even added this to them all: he locked John up in prison. Now it came about, when all the people were baptized, Jesus also was baptized. (Luke 3:20-21 ULT)
>
> > 20 But then Herod … had John locked up in prison. 21 **Before John was put in prison,** while all the people were being baptized by John, Jesus also was baptized.
>
> Who is worthy to open the scroll and break its seals? (Revelation 5:2b ULT)
>
> > Who is worthy to open the scroll **after** breaking its seals?

(2) If your language uses verb tense or aspect to show that an event happened before one that was already mentioned, consider using that.

> Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carrying seven trumpets of rams' horns before Yahweh went forward and blew the trumpets, But Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout nor let your voice be heard, nor let any word leave your mouth until the day I tell you to shout. Then you must shout." (Joshua 6:8,10 ULT)
>
> > 8 Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams' horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets 10 But Joshua **had commanded** the people, saying, "Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout."

(3) If your language prefers to tell events in the order that they occur, consider reordering the events. This may require putting two or more verses together (like 5-6).

> 8 Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carrying seven trumpets of rams' horns before Yahweh went forward and blew the trumpets, But Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout nor let your voice be heard, nor let any word leave your mouth until the day I tell you to shout. Then you must shout." (Joshua 6:8,10 ULT)
>
> > 8,10 Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout." Then just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets…
>
> Who is worthy to open the scroll and break its seals? (Revelation 5:2b ULT)
>
> > Who is worthy to break the seals and open the scroll?

You may also want to watch the video at https://ufw.io/figs_events.

Revelation References:

Revelation 5:2

Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

Description

Some languages have more than one form of "we": an inclusive form that means "I and you" and an exclusive form that means "I and someone else but not you." The exclusive form excludes the person being spoken to. The inclusive form includes the person being spoken to and possibly others. This is also true for "us," "our," "ours," and "ourselves." Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these. Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms for these words will need to understand what the speaker meant so that they can decide which form to use.

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive "we" and the exclusive "we" refer to.





Reason This Is a Translation Issue

The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for "we." If your language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of "we," then you will need to understand what the speaker meant so that you can decide which form of "we" to use.

Examples From the Bible

Exclusive

> They said, "There are not more than five loaves of bread and two fish with us—unless **we** go and buy food for all these people." (Luke 9:13 ULT)

In the second clause, the disciples are talking about some of them going to buy food. They were speaking to Jesus, but Jesus was not going to buy food. So languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" would use the **exclusive** form there.

> **We** have seen it, and **we** bear witness to it. **We** are announcing to you the eternal life, which was with the Father, and which has been made known to **us**. (1 John 1:2 ULT)

John is telling people who have not seen Jesus what he and the other apostles have seen. So languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" and "us" would use the **exclusive** forms in this verse.

Inclusive

> The shepherds said one to each other, "Let **us** now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to **us**." (Luke 2:15b ULT)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said "us," they were including the people they were speaking to, so languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" and "us" would use the **inclusive** form in this verse.

> Now it happened that on one of those days, he indeed got into a boat with his disciples, and he said to them, "Let **us** go over to the other side of the lake." So they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULT)

When Jesus said "us," he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to, so languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" and "us" would use the **inclusive** form in this verse.

Revelation References:

Revelation 1:5 Revelation 12:10 Revelation 19 Introduction Revelation 19:1 Revelation 19:6

Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

Assumed knowledge is whatever a speaker assumes his audience knows before he speaks and gives them some kind of information. The speaker does not give the audience this information because he believes that they already know it.

When the speaker does give the audience information, he can do so in two ways. The speaker gives explicit information in what he states directly. Implicit Information is what the speaker does not state directly because he expects his audience to be able to learn it from other things he says.

Description

When someone speaks or writes, he has something specific that he wants people to know or do or think about. He normally states this directly. This is explicit information.

The speaker assumes that his audience already knows certain things that they will need to think about in order to understand this information. Normally he does not tell people these things, because they already know them. This is called assumed knowledge.

The speaker does not always directly state everything that he expects his audience to learn from what he says. Implicit information is information that he expects people to learn from what he says even though he does not state it directly.

Often, the audience understands this implicit information by combining what they already know (assumed knowledge) with the explicit information that the speaker tells them directly.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

All three kinds of information are part of the speaker's message. If one of these kinds of information is missing, then the audience will not understand the message. Because the target translation is in a language that is very different from the biblical languages and is made for an audience that lives in a very different time and place than the people in the Bible, many times the assumed knowledge or the implicit information is missing from the message. In other words, modern readers do not know everything that the original speakers and hearers in the Bible knew. When these things are important for understanding the message, it is helpful if you include this information in the text or in a footnote.

Examples From the Bible

> Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes**, and the birds of the sky **have nests**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:19-20 ULT)

Jesus did not say what foxes and birds use holes and nests for, because he assumed that the scribe would have known that foxes sleep in holes in the ground and birds sleep in their nests. This is **assumed knowledge**.

Jesus did not directly say here "I am the Son of Man" but, if the scribe did not already know it, then that fact would be **implicit information** that he could learn because Jesus referred to himself that way. Also, Jesus did not state explicitly that he travelled a lot and did not have a house that he slept in every night. That is **implicit information** that the scribe could learn when Jesus said that he had nowhere to lay his head.

> Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in **Tyre and Sidon** which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. But I say to you, it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the **day of judgment** than for you. (Matthew 11:21-22 ULT)

Jesus assumed that the people he was speaking to knew that Tyre and Sidon were very wicked, and that the day of judgment is a time when God will judge every person. Jesus also knew that the people he was talking to believed that they were good and

did not need to repent. Jesus did not need to tell them these things. This is all **assumed knowledge**.

An important piece of **implicit information** here is that the people he was speaking to would be judged more severely than the people of Tyre and Sidon would be judged **because** they did not repent.

> Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not wash their hands when they eat bread**. (Matthew 15:2 ULT)

One of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating. People thought that in order to be righteous, they had to follow all the traditions of the elders. This was **assumed knowledge** that the Pharisees who were speaking to Jesus expected him to know. By saying this, they were accusing his disciples of not following the traditions, and thus not being righteous. This is **implicit information** that they wanted him to understand from what they said.

Translation Strategies

If readers have enough assumed knowledge to be able to understand the message, along with any important implicit information that goes with the explicit information, then it is good to leave that knowledge unstated and leave the implicit information implicit. If the readers do not understand the message because one of these is missing for them, then follow these strategies:

(1) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.
(2) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.

> Jesus said to him, “Foxes **have holes**, and the birds of the sky **have nests**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head.” (Matthew 8:20 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that the foxes slept in their holes and birds slept in their nests.

> Jesus said to him, “Foxes **have holes to live in**, and the birds of the sky **have nests to live in**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head and sleep.”

> It will be more tolerable for **Tyre and Sidon** at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that the people of Tyre and Sidon were very, very wicked. This can be stated explicitly.

> At the day of judgment, it will be more tolerable for **those cities of Tyre and Sidon, whose people were very wicked**, than it will be for you. or At the day of judgment, It will be more tolerable for those **wicked cities, Tyre and Sidon,** than for you.

> Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not wash their hands** when they eat bread. (Matthew 15:2 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that one of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating, which they must do to be righteous. It was not to remove germs from their hands to avoid sickness, as a modern reader might think.

> Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not go through the ceremonial handwashing ritual of righteousness** when they eat bread.

(2) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

> Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:19-20 ULT)

The implicit information is that Jesus himself is the Son of Man. Other implicit information is that if the scribe wanted to follow Jesus, then, like Jesus, he would have to live without a house.

> Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but **I, the Son of Man**, have **no home to rest in. If you want to follow me, you will live as I live**."
>
> It will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT)

The implicit information is that God would not only judge the people; he would punish them. This can be made explicit.

> At the day of judgment, God will **punish Tyre and Sidon**, cities whose people were very wicked, **less severely than he will punish you**.
> or:
> At the day of judgment, God will **punish you more severely** than Tyre and Sidon, cities whose people were very wicked.

Modern readers may not know some of the things that the people in the Bible and the people who first read it knew. This can make it hard for them to understand what a speaker or writer says, and to learn things that the speaker left implicit. Translators may need to state some things explicitly in the translation that the original speaker or writer left unstated or implicit.

Revelation References:

Revelation 1:1 Revelation 1:1 Revelation 1:3 Revelation 1:3 Revelation 1:4 Revelation 1:5 Revelation 1:5 Revelation 1:8 Revelation 1:8 Revelation 1:16 Revelation 1:18 Revelation 1:20 Revelation 2 Introduction Revelation 2:1 Revelation 2:1 Revelation 2:2 Revelation 2:7 Revelation 2:24 Revelation 2:25 Revelation 3:3 Revelation 3:5 Revelation 3:8 Revelation 3:11 Revelation 3:20 Revelation 5:8 Revelation 5:11 Revelation 6:6 Revelation 6:6 Revelation 6:9 Revelation 6:10 Revelation 6:14 Revelation 7:2 Revelation 7:2 Revelation 8:1 Revelation 8:7 Revelation 8:13 Revelation 8:13 Revelation 9:10 Revelation 9:12 Revelation 10:3 Revelation 10:4 Revelation 10:6 Revelation 11:2 Revelation 11:4 Revelation 11:8 Revelation 11:10 Revelation 11:14 Revelation 12 Introduction Revelation 12:9 Revelation 12:12 Revelation 12:14 Revelation 13 Introduction Revelation 13:5 Revelation 13:8 Revelation 13:14 Revelation 13:17 Revelation 13:18 Revelation 14:5 Revelation 14:18 Revelation 15:2 Revelation 16:6 Revelation 16:10 Revelation 16:15 Revelation 16:19 Revelation 16:20 Revelation 17 Introduction Revelation 18:2 Revelation 18:13 Revelation 18:13 Revelation 18:18 Revelation 18:20 Revelation 18:24 Revelation 19:21 Revelation 20:2 Revelation 20:9 Revelation 21:17 Revelation 21:17 Revelation 22:2 Revelation 22:7 Revelation 22:12 Revelation 22:15 Revelation 22:20

Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

Description

Some languages have ways of saying things that are natural for them but sound strange when translated into Other Languages. One of the reasons for this is that some languages say things explicitly that some Other Languages would leave as implicit information.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

If you translate all of the explicit information from the source language into the explicit information in the target language, it could sound foreign, unnatural, or perhaps even unintelligent if the target language would not make that information explicit. Instead, it is best to leave that kind of information implicit in the target language.

Examples from the Bible

> **And** Abimelech came to the tower and fought against it and drew near to the door of the tower **to burn it with fire**. (Judges 9:52 ESV)

In Biblical Hebrew, it is normal to start most sentences with a conjunction such as "and" to show the connection between sentences. In English, it is not natural to do so, it is quite tiresome for the English reader, and it gives the impression that the author is uneducated. In English, it is best to leave the idea of connection between sentences implicit in most cases and not translate the conjunction explicitly.

In Biblical Hebrew, it is normal to say that something was burned with fire. In English, the idea of fire is included in the action of burning, and so it is unnatural to state both ideas explicitly. It is enough to say that something was burned and leave the idea of fire implicit.

> But the centurion **answered and said**, "Lord, I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof" (Matthew 8:8a ULT)

In the biblical languages, it was normal to introduce direct speech with two verbs of speaking. One verb indicated the action, and the other introduced the words of the speaker. English speakers do not do this, so it is very unnatural and confusing to use two verbs. For the English speaker, the idea of speaking is included in the idea of answering. Using two verbs in English implies two separate speeches, rather than just one. So in English, it is better to use only one verb of speaking.

Translation Strategies

(1) If the explicit information of the source language sounds natural in the target language, then translate it as explicit information.
(2) If the explicit information does not sound natural in the target language or seems unnecessary or confusing, leave the explicit information implicit. Only do this if the reader can understand this information from the context. You can test this by asking the reader a question about the passage.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the explicit information of the source language sounds natural in the target language, then translate it as explicit information.

- There would be no change to the text using this strategy, so no examples are given here.

(2) If the explicit information does not sound natural in the target language or seems unnecessary or confusing, make the explicit information implicit. Only do this if the reader can understand this information from the context. You can test this by asking the reader a question about the passage.

> **And** Abimelech came to the tower and fought against it and drew near to the door of the tower **to burn it with fire**. (Judges 9:52 ESV)
>
> > Abimelech came to the tower and fought against it, and he approached the door of the tower **to burn it**. (Or) … **to set it on fire**.

In English, it is clear that the action of this verse follows the action of the previous verse without the use of the connector "and" at the beginning, so it was omitted. Also, the words "with fire" were left out, because this information is communicated implicitly by the word "burn." An alternative translation for "to burn it" is "to set it on fire." It is not natural in English to use both "burn" and "fire," so the English translator should choose only one of them. You can test if the readers understood the implicit information by asking, "How would the door burn?" If they knew it was by fire, then they have understood the implicit information. Or, if you chose the second option, you could ask, "What happens to a door that is set on fire?" If the readers answer, "It burns," then they have understood the implicit information.

> But the centurion **answered and said**, "Lord, I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof" (Matthew 8:8a ULT)
>
> > The centurion **answered**, "Lord, I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof"

In English, the information that the centurion responded by speaking is included in the verb "answered," so the verb "said" can be left implicit. You can test if the readers understood the implicit information by asking, "How did the centurion answer?" If they knew it was by speaking, then they have understood the implicit information.

> **He opened his mouth** and taught them, saying, (Matthew 5:2 ULT)
>
> > **He began to** teach them, saying, (Or) He taught them, saying,

In English, it would be very strange to include the information that Jesus opened his mouth when he spoke. That information is included in the verbs "taught" and "saying," so that phrase can be omitted and that information left implicit. However, "he opened his mouth" is an idiom that indicates the beginning of a speech, so that information may be included, or it may also be left implicit.

Revelation References:

Revelation 1:14 Revelation 3:8 Revelation 3:9 Revelation 6:13 Revelation 8:11 Revelation 10:3 Revelation 11:11 Revelation 12:6 Revelation 12:14 Revelation 13:3 Revelation 17:9 Revelation 17:16 Revelation 18:19 Revelation 19:12 Revelation 19:13 Revelation 20:8 Revelation 21:21

When to Keep Information Implicit

Description

Sometimes it is better not to state assumed knowledge or implicit information explicitly. This page gives some direction about when not to do this.

Translation Principles

- If a speaker or author intentionally left something unclear, do not try to make it more clear.
- If the original audience did not understand what the speaker meant, do not make it so clear that your readers would find it strange that the original audience did not understand.
- If you need to explicitly state some assumed knowledge or implicit information, try to do it in a way that does not make your readers think that the original audience needed to be told those things.
- Do not make implicit information explicit if it confuses the message or leads the reader to forget what the main point is.
- Do not make assumed knowledge or implicit information explicit if your readers already understand it.

Examples From the Bible

> From the eater came forth food;
> and from the strong one came forth sweetness. (Judges 14:14 ULT)

This was a riddle. Samson purposely said this in a way that it would be hard for his enemies to know what it meant. Do not make it clear that the eater and the strong thing was a lion and that the sweet thing to eat was honey.

> Jesus said to them, “Take heed and beware of the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees.” They reasoned among themselves saying, “It is because we did not take bread.” (Matthew 16:6-7 ULT)

Some possible implicit information here is that the disciples should beware of the false teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. But Jesus’ disciples did not understand this. They thought that Jesus was talking about real yeast and bread. So it would not be appropriate to state explicitly that the word “yeast” here refers to false teaching. The disciples did not understand what Jesus meant until they heard what Jesus said in Matthew 16:11.

> “How is it that you do not understand that I was not speaking to you about bread? Beware of the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees.” Then they understood that he was not telling them to beware of yeast in bread, but to beware of the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. (Matthew 16:11-12 ULT)

Only after Jesus explained that he was not talking about bread did they realize that he was talking about the false teaching of the Pharisees. Therefore, it would be wrong to explicitly state the implicit information in Matthew 16:6.

Translation Strategies

Because we recommend that translators not change this kind of passage to make it more clear, this page does not have any translation strategies.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

Because we recommend that translators not change this kind of passage to make it more clear, this page does not have any translation strategies applied.

Revelation References:

Revelation 7:9 Revelation 11:7 Revelation 17:1

When Masculine Words Include Women

In the Bible, sometimes the words “men,” “brothers,” and “sons” refer only to men. At other times, those words include both men and women. In those places where the writer meant both men and women, you (the translator) need to translate it in a way that does not limit the meaning to men.

Description

In some languages a word that normally refers to men can also be used in a more general way to refer to both men and women. For example, the Bible sometimes says “brothers” when it refers to both brothers and sisters.

Also in some languages, the masculine pronouns “he” and “him” can be used in a more general way for any person if it is not important whether the person is a man or a woman. In the example below, the pronoun is “his,” but it is not limited to males.

> A wise son makes **his** father rejoice but a foolish son brings grief to **his** mother. (Proverbs 10:1 ULT)

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- In some cultures words like “man,” “brother,” and “son” can only be used to refer to men. If those words are used in a translation in a more general way, people will think that what is being said does not apply to women.
- In some cultures, the masculine pronouns “he” and “him” can only refer to men. If a masculine pronoun is used, people will think that what is said does not apply to women.

Translation Principles

When a statement applies to both men and women, translate it in such a way that people will be able to understand that it applies to both.

Examples From the Bible

> Now we want you to know, **brothers**, the grace of God that has been given to the churches of Macedonia. (2 Corinthians 8:1 ULT)

This verse is addressing the believers in Corinth, not only men, but **men and women**.

> Then said Jesus to his disciples, “If anyone wants to follow me, **he** must deny **himself**, take up **his** cross, and follow me.” (Matthew 16:24 ULT)

Jesus was not speaking only of men, but of **men and women**.

Caution: Sometimes masculine words are used specifically to refer to men. Do not use words that would lead people to think that they include women. The words below are specifically about men.

> Moses said, ‘If **someone** dies, not having children, **his brother** must marry **his** wife and have children for **his brother**.’ (Matthew 22:24 ULT)

Translation Strategies

If people would understand that that masculine words like “man,” “brother,” and “he” can include women, then consider using them. Otherwise, here are some ways for translating those words when they include women.

(1) Use a noun that can be used for both men and women.
(2) Use a word that refers to men and a word that refers to women.
(3) Use pronouns that can be used for both men and women.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use nouns that can be used for both men and women.

> The wise **man** dies just like the fool dies. (Ecclesiastes 2:16b ULT)
>
> > "The wise **person** dies just like the fool dies."
> > "Wise **people** die just like fools die."

(2) Use a word that refers to men and a word that refers to women.

> For we do not want you to be uninformed, **brothers**, about the troubles that happened to us in Asia. (2 Corinthians 1:8) — Paul was writing this letter to both men and women.
>
> > "For we do not want you to be uninformed, **brothers and sisters**, about the troubles that happened to us in Asia."

(3) Use pronouns that can be used for both men and women.

> "If anyone wants to follow me, he must deny himself, take up his cross, and follow me." (Matthew 16:24 ULT)

English speakers can change the masculine singular pronouns, "he," "himself," and "his" to plural pronouns that do not mark gender, "they," "themselves," and "their" in order to show that it applies to all people, not just men.

> > "If **people** want to follow me, **they** must deny **themselves**, take up **their** cross, and follow me."

Revelation References:

Revelation 6:11 Revelation 9 Introduction Revelation 9:4 Revelation 11:13 Revelation 12:10 Revelation 13:13 Revelation 14:4 Revelation 16:2 Revelation 16:8 Revelation 16:18 Revelation 16:21 Revelation 18:13 Revelation 19:10 Revelation 21:3 Revelation 21:7 Revelation 22:9

Generic Noun Phrases

Description

Generic noun phrases refer to people or things in general rather than to specific individuals or things. This happens frequently in proverbs, because proverbs tell about things that are true about people in general.

> Can **a man** walk on hot coals without scorching his feet?
> So is **the man who goes in to his neighbor's wife**;
> **the one who touches her** will not go unpunished. (Proverbs 6:28-29 ULT)

The phrases in bold above do not refer to a specific man. They refer to any man who does these things.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Different languages have different ways of showing that noun phrases refer to something in general. You (the translator) should refer to these general ideas in ways that are natural in your language.

Examples From the Bible

> The **righteous person** is kept away from trouble and it comes upon **the wicked** instead. (Proverbs 11:8 ULT)

The bold phrases above do not refer to a specific person but to anyone who does what is right or anyone who is wicked.

> People curse **the man who refuses to sell grain**. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)

This does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who refuses to sell grain.

> Yahweh gives favor to **a good man**, but he condemns **a man who makes evil plans**. (Proverbs 12:2 ULT)

The phrase "a good man" does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who is good. The phrase "a man who makes evil

plans" does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who makes evil plans.

Translation Strategies

If your language can use the same wording as in the ULT to refer to people or things in general rather than to specific individuals or things, consider using the same wording. If not, here are some strategies you might use.

(1) Use the word "the" in the noun phrase.
(2) Use the word "a" in the noun phrase.
(3) Use the word "any," as in "any person" or "anyone."
(4) Use the plural form, as in "people."
(5) Use any other way that is natural in your language.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the word "the" in the noun phrase.

> Yahweh gives favor to **a good man**, but he condemns **a man who makes evil plans**. (Proverbs 12:2 ULT)
>
> > "Yahweh gives favor to **the good man**, but he condemns **the man who makes evil plans**." (Proverbs 12:2)

(2) Use the word "a" in the noun phrase.

> People curse **the man** who refuses to sell grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)
>
> > "People curse **a man** who refuses to sell grain."

(3) Use the word "any," as in "any person" or "anyone."

> People curse **the man** who refuses to sell grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)
>
> > "People curse **any man** who refuses to sell grain."

(4) Use the plural form, as in "people" (or in this sentence, "men").

> People curse **the man** who refuses to sell grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)
>
> > "People curse **men** who refuse to sell grain"

(5) Use any other way that is natural in your language.

> People curse **the man** who refuses to sell grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)
>
> > "People curse **whoever** refuses to sell grain."

Revelation References:

Revelation 1:3 Revelation 2 Introduction Revelation 2:7 Revelation 2:7 Revelation 2:26 Revelation 8:11 Revelation 20:6 Revelation 21:7 Revelation 22:11 Revelation 22:17

Go and Come

Description

Different languages have different ways of determining whether to use the words “go” or “come” and whether to use the words “take” or “bring” when talking about motion. For example, when saying that they are approaching a person who has called them, English speakers say “I am coming,” while Spanish speakers say “I am going.” You will need to study the context in order to understand what is meant by the words “go” and “come” (and also “take” and “bring”), and then translate those words in a way that your readers will understand which direction people are moving in.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Different languages have different ways of talking about motion. The biblical languages or your source language may use the words “go” and “come” or “take” and “bring” differently than your language uses them. If these words are not translated in the way that is natural in your language, your readers may be confused about which direction people are moving.

Examples From the Bible

> Yahweh said to Noah, “**Come**, you and all your household, into the ark.” (Genesis 7:1 ULT)

In some languages, this would lead people to think that Yahweh was in the ark.

> But you will be free from my oath if you **come** to my relatives and they will not give her to you. Then you will be free from my oath. (Genesis 24:41 ULT)

Abraham was speaking to his servant. Abraham’s relatives lived far away from where he and his servant were standing and he wanted his servant to **go** to them, not **come** toward Abraham.

> When you have **come** to the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it … (Deuteronomy 17:14a ULT)

Moses is speaking to the people in the wilderness. They had not yet gone into the land that God was giving them. In some languages, it would make more sense to say, “When you have **gone** into the land …”

> They **brought** him up to the temple in Jerusalem to present him to the Lord. (Luke 2:22b ULT)

In some languages, it might make more sense to say that they **took** or **carried** Jesus to the temple.

> Then see, there was a man whose name was Jairus, and he was a leader of the synagogue. And falling at the feet of Jesus, he begged him to come to his house. (Luke 8:41 ULT)

The man was not at his house when he spoke to Jesus. He wanted Jesus to **go** with him to his house.

> What did you go out into the desert to see? A reed shaken by the wind? (Luke 7:24b ULT)

In some languages, it might make more sense to ask what did you come out to see.

Translation Strategies

If the word used in the ULT would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other strategies.

(1) Use the word “go,” “come,” “take,” or “bring” that would be natural in your language.
(2) Use another word that expresses the right meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the word “go,” “come,” “take,” or “bring” that would be natural in your language.

> But you will be free from my oath if you **come** to my relatives and they will not give her to you. (Genesis 24:41 ULT)
>
> > But you will be free from my oath if you **go** to my relatives and they will not give her to you.

> What did you go out into the desert to see? A reed shaken by the wind? (Luke 7:24b ULT)
>
> > What did you come out into the desert to see? A reed shaken by the wind?

(2) Use another word that expresses the right meaning.

> When you have **come** to the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it … (Deuteronomy 17:14 ULT)
>
> > "When you have **arrived** in the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it …"

> Yahweh said to Noah, "**Come**, you and all your household, into the ark …" (Genesis 7:1 ULT)
>
> > Yahweh said to Noah, "**Enter**, you and all your household, into the ark …"

> What did you go out into the desert to see? A reed shaken by the wind? (Luke 7:24b ULT)
>
> > What did you travel out into the desert to see? A reed shaken by the wind?

Revelation References:

Revelation 11:5

Hendiadys

Description

In a hendiadys, a speaker uses two words that mean different things and that are connected with "and." These two words work together to express a single idea. Usually one of the words is the primary idea and the other word further describes the primary one.

> … his own **kingdom and glory.** (1 Thessalonians 2:12b ULT)

Though "kingdom" and "glory" are both nouns, "glory" actually tells what kind of kingdom it is: it is a **kingdom of glory** or **a glorious kingdom**.

Two phrases connected by "and" can also be a hendiadys when they refer to a single person, thing, or event.

> while we look forward to receiving **the blessed hope and appearing of the glory** of **our great God and Savior Jesus Christ**. (Titus 2:13b ULT)

Titus 2:13 contains two hendiadyses. "The blessed hope" and "appearing of the glory" refer to the same thing and serve to strengthen the idea that the return of Jesus Christ is greatly anticipated and wonderful. Also, "our great God" and "Savior Jesus Christ" refer to one person, not two.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Often a hendiadys contains an abstract noun. Some languages may not have a noun with the same meaning.
- Many languages do not use the hendiadys, so people may not understand that the second word is further describing the first one.
- Many languages do not use the hendiadys, so people may not understand that only one person or thing is meant, not two.

Examples From the Bible

> For I will give you **a mouth and wisdom** … (Luke 21:15a ULT)

"A mouth" and "wisdom" are nouns, but in this figure of speech "wisdom" describes what comes from the mouth.

> If you are willing and obedient … (Isaiah 1:19a ULT)

"Willing" and "obedient" are adjectives, but "willing" describes "obedient."

Translation Strategies

If the hendiadys would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

(1) Substitute the describing noun with an adjective that means the same thing.
(2) Substitute the describing noun with a phrase that means the same thing.
(3) Substitute the describing adjective with an adverb that means the same thing.
(4) Substitute other parts of speech that mean the same thing and show that one word or phrase describes the other.
(5) If it is unclear that only one thing is meant, change the phrase so that this is clear.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Substitute the describing noun with an adjective that means the same thing.

> For I will give you **a mouth and wisdom** … (Luke 21:15a ULT)
>
> > For I will give you **wise words** …
>
> Walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you into **his own kingdom and glory**. (1 Thessalonians 2:12b ULT)
>
> > You should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to **his own glorious kingdom**.

(2) Substitute the describing noun with a phrase that means the same thing.

> For I will give you **a mouth and wisdom** … (Luke 21:15a ULT)
>
> > for I will give you **words of wisdom**.
>
> You should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you into **his own kingdom and glory**. (1 Thessalonians 2:12b ULT)
>
> > You should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to **his own kingdom of glory**.

(3) Substitute the describing adjective with an adverb that means the same thing.

> If you are willing and obedient … (Isaiah 1:19a ULT)
>
> > If you are **willingly obedient** …

(4) Substitute other parts of speech that mean the same thing and show that one word or phrase describes the other.

> If you are willing and obedient … (Isaiah 1:19a ULT)

The adjective "obedient" can be substituted with the verb "obey."

> > if you **obey willingly** …

(4) and (5) If it is unclear that only one thing is meant, change the phrase so that this is clear.

> We look forward to receiving **the blessed hope and appearing of the glory** of **our great God and Savior Jesus Christ**. (Titus 2:13b ULT)

The noun "glory" can be changed to the adjective "glorious" to make it clear that Jesus' appearing is what we hope for. Also, "Jesus Christ" can be moved to the front of the phrase and "great God and Savior" put into a relative clause that describes the one person, Jesus Christ.

> > We look forward to receiving **what we are longing for, the blessed and glorious appearing** of **Jesus Christ, who is our great God and Savior**.

Revelation References:

Revelation 1:6 Revelation 1:14 Revelation 2:20 Revelation 2:26 Revelation 3:3 Revelation 3:19 Revelation 7:13 Revelation 12:5 Revelation 13:2 Revelation 14:10 Revelation 16:11 Revelation 16:18 Revelation 17:4 Revelation 17:5 Revelation 17:17 Revelation 19:16 Revelation 20:10 Revelation 21:8 Revelation 22:15

Hyperbole

Description

A speaker or writer can use exactly the same words to say something that he means as completely true, or as generally true, or as a hyperbole. This is why it can be hard to decide how to understand a statement. For example, the sentence below could mean three different things.

It rains here every night.

1. The speaker means this as literally true if he means that it really does rain here every night.
2. The speaker means this as a **generalization** if he means that it rains here most nights.
3. The speaker means this as a **hyperbole** if he wants to say that it rains more than it actually does, usually in order to express a strong attitude toward the amount or frequency of rain, such as being annoyed or being happy about it.

Hyperbole

In hyperbole, a figure of speech that uses exaggeration, a speaker deliberately describes something with an extreme or even unreal statement, usually to show his strong feeling or opinion about it. He expects people to understand that he is exaggerating.

> They will not leave **stone upon stone in you.** (Luke 19:44b ULT)

This is an exaggeration. It means that the enemies will completely destroy Jerusalem.

> Moses was educated in **all the wisdom of the Egyptians.** (Acts 7:22a ULT)

This hyperbole means that he had learned everything an Egyptian education could offer.

Generalization

This is a statement that is true most of the time or in most situations that it could apply to.

> The one who ignores instruction **will have poverty and shame,**
> but **honor will come** to him who learns from correction. (Proverbs 13:18)

These generalizations tell about what normally happens to people who ignore instruction and what normally happens to people who learn from correction. There may be some exceptions to these statements, but they are generally true.

> And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as **the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words.** (Matthew 6:7)

This generalization tells about what Gentiles were known for doing. Many Gentiles did this. It does not matter if a few did not. The point was that the hearers should not join in this well-known practice.

Even though a hyperbole or a generalization may have a strong-sounding word like "all," "always," "none," or "never," it does not necessarily mean **exactly** "all," "always," "none," or "never." It simply means "most," "most of the time," "hardly any," or "rarely."

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

1. Readers need to be able to understand whether or not a statement is literally true.
2. If readers realize that a statement is not literally true, they need to be able to understand whether it is a hyperbole, a generalization, or a lie. (Though the Bible is completely true, it tells about people who did not always tell the truth.)

Examples From the Bible

Examples of Hyperbole

> If your hand causes you to stumble, **cut it off**. It is better for you to enter into life maimed … (Mark 9:43a ULT)

When Jesus said to cut off your hand, he meant that we should **do whatever extreme things** we need to do in order not to sin. He used this hyperbole to show how extremely important it is to try to stop sinning.

> The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel with 3,000 chariots, 6,000 men to drive the chariots, and troops **as numerous as the sand on the seashore**. (1 Samuel 13:5a ULT)

The bolded phrase is an exaggeration for the purpose of expressing the emotion that the Philistine army was overwhelming in number. It means that there were **many, many** soldiers in the Philistine army.

> But as his anointing teaches you **everything** and is true and is not a lie, and just as it has taught you, remain in him. (1 John 2:27b ULT)

This is a hyperbole. It expresses the assurance that God's Spirit teaches us about **all things that we need to know**. God's Spirit does not teach us about everything that it is possible to know.

> When they found him, they also said to him, "**Everyone** is looking for you." (Mark 1:37 ULT)

The disciples probably did not mean that everyone in the city was looking for Jesus, but that **many people** were looking for him, or that all of Jesus' closest friends there were looking for him. This is an exaggeration for the purpose of expressing the emotion that they and many others were worried about him.

Examples of Generalization

> Can **any good thing** come out of Nazareth? (John 1:46b ULT)

This rhetorical question is meant to express the generalization that there is nothing good in Nazareth. The people there had a reputation for being uneducated and not strictly religious. Of course, there were exceptions.

> One of them, of their own prophets, has said, "**Cretans are always liars, evil beasts, lazy bellies**." (Titus 1:12 ULT)

This is a generalization that means that Cretans had a reputation to be like this because, in general, this is how Cretans

behaved. It is possible that there were exceptions.

> **A lazy hand causes a person to be poor, but the hand of the diligent person gains riches.** (Proverbs 10:4 ULT)

This is generally true, and it reflects the experience of most people. It is possible that there are exceptions in some circumstances.

Caution

- Do not assume that something is an exaggeration just because it seems to be impossible. God does miraculous things.

> They saw Jesus **walking on the sea** and coming near the boat. (John 6:19b ULT)

This is not hyperbole. Jesus really walked on the water. It is a literal statement.

- Do not assume that the word "all" is always a generalization that means "most."

> Yahweh is righteous in **all** his ways and gracious in **all** he does. (Psalms 145:17 ULT)

Yahweh is always righteous. This is a completely true statement.

Translation Strategies

If the hyperbole or generalization would be natural and people would understand it and not think that it is a lie, consider using it. If not, here are other options.

(1) Express the meaning without the exaggeration.
(2) For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like "in general" or "in most cases."
(3) For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like "many" or "almost" to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.
(4) For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like "all," "always," "none," or "never," consider deleting that word.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Express the meaning without the exaggeration.

> The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: 3,000 chariots, 6,000 men to drive the chariots, and troops **as numerous as the sand on the seashore**. (1 Samuel 13:5a ULT)
>
> > The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: 3,000 chariots, 6,000 men to drive the chariots, and **a great number of troops**.

(2) For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like "in general" or "in most cases."

> **The one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame.** (Proverbs 13:18a ULT)
>
> > **In general,** the one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame
>
> When you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the **Gentiles do,** for they think that they will be heard because of their many words. (Matthew 6:7 ULT)
>
> > And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles **generally** do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words.

(3) For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like "many" or "almost" to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.

> The **whole** country of Judea and **all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5a ULT)
>
> > **Almost all** the country of Judea and **almost all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him.
> > or:
> >
> > **Many** of the country of Judea and **many** of the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

(4) For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like "all," "always," "none," or "never," consider deleting that word.

> The **whole** country of Judea and **all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5a ULT)
>
> > The country of Judea and the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

Revelation References:

Revelation 14:8 Revelation 18:2 Revelation 18:3 Revelation 18:12 Revelation 18:23 Revelation 18:24 Revelation 21:19

Idiom

An idiom is a figure of speech made up of a group of words that, as a whole, has a meaning that is different from what one would understand from the meanings of the individual words. Someone from outside of the culture usually cannot understand an idiom without someone inside the culture explaining its true meaning. Every language uses idioms. Some English examples are:

- You are pulling my leg. (This means, "You are teasing me by telling me something that is not true.")
- Do not push the envelope. (This means, "Do not take a matter to its extreme.")
- This house is under water. (This means, "The debt owed for this house is greater than its actual value.")
- We are painting the town red. (This means, "We are going around town tonight celebrating very intensely.")

Description

An idiom is a phrase that has a special meaning to the people of the language or culture who use it. Its meaning is different than what a person would understand from the meanings of the individual words that form the phrase.

> he **set his face** to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51b ULT)

The words "set his face" is an idiom that means "decided."

Sometimes people may be able to understand an idiom from another culture, but it might sound like a strange way to express the meaning.

> I am not worthy that you would **come under my roof**. (Luke 7:6b ULT)

The phrase "come under my roof" is an idiom that means "enter my house."

> Put these words **into your ears**. (Luke 9:44a ULT)

This idiom means “Listen carefully and remember what I say.”

Purpose: An idiom is probably created in a culture somewhat by accident when someone describes something in an unusual way. But, when that unusual way communicates the message powerfully and people understand it clearly, other people start to use it. After a while, it becomes a normal way of talking in that language.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People can easily misunderstand idioms in the original languages of the Bible if they do not know the cultures that produced the Bible.
- People can easily misunderstand idioms that are in the source language Bibles if they do not know the cultures that made those translations.
- It is useless to translate idioms literally (according to the meaning of each word) when the target language audience will not understand what they mean.

Examples From the Bible

> Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, “Look, we are your **flesh and bone**.” (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

This means, “We and you belong to the same race, the same family.”

> The children of Israel went out **with a high hand**. (Exodus 14:8b ASV)

This means, “The Israelites went out defiantly.”

> the one who **lifts up my head** (Psalm 3:3b ULT)

This means, “the one who helps me.”

Translation Strategies

If the idiom would be clearly understood in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

(1) Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.

(2) Use a different idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.

> Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, “Look, we are your **flesh and bone**.” (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)
>
> > Look, we all **belong to the same nation**.

> Then he **set his face** to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51b ULT)
>
> > He started to travel to Jerusalem, **determined to reach it**.

> I am not worthy that you would come **under my roof**. (Luke 7:6b ULT)
>
> > I am not worthy that you should enter **my house**.

(2) Use an idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

> Put these words **into your ears.** (Luke 9:44a ULT)
>
> > **Be all ears** when I say these words to you.

> My **eyes grow dim** from grief. (Psalm 6:7a ULT)
>
> > I am crying my **eyes out**

Revelation References:

Revelation Introduction Revelation 1:3 Revelation 1:6 Revelation 1:10 Revelation 1:10 Revelation 1:15 Revelation 1:16 Revelation 1:17 Revelation 1:18 Revelation 2:4 Revelation 2:5 Revelation 2:10 Revelation 2:13 Revelation 2:14 Revelation 2:22 Revelation 2:26 Revelation 3:4 Revelation 3:10 Revelation 3:10 Revelation 3:10 Revelation 3:10 Revelation 3:11 Revelation 3:22 Revelation 4:2 Revelation 4:9 Revelation 5:4 Revelation 5:13 Revelation 6:17 Revelation 7:2 Revelation 7:11 Revelation 7:12 Revelation 8:2 Revelation 9:6 Revelation 9:12 Revelation 10:3 Revelation 10:6 Revelation 10:6 Revelation 10:7 Revelation 11:6 Revelation 11:13 Revelation 11:13 Revelation 11:13 Revelation 11:15 Revelation 11:15 Revelation 11:16 Revelation 12:2 Revelation 12:11 Revelation 12:17 Revelation 13:3 Revelation 13:10 Revelation 13:13 Revelation 13:18 Revelation 14:2 Revelation 14:4 Revelation 14:5 Revelation 14:11 Revelation 14:11 Revelation 14:12 Revelation 14:12 Revelation 14:13 Revelation 14:14 Revelation 15:7 Revelation 16:9 Revelation 16:12 Revelation 16:14 Revelation 16:15 Revelation 16:17 Revelation 16:19 Revelation 16:19 Revelation 16:20 Revelation 17:3 Revelation 17:3 Revelation 17:9 Revelation 17:12 Revelation 17:13 Revelation 17:17 Revelation 18 Introduction Revelation 18:5 Revelation 18:7 Revelation 18:7 Revelation 18:8 Revelation 18:10 Revelation 18:14 Revelation 18:17 Revelation 18:22 Revelation 18:24 Revelation 19:3 Revelation 19:5 Revelation 19:6 Revelation 19:7 Revelation 19:7 Revelation 20:10 Revelation 20:11 Revelation 21:10 Revelation 21:27 Revelation 22:5 Revelation 22:8 Revelation 22:14

Imperatives — Other Uses

Description

Imperative sentences are mainly used to express a desire or requirement that someone do something. In the Bible, sometimes imperative sentences have other uses.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages would not use an imperative sentence for some of the functions that they are used for in the Bible.

Examples From the Bible

Speakers often use imperative sentences to tell or ask their listeners to do something. In Genesis 26, God spoke to Isaac and told him not to go to Egypt but to live where God would tell him to live.

> Now Yahweh appeared to him and said, "**Do not go down** to Egypt; **live** in the land that I tell you to live in." (Genesis 26:2 ULT)

Sometimes imperative sentences in the Bible have other uses.

Imperatives that make things happen

God can make things happen by commanding that they happen. Jesus healed a man by commanding that the man be healed. The man could not do anything to obey the command, but Jesus caused him to be healed by commanding it. (In this context, the command "Be clean" means to "be healed" so that others around would know that it was safe to touch the man again.)

> "I am willing. **Be clean**." Immediately he was cleansed of his leprosy. (Matthew 8:3b ULT)

In Genesis 1, God commanded that there should be light, and by commanding it, he caused it to exist. Some languages, such as the Hebrew of the Bible, have commands that are in the third person. English does not do that, and so it must turn the third-person

command into a general, second-person command, as in the ULT:

> God said, "**Let there be** light," and there was light. (Genesis 1:3 ULT)

Languages that have third-person commands can follow the original Hebrew, which translates into English as something like "light must be."

Imperatives that function as blessings

In the Bible, God blesses people by using imperatives. This indicates what his will is for them.

> God blessed them and said to them, "**Be fruitful**, and **multiply**. **Fill** the earth, and **subdue** it. **Have dominion** over the fish of the sea, over the birds of the sky, and over every living thing that moves upon the earth." (Genesis 1:28 ULT)

Imperatives that function as conditions

An imperative sentence can also be used to tell the **condition** under which something will happen. The proverbs mainly tell about life and things that often happen. The purpose of Proverbs 4:6 below is not primarily to give a command, but to teach what people can expect to happen **if** they love wisdom.

> **Do not abandon** wisdom and she will watch over you;
> **love** her and she will keep you safe. (Proverbs 4:6 ULT)

The purpose of Proverbs 22:6, below, is to teach what people can expect to happen if they teach their children the way they should go.

> **Teach** a child the way he should go, and when he is old he will not turn away from that instruction. (Proverbs 22:6 ULT)

Imperatives that function as good results

An imperative sentence can also describe a desirable result. In Proverbs 3:3-4, several imperatives give instructions, then the final imperative describes the good outcome of following those instructions.

> Do not let covenant faithfulness and trustworthiness leave you;
> tie them on your neck, write them on the tablet of your heart,
> and **find favor** and good insight in the eyes of God and man! (Proverbs 3:3-4 ULT)

Translation Strategies

(1) If people would not use an imperative sentence for one of the functions in the Bible, try using a statement instead.
(2) If people would not understand that a sentence is used to cause something to happen, add a connecting word like "so" to show that what happened was a result of what was said.
(3) If people would not use a command as a condition, translate it as a statement with the words "if" and "then."

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If people would not use an imperative sentence for one of the functions in the Bible, try using a statement instead.

> **Be clean**. (Matthew 8:3b ULT)
>
> > **You are now clean.**
> > **I now cleanse you.**

God said, "**Let there be** light," and there was light. (Genesis 1:3 ULT)

> God said, "**There is now** light" and there was light.

God blessed them and said to them, "**Be fruitful**, and **multiply**. **Fill** the earth, and **subdue** it. **Have dominion** over the fish of the sea, over the birds of the sky, and over every living thing that moves upon the earth." (Genesis 1:28 ULT)

> God blessed them and said to them, "**My will for you is that you be fruitful**, and **multiply**. **Fill** the earth, and **subdue** it. **I want you to have dominion** over the fish of the sea, over the birds of the sky, and over every living thing that moves upon the earth."

> Do not let covenant faithfulness and trustworthiness leave you;
> tie them on your neck, write them on the tablet of your heart,
> **and find favor** and good insight in the eyes of God and man! (Proverbs 3:3-4 ULT)

> Do not let covenant faithfulness and trustworthiness leave you;
> tie them on your neck, write them on the tablet of your heart,
> **then you will find favor** and good insight in the eyes of God and man!

(2) If people would not understand that a sentence is used to cause something to happen, add a connecting word like "so" to show that what happened was a result of what was said.

> God said, "**Let there be** light," and there was light. (Genesis 1:3 ULT)
>
> > God said, 'Let there be light,' **so** there was light.
> > God said, "Light must be;" **as a result**, there was light.

(3) If people would not use a command as a condition, translate it as a statement with the words "if" and "then."

> Teach a child the way he should go, and when he is old he will not turn away from that instruction. (Proverbs 22:6 ULT)

Translated as:

> "**If** you teach a child the way he should go,
> **then** when he is old he will not turn away from that instruction."

Revelation References:

Revelation 22:17

Third-Person Imperatives

Description

The languages of the Bible have verb forms that can give commands, instructions or other directive speech in the third person. In other words, these directives address “he,” “she,” “it,” or “they” rather than “you.”

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue:

Many languages, including English, do not have these verb forms and so they must communicate this kind of directive speech in other ways. In English, we normally represent these third-person imperatives by putting “let” before the subject or verb. This is actually one of the translation strategies, since English does not have third-person imperatives.

Examples From the Bible

> **Let your kingdom come, let your will be done** as in heaven also on earth. (Matthew 6:9 ULT)

In this prayer, Jesus uses two third–person imperatives. The first one tells God’s kingdom to come, and the second one tells God’s will to be done. Of course, a kingdom and a will cannot hear Jesus, so Jesus is using these verb forms to communicate to God that Jesus desires that these things happen.

> **Let no one deceive himself**. If anyone among you thinks he is wise in this age, **let him become a “fool,”** that he may become wise. (1 Corinthians 3:18 ULT)

In this verse, Paul uses third–person imperatives to give a warning and an instruction. It may be that using this third–person form was more polite than if he had used second–person imperatives.

> But because of immorality, **let each man have** his own wife, and **let each woman have** her own husband. (1 Corinthians 7:2 ULT)

Here again Paul uses two third–person imperatives to instruct the Corinthian church. Since he had just recommended a celibate life in the previous verse, these imperatives have the sense of giving advice rather than command.

> Then God said, **“Let there be light.”** And there was light. (Genesis 1:3 ULT)

The Biblical Hebrew verb form used here is equivalent to the third–person imperative in Greek. Here, God commands in the third person that light come into existence, so it does.

> **…let him do to me** just as {is} good in his eyes. (2 Samuel 15:26 ULT)

David uses the third-person form to express his willingness for God to do to him whatever God wants to do.

Translation Strategies

If your language has third-person imperative forms and would use them in the way that the biblical languages do, then please use them. If not, then consider these strategies.

(1) Use a form that your language has that indicates that this is the will or wish of the speaker.
(2) If appropriate, use a second-person imperative.
(3) Use an explicit reference to the function of the imperative.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use a form that your language has that indicates that this is the will or wish of the speaker.

> Let your kingdom come, let your will be done as in heaven also on earth. (Matthew 6:9 ULT)

(Since English does not have third-person imperatives, it follows this strategy and uses “let” to indicate that this is the will or wish of the speaker.)

> May your kingdom come, may your will be done as in heaven also on earth.

> Let no one deceive himself. If anyone among you thinks he is wise in this age, let him become a “fool,” that he may become wise. (1 Corinthians 3:18 ULT)

(Since English does not have third-person imperatives, it follows this strategy and uses “let” to indicate that this is the will or wish of the speaker.)

> > No one should deceive himself. If anyone among you thinks he is wise in this age, he should become a “fool,” that he may become wise.

> …let him do to me just as {is} good in his eyes. (2 Samuel 15:26 ULT)

(Since English does not have third-person imperatives, it follows this strategy and uses “let” to indicate that this is the will or wish of the speaker.)

> > …he may do to me just as {is} good in his eyes. (2 Samuel 15:26 ULT)

(2) If appropriate, use a second-person imperative.

> Let no one deceive himself. If anyone among you thinks he is wise in this age, let him become a “fool,” that he may become wise. (1 Corinthians 3:18 ULT)

> > Do not deceive yourselves. If you think you are wise in this age, then become a “fool,” that you may become wise.

> Then God said, “Let there be light.” And there was light. (Genesis 1:3 ULT)

> > Then God said, “Light, come into being.” And there was light.

> …let him do to me just as {is} good in his eyes. (2 Samuel 15:26 ULT)

> > …Yahweh, do to me just as {is} good in your eyes.

(3) Use an explicit reference to the function of the imperative.

> Let your kingdom come, let your will be done as in heaven also on earth. (Matthew 6:9 ULT)

> > We pray that your kingdom come, we pray that your will be done as in heaven also on earth.

> Then God said, “Let there be light.” And there was light. (Genesis 1:3 ULT)

> > Then God said, “I command light to be.” And there was light.

> But because of immorality, let each man have his own wife, and let each woman have her own husband. (1 Corinthians 7:2 ULT)

> > But because of immorality, I advise each man to have his own wife, and I advise each woman to have her own husband.

> …let him do to me just as {is} good in his eyes. (2 Samuel 15:26 ULT)

> > …he has my permission to do to me just as {is} good in his eyes.

See also Imperatives – Other Uses

Revelation References:

Revelation 2 Introduction Revelation 13:9 Revelation 13:18 Revelation 22:11 Revelation 22:17

Information Structure

Description

Different languages arrange the parts of the sentence in different ways. In English, a sentence normally has the subject first, then the verb, then the object, then other modifiers, like this: Peter painted his house yesterday.

Many other languages normally put these things in a different order such as: Painted yesterday Peter his house.

Although all languages have a normal order for parts of a sentence, this order can change depending on what information the speaker or writer considers to be the most important.

Suppose that someone is answering the question, “What did Peter paint yesterday?” The person asking the question already knows all of the information in our sentence above except for the object, “his house.” Therefore, that becomes the most important part of the information, and a person answering in English might say “His house is what Peter painted (yesterday).”

This puts the most important information first, which is normal for English. Many Other Languages would normally put the most important information last. In the flow of a text, the most important information is usually what the writer considers to be new information for the reader. In some languages the new information comes first, and in others it comes last.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Different languages arrange the parts of a sentence in different ways. If you (the translator) copy the order of the parts of a sentence from the source, it may not make sense in your language.
- Different languages put important or new information in different places in the sentence. If you keep the important or new information in the same place that it had in the source language, it may be confusing or give the wrong message in your language.

Examples From the Bible

> They all ate until they were satisfied. (Mark 6:42 ULT)

The parts of this sentence were in a different order in the original Greek source language. They were like this: And they ate all and they were satisfied.

In English, this means that the people ate everything. But the next verse says that they took up twelve baskets full of leftover pieces of food. In order for this to not be so confusing, the translators of the ULT put the parts of the sentence in the right order for English.

> And the day began to end, and the twelve came to him and said, “Send the crowd away so that, going into the surrounding villages and countryside, they may find lodging and food, because we are here in an desolate place.” (Luke 9:12 ULT)

In this verse, what the disciples say to Jesus puts the important information first, that he should send the crowd away. In languages that put the important information last, people would understand that the reason that they gave, being in an isolated place, is the most important part of their message to Jesus. They might then think that the disciples are afraid of the spirits in that place, and that sending the people to buy food is a way to protect them from the spirits. That is the wrong message.

> Woe to you when all men speak well of you, for their fathers treated the false prophets in the same way. (Luke 6:26 ULT)

In this verse, the most important part of the information is first, that “woe” is coming on the people for what they are doing. The reason that supports that warning comes last. This could be confusing for people who expect the important information to come last.

Translation Strategies

(1) Study how your language arranges the parts of a sentence, and use that order in your

translation.
(2) Study where your language puts the new or important information, and rearrange the order of information so that it follows the way it is done in your language.

Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Study how your language arranges the parts of a sentence, and use that order in your translation.

This is the verse in the original Greek order:

> And he went out from there and came to the hometown his, and they followed him the disciples his. (Mark 6:1)

The ULT has put this into the normal order for English:

> Now Jesus went out from there and came to his hometown, and his disciples followed him. (Mark 6:1 ULT)

(2) Study where your language puts the new or important information and rearrange the order of information so that it follows the way it is done in your language.

> And the day began to end, and the twelve came and said to him, “Send the crowd away so that, going into the surrounding villages and countryside, they may find lodging and food, because we are here in a desolate place.” (Luke 9:12 ULT)

If your language puts the important information last, you can change the order of the verse.

> > Now the day was about to come to an end, and the twelve came to him and said, “Because we are here in an desolate place, send the crowd away that they may go into the surrounding villages and countryside to find lodging and food.”
>
> Woe to you, when all men speak well of you, for that is how their ancestors treated the false prophets. (Luke 6:26 ULT)

If your language puts the important information last, you can change the order of the verse.

> > When all men speak well of you, which is just as people’s ancestors treated the false prophets, then woe to you!

Revelation References:

Revelation 3:3 Revelation 3:8 Revelation 5:11 Revelation 6:10 Revelation 9:16 Revelation 20:2 Revelation 21:22 Revelation 21:27

Irony

Description

Irony is a figure of speech in which the sense that the speaker intends to communicate is actually the opposite of the literal meaning of the words. Sometimes a person does this by using someone else's words, but in a way that communicates that he does not agree with them. People do this to emphasize how different something is from what it should be, or how someone else's belief about something is wrong or foolish. It is often humorous.

> Then Jesus answered and said to them, "People who are well do not have need of a physician, but those who have sickness. I did not come to call the righteous, but sinners to repentance." (Luke 5:31-32 ULT)

When Jesus spoke of "the righteous," he was not referring to people who were truly righteous, but to people who wrongly believed that they were righteous. By using irony, Jesus communicated that they were wrong to think that they were better than others and did not need to repent.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

If someone does not realize that a speaker is using irony, he will think that the speaker actually believes what he is saying. He will understand the passage to mean the opposite of what it was intended to mean.

Examples From the Bible

> **How well you reject the commandment of God** so that you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9b ULT)

Here Jesus praises the Pharisees for doing something that is obviously wrong. Through irony, he communicates the opposite of praise: He communicates that the Pharisees, who take great pride in keeping the commandments, are so far from God that they do not even recognize that their traditions are breaking God's commandments. The use of irony makes the Pharisee's sin more obvious and startling.

> "Present your case," says Yahweh;
> "present your best arguments for your idols," says the King of Jacob. **"Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen, so we may know these things well. Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled**." (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULT)

People worshiped idols as if their idols had knowledge or power, and Yahweh was angry at them for doing that. So he used irony and challenged their idols to tell what would happen in the future. He knew that the idols could not do this, but by speaking as if they could, he mocked the idols, making their inability more obvious, and rebuked the people for worshiping them.

> Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work?
> Can you find the way back to their houses for them?
> **You know, for you were born then, and the number of your days is many!** (Job 38:20-21 ULT)

Job thought that he was wise. Yahweh used irony to show Job that he was not so wise. The two phrases in bold above are irony. They emphasize the opposite of what they say, because they are so obviously false. They emphasize that Job could not possibly answer God's questions about the creation of light because Job was not born until many, many years later.

> Already you are satisfied! Already you have become rich! **You began to reign** apart from us, and I wish you really did reign, so that we also might reign with you. (1 Corinthians 4:8 ULT)

The Corinthians considered themselves to be very wise, self-sufficient, and not in need of any instruction from the Apostle Paul. Paul used irony, speaking as if he agreed with them, to show how proudly they were acting

and how far from being wise they really were.

Translation Strategies

If the irony would be understood correctly in your language, translate it as it is stated. If not, here are some other strategies.

(1) Translate the irony in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.
(2) Translate the actual, intended meaning of the statement of irony. (Remember: The true meaning of the irony is **not** found in the literal words of the speaker, but instead the true meaning is found in the opposite of the literal meaning of the speaker's words.)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate it in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.

> **How well you reject the commandment of God** so that you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9a ULT)
>
> > **You think that you are doing well when you reject God's commandment** so you may keep your tradition!
> > or:
> > **You act like it is good to reject God's commandment** so you may keep your tradition!
>
> I did not come to call **the righteous**, but sinners to repentance. (Luke 5:32 ULT)
>
> > I did not come to call **people who think that they are righteous** to repentance, but to call people who know that they are sinners to repentance.

(2) Translate the actual, intended meaning of the statement of irony.

> **How well you reject the commandment of God** so that you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9a ULT)
>
> > **You are doing a terrible thing when you reject the commandment of God** so you may keep your tradition!
>
> "Present your case," says Yahweh;
> "present your best arguments for your idols," says the King of Jacob. "**Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen**, so we may know these things well. **Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled**." (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULT)
>
> > 'Present your case,' says Yahweh;
> > 'present your best arguments for your idols,' says the King of Jacob. **Can your idols bring us their own arguments or come forward to declare to us what will happen** so we may know these things well? **No!** We cannot hear them because **they cannot speak** to tell us their earlier predictive declarations, so we cannot reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled.
>
> Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work?
> Can you find the way back to their houses for them?
> **You know, for you were born then, and the number of your days is many!** (Job 38:20-21 ULT)
>
> > Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work? Can you find the way back to their houses for them? **You act like you know how light and darkness were created, as if you were there; as if you are as old as creation, but you are not**!

Revelation References:

Revelation 2:9

Litany

Description

A litany is a figure of speech in which the various components of a thing are listed in a series of very similar statements. The speaker does this to indicate that what he is saying should be understood as comprehensive and without exceptions. In a sense, the speaker is describing an overwhelming situation by overwhelming his audience with an excessive series of statements.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Many languages do not use litanies, and readers could be confused by them. They may wonder why the speaker seems to be saying the same thing over and over again.

Examples From the Bible

> Though they dig into Sheol, there my hand will take them. Though they climb up to heaven, there I will bring them down. Though they hide on the top of Carmel, there I will search and take them. Though they are hidden from my sight in the bottom of the sea, there will I give orders to the serpent, and it will bite them. Though they go into captivity, driven by their enemies before them, there will I give orders to the sword, and it will kill them. (Amos 9:2-4 ULT)

In this passage Yahweh is telling the people of Israel that when he punishes them, none of them will escape.

> But you should not have looked on the day of your brother, on the day of his misfortune. And you should not have rejoiced over the sons of Judah in the day of their perishing. And you should not have made your mouth great in a day of distress. You should not have entered the gate of my people in the day of their calamity. Yes, you! You should not have looked on his evil in the day of his calamity. And you women should not have looted his wealth in the day of his calamity. And you should not have stood at the crossroads to cut down his fugitives. And you should not have delivered up his survivors in a day of distress. (Obadiah 1:12–14)

In this passage Yahweh is telling the people of Edom that they should have helped the people of Judah when they were conquered by the Babylonians.

Translation Strategies

If the litany is understood as it is in the ULT, then translate the litany as it is. If it is not understood, then try one or more of the following strategies.

(1) Often in the Bible there will be a general statement at the beginning or end of a litany that sums up its overall meaning. You can format that statement in a way that will show that it is a summary statement that gives the meaning of the litany.
(2) You can put each sentence of the litany on a separate line. Also, if each sentence in the litany has two parts, you can format the litany so that the equivalent parts of each sentence line up. Use this or any other type of formatting that will show that each sentence is reinforcing the same meaning.
(3) You can eliminate words like “and,” “but,” and “or” at the beginning of sentences so that it will be clearer that the component parts of the litany are all being listed in a row.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) combined with (3):
Often in the Bible there will be a general statement at the beginning or end of a litany

that sums up its overall meaning. You can format that statement in a way that will show that it is a summary statement that gives the meaning of the litany;
You can eliminate words like “and,” “but,” and “or” at the beginning of sentences so that it will be clearer that the component parts of the litany are all being listed in a row.

> You did nothing to help the Israelites when strangers carried away their wealth. They conquered all the cities of Judah, and they even plundered Jerusalem. And you were just as bad as those foreigners, because you did nothing to help:
>
> You should not have looked on the day of your brother, on the day of his misfortune. You should not have rejoiced over the sons of Judah in the day of their perishing. You should not have made your mouth great in a day of distress.
> You should not have entered the gate of my people in the day of their calamity.
> Yes, you! You should not have looked on his evil in the day of his calamity. You women should not have looted his wealth in the day of his calamity. You should not have stood at the crossroads to cut down his fugitives. You should not have delivered up his survivors in a day of distress. (Obadiah 1:11-14)

In the above example, verse 11 provides the summary and meaning for the litany that follows in verses 12-14.

(1) combined with (2):
Often in the Bible there will be a general statement at the beginning or end of a litany that sums up its overall meaning. You can format that statement in a way that will show that it is a summary statement that gives the meaning of the litany;
You can put each sentence of the litany on a separate line. Also, if each sentence in the litany has two parts, you can format the litany so that the equivalent parts of each sentence line up. Use this or any other type of formatting that will show that each sentence is reinforcing the same meaning.

> Not one of them will get away, not one of them will escape:
>
> Though they dig into Sheol,
> there my hand will take them.
>
> Though they climb up to heaven,
> there I will bring them down.
> Though they hide on the top of Carmel,
> there I will search and take them.
> Though they are hidden from my sight in the bottom of the sea, there will I give orders to the
>
> serpent, and it will bite them.
> Though they go into captivity, driven by their enemies before them, there will I give orders to the
>
> sword, and it will kill them. (Amos 9:1b–4 ULT)

In the above example, the sentence before the litany explains its overall meaning. That sentence can be placed as an introduction. The second half of each sentence can be formatted in a descending staircase pattern as above, or lined up evenly like the first half of each sentence, or in another way. Use whatever format best shows that these sentences are all communicating the same truth, that it is not possible to escape from God.

Revelation References:

Revelation 18 Introduction Revelation 22:11

Merism

Definition

Merism is a figure of speech in which a person refers to something by speaking of two extreme parts of it. By referring to the extreme parts, the speaker intends to include also everything in between those parts.

> "I am **the alpha and the omega**," says the Lord God, "the one who is, and who was, and who is to come, the Almighty." (Revelation 1:8 ULT)
>
> I am **the alpha and the omega**, **the first and the last**, **the beginning and the end**. (Revelation 22:13, ULT)

Alpha and omega are the first and last letters of the Greek alphabet. This is a merism that includes everything from the beginning to the end. It means eternal.

> … I praise you, Father, Lord of **heaven and earth** …, (Matthew 11:25b ULT)

Heaven and earth is a merism that includes everything that exists.

Reason This is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not use merism. The readers of those languages may think that the phrase only applies to the items mentioned. They may not realize that it refers to those two things and everything in between.

Examples From the Bible

> **From the rising of the sun to its setting**, Yahweh's name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULT)

This bolded phrase is a merism because it speaks of the east and the west and everywhere in between. It means "everywhere."

> He will bless those who honor him, both **young and old**. (Psalm 115:13)

The bolded phrase is merism because it speaks of old people and young people and everyone in between. It means "everyone."

Translation Strategies

If the merism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

(1) Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.
(2) Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.

> I praise you, Father, Lord of **heaven and earth**. (Matthew 11:25b ULT)
>
> > I praise you, Father, Lord of **everything**.

> **From the rising of the sun to its setting**, Yahweh's name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULT)
>
> > **In all places**, people should praise Yahweh's name.

(2) Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

> I praise you, Father, Lord of **heaven and earth**. (Matthew 11:25b ULT)
>
> > I praise you, Father, Lord of **everything, including both what is in heaven and what is on earth**.

> He will bless those who honor him, both **young and old**. (Psalm 115:13 ULT)
>
> > He will bless **all those** who honor him, regardless of whether they are **young or old**.

Revelation References:

Revelation 1:8 Revelation 1:17 Revelation 1:19 Revelation 2:8 Revelation 4:6 Revelation 4:8 Revelation 4:8 Revelation 5:3 Revelation 5:13 Revelation 6:15 Revelation 7:1 Revelation 7:15 Revelation 10:6 Revelation 11:18 Revelation 12:10 Revelation 13:16 Revelation 14:7 Revelation 14:11 Revelation 19:5 Revelation 19:18 Revelation 20:8 Revelation 20:10 Revelation 20:12 Revelation 21:6 Revelation 22:13

Metaphor

Description

A metaphor is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of one thing as if it were a different thing because he wants people to think about how those two things are alike.

For example, someone might say, “The girl I love is a red rose.”

A girl and a rose are very different things, but the speaker considers that they are alike in some way. The hearer’s task is to understand in what way they are alike.

The Parts of a Metaphor

The example above shows us that a metaphor has three parts. In this metaphor, the speaker is talking about “the girl I love.” This is the **Topic**. The speaker wants the hearer to think about what is similar between her and “a red rose.” The red rose is the **Image** to which he compares the girl. Most probably, he wants the hearer to consider that they are both beautiful. This is the **Idea** that the girl and the rose both share, and so we may also call it the **Point of Comparison**.

Every metaphor has three parts:

- The **Topic**, the item being immediately discussed by the writer/speaker.
- The **Image**, the physical item (object, event, action, etc.) which the speaker uses to describe the topic.
- The **Idea**, the abstract concept or quality that the physical **Image** brings to the mind of the hearer when he thinks of how the **Image** and the **Topic** are similar. Often, the **Idea** of a metaphor is not explicitly stated in the Bible, but it is only implied from the context. The hearer or reader usually needs to think of the **Idea** himself.

Using these terms, we can say that a metaphor is a figure of speech that uses a physical **Image** to apply an abstract **Idea** to the speaker’s **Topic**.

Usually, a writer or speaker uses a metaphor in order to express something about a **Topic**, with at least one **Point of Comparison** (**Idea**) between the **Topic** and the **Image**. Often in metaphors, the **Topic** and the **Image** are explicitly stated, but the **Idea** is only implied. The writer/speaker often uses a metaphor in order to invite the readers/listeners to think about the similarity between the **Topic** and the **Image** and to figure out for themselves the **Idea** that is being communicated.

Speakers often use metaphors in order to strengthen their message, to make their language more vivid, to express their feelings better, to say something that is hard to say in any other way, or to help people remember their message.

Sometimes speakers use metaphors that are very common in their language. However, sometimes speakers use metaphors that are uncommon, and even some metaphors that are unique. When a metaphor has become very common in a language, often it becomes a "passive" metaphor, in contrast to uncommon metaphors, which we describe as being "active." Passive metaphors and active metaphors each present a different kind of translation problem, which we will discuss below.

Passive Metaphors

A passive metaphor is a metaphor that has been used so much in the language that its speakers no longer regard it as one concept standing for another. Linguists often call these "dead metaphors." Passive metaphors are extremely common. Examples in English include the terms "table **leg**," "family **tree**," "book **leaf**" (meaning a page in a book), or the word "crane" (meaning a large machine for lifting heavy loads). English speakers simply think of these words as having more than one meaning. Examples of passive metaphors in Biblical Hebrew include using the word "hand" to represent "power," using the word "face" to represent "presence," and speaking of emotions or moral qualities as if they were "clothing."

Patterned Pairs of Concepts Acting as Metaphors

Many ways of metaphorical speaking depend on pairs of concepts, where one underlying concept frequently stands for a different underlying concept. For example, in English, the direction "up" (the Image) often represents the concepts of "more" or "better" (the Idea). Because of this pair of underlying concepts, we can make sentences such as "The price of gasoline is going **up**," "A **highly** intelligent man," and also the opposite kind of idea: "The temperature is going **down**," and "I am feeling very **low**."

Patterned pairs of concepts are constantly used for metaphorical purposes in the world's languages because they serve as convenient ways to organize thought. In general, people like to speak of abstract qualities (such as power, presence, emotions, and moral qualities) as if they were body parts, or as if they were objects that could be seen or held, or as if they were events that could be watched as they happened.

When these metaphors are used in normal ways, it is rare that the speaker and audience regard them as figurative speech. Examples of metaphors in English that go unrecognized are:

- "Turn the heat **up**." More is spoken of as up.
- "Let us **go ahead** with our debate." Doing what was planned is spoken of as walking or advancing.
- "You **defend** your theory well." Argument is spoken of as war.
- "A **flow** of words." Words are spoken of as liquids.

English speakers do not view these as metaphorical expressions or figures of speech, so it would be wrong to translate them into other languages in a way that would lead people to pay special attention to them as figurative speech. For a description of important patterns of this kind of metaphor in biblical languages, please see Biblical Imagery — Common Patterns and the pages it will direct you to.

When translating something that is a passive metaphor into another language, do not treat it as a metaphor. Instead, just use the best expression for that thing or concept in the target language.

Active Metaphors

These are metaphors that people recognize as one concept standing for another concept, or one thing for another thing. Metaphors make people think about how the one thing is like the other thing, because in most ways the two things are very different. People also easily recognize these metaphors as giving strength and unusual qualities to the message. For this reason, people pay attention to these metaphors. For example,

> But for you who fear my name, the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings. (Malachi 4:2a ULT)

Here, God speaks about his salvation as if it were the sun rising in order to shine its rays on the people whom he loves. He also speaks of the sun's rays as if they were wings. Also, he speaks of these wings as if they were bringing medicine that would heal his people. Here is another example:

> And he said to them, "Go and tell that fox …" (Luke 13:32a ULT)

Here, "that fox" refers to King Herod. The people listening to Jesus certainly understood that Jesus was intending for them to apply certain characteristics of a fox to Herod. They probably understood that Jesus intended to communicate that Herod was evil, either in a cunning way or as someone who was destructive, murderous, or who took things that did not belong to him, or all of these.

Active metaphors require the translator's special care to make a correct translation. To do so, you need to understand the parts of a metaphor and how they work together to produce meaning.

> Jesus said to them, "I am the bread of life; he who comes to me will not be hungry, and he who believes in me will never be thirsty." (John 6:35 ULT)

In this metaphor, Jesus called himself the bread of life. The **Topic** is "I" (meaning Jesus himself) and the **Image** is "bread." Bread was the primary food that people ate in that place and time. The similarity between bread and Jesus is that people need both to live. Just as people need to eat food in order to have physical life, people need to trust in Jesus in order to have eternal life. The **Idea** of the metaphor is "life." In this case, Jesus stated the central Idea of the metaphor, but often the Idea is only implied.

Purposes of Metaphor

- One purpose of metaphor is to teach people about something that they do not know (the **Topic**) by showing that it is like something that they already do know (the **Image**).
- Another purpose is to emphasize that something (the **Topic**) has a particular quality (the **Idea**) or to show that it has that quality in an extreme way.
- Another purpose is to lead people to feel the same way about the **Topic** as they would feel about the **Image**.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People may not recognize that something is a metaphor. In other words, they may mistake a metaphor for a literal statement, and thus, misunderstand it.
- People may not be familiar with the thing that is used as an image, and so, not be able to understand the metaphor.
- If the topic is not stated, people may not know what the topic is.
- People may not know the points of comparison that the speaker wants them to understand. If they fail to think of these points of comparison, they will not understand the metaphor.
- People may think that they understand the metaphor, but they do not. This can happen when they apply points of comparison from their own culture, rather than from the biblical culture.

Translation Principles

- Make the meaning of a metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.

- Do not make the meaning of a metaphor more clear to the target audience than you think it was to the original audience.

Examples From the Bible

> Listen to this word, **you cows of Bashan**, (Amos 4:1q ULT)

In this metaphor Amos speaks to the upper-class women of Samaria ("you," the Topic) as if they were cows (the Image). Amos does not say what similarity(s) he intends between these women and cows. He wants the reader to think of them, and he fully expects that readers from his culture will easily do so. From the context, we can see that he means that the women are like cows in that they are fat and interested only in feeding themselves. If we were to apply similarities from a different culture, such as that cows are sacred and should be worshiped, we would get the wrong meaning from this verse.

NOTE: Amos does not actually mean that the women are cows. He speaks to them as human beings.

> Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; **we are the clay**. **You are our potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

The example above has two related metaphors. The Topic(s) are "we" and "you," and the Image(s) are "clay" and "potter." The similarity between a potter and God is the fact that both make what they wish out of their material. The potter makes what he wishes out of the clay, and God makes what he wishes out of his people. The Idea being expressed by the comparison between the potter's clay and "us" is that **neither the clay nor God's people have a right to complain about what they are becoming**.

> Jesus said to them, "Take heed and beware of **the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees**." The disciples reasoned among themselves and said, "It is because we did not take bread." (Matthew 16:6-7 ULT)

Jesus used a metaphor here, but his disciples did not realize it. When he said "yeast," they thought he was talking about bread, but "yeast" was the Image in his metaphor, and the Topic was the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. Since the disciples (the original audience) did not understand what Jesus meant, it would not be good to state clearly here what Jesus meant.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the metaphor in the same way that the original readers would have understood it, go ahead and use it. Be sure to test the translation to make sure that people do understand it in the right way.

If people do not or would not understand it, here are some other strategies.

(1) If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, it is a passive metaphor), then express the **Idea** in the simplest way preferred by your language.
(2) If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally **if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible**. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.
(3) If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as "like" or "as." See Simile.
(4) If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see Translate Unknowns for ideas on how to translate that image.
(5) If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.
(6) If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the Topic was.)
(7) If the target audience would not know the intended similarity (the **Idea**) between the topic and the image, then state it clearly.
(8) If none of these strategies is satisfactory, then simply state the **Idea** plainly without using a metaphor.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, a passive metaphor), then express the Idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.

> Then, see, one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, **fell at his feet**. (Mark 5:22 ULT)
>
> > Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, **immediately bowed down in front of him**.

(2) If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally **if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible**. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.

> But Jesus said to them, "He wrote this commandment to you because of your **hardness of heart.**" (Mark 10:5 ULT)
>
> > It was because of your **hard hearts** that he wrote you this law.

We made no change to this one, but it must be tested to make sure that the target audience correctly understands this metaphor.

(3) If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as "like" or "as."

> Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we **are the clay.** You **are our potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)
>
> > And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are **like** clay. You are **like** a potter; and we all are the work of your hand.

(4) If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see Translate Unknowns for ideas on how to translate that image.

> Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you **to kick against a goad**. (Acts 26:14b ULT)
>
> > Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to **kick against a pointed stick**.

(5) If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.

> Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **clay**. You are our **potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)
>
> > "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **wood**. You are our **carver**; and we all are the work of your hand."
> > "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **string**. You are the **weaver**; and we all are the work of your hand."

(6) If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)

> Yahweh lives; may **my rock** be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)
>
> > Yahweh lives; **He is my rock**. May he be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

(7) If the target audience would not know the intended similarity between the Topic and the Image, then state it clearly.

> Yahweh lives; may **my rock** be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)
>
> > Yahweh lives; may he be praised because he is the rock **under which I can hide from my enemies**. May the God of my salvation be exalted.
>
> Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you **to kick against a goad**. (Acts 26:14 ULT)
>
> > Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? You **fight against me and hurt yourself like an ox that kicks against its owner's pointed stick**.

(8) If none of these strategies are satisfactory, then simply state the idea plainly without using a metaphor.

> I will make you to become **fishers of men**. (Mark 1:17b ULT)
>
> > I will make you to become **people who gather men**.
> > Now you gather fish. I will make you **gather people**.

To learn more about specific metaphors, see Biblical Imagery — Common Patterns.

Revelation References:

Revelation Introduction Revelation 1:5 Revelation 1:5 Revelation 1:6 Revelation 1:7 Revelation 1:8 Revelation 1:9 Revelation 1:18 Revelation 2 Introduction Revelation 2:5 Revelation 2:5 Revelation 2:6 Revelation 2:7 Revelation 2:9 Revelation 2:9 Revelation 2:10 Revelation 2:10 Revelation 2:11 Revelation 2:13 Revelation 2:13 Revelation 2:13 Revelation 2:14 Revelation 2:14 Revelation 2:14 Revelation 2:15 Revelation 2:16 Revelation 2:23 Revelation 2:23 Revelation 2:24 Revelation 2:24 Revelation 2:25 Revelation 2:27 Revelation 2:28 Revelation 3:1 Revelation 3:2 Revelation 3:2 Revelation 3:2 Revelation 3:3 Revelation 3:4 Revelation 3:4 Revelation 3:5 Revelation 3:7 Revelation 3:8 Revelation 3:9 Revelation 3:9 Revelation 3:11 Revelation 3:12 Revelation 3:15 Revelation 3:16 Revelation 3:16 Revelation 3:17 Revelation 3:18 Revelation 3:18 Revelation 3:18 Revelation 3:20 Revelation 3:20 Revelation 3:21 Revelation 4:1 Revelation 4:6 Revelation 5:5 Revelation 5:5 Revelation 5:9 Revelation 6:11 Revelation 7:1 Revelation 7:4 Revelation 7:14 Revelation 7:16 Revelation 7:17 Revelation 7:17 Revelation 8:12 Revelation 9:9 Revelation 9:9 Revelation 9:13 Revelation 10:1 Revelation 10:4 Revelation 11:2 Revelation 11:4 Revelation 11:5 Revelation 11:6 Revelation 11:16 Revelation 11:18 Revelation 12:10 Revelation 12:16 Revelation 12:17 Revelation 13:12 Revelation 13:13 Revelation 13:14 Revelation 13:16 Revelation 14 Introduction Revelation 14:3 Revelation 14:4 Revelation 14:4 Revelation 14:4 Revelation 14:8 Revelation 14:8 Revelation 14:8 Revelation 14:8 Revelation 14:10 Revelation 14:10 Revelation 15:3 Revelation 15:4 Revelation 16 Introduction Revelation 16:8 Revelation 16:15 Revelation 16:19 Revelation 17 Introduction Revelation 17:2 Revelation 17:2 Revelation 17:10 Revelation 17:16 Revelation 17:17 Revelation 18:2 Revelation 18:2 Revelation 18:3 Revelation 18:3 Revelation 18:5 Revelation 18:6 Revelation 18:7 Revelation 18:9 Revelation 18:14 Revelation 18:16 Revelation 18:21 Revelation 18:23 Revelation 19:5 Revelation 19:10 Revelation 19:12 Revelation 19:18 Revelation 19:20 Revelation 20 Introduction Revelation 20:8 Revelation 20:8 Revelation 20:9 Revelation 20:12 Revelation 21 Introduction Revelation 21:6 Revelation 21:6 Revelation 21:9 Revelation 21:12 Revelation 21:22 Revelation 21:23 Revelation 21:24 Revelation 22:9 Revelation 22:10 Revelation 22:11 Revelation 22:13 Revelation 22:14 Revelation 22:15 Revelation

22:16 Revelation 22:16 Revelation 22:17
Revelation 22:17

Metonymy

Description

Metonymy is a figure of speech in which an item (either physical or abstract) is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. A metonym is a word or phrase used as a substitute for something that it is associated with.

> … and **the blood** of Jesus his Son cleanses us from every sin. (1 John 1:7b ULT)

The blood represents Christ's death.

> And he took **the cup** in the same way after supper, saying, "**This cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you." (Luke 22:20 ULT)

The cup represents the wine that is in the cup.

Metonymy can be used

- as a shorter way of referring to something
- to make an abstract idea more meaningful by referring to it with the name of a physical object associated with it

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

The Bible uses metonymy very often. Speakers of some languages are not familiar with metonymy and they may not recognize it when they read it in the Bible. If they do not recognize the metonymy, they will not understand the passage or, worse yet, they will get a wrong understanding of the passage. Whenever a metonym is used, people need to be able to understand what it represents.

Examples From the Bible

> The Lord God will give to him **the throne** of his father David. (Luke 1:32b ULT)

A throne represents the authority of a king. "Throne" is a metonym for "kingly

authority," "kingship," or "reign." This means that God would make him become a king who would follow King David.

> Then immediately his **mouth** was opened (Luke 1:64a ULT)

The mouth here represents the power to speak. This means that he was able to talk again.

> Who warned you to flee from **the wrath** that is coming? (Luke 3:7b ULT)

The word "wrath" or "anger" is a metonym for "punishment." God was extremely angry with the people and, as a result, he would punish them.

Translation Strategies

If people would easily understand the metonym, consider using it. Otherwise, here are some options.

(1) Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.

(2) Use only the name of the thing the metonym represents.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.

> And he took the cup in the same way after the supper, saying, "**This cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you." (Luke 22:20 ULT)
>
> > He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "**The wine in this cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you."

This verse also contains a second metonym: The cup, (representing the wine it contains) also represents the new covenant made with the blood Christ shed for us.

(2) Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

> The Lord God will give him **the throne** of his father David. (Luke 1:32b ULT)
>
> > "The Lord God will give him **the kingly authority** of his father, David."
> > or:
> > "The Lord God will **make him king** like his ancestor, King David."

> Who warned you to flee from **the wrath** that is coming? (Luke 3:7b ULT)
>
> > "Who warned you to flee from God's coming **punishment**?"

To learn about some common metonymies, see Biblical Imagery — Common Metonymies.

Revelation References:

Revelation Introduction Revelation 1:2 Revelation 1:4 Revelation 1:7 Revelation 1:9 Revelation 1:10 Revelation 1:12 Revelation 2 Introduction Revelation 2:3 Revelation 2:3 Revelation 2:7 Revelation 2:11 Revelation 2:13 Revelation 2:14 Revelation 2:22 Revelation 3:1 Revelation 3:4 Revelation 3:5 Revelation 3:6 Revelation 3:8 Revelation 3:8 Revelation 3:22 Revelation 5:8 Revelation 5:8 Revelation 5:9 Revelation 5:10 Revelation 6:4 Revelation 6:8 Revelation 6:8 Revelation 6:9 Revelation 6:10 Revelation 6:16 Revelation 6:17 Revelation 7:10 Revelation 7:16 Revelation 7:17 Revelation 8:4 Revelation 8:5 Revelation 8:11 Revelation 8:12 Revelation 9:13 Revelation 9:17 Revelation 10:1 Revelation 10:11 Revelation 11:9 Revelation 11:13 Revelation 11:18 Revelation 11:19 Revelation 12:5 Revelation 12:8 Revelation 12:9 Revelation 12:10 Revelation 12:11 Revelation 12:11 Revelation 12:14 Revelation 12:18 Revelation 13:2 Revelation 13:3 Revelation 13:5 Revelation 13:6 Revelation 13:6 Revelation 13:7 Revelation 13:9 Revelation 13:10 Revelation 13:15 Revelation 14:3 Revelation 14:5 Revelation 14:7 Revelation 14:11 Revelation 14:13 Revelation 14:20 Revelation 14:20 Revelation 15:1 Revelation 15:1 Revelation 15:4 Revelation 15:5 Revelation 15:6 Revelation 15:6 Revelation 15:7 Revelation 16 Introduction Revelation 16:1 Revelation 16:1 Revelation 16:3 Revelation 16:6 Revelation 16:9 Revelation 16:17 Revelation 16:19 Revelation 17:1 Revelation 17:4 Revelation 17:15 Revelation 17:17 Revelation 17:17 Revelation 17:18 Revelation 18:4 Revelation 18:7 Revelation 18:9 Revelation 18:10 Revelation 18:12 Revelation 18:14 Revelation 18:14 Revelation 18:15 Revelation 18:18 Revelation 18:20 Revelation 19:2 Revelation 19:3 Revelation 19:9 Revelation 19:10 Revelation 19:11 Revelation 19:12 Revelation 19:15 Revelation 19:15 Revelation 19:17 Revelation 20:4 Revelation 20:11 Revelation 20:15 Revelation 21:5 Revelation 21:24 Revelation 21:26 Revelation 21:27 Revelation 22:6 Revelation 22:7 Revelation 22:9 Revelation 22:9 Revelation 22:10 Revelation 22:18 Revelation 22:19

Nominal Adjectives

Description

In some languages an adjective can be used to refer to a class of things that the adjective describes. When it does, it acts like a noun. For example, the word “rich” is an adjective. Here are two sentences that show that “rich” is an adjective.

> **The rich man** had huge numbers of flocks and herds. (2 Samuel 12:2 ULT)

The adjective “rich” comes before the word “man” and describes “man.”

> **He will not be rich**; his wealth will not last. (Job 15:29a ULT)

The adjective “rich” comes after the verb “be” and describes “He.”

Here is a sentence that shows that “rich” can also function as a noun.

> **The rich** must not give more than the half shekel, and **the poor** must not give less. (Exodus 30:15b ULT)

In Exodus 30:15, the word “rich” acts as a noun in the phrase “the rich,” and it refers to rich people. The word “poor” also acts as a noun and refers to poor people.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Many times in the Bible adjectives are used as nouns to describe a group of people.
- Some languages do not use adjectives in this way.
- Readers of these languages may think that the text is talking about one particular person when it is really talking about the group of people whom the adjective describes.

Examples From the Bible

> The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of **the righteous**. (Psalms 125:3a ULT)

"The righteous" here are people who are righteous, not one particular righteous person.

> Blessed are **the meek**. (Matthew 5:5a ULT)

"The meek" here are all people who are meek, not one particular meek person.

Translation Strategies

If your language uses adjectives as nouns to refer to a class of people, consider using the adjectives in this way. If it would sound strange, or if the meaning would be unclear or wrong, here is another option:

(1) Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

> The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of **the righteous**. (Psalms 125:3a ULT)
>
> > The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of **righteous people**.

> Blessed are **the meek**. (Matthew 5:5a ULT)
>
> > Blessed are **people who are meek**.

Revelation References:

Revelation 1:5 Revelation 2:2 Revelation 2:13 Revelation 3:4 Revelation 3:7 Revelation 3:17 Revelation 6:15 Revelation 10:2 Revelation 11:18 Revelation 11:18 Revelation 12:5 Revelation 12:13 Revelation 13:16 Revelation 14:13 Revelation 14:14 Revelation 16 Introduction Revelation 16:2 Revelation 16:5 Revelation 17:10 Revelation 17:10 Revelation 17:11 Revelation 18:14 Revelation 19:3 Revelation 19:5 Revelation 19:18 Revelation 19:20 Revelation 20:5 Revelation 20:12 Revelation 20:12 Revelation 20:13 Revelation 21:4 Revelation 21:8 Revelation 22:11 Revelation 22:15

Parallelism

Description

Parallelism is a poetic device in which two phrases or clauses that are similar in structure or idea are used together. The following are some of the different kinds of parallelism.

- The second clause or phrase means the same as the first. This is called synonymous parallelism.
- The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.
- The second completes what is said in the first.
- The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.

Parallelism is most commonly found in Old Testament poetry, such as in the books of Psalms and Proverbs. It also occurs in Greek in the New Testament, both in the four gospels and in the apostles' letters.

This article will only discuss synonymous parallelism, the kind in which the two parallel phrases mean the same thing, because that is the kind that presents a problem for translation. Note that we use the term "synonymous parallelism" for long phrases or clauses that have the same meaning. We use the term "doublet" for words or very short phrases that mean basically the same thing and are used together.

In the poetry of the original languages, synonymous parallelism has several effects:

- It shows that something is very important by saying it more than once and in more than one way.
- It helps the hearer to think more deeply about the idea by saying it in different ways.
- It makes the language more beautiful and raises it above the ordinary way of speaking.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages would not use synonymous parallelism. They would either think it odd that someone said the same thing twice, or, since it is in the Bible, they would think that the two phrases must have some difference in meaning. For them it would be confusing, rather than beautiful. They would not understand that the repetition of the idea in different words serves to emphasize the idea.

Examples From the Bible

> Your word is a lamp to my feet
>
> and a light for my path. (Psalm 119:105 ULT)

Both parts of the sentence are metaphors saying that God's word teaches people how to live. That is the single idea. The words "lamp" and "light" are similar in meaning because they refer to light. The words "my feet" and "my path" are related because they refer to a person walking. Walking is a metaphor for living.

> You make him to rule over the works of your hands;
>
> you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULT)

Both lines say that God made man the ruler of everything. "To rule over" is the same idea as putting things "under his feet," and "the works of your [God's] hands" is the same idea as "all things."

> Yahweh sees everything a person does
>
> and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

The first phrase and the second phrase mean the same thing. There are three ideas that are the same between these two phrases. "Sees" corresponds to "watches," "everything… does" corresponds to "all the paths…takes," and "a person" corresponds to "he."

> Praise Yahweh, all you nations;
>
> exalt him, all you peoples! (Psalm 117:1 ULT)

Both parts of this verse tell people everywhere to praise Yahweh. The words 'Praise' and 'exalt' mean the same thing. The words 'Yahweh' and 'him' refer to the same person. The terms 'all you nations' and 'all you peoples' refer to the same people.

> For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people,
>
> and he will fight in court against Israel. (Micah 6:2b ULT)

The two parts of this verse say that Yahweh has a serious disagreement with his people, Israel. These are not two different disagreements or two different groups of people.

Translation Strategies

For most kinds of parallelism, it is good to translate both of the clauses or phrases. For synonymous parallelism, it is good to translate both clauses if people in your language understand that the purpose of saying something twice is to strengthen a single idea. But if your language does not use parallelism in this way, then consider using one of the following translation strategies.

(1) Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.
(2) If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and include words that emphasize the truth such as "truly" or "certainly."
(3) If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and use words like "very," "completely," or "all."

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.

> Until now you have dealt deceitfully with me and you have spoken lies to me. (Judges 16:13, ULT)

Delilah expressed this idea twice to emphasize that she was very upset.

> Until now you have deceived me with your lies.
>
> Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

The phrase “all the paths he takes” is a metaphor for “all he does.”

> Yahweh pays attention to everything a person does.
>
> For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, and he will fight in court against Israel. (Micah 6:2 ULT)

This parallelism describes one serious disagreement that Yahweh had with one group of people. If this is unclear, the phrases can be combined:

> For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, Israel.

(2) If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and include words that emphasize the truth such as “truly” or “certainly.”

> Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)
>
> Yahweh truly sees everything a person does.
>
> You make him to rule over the works of your hands; you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULT)
>
> You have certainly made him to rule over everything that you have created.

(3) If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and use words like “very,” “completely” or “all.”

> Until now you have dealt deceitfully with me and you have spoken lies to me. (Judges 16:13, ULT)
>
> All you have done is lie to me.
>
> Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)
>
> Yahweh sees absolutely everything that a person does.

Revelation References:

Revelation 1:18 Revelation 3:7 Revelation 5:13 Revelation 6:9 Revelation 7:1 Revelation 9:6 Revelation 10:7 Revelation 11:2 Revelation 11:5 Revelation 13:4 Revelation 13:16 Revelation 17:6 Revelation 18:2 Revelation 18:6 Revelation 18:6 Revelation 18:14 Revelation 19:18 Revelation 20:4 Revelation 20:11 Revelation 21:3 Revelation 21:6 Revelation 21:11 Revelation 22:13 Revelation 22:17

Personification

Description

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often do this because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see:

Such as wisdom:

> Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1a ULT)

Or sin:

> Sin crouches at the door. (Genesis 4:7b ULT)

People also use personification because it is sometimes easier to talk about people's relationships with non-human things such as wealth as if they were relationships between people.

> You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24b ULT)

In each case, the purpose of the personification is to highlight a certain characteristic of the non-human thing. As in metaphor, the reader needs to think of the way that the thing is like a certain kind of person.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some languages do not use personification.
- Some languages use personification only in certain situations.

Examples From the Bible

> You cannot **serve** God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24b ULT)

Jesus speaks of wealth as if it were a master whom people might serve. Loving money and basing one's decisions on it is like serving it as a slave would serve his master.

> Does not Wisdom **call** out? Does not Understanding **raise her voice**? (Proverbs 8:1 ULT)

The author speaks of wisdom and understanding as if they were woman who calls out to teach people. This means that they are not something hidden, but something obvious that people should pay attention to.

Translation Strategies

If the personification would be understood clearly, consider using it. If it would not be understood, here are some other ways for translating it.

(1) Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.
(2) In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as "like" or "as" to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.
(3) Find a way to translate it without the personification.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.

> **Sin crouches** at the door. (Genesis 4:7b ULT) — God speaks of sin as if it were a wild animal that is waiting for the chance to attack. This shows how dangerous sin is. An additional phrase can be added to make this danger clear.

> > **Sin** is at your door, **waiting to attack you.**

(2) In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as "like" or "as" to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.

> Sin crouches at the door. (Genesis 4:7b ULT) — This can be translated with the word "as."

> > Sin is crouching at the door, **just as a wild animal does as it waits to attack a person.**.

(3) Find a way to translate it without the personification.

> Even the **winds and the sea obey him**. (Matthew 8:27b ULT) — The men speak of the "wind and the sea" as if they are able to hear and obey Jesus, just as people can. This could also be translated without the idea of obedience by speaking of Jesus controlling them.
>
> > He even **controls the winds and the sea**.

NOTE: We have broadened our definition of "personification" to include "zoomorphism" (speaking of other things as if they had animal characteristics) and "anthropomorphism" (speaking of non-human things as if they had human characteristics) because the translation strategies for them are the same.

Revelation References:

Revelation 9:6 Revelation 10 Introduction Revelation 11:11 Revelation 11:11 Revelation 11:18 Revelation 12:12 Revelation 12:12 Revelation 12:16 Revelation 14:8 Revelation 14:13 Revelation 16:7 Revelation 16:8 Revelation 16:20 Revelation 19:10 Revelation 20:6 Revelation 20:9 Revelation 20:11 Revelation 20:13 Revelation 21:1 Revelation 21:4

Possession

Description

In English, the grammatical form that commonly indicates possession is also used to indicate a variety of relationships between people and objects or people and other people. In English, that grammatical relationship is shown by using the word "**of**," by using **an apostrophe and the letter "s"**, or by using a **possessive pronoun**. The following examples are different ways to indicate that my grandfather owns a house.

- the house **of** my grandfather
- my **grandfather's** house
- **his** house

Possession is used in Hebrew, Greek, and English for a variety of situations. Here are a few common situations that it is used for.

- Ownership — Someone owns something.

> The clothes of me - my clothes — The clothes that I own

- Social Relationship — Someone has some kind of social relationship with another.

> The mother of John — John's mother - the woman who gave birth to John, or the woman who cared for John

> A teacher of Israel - Israel's teacher — a person who teaches Israel

- Association — A particular thing is associated with a particular person, place, or thing.

> The sickness of David - David's sickness — the sickness that David is experiencing

> the fear of the Lord — the fear that is appropriate for a human being to have when relating to the Lord

- Contents — Something has something in it.

> a bag of clothes — a bag that has clothes in it, or a bag that is full of clothes

- Part and whole: One thing is part of another.

> my head — the head that is part of my body

> the roof of a house — the roof that is part of a house

In some languages there is a special form of possession, termed **inalienable possession.** This form of possession is used for things that cannot be removed from you, as opposed to things you could lose. In the examples above, *my head* and *my mother* are examples of inalienable possession (at least in some languages), while *my clothes* or *my teacher* would be alienably possessed. What may be considered alienable vs. inalienable may differ by language. In languages that mark the difference, the expression of inalienable possession and alienable possession will be different.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- You (the translator) need to understand the relationship between two ideas represented by the two nouns when one is in the grammatical relationship of possessing the other.
- Some languages do not use grammatical possession for all of the situations that your source text Bible might use it for.

Examples From the Bible

Ownership — In the example below, the son owned the money.

> The younger son … wasted his wealth by living recklessly. (Luke 15:13b)

Social Relationship — In the example below, the disciples were people who learned from John.

> Then **the disciples of John** came to him. (Matthew 9:14a ULT)

Association — In the example below, the gospel is the message associated with Paul because he preaches it.

> Remember Jesus Christ, raised from the dead, from the seed of David, according to **my gospel**, (2 Timothy 2:8 ULT)

Material — In the example below, the material used for making the crowns was gold.

> On their heads were something like **crowns of gold.** (Revelation 9:7b)

Contents — In the example below, the cup has water in it.

> For whoever gives you **a cup of water** to drink … will not lose his reward. (Mark 9:41 ULT)

Part of a whole — In the example below, the door was a part of the palace.

> But Uriah slept at **the door of the king's palace.** (2 Samuel 11:9a ULT)

Part of a group — In the example below, "us" refers to the whole group and "each one" refers to the individual members.

> Now to **each one of us** grace has been given according to the measure of the gift of Christ. (Ephesians 4:7 ULT)

Events and Possession

Sometimes one or both of the nouns is an abstract noun that refers to an event or action. In the examples below, the abstract nouns are in **bold** print. These are just some of the relationships that are possible between two nouns when one of them refers to an event.

Subject — Sometimes the word after "of" tells who would do the action named by the first noun. In the example below, **John baptized people**.

> The **baptism of John**, was it from heaven or from men? Answer me. (Mark 11:30)

In the example below, **Christ loves us**.

> Who will separate us from the **love of Christ**? (Romans 8:35)

Object — Sometimes the word after "of" tells who or what something would happen to. In the example below, **people love money**.

> For the **love of money** is a root of all kinds of evil. (1 Timothy 6:10a ULT)

Instrument — Sometimes the word after "of" tells how something would happen. In the example below, God would **punish people by sending enemies to attack them with swords**.

> Then be afraid of the sword, because wrath brings **the punishment of the sword**. (Job 19:29a ULT)

Representation — In the example below, John was baptizing people who were repenting of their sins. They were being baptized to show that they were repenting. Their **baptism represented their repentance**.

> John came, baptizing in the wilderness and preaching **a baptism of repentance** for the forgiveness of sins. (Mark 1:4 ULT)

Strategies for learning what the relationship is between the two nouns

(1) Read the surrounding verses to see if they help you to understand the relationship between the two nouns.
(2) Read the verse in the UST. Sometimes it shows the relationship clearly.
(3) See what the notes say about it.

Translation Strategies

If possession would be a natural way to show a particular relationship between two nouns, consider using it. If it would be strange or hard to understand, consider these.

(1) Use an adjective to show that one noun describes the other.
(2) Use a verb to show how the two are related.
(3) If one of the nouns refers to an event, translate it as a verb.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use an adjective to show that one noun describes the other.

> On their heads were something like **crowns of gold.** (Revelation 9:7b)
>
> > "On their heads were **gold crowns**"

(2) Use a verb to show how the two are related.

> Whoever gives you **a cup of water** to drink … will not lose his reward. (Mark 9:41 ULT)
>
> > Whoever gives you a **cup that has water in it** to drink … will not lose his reward.
>
> Wealth is worthless on **the day of wrath.** (Proverbs 11:4a ULT)
>
> > Wealth is worthless on **the day when God shows his wrath**.
> > or:
> > Wealth is worthless on the **day when God punishes people because of his wrath**.

(3) If one of the nouns refers to an event, translate it as a verb. (In the example below, there are two possession relationships, "punishment of Yahweh" and "your God.")

> Notice that I am not speaking to your children, who have not known or seen **the punishment of Yahweh your God.** (Deuteronomy 11:2a ULT)
>
> > Notice that I am not speaking to your children who have not known or seen **how Yahweh, the God whom you worship, punished the people of Egypt**.
>
> You will only observe and see the **punishment of the wicked**. (Psalms 91:8 ULT)
>
> > You will only observe and see **how Yahweh punishes the wicked**.
>
> You will receive **the gift of the Holy Spirit**. (Acts 2:38b ULT)
>
> > You will receive the **Holy Spirit, whom God will give to you**.

Revelation References:

Revelation 1:1 Revelation 1:9 Revelation 2:7 Revelation 2:13 Revelation 2:26 Revelation 3:10 Revelation 3:14 Revelation 4:5 Revelation 9:9 Revelation 10:7 Revelation 13:3 Revelation 13:12 Revelation 14:12 Revelation 15:3 Revelation 16:5 Revelation 18:14 Revelation 19:10 Revelation 20:4

Direct and Indirect Quotations

Description

There are two kinds of quotations: direct quotations and indirect quotations.

A direct quotation occurs when someone reports what another person said from the viewpoint of that original speaker. People usually expect that this kind of quotation will represent the original speaker's exact words. In the example below, John would have said "I" when referring to himself, so the narrator, who is reporting John's words, uses the word "I" in the quotation to refer to John. To show that these are John's exact words, many languages put the words between quotation marks: "".

- John said, "**I** do not know at what time **I** will arrive."

An indirect quotation occurs when a speaker reports what someone else said, but in this case, the speaker is reporting it from his own point of view instead and not from the original person's point of view. This kind of quotation usually contains changes in pronouns, and it often includes changes in time, in word choices, and in length. In the example below, the narrator refers to John as "he" in the quotation and uses the word "would" to replace the future tense, indicated by "will."

- John said that **he** did not know at what time **he** would arrive.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

In some languages, reported speech can be expressed by either direct or indirect quotations. In other languages, it is more natural to use one than the other. There may be a certain meaning implied by using one rather than the other. So for each quotation, translators need to decide whether it is best to translate it as a direct quotation or as an indirect quotation.

Examples From the Bible

The verses in the examples below contain both direct and indirect quotations. In the explanation below the verse, we have marked in bold the words that are quoted.

> And he commanded him to tell no one, but, "Go, show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them." (Luke 5:14 ULT)

- Indirect quote: He commanded him **to tell no one**,
- Direct quote: but told him, "**Go, show yourself to the priest …**"

> And being asked by the Pharisees when the kingdom of God was coming, he answered them and said, "The kingdom of God is not coming with careful observation. Neither will they say, 'Look, here it is!' or 'There it is!' For indeed, the kingdom of God is among you." (Luke 17:20-21 ULT)

- Indirect quote: Being asked by the Pharisees **when the kingdom of God was coming,**
- Direct quote: he answered them and said, "**The kingdom of God is not coming with careful observation. Neither will they say, 'Look. here it is!' or 'There it is!' For indeed, the kingdom of God is among you.**"
- Direct quotes: Neither will they say, '**Look, here it is!**' or, '**There it is!**'

Translation Strategies

If the kind of quote used in the source text would work well in your language, consider using it. If the kind of quote used in that context is not natural for your language, follow these strategies.

(1) If a direct quote would not work well in your language, change it to an indirect quote.
(2) If an indirect quote would not work well in your language, change it to a direct quote.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If a direct quote would not work well in your language, change it to an indirect quote.

> And he commanded him to tell no one, but, "**Go, show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.**" (Luke 5:14 ULT)
>
> > He commanded him to tell no one, but **to go and show himself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for his cleansing according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them**.

(2) If an indirect quote would not work well in your language, change it to a direct quote.

> And he commanded him **to tell no one,** but, "Go, show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them." (Luke 5:14 ULT)
>
> > He commanded him, "**Tell no one**. But go and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them."

You may also want to watch the video at https://ufw.io/figs_quotations.

Revelation References:

Revelation 9:4

Quote Markings

Description

Some languages use quotation marks to mark off direct quotes from the rest of the text. English uses the mark “ immediately before a quote and ” immediately after it.

- John said, “I do not know when I will arrive.”

Quotation marks are not used with indirect quotes.

- John said that he did not know when he would arrive.

When there are several layers of quotations inside of other quotations, it might be hard for readers to understand who is saying what. Alternating two kinds of quotation marks can help careful readers to keep track of them. In English, the outermost quotation has double quote marks, and the next quotation within it has single marks. If there is a third embedded quote, that quotation again has double quotation marks.

- Mary said, “John said, ‘I do not know when I will arrive.’ ”
- Bob said, “Mary told me, ‘John said, “I do not know when I will arrive.” ’ ”

Some languages use other kinds of quotation marks: Here are some examples: , ‘ ’ „ “ ” ‹ › « » ⌜ ⌝ — .

Examples From the Bible

The examples below show the kind of quotation markings used in the ULT.

A quotation with only one layer

A first layer direct quote has double quotation marks around it.

> So the king replied, “That is Elijah the Tishbite.” (2 Kings 1:8b ULT)

Quotations with two layers

A second layer direct quote has single quotation marks around it. We have printed it and the phrase in bold type for you to see them clearly.

> They asked him, “Who is the man who said to you, **‘Pick it up and walk’**?” (John 5:12 ULT)
>
> He sent two of the disciples, saying, “Go into the village ahead of you. As you enter, you will find a colt that has never been ridden. Untie it and bring it to me. If any one asks you, **‘Why are you untying it?’** you will say thus, **‘The Lord has need of it.’**” (Luke 19:29b-31 ULT)

A quotation with three layers

A third layer direct quote has double quotation marks around it. We have printed it in bold type for you to see them clearly.

> Abraham said, “Because I thought, ‘Surely there is no fear of God in this place, and they will kill me because of my wife.’ Besides, she is indeed my sister, the daughter of my father, but not the daughter of my mother; and she became my wife. When God caused me to leave my father’s house and travel from place to place, I said to her, ‘You must show me this faithfulness as my wife: At every place where we go, say about me, “**He is my brother**.”’” (Genesis 20:11-13 ULT)

A quotation with four layers

A fourth layer direct quote has single quotation marks around it. We have printed it in bold for you to see it clearly.

> They said to him, “A man came to meet us who said to us, ‘Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, “Yahweh says this: **‘Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.’** ” ’ ” (2 Kings 1:6 ULT)

Quote Marking Strategies

Here are some ways you may be able to help readers see where each quote starts and ends so they can more easily know who said what.

(1) Alternate two kinds of quote marks to show layers of direct quotation. English alternates double quote marks and single quote marks.
(2) Translate one or some of the quotes as indirect quotes in order to use fewer quote marks, since indirect quotes do not need them. (See Direct and Indirect Quotations.)
(3) If a quotation is very long and has many layers of quotation in it, indent the main overall quote, and use quote marks only for the direct quotes inside of it.

Examples of Quote Marking Strategies Applied

(1) Alternate two kinds of quotation marks to show layers of direct quotation as shown in the ULT text below.

> They said to him, “A man came to meet us who said to us, ‘Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, “Yahweh says this: ‘Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.’”’” (2 Kings 1:6 ULT)

(2) Translate one or more of the quotes as indirect quotes in order to use fewer quotation marks, since indirect quotes do not need them. In English, the word “that” can introduce an indirect quote. In the example below, everything after the word “that” is an indirect quote of what the messengers said to the king. Within that indirect quote, there are some direct quotes marked with double and single quotation marks.

> They said to him, “A man came to meet us who said to us, ‘Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, “Yahweh says this: ‘Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.’”’” (2 Kings 1:6 ULT)

> They told him **that** a man came to meet them who said to them, “Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, ‘Yahweh says this: “Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.”’”

(3) If a quotation is very long and has many layers of quotation in it, indent the main overall quote, and use quote marks only for the direct quotes inside of it.

> They said to him, “A man came to meet us who said to us, ‘Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, “Yahweh says this: ‘Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.’”’” (2 Kings 1:6 ULT)

> They said to him,
>
> > A man came to meet us who said to us, “Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, ‘Yahweh says this: “Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.”’”

Revelation References:

Revelation 1:5 Revelation 1:7 Revelation 2:27 Revelation 7:17 Revelation 18:9 Revelation 18:20

Quotes within Quotes

Description

A quotation may have a quote within it, and quotes that are inside of other quotes can also have quotes within them. When a quote has quotes within it, we say there are "layers" of quotation, and each of the quotes is a layer. When there are many layers of quotes inside of quotes, it can be hard for listeners and readers to know who is saying what. Some languages use a combination of direct quotes and indirect quotes to make it easier.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

1. When there is a quote within a quote, the listener needs to know who the pronouns refer to. For example: if a quote that is inside a quote has the word "I," the listener needs to know whether "I" refers to the speaker of the inner quote or the outer quote.
2. Some languages make this clear by using different kinds of quotes when there are quotes within quotes. They may use direct quotes for some and indirect quotes for others.
3. Some languages do not use indirect quotes.

Examples From the Bible

A quotation with only one layer

> But Paul said, "I, however, was indeed born a citizen." (Acts 22:28b ULT)

Quotations with two layers

> Jesus answered and said to them, "Be careful that no one leads you astray. For many will come in my name. They will say, 'I am the Christ,' and will lead many astray." (Matthew 24:4-5 ULT)

The outermost layer is what Jesus said to his disciples. The second layer is what other people will say.

> Jesus answered, “You say that I am a king.” (John 18:37b ULT)

The outermost layer is what Jesus said to Pilate. The second layer is what Pilate said about Jesus.

A quotation with three layers

> Abraham said, “… I said to her, ‘You must show me this faithfulness as my wife: At every place where we go, say about me, **“He is my brother.”**’” (Genesis 20:11a, 13 ULT)

The outermost layer is what Abraham responded to Abimelech. The second layer is what Abraham had told his wife. The third layer is what he wanted his wife to say. (We have bolded the third layer.)

A quotation with four layers

> They said to him, “A man came to meet us who said to us, ‘Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, “Yahweh says this: **‘Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal- Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.’**”’” (2 Kings 1:6 ULT)

The outermost layer is what the messengers said to the king. The second layer is what the man who had met the messengers told them. The third is what that man wanted the messengers to say to the king. The fourth is what Yahweh said. (We have bolded the fourth layer.)

Translation Strategies

Some languages use only direct quotes. Other languages use a combination of direct quotes and indirect quotes. In those languages it might sound strange and perhaps even be confusing if there are many layers of direct quotes.

(1) Translate all of the quotes as direct quotes.
(2) Translate one or some of the quotes as indirect quotes. (See Direct and Indirect Quotations.)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate all of the quotes as direct quotes. In the example below we have bolded the indirect quotes in the ULT and the quotes that we have changed to direct quotes below it.

> Festus presented to the king the things concerning Paul, saying, “There is a certain man was left here as a prisoner by Felix. So I am uncertain about the things concerning this matter. I asked **if he was willing to go to Jerusalem and there to be judged concerning these things**. But when Paul appealed **to keep him in custody for the decision of the emperor**, I ordered him **to be held in custody until when I could send him to Caesar**.” (Acts 25:14b, 20-21 ULT)
>
> > Festus presented Paul’s case to the king. He said, “A certain man was left behind here by Felix as a prisoner. I was uncertain about the things concerning this matter. I asked him, **‘Will you go to Jerusalem to be judged there concerning these things?’** But when Paul said, **‘I want to be kept in custody for the emperor’s decision,’** I told the guard, **‘Keep him in custody until when I can send him to Caesar.’**”

(2) Translate one or some of the quotes as indirect quotes. In English the word “that” can come before indirect quotes. It is bolded in the examples below. The pronouns that changed because of the indirect quote are also bolded.

> And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying, “I have heard the complaints of the sons of Israel. Speak to them and say, ‘During the evenings you will eat meat, and in the morning you will be satisfied with bread. And you will know that I am Yahweh your God.’” (Exodus 16:11-12 ULT)
>
> > And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying, “I have heard the complaints of the sons of Israel. Tell them **that** during the evenings **they** will eat meat, and in the morning **they** will be satisfied with bread. And **they** will know that I am Yahweh **their** God.’”
>
> They said to him, “A man came to meet us who said to us, ‘Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, “Yahweh says this: ‘Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal-Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.’”””” (2 Kings 1:6 ULT)
>
> > They told him **that** a man had come to meet **them** who said to **them**, “Go back to the king who sent you, and tell him **that** Yahweh says this: ‘Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.’”

Revelation References:

Revelation 2 Introduction Revelation 2:1 Revelation 2:8 Revelation 2:24 Revelation 2:25 Revelation 3:17 Revelation 14:13 Revelation 18:7 Revelation 19:9

Reduplication

Description

Writers and speakers in the Bible sometimes repeat the same word or forms of the same word. This is to increase the intensity, completeness, or certainty of the action that the word describes, or to otherwise increase the emotional impact of the word.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages may not repeat words to increase the intensity, completeness, or certainty of an action, or they may not repeat words to increase the level of emotion that they communicate. In these cases, repeated words may appear to be a mistake or may indicate that the speaker is unable to speak correctly.

Examples From the Bible

To the woman he said, “To multiply I will multiply your pain and your childbearing…” (Genesis 3:16 ULT)

The speaker is repeating forms of the verb “multiply” in order to intensify the idea of multiplying.

To be circumcised he must be circumcised (Genesis 17:13)

The speaker is repeating forms of the verb “circumcise” in order to increase the certainty that this must happen.

Begin, possess, to possess his land (Deuteronomy 2:31 ULT)

Moses repeats the word “possess” to emphasize the completeness of the action of possessing the land.

My God, my God, why have you forsaken me? (Psalm 22:1 ULT)

The writer repeats “my God” to increase the level of emotion that he wants to communicate; he is crying out desperately to God.

"Fallen, fallen has Babylon the Great…" (Revelation 14:8 ULT)

The angel repeats the word "fallen" in order to show deep emotion in this lament for the ruined city of Babylon.

Translation Strategies

If repeating words would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, then do the same in your translation. If not, here are some other options:

(1) If your language would not repeat words to increase the intensity, completeness, or certainty of an action, then use a different word or phrase to add that meaning.
(2) If your language would not repeat words to increase emotional intensity, then use an emotional word to do that.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If your language would not repeat words to increase the intensity, completeness, or certainty of an action, then use a different word or phrase to add that meaning.

> To the woman he said, "To multiply I will multiply your pain and your childbearing…" (Genesis 3:16 ULT)
>
> > To the woman he said, "I will greatly multiply your pain and your childbearing…"

> To be circumcised he must be circumcised (Genesis 17:13 ULT)
>
> > He certainly must be circumcised
> > Or By all means, he must be circumcised

> Begin, possess, to possess his land (Deuteronomy 2:31 ULT)
>
> > Begin to completely possess his land
> > Or Enter his land until you completely possess it

(2) If your language would not repeat words to increase emotional intensity, then use an emotional word to do that.

> My God, my God, why have you forsaken me? (Psalm 22:1 ULT)
>
> > You are my God! Why, then, have you forsaken me?
> > Or My God, oh, why have you forsaken me?

> "Fallen, fallen has Babylon the Great…" (Revelation 14:8 ULT)
>
> > "Alas, Babylon the Great has fallen!

Revelation References:

Revelation 8:13 Revelation 18:10

Rhetorical Question

A rhetorical question is a question that a speaker asks when he is more interested in expressing his attitude about something than in getting information about it. Speakers use rhetorical questions to express deep emotion or to encourage hearers to think deeply about something. The Bible contains many rhetorical questions, often to express surprise, to rebuke or scold the hearer, or to teach. Speakers of some languages use rhetorical questions for other purposes as well.

Description

A rhetorical question is a question that strongly expresses the speaker's attitude toward something. Often the speaker is not looking for information at all. Or, if he is asking for information, it is not usually the information that the question appears to ask for. The speaker is more interested in expressing his attitude than in getting information.

> But those who stood by said, "**Are you insulting the high priest of God?**"(Acts 23:4 ULT)

The people who asked Paul this question were not asking if he was insulting God's high priest. Rather, they used this question to accuse Paul of insulting the high priest.

The Bible contains many rhetorical questions. These rhetorical questions might be used for the purposes: of expressing attitudes or feelings, rebuking people, teaching something by reminding people of something they know and encouraging them to apply it to something new, or introducing something they want to talk about.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some languages do not use rhetorical questions; for them a question is always a request for information.
- Some languages use rhetorical questions, but for purposes that are different or more limited than in the Bible.
- Because of these differences between languages, some readers might misunderstand the purpose of a rhetorical question in the Bible.

Examples From the Bible

> Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7b ULT)

Jezebel used the question above **to remind** King Ahab of something he already knew: he still ruled the kingdom of Israel. The rhetorical question made her point more strongly than if she had merely stated it, because it forced Ahab to admit the point himself. She did this in order **to rebuke** him for being unwilling to take over a poor man's property. She was implying that, since he was the king of Israel, he had the power to take the man's property.

> **Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

God used the question above **to remind** his people of something they already knew: a young woman would never forget her jewelry or a bride forget her veils. He then **rebuked** his people for forgetting him who is so much greater than those things.

> But you, why do you judge your brother? And you also, why do you despise your brother? (Romans 14:10 ULT)

Paul used these rhetorical questions **to rebuke** the Romans for doing what they should not do.

> Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11a ULT)

Job used the question above **to show deep emotion**. This rhetorical question expresses how sad he was that he did not die as soon as he was born. He wished that he had not lived.

> And how has this happened to me that the mother of my Lord would come to me? (Luke 1:43 ULT)

Elizabeth used the question above **to show how surprised and happy she was** that the mother of her Lord came to her.

> Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

Jesus used the question above **to remind** the people of something they already knew: a good father would never give his son something bad to eat. By introducing this point, Jesus could go on **to teach them** about God with his next rhetorical question:

> Therefore, if you who are evil know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father who is in heaven give good things to those who ask him? (Matthew 7:11 ULT)

Jesus used this question **to teach** the people in an emphatic way that God gives good things to those who ask him.

> **What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to?** It is like a mustard seed that a man took and threw into his garden … (Luke 13:18b-19a ULT)

Jesus used the question above **to introduce what he was going to talk about**. He was about to compare the kingdom of God to something. In this case, he compared the kingdom of God to a mustard seed.

Translation Strategies

In order to translate a rhetorical question accurately, first be sure that the question you are translating truly is a rhetorical question and is not an information question. Ask yourself, "Does the person asking the question already know the answer to the question?" If so, it is a rhetorical question. Or, if no one answers the question, did the person who asked it expect to receive an answer? If not, it is a rhetorical question.

When you are sure that the question is rhetorical, then be sure that you understand the purpose for the rhetorical question. Is it to encourage or rebuke or shame the hearer? Is it to bring up a new topic? Is it to express surprise or other emotion? Is it to do something else?

When you know the purpose of the rhetorical question, then think of the most natural way to express that purpose in the target language. It might be as a question, or a statement, or an exclamation.

If using the rhetorical question would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing so. If not, here are other options:

(1) Add the answer after the question.
(2) Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
(3) Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.
(4) Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add the answer after the question.

> **Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)
>
> > Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? **Of course not!** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!

> Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)
>
> > Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? **None of you would do that!**

(2) Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.

> **What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to?** It is like a mustard seed. (Luke 13:18-19a ULT)
>
> > **This is what the kingdom of God is like.** It is like a mustard seed …

> **Are you insulting the high priest of God?** (Acts 23:4b ULT) (Acts 23:4 ULT)
>
> > **You should not insult God's high priest!**

> **Why did I not die when I came out from the womb?** (Job 3:11a ULT)
>
> > **I wish I had died when I came out from the womb!**

> **And how has this happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me?** (Luke 1:43 ULT)
>
> > **How wonderful it is that the mother of my Lord has come to me!**

(3) Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.

> **Do you not still rule** the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7b ULT)
>
> > You still rule the kingdom of Israel, **do you not?**

(4) Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the orignal speaker communicated in his.

> Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)
>
> > If your son asks you for a loaf of bread, **would you give him a stone**?

> **Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils**? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)
>
> > **What virgin would forget her jewelry, and what bride would forget her veils**? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!

> But you, **why do you judge your brother**? And you also, **why do you despise your brother**? (Romans 14:10 ULT)
>
> > Do you think it is good to judge your brother? Do you think it is good to despise your brother?

Revelation References:

Revelation 6:10 Revelation 6:17 Revelation 7:13 Revelation 13:4 Revelation 15:4 Revelation 17:7 Revelation 18:18

Simile

Description

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. The simile focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as,” or “than.”

> When he saw the crowds, he had compassion for them, because they were troubled and discouraged, **like sheep not having a shepherd**. (Matthew 9:36)

Jesus compared the crowds of people to sheep without a shepherd. Sheep grow frightened when they do not have a good shepherd to lead them in safe places. The crowds were like that because they did not have good religious leaders.

> See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**, so be as wise **as the serpents** and harmless **as the doves**. (Matthew 10:16 ULT)

Jesus compared his disciples to sheep and their enemies to wolves. Wolves attack sheep; Jesus’ enemies would attack his disciples.

> For the word of God is living and active and sharper **than any two-edged sword**. (Hebrews 4:12a ULT)

God’s word is compared to a two-edged sword. A two-edged sword is a weapon that can easily cut through a person’s flesh. God’s word is very effective in showing what is in a person’s heart and thoughts.

Purposes of Simile

- A simile can teach about something that is unknown by showing how it is similar to something that is known.
- A simile can emphasize a particular trait, sometimes in a way that gets people’s attention.
- Similes help form a picture in the mind or help the reader experience what he is reading about more fully.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People may not know how the two items are similar.
- People may not be familiar with both of the items being compared.

Examples From the Bible

> Suffer hardship with me, **as a good soldier** of Christ Jesus. (2 Timothy 2:3 ULT)

In this simile, Paul compares suffering with what soldiers endure, and he encourages Timothy to follow their example.

> Just as the lightning flashing from a place under the sky shines to another place under the sky, so will the Son of Man be. (Luke 17:24b ULT)

This verse does not tell how the Son of Man will be like the lightning. But in context we can understand from the verses before it that just as lighting flashes suddenly and everyone can see it, the Son of Man will come suddenly and everyone will be able to see him. No one will have to be told about it.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the correct meaning of a simile, consider using it. If they would not, here are some strategies you can use:

(1) If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
(2) If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.
(3) Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.

> See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves.** (Matthew 10:16a ULT) — This compares the danger that Jesus' disciples would be in with the danger that sheep are in when they are surrounded by wolves.
>
> > See, I send **you out among wicked people** and you will be in danger from them **as sheep are in danger when they are among wolves**.
>
> For the word of God is living and active and sharper **than any two-edged sword**. (Hebrews 4:12a ULT)
>
> > For the word of God is living and active and **more powerful than a very sharp two-edged sword**.

(2) If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.

> See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**, (Matthew 10:16a ULT) — If people do not know what sheep and wolves are, or that wolves kill and eat sheep, you could use some other animal that kills another.
>
> > See, I send you out **as chickens in the midst of wild dogs**.
>
> How often did I long to gather your children together, just **as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings**, but you were not willing! (Matthew 23:37b ULT)
>
> > How often I wanted to gather your children together, **as a mother closely watches over her infants**, but you refused!
>
> If you have faith **as a grain of mustard** … (Matthew 17:20)
>
> > If you have faith even as small **as a tiny seed**,

(3) Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

> See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**. (Matthew 10:16a ULT)
>
> > See, I send you out among **people who will want to harm you**.
>
> How often did I long to gather your children together, just **as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings**, but you were not willing! (Matthew 23:37b ULT)
>
> > How often I wanted to **protect you**, but you refused!

Revelation References:

Revelation 1:10 Revelation 1:13 Revelation 1:14 Revelation 1:15 Revelation 1:15 Revelation 1:16 Revelation 1:17 Revelation 2:18 Revelation 2:27 Revelation 3:3 Revelation 4:1 Revelation 6 Introduction Revelation 6:1 Revelation 6:12 Revelation 6:13 Revelation 6:14 Revelation 9 Introduction Revelation 9:2 Revelation 9:3 Revelation 9:5 Revelation 9:8 Revelation 9:8 Revelation 9:9 Revelation 9:9 Revelation 10 Introduction Revelation 10:1 Revelation 10:3 Revelation 11:1 Revelation 11:8 Revelation 12:15 Revelation 13 Introduction Revelation 13:11 Revelation 14:2 Revelation 14:2 Revelation 15:2 Revelation 15:2 Revelation 16:3 Revelation 16:13 Revelation 16:15 Revelation 18:21 Revelation 19:6 Revelation 20:8 Revelation 21:2 Revelation 21:11 Revelation 21:18 Revelation 21:21

Synecdoche

Description

Synecdoche is a figure of speech in which a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole thing, or uses the whole to refer to a part.

> **My soul** magnifies the Lord. (Luke 1:46b ULT)

Mary was was very happy about what the Lord was doing, so she said “my soul,” which means the inner, emotional part of herself, to refer to her whole self.

> So **the Pharisees** said to him, “Look, why are they doing that which is not lawful?” (Mark 2:24a ULT)

The Pharisees who were standing there did not all say the same words at the same time. Instead, it is more likely that one man representing the group said those words.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some readers may not recognize the synecdoche and thus misunderstand the words as a literal statement.
- Some readers may realize that they are not to understand the words literally, but they may not know what the meaning is.

Example From the Bible

> Then I looked on all the deeds that **my hands** had accomplished. (Ecclesiastes 2:11a ULT)

“My hands” is a synecdoche for the whole person because clearly the arms and the rest of the body and the mind were also involved in the person’s accomplishments. The hands are chosen to represent the person because they are the parts of the body most directly involved in the work.

Translation Strategies

If the synecdoche would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

> "**My soul** magnifies the Lord." (Luke 1:46b ULT)
>
> > "**I** magnify the Lord."
>
> So **the Pharisees** said to him … (Mark 2:24a ULT)
>
> > **A representative of the Pharisees** said to him …
>
> Then I looked on all the deeds that **my hands** had accomplished. (Ecclesiastes 2:11a ULT)
>
> > I looked on all the deeds that **I** had accomplished

Revelation References:

Revelation 1:7 Revelation 1:7 Revelation 2:10 Revelation 3:9 Revelation 6:7 Revelation 6:8 Revelation 7:1 Revelation 9:13 Revelation 9:20 Revelation 16:19 Revelation 19:2 Revelation 21:4 Revelation 22:4

Forms of You

Singular, Dual, and Plural

Some languages have more than one word for "you" based on how many people the word "you" refers to. The **singular** form refers to one person, and the **plural** form refers to more than one person. Some languages also have a **dual** form which refers to two people, and some languages have other forms that refer to three or four people.

You may also want to watch the video at https://ufw.io/figs_younum.

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses a singular form of "you" even though he is speaking to a crowd. For help with translating these, we suggest you read:

- Singular Pronouns that Refer to Groups

Formal and Informal

Some languages have more than one form of "you" based on the relationship between the speaker and the person he or she is talking to. People use the **formal** form of "you" when speaking to someone who is older, or has higher authority, or is someone they do not know very well. People use the **informal** form when speaking to someone who is not older, or does not have higher authority, or is a family member or close friend.

You may also want to watch the video at https://ufw.io/figs_youform.

For help with translating these, we suggest you read:

- Forms of "You" — Formal or Informal

Masculine and Feminine

Some languages have a **masculine** form and a **feminine** form of the word for "you." People use the **masculine** form when speaking to a man or boy and the **feminine** form when speaking to a woman or girl.

English does not make any of the above distinctions, so they are absent in the ULT.

Please be aware of this and use the appropriate forms of “you” if your language does make any of these distinctions.

Revelation References:

Revelation 22:16

Forms of ‘You’ — Dual/Plural

Description

Some languages have a singular form of “you” for when the word “you” refers to just one person, and a plural form for when the word “you” refers to more than one person. Some languages also have a dual form of “you” for when the word “you” refers to only two people. Translators who speak one of these languages will always need to know what the speaker meant so they can choose the right word for “you” in their language. Other languages, such as English, have only one form, which people use regardless of how many people it refers to.

The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. These languages all have a singular form of “you” and a plural form of “you.” When we read the Bible in those languages, the pronouns and verb forms show us whether the word “you” refers to one person or more than one person. However, they do not show us whether it refers to only two people or more than two people. When the pronouns do not show us how many people the word “you” refers to, we need to look at the context to see how many people the speaker was speaking to.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Translators who speak a language that has distinct singular, dual, and plural forms of “you” will always need to know what the speaker meant so they can choose the right word for “you” in their language.
- Many languages also have different forms of the verb depending on whether the subject is singular or plural. So even if there is no pronoun meaning “you,” translators of these languages will need to know if the speaker was referring to one person or more than one.

Often the context will make it clear whether the word “you” refers to one person or more than one. If you look at the other pronouns in the sentence, they will help you know how many people the speaker was addressing.

Examples From the Bible

> Then **James and John**, the sons of Zebedee, came up to him, saying to him, "Teacher, we desire that you to do for us whatever we ask you." 36 So he said to them, "What do **you** want me to do for **you**?" (Mark 10:35-36 ULT)

Jesus is asking the two, James and John, what they want him to do for them. If the target language has a dual form of "you," use that. If the target language does not have a dual form, then the plural form would be appropriate.

> Jesus sent out two of his disciples and said to them, "Go into the village opposite us. As soon as **you** enter it, **you** will find a colt tied there, on which no one has yet sat. Untie it and bring it to me." (Mark 11:1b-2 ULT)

The context makes it clear that Jesus is addressing two people. If the target language has a dual form of "you," use that. If the target language does not have a dual form, then the plural form would be appropriate.

> James, a servant of God and of the Lord Jesus Christ, to the twelve tribes who are in the dispersion: Greetings. Consider it all joy, my brothers, when **you** experience various troubles. You know that the testing of **your** faith produces endurance. (James 1:1-3 ULT)

James wrote this letter to many people, so the word "you" refers to many people. If the target language has a plural form of "you," it would be best to use it here.

Strategies for finding out how many people "you" refers to

(1) Look at the translationNotes to see if they tell whether "you" refers to one person or more than one person.
(2) Look at the UST to see if it says anything that would show you whether the word "you" refers to one person or more than one person.
(3) If you have a Bible that is written in a language that distinguishes "you" singular from "you" plural, see which form of "you" that Bible has in that sentence.
(4) Look at the context to see who the speaker was talking to and who responded.

You may also want to watch the video at https://ufw.io/figs_youdual.

Revelation References:

Revelation 11:12 Revelation 12:14

Forms of 'You' — Singular

Description

Some languages have a **singular** form of "you" for when the word "you" refers to just one person, and a **plural** form for when the word "you" refers to more than one person. Translators who speak one of these languages will always need to know what the speaker meant so they can choose the right word for "you" in their language. Other languages, such as English, have only one form, which people use regardless of how many people it refers to.

The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. These languages all have both a singular form of "you" and a plural form of "you." When we read the Bible in those languages, the pronouns and verb forms show us whether the word "you" refers to one person or more than one. When we read the Bible in a language that does not have different forms of you, we need to look at the context to see how many people the speaker was speaking to.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Translators who speak a language that has distinct singular and plural forms of "you" will always need to know what the speaker meant so they can choose the right word for "you" in their language.
- Many languages also have different forms of the verb depending on whether the subject is singular or plural. So even if there is no pronoun meaning "you," translators of these languages will need to know if the speaker was referring to one person or more than one.

Often the context will make it clear whether the word "you" refers to one person or more than one. If you look at the other pronouns in the sentence, they will help you know the number of people the speaker was speaking to. Sometimes Greek and Hebrew speakers used the singular form of "you" even though they were speaking to a group of people. (See Forms of 'You' — Singular to a Crowd.)

Examples From the Bible

> But he said, "All these things **I** have kept from my youth." But when he heard this, Jesus said to him, "One thing is still lacking to **you**. All things, as much as **you** have, **sell** all and **distribute** to the poor, and **you** will have treasure in heaven—and **come**, **follow** me." (Luke 18:21-22 ULT)

The ruler was speaking about just himself when he said "I." This shows us that when Jesus said "you" he was referring only to the ruler and he used the singular form. So languages that have singular and plural forms of "you" need the singular form here, as well as for the verbs "sell," distribute," "come," and "follow."

> The angel said to him, "**Dress yourself** and **put on your** sandals." So he did that. He said to him, "**Put on your** outer garment and **follow** me." (Acts 12:8 ULT)

The angel used singular forms here and the context makes it clear that he was speaking to one person and that only one person did what the the angel commanded. So languages that have singular and plural forms of "you" would need the singular form here for "yourself" and "your." Also, if verbs have different forms for singular and plural subjects, then the verbs "dress," "put on," and "follow" need the form that indicates a singular subject.

> All the ones {who are} with me greet **you**. **Greet** the ones loving us in faith. Grace {be} with all of **you**. (Titus 3:15 ULT)

Paul wrote this letter to one person, Titus, so most of the time the word "you" in this letter is singular and refers only to Titus. In this verse, the first "you" is singular, so the greeting is for Titus, as well as the instruction to greet the others there. The second "you," however, is plural, so the blessing is for Titus and for all of the believers there in Crete.

> "Having gone, **search** carefully for the young child, and after **you** have found him, **report** to me so that I also, having come, might worship him." (Matthew 2:8 ULT)

Since Herod is speaking to all of the learned men, the word "you" and the commands "search" and "report" are plural.

Strategies for finding out how many people "you" refers to

(1) Look at the notes to see if they tell whether "you" refers to one person or more than one person.
(2) Look at the UST to see if it says anything that would show you whether the word "you" refers to one person or more than one person.
(3) If you have a Bible that is written in a language that distinguishes "you" singular from "you" plural, see which form of "you" that Bible has in that sentence.
(4) Look at the context to see how many people the speaker was talking to and who responded.

You may also want to watch the video at https://ufw.io/figs_younum.

Revelation References:

Revelation 1:4 Revelation 2 Introduction Revelation 2:2 Revelation 2:10 Revelation 2:13 Revelation 2:23 Revelation 2:24 Revelation 2:25 Revelation 18:6 Revelation 18:20 Revelation 22:17

Collective Nouns

Description

A collective noun is a singular noun that refers to a group of something. Examples: a **family, clan,** or **tribe** is a group of people who are related to each other; a **flock** is a group of birds or sheep; a **fleet** is a group of ships; and an **army** is a group of soldiers.

Many collective nouns are used exclusively as a singular replacement for a group as in the examples above. Frequently in the Bible the name of an ancestor is used, through a process of metonymy, as a collective noun referencing the group of his descendants. In the Bible, sometimes the singular noun will take a singular verb form, other times it will take a plural verb form. This may depend on how the author is thinking about the group, or whether the action is being done as a group or as individuals.

Reason This is a Translation Issue

There are several issues that require care when translating collective nouns. Further care is needed because the language you are translating into may not use collective nouns in the same way as the language you are translating from. Issues include:

1. The source language may have a collective noun for a group that the target language does not and vice-versa. You may have to translate a collective noun with a plural noun in your language, or you may need to translate a plural noun with a collective noun in your language.
2. Subject-verb agreement. Different languages or dialects may have different rules about using singular or plural verbs with collective nouns. Examples (from Wikipedia):
   - a singular noun with a singular verb: The team *is* in the dressing room.
   - a singular noun with a plural verb which is correct in British, but not American, English: The team *are* fighting among themselves. The team *have* finished the project.

3. Pronoun agreement. Similar to the previous, care needs to be taken to use the correct pronoun plurality and possibly gender or noun class to agree with the number/gender/class of the noun used. See the biblical examples below.
4. Clarity of referent. Especially if there is a mismatch in your translation between the verb and noun or pronoun concerning any of the factors above, readers may be confused about who or what is being referenced.

Examples from the Bible

> And Joab and all the **army** which was with him arrived (2 Samuel 3:23a ULT)

The word in bold is written in singular form in both Hebrew and English, but it refers to a group of warriors that fight together.

> and though the **flock** is cut off from the fold and there are no cattle in the stalls. (Habakkuk 3:17b ULT)

The word in bold is singular and refers to a group of sheep.

> And he went out again beside the sea, and all the **crowd** was coming to him, and he was teaching **them**. (Mark 2:13 ULT)

Note in this example that the noun is singular but the pronoun is plural. This may or may not be allowed or natural in your language.

> Do not let **your heart** be troubled. **You** believe in God; believe also in me. (John 14:1 ULT)

In this verse, the words translated "your" and "you" are plural, referring to many people. The word "heart" is singular in form, but it refers to all of their hearts as a group.

> And he shall take the **hair** of the head of his separation. And he shall put **it** on the fire that is under the sacrifice of the peace offerings. (Num 6:18b ULT)

The word **hair** is singular, but it refers to many hairs, not just one.

> And Pharaoh said, "Who is Yahweh that I should listen to his voice to let **Israel** go? I do not know Yahweh; and moreover, I will not let **Israel** go." (Exodus 5:2 ULT)

Here, "Israel" is singular, but means "the Israelites" by metonymy.

Translation Strategies

If your language has a collective (singular) noun that refers to the same group as referenced by the collective noun in the source text, then translate the word using that term. If not, here are some strategies to consider:

(1) Translate the collective noun with a plural noun.
(2) Add a plural word to the collective noun so that you can use a plural verb and pronouns.
(3) Use a phrase to describe the group that the collective noun references. A useful strategy here can be to use a general collective noun that refers to a group of people or things.
(4) If your language uses a collective noun for something that is a plural noun in the source language, you can translate the plural noun as a collective noun and, if necessary, change the form of the verb and any pronouns so that they agree with the singular noun.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate the collective noun with a plural noun.

> And Pharaoh said, "Who is Yahweh that I should listen to his voice to let **Israel** go? I do not know Yahweh; and moreover, I will not let **Israel** go." (Exodus 5:2 ULT)

And Pharaoh said, "Who is Yahweh that I should listen to his voice to let **the Israelites** go? I do not know Yahweh; and moreover, I will not let **the Israelites** go."

> And he shall take the **hair** of the head of his separation. And he shall put **it** on the fire that is under the sacrifice of the peace offerings. (Num 6:18b ULT)

And he shall take the **hairs** of the head of his separation. And he shall put **them** on the fire that is under the sacrifice of the peace offerings.

(2) Add a plural word to the collective noun so that you can use a plural verb and pronouns.

> And Joab and all the **army** which was with him arrived (2 Samuel 3:23a ULT)

And Joab and all the **army men who were** with him arrived

> And he went out again beside the sea, and all the **crowd** was coming to him, and he was teaching **them**. (Mark 2:13 ULT)

And he went out again beside the sea, and all the **people of the crowd were** coming to him, and he was teaching **them**.

(3) Use a phrase to describe the group that the collective noun references. A useful strategy here can be to use a general collective noun that refers to a group of people or things.

> and though the **flock** is cut off from the fold and there are no cattle in the stalls. (Habakkuk 3:17b ULT)

and though the **group of sheep** is cut off from the fold and there are no cattle in the stalls.

> And Pharaoh said, “Who is Yahweh that I should listen to his voice to let **Israel** go? I do not know Yahweh; and moreover, I will not let **Israel** go.” (Exodus 5:2 ULT)

And Pharaoh said, “Who is Yahweh that I should listen to his voice to let **the people of Israel** go? I do not know Yahweh; and moreover, I will not let **the people of Israel** go.”

(4) If your language uses a collective noun for something that is a plural noun in the source language, you can translate the plural noun as a collective noun and, if necessary, change the form of the verb and any pronouns so that they agree with the singular noun.

> Now this John had his clothing from the **hairs** of a camel and a leather belt around his waist (Matthew 3:4a ULT)

Now this John had his clothing from the **hair** of a camel and a leather belt around his waist

> You shall not make for yourself a carved figure nor any likeness that {is} in **the heavens** above, or that {is} in the earth beneath, or that {is} in **the waters** under the earth. (Deuteronomy 5:8 ULT)

You shall not make for yourself a carved figure nor any likeness that is in **heaven** above, or that is in the earth beneath, or that is in **the water** under the earth.

Revelation References:

Revelation 11:5 Revelation 13:8 Revelation 14:5 Revelation 16:2 Revelation 17:17 Revelation 18:23 Revelation 20:4

Connect — Exception Clauses

Exceptional Relationship

Description

Exceptional relationship connectors exclude one or more items or people from a group.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

English indicates exceptional relationships by first describing a group (Part 1) and then stating what is not in that group by using words like “except,” “but not,” “other than,” “besides,” “unless,” “however … not,” and “only” (Part 2). Some languages do not indicate in this way that one or more items or people are excluded from a group. Instead, they have other ways of doing this. In some languages this type of construction does not make sense because the exception in Part 2 seems to contradict the statement in Part 1. Translators need to understand who (or what) is in the group and who (or what) is excluded in order to be able to accurately communicate this in their language.

Examples From OBS and the Bible

> God told Adam that he could eat from **any** tree in the garden **except** from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. (OBS Story 1 Frame 11)
>
> But if you will not redeem it, then tell me so that I may know, for there is **no one** to redeem it **besides** you, and I am after you. (Ruth 4:4b ULT)
>
> David attacked them from the twilight to the evening of the next day. **Not** a man escaped **except for** 400 young men, who rode on camels and fled. (1 Samuel 30:17 ULT)
>
> The man said, “Let me go, for the dawn is breaking.” Jacob said, “I will **not** let you go **unless** you bless me.” (Genesis 32:26 ULT)

Translation Strategies

If the way that Exceptional Clauses are marked in the source language is also clear in your language, then translate the Exceptional Clauses in the same way.

(1) Very often, the exception in Part 2 contradicts something that was negated in Part 1. In this case, the translator can phrase the same idea without the contradiction by deleting the negative and using a word like “**only**.”
(2) Reverse the order of the clauses so that the exception is stated first, and then the larger group is named second.

Examples of Translation Strategy Applied

(1) Very often, the exception in Part 2 contradicts something that was negated in Part 1. In this case, the translator can phrase the same idea without the contradiction by deleting the negative and using a word like “**only**.”

> David attacked them from the twilight to the evening of the next day. **Not a man escaped except for 400 young men**, who rode on camels and fled. (1 Samuel 30:17 ULT)

- Part 1: (**Not** a man escaped)
- Part 2: (**except for** 400 young men)

> > David attacked them from the twilight to the evening of the next day. **Only** 400 young men escaped; they rode on camels and fled.

> But if you will not redeem it, then tell me so that I may know, for there is **no one** to redeem it **besides** you, and I am after you. (Ruth 4:4 ULT)
>
> > But if you will not redeem it, then tell me so that I may know, for **you are first in line to redeem it {only you can redeem it}**, and I am after you.

> The man said, “Let me go, for the dawn is breaking.” Jacob said, “I will **not** let you go **unless** you bless me.” (Genesis 32:26 ULT)
>
> > The man said, “Let me go, for the dawn is breaking.” Jacob said, “I will let you go **only if** you bless me.”

(2) Reverse the order of the clauses, so that the exception is stated first, and then the larger group is named second.

> God told Adam that he could eat from **any** tree in the garden **except** from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. (OBS Story 1 Frame 11)
>
> > God told Adam that he could **not** eat from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil, but he could eat from **any other** tree in the garden.

Revelation References:

Revelation 2:17 Revelation 14:3 Revelation 19:12

Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

Logical Relationships

Some connectors establish logical relationships between two phrases, clauses, sentences, or chunks of text.

Goal (or Purpose) Relationship

Description

A Goal Relationship is a logical relationship in which the second event is the purpose or goal of the first event. In order for something to be a goal relationship, someone must do the first event with the intention that it will cause the second event.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

In Scripture, the goal or purpose may be stated either first or second. But in some languages, the goal or purpose must always occur in the same position (either first or second) in order for that logical relationship to be understood. You (the translator) need to understand the relationship between the two parts and communicate those accurately in your language. This may require changing the order of the two events. It may also require specific words to indicate that one is the goal or purpose of the other. Words commonly used to indicate a goal relationship in English are “in order to,” “in order that” or “so that.” It is important that the translator recognize the words that signal a goal relationship and translate that relationship in a natural way.

Examples From OBS and the Bible

> She became angry and falsely accused Joseph **so that he was arrested and sent to prison**. (Story 8 Frame 5 OBS)

The goal or purpose of the woman’s false accusation was to get Joseph arrested and sent to prison.

> Meanwhile Gideon, his son, was threshing out wheat at the winepress **in order to hide from the presence of Midian**. (Judges 6:11b ULT)

Here the prepositional phrase begins with "in order to."

> Now if I have found favor in your eyes, show me your ways **so that I may know you and continue to find favor in your eyes**. Remember that this nation is your people. (Exodus 33:13 ULT)

Moses wants God to show him God's ways for the goal or purpose of Moses knowing God and continuing to find favor with God.

> Even be sure to pull some out from the bundles for her and leave it **for her to glean**, and do not rebuke her! (Ruth 2:16 ULT)

The goal or purpose of Boaz instructing the men to pull out the grain from their bundles and leave it was for Ruth to gather (glean) it.

> The shepherds said to each other, "Let us indeed go over as far as Bethlehem, **and let us see this thing that has happened**, which the Lord has made known to us." (Luke 2:15 ULT)

The purpose of going to Bethlehem was to see the thing that had happened. Here the purpose is not marked and might be misunderstood.

> "… if you want **to enter into life**, keep the commandments." (Matthew 19:17b ULT)

The goal of keeping the commandments is to enter into life.

> Do not turn from it to the right or to the left **so that you may be wise** in everything in which you walk. (Joshua 1:7c ULT)

The purpose of not turning away from the instructions that Moses gave to the Israelites was so that they would be wise.

> But when the vine growers saw the son, they said among themselves, 'This is the heir. Come, let us kill him **and take over his inheritance**.' So they took him, threw him out of the vineyard and killed him. (Matt 21:38-39 ULT)

The purpose of the vine growers killing the heir was so they could take his inheritance. They state both events as a plan, joining them only with "and." Then the word "so" marks the reporting of the first event, but the second event (the goal or purpose) is not stated.

Translation Strategies

If your language uses Goal or Purpose relationships in the same way as in the text, then use them as they are.

(1) If the construction of the Goal statement is unclear, change it to one that is more clear. (2) If the order of the statements makes the Goal statement unclear or confusing for the reader, then change the order.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the construction of the goal statement is unclear, change it to one that is more clear.

> "Even be sure to pull some out from the bundles for her and leave it **for her to glean**, and do not rebuke her!" (Ruth 2:16 ULT)
>
> > "Even be sure to pull some out from the bundles for her and leave it **so that she can glean it**, and do not rebuke her!"

> The shepherds said to each other, "Let us indeed go over as far as Bethlehem, **and let us see this thing that has happened**, which the Lord has made known to us." (Luke 2:15 ULT)
>
> > The shepherds said to each other, "Let us indeed go over as far as Bethlehem **so that we can see this thing that has happened**, which the Lord has made known to us."

(2) If the order of the statements makes the goal statement unclear or confusing for the reader, then change the order.

> "… if you want **to enter into life**, keep the commandments." (Matthew 19:17bULT)
>
> > "… keep the commandments if you want **to enter into life**." or: "… keep the commandments **so that you can enter into life**."

> But when the vine growers saw the son, they said among themselves, 'This is the heir. Come, let us kill him **and take over his inheritance**.' So they took him, threw him out of the vineyard and killed him. (Matt 21:38-39 ULT)

(1) and (2)

> But when the vine growers saw the son, they said among themselves, 'This is the heir. Come, let us kill him **and take over his inheritance**.' So they took him, threw him out of the vineyard and killed him. (Matt 21:38-39 ULT)
>
> > But when the vine growers saw the son, they said among themselves, 'This is the heir. Come, let us kill him **so that we can take over his inheritance**.' So they took him, threw him out of the vineyard and killed him **so that they could take over his inheritance**.

Revelation References:

Revelation 2:10 Revelation 5:3

Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

Logical Relationships

Some connectors establish logical relationships between two phrases, clauses, sentences, or chunks of text.

Reason-and-Result Relationships

Description

A reason-and-result relationship is a logical relationship in which one event is the **reason** or cause for another event. The second event, then, is the **result** of the first event.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

A reason-and-result relationship can look forward — "I did Y because I wanted X to happen." But usually it is looking backward — "X happened, and so I did Y." Also, it is possible to state the reason either before or after the result. Many languages have a preferred order for the reason and the result, and it will be confusing for the reader if they are in the opposite order. Common words used to indicate a reason-and-result relationship in English are "because," "so," "therefore," and "for." Some of these words can also be used to indicate a goal relationship, so translators need to be aware of the difference between a goal relationship and a reason-and-result relationship. It is necessary for translators to understand how the two events are connected, and then communicate them clearly in their language.

If the reason and result are stated in different verses, it is still possible to put them in a different order. If you change the order of the verses, then put the verse numbers together at the beginning of the group of verses that were rearranged like this: 1-2. This is called a Verse Bridge.

Examples From OBS and the Bible

> The Jews were amazed, **because** Saul had tried to kill believers, and now he believed in Jesus! (Story 46 Frame 6 OBS)

The **reason** is the change in Saul — that he had tried to kill people who believed in Jesus, and now he himself believed in Jesus. The **result** is that the Jews were amazed. "Because" connects the two ideas and indicates that what follows it is a reason.

> Behold, a great storm arose on the sea, **so that** the boat was covered with the waves. (Matthew 8:24a ULT)

The **reason** is the great storm, and the **result** is that the boat was covered with the waves. The two events are connected by "so that." Notice that the term "so that" often indicates a goal relationship, but here the relationship is reason-and-result. This is because the sea cannot think and therefore does not have a goal.

> God blessed the seventh day and sanctified it, **because** in it he rested from all his work which he had done in his creation. (Genesis 2:3 ULT)

The **result** is that God blessed and sanctified the seventh day. The **reason** is because he rested on the seventh day from his work.

> "Blessed are the poor, **for** yours is the kingdom of God." (Luke 6:20b ULT)

The **result** is that the poor are blessed. The **reason** is that the kingdom of God is theirs.

> But he raised up in their place their sons that Joshua circumcised, being uncircumcised, **because** they had not been circumcised on the way. (Joshua 5:7 ULT)

The **result** is that Joshua circumcised the boys and men who had been born in the wilderness. The **reason** was that they had not been circumcised while they were journeying.

Translation Strategies

If your language uses reason-and-result relationships in the same way as in the text, then use them as they are.

(1) If the order of the clauses is confusing for the reader, then change the order.

(2) If the relationship between the clauses is not clear, then use a more clear connecting word.

(3) If it is more clear to put a connecting word in the clause that does not have one, then do so.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

> God blessed the seventh day and sanctified it, **because** in it he rested from all his work which he had done in his creation. (Genesis 2:3 ULT)

(1) God rested on the seventh day from all his work which he had done in his creation. **That is why** he blessed the seventh day and sanctified it.

> Blessed are the poor, **for** yours is the kingdom of God. (Luke 6:20 ULT)

(1) The kingdom of God belongs to you who are poor. **Therefore**, the poor are blessed.

(2) Blessed are the poor, **because** yours is the kingdom of God.

(3) **The reason that** the poor are blessed **is because** yours is the kingdom of God.

> Behold, a great storm arose on the sea, **so that** the boat was covered with the waves. (Matthew 8:24a ULT)

(1) Behold, the boat was covered with the waves **because** a great storm arose on the sea.

(2) Behold, a great storm arose on the sea, **with the result that** the boat was covered with the waves.

(3) Behold, **because** a great storm arose on the sea, the boat was covered with the waves.

> **Since** he was not able to find out anything for certain because of the noise, he ordered that he be brought into the fortress. (Acts 21:34b ULT)

(1) The captain ordered that Paul be brought into the fortress, **because** he could not tell anything because of all the noise.

(2) **Because** the captain could not tell anything because of all the noise, he ordered that Paul be brought into the fortress.

(3) The captain could not tell anything because of all the noise, **so** he ordered that Paul be brought into the fortress.

Revelation References:

Revelation 5:4 Revelation 5:5 Revelation 11:10 Revelation 14:13

Translating Son and Father

Door43 supports Bible translations that represent these concepts when they refer to God.

Biblical Witness

"Father" and "Son" are names that God calls himself in the Bible.

The Bible shows that God called Jesus his Son:

> After he was baptized, Jesus came up immediately from the water, and … a voice came out of the heavens saying, "**This is my beloved Son**. I am very pleased with him." (Matthew 3:16-17 ULT)

The Bible shows that Jesus called God his Father:

> Jesus … said, "I praise you **Father**, Lord of heaven and earth … no one knows the **Son** except the **Father**, and no one knows the **Father** except the **Son**." (Matthew 11:25a, 27b ULT) (See also: John 6:26-57)

Christians have found that "Father" and "Son" are the ideas that most essentially describe the eternal relationship of the First and Second Persons of the Trinity to each other. The Bible indeed refers to them in various ways, but no other terms reflect the eternal love and intimacy between these Persons, nor the interdependent eternal relationship between them.

Jesus referred to God in the following terms:

> Baptize them into **the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit**. (Matthew 28:19b ULT)

The intimate, loving relationship between the Father and the Son is eternal, just as they are eternal. The Father **loves** the Son. (See John 3:35-36; 5:19-20 ULT)

> I **love** the Father, and just as the Father commanded me, thus I do. (John 14:31 ULT)
>
> **No one knows who the Son is except the Father, and who the Father is except the Son**. (Luke 10:22b ULT)

The terms "Father" and "Son" also communicate that the Father and the Son are of the same essence; they are both eternal God.

> Jesus said, "Father, … glorify your Son so that the Son will glorify you … I glorified you on the earth … Now Father, glorify me … with the glory that **I had with you before the world was made**." (John 17:1, 4a, 5 ULT)
>
> But in these last days, {God the Father} has spoken to us through a Son, whom he appointed to be the heir of all things. Through him, he also made the universe. He is the brightness of God's glory and **the very exact representation of his being**. He holds everything together by the word of his power. (Hebrews 1:2-3a ULT)
>
> Jesus said to him, "I have been with you for so long and you still do not know me, Philip? **Whoever has seen me has seen the Father**. How can you say, 'Show us the Father'?" (John 14:9 ULT)

Human Relationships

Human fathers and sons are not perfect, but the Bible still uses those terms for the Father and Son, who are perfect.

Just as today, human father-son relationships during Bible times were never as loving or perfect as the relationship between Jesus and his Father. But this does not mean that the translator should avoid the concepts of father and son. The Scriptures use these terms to refer to God, the perfect Father and Son, as well as to sinful human fathers and sons. In referring to God as Father and Son, choose words in your language that are widely used to refer to a human "father" and "son." In this way you will communicate that God the Father and God the Son are of the same divine essence (they are both God), just as a human father and son are of the same human essence (they are both human and share the same human characteristics).

Translation Strategies

(1) Think through all the possibilities within your language to translate the words "son" and "father." Determine which words in your language best represent the divine "Son" and "Father."
(2) If your language has more than one word for "son," use the word that has the closest meaning to "only son" (or "first son" if necessary).
(3) If your language has more than one word for "father," use the word that has the closest meaning to "birth father," rather than "adoptive father."

(See *God the Father* and *Son of God* pages in unfoldingWord® Translation Words for help translating "Father" and "Son.")

Revelation References:

Revelation 1:6 Revelation 2:18 Revelation 2:28 Revelation 3:5 Revelation 3:21 Revelation 14:1

Biblical Distance

Description

The following terms are the most common measures for distance or length that were originally used in the Bible. Most of these are based on the sizes of the hand and forearm.

- The **handbreadth** was the width of the palm of a man's hand.
- The **span** or handspan was the width of a man's hand with the fingers spread out.
- The **cubit** was the length of a man's forearm, from the elbow to the tip of the longest finger.
- The **"long" cubit** is used only in Ezekiel 40-48. It is the length of a normal cubit plus a span.
- The **stadium** (plural, **stadia**) referred to a certain footrace that was about 185 meters in length. Some older English versions translated this word as "furlong," which referred to the average length of a plowed field.

The metric values in the table below are close but not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures probably differed in exact length from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are an attempt to give an average measurement.

Original Measure	Metric Measure
handbreadth	8 centimeters
span	23 centimeters
cubit	46 centimeters
"long" cubit	54 centimeters
stadia	185 meters

Translation Principles

1. The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
2. Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
3. Whatever measure you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kind of measure in the text or a footnote.
4. If you do not use the Biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one cubit as ".46 meters" or even as "46 centimeters," readers might think that the measurement is exact. It would be better to say "half a meter," "45 centimeters," or "50 centimeters."
5. Sometimes it can be helpful to use the word "about" to show that a measurement is not exact. For example, Luke 24:13 says that Emmaus was 60 stadia from Jerusalem. This can be translated as "about ten kilometers" from Jerusalem.
6. When God tells people how long something should be, and when people make things according to those lengths, do not use "about" in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how long something should be.

Translation Strategies

(1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)
(2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
(3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
(4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
(5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Exodus 25:10 below.

> They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be two and a half cubits; its width will be one cubit and a half; and its height will be one cubit and a half. (Exodus 25:10 ULT)

(1) Use the measurements given in the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)

> "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **two and a half kubits**; its width will be **one kubit and a half**; and its height will be **one kubit and a half**."

(2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

> "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter**; its width will be **two thirds of a meter**; and its height will be **two thirds of a meter**."

(3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement. For example, if you measure things using the standard meter length, you could translate it as below.

> "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter**; its width will be **two thirds of a meter**; and its height will be **two thirds of a meter**."

(4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note. The following shows both measurements in the text.

> "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **two and a half cubits (one meter)**; its width will be **one cubit and a half (two thirds of a meter)**; and its height will be **one cubit and a half (two thirds of a meter)**."

(5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note. The following shows the ULT measurements in notes.

> "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter**; [1] its width will be **two thirds of a meter**; [2] and its height will be **two thirds of a meter**."

The footnotes would look like:

> "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter**; [1] its width will be **two thirds of a meter**; [2] and its height will be **two thirds of a meter**."

The footnotes would look like:

> [1] two and a half cubits
> [2] one cubit and a half

Revelation References:

Revelation 14:20 Revelation 21:16 Revelation 21:17

Blessings

Description

Blessings are short sayings that people use to ask God to do something good for another person. In the Bible, the person saying the blessing speaks or writes directly to the person who will receive the blessing. The person who says the blessing does not directly speak to God, but it is understood that God is the one who will do the good thing mentioned. It is also understood that God hears the blessing, whether he is mentioned by name or not.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Each language has its own ways of saying blessings. There are many blessings in the Bible. They need to be translated in the way that people say blessings in your language, so that people recognize them as blessings and understand what one person wants God to do for another.

Examples From the Bible

In the Bible, people often said a blessing when they met someone or when they were leaving someone or sending someone off.

In the book of Ruth, when Boaz meets his workers in the fields, he greets them with a blessing:

> Then behold, Boaz coming from Bethlehem! And he said to the reapers, “Yahweh be with you.” And they said to him, “May Yahweh bless you.” (Ruth 2:4 ULT)

Similarly, when Rebekah leaves her family, they say farewell with a blessing:

> They blessed Rebekah, and said to her, “Our sister, may you be the mother of thousands of ten thousands, and may your descendants possess the gate of those who hate them.” (Genesis 24:60 ULT)

In a similar way, the writers of letters in the New Testament often wrote a blessing at the beginning of their letters as well as at the end. Here are examples from the beginning and end of Paul’s second letter to Timothy:

> Grace, mercy, and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Lord. (2 Tim 1:2 ULT)
> The Lord be with your spirit. Grace be with you. (2 Tim 4:22 ULT)

Translation Strategies

Find out how people say blessings in your language. Collect a list of common blessings, noting the form of the verb, the use of certain words, and the words that are not used in a blessing but would normally be in a sentence. Also find out what differences there might be between blessings that people use when they are speaking to each other and when they are writing to each other.

If translating a blessing literally would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing that. If not, here are some options:

1. Add a verb if that is natural in your language.
2. Mention God as the subject of a blessing if that is natural in your language.
3. Translate the blessing in a form that is natural and clear in your language.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add a verb if that is natural in your language.

> The Lord with your spirit. The grace with you. (2 Tim 4:22, literal from the Greek)

In the Greek of this verse, there is no verb ‘be.’ However, in blessings in English, it is natural to use a verb. The idea that the ‘grace’ from God will be or remain with the person is implied in Greek.

The Lord **be** with your spirit. Grace **be** with you. (2 Tim 4:22 ULT)

(2) Mention God as the subject of a blessing if that is natural in your language.

If people expect a blessing to refer to God in your language, you might have to provide ‘God’ as the subject or as the source of the blessing. In Greek and Hebrew, usually God is not explicitly mentioned in the blessing, but it is implied that God is the one acting to show his kindness to the person being addressed.

> The Lord be with your spirit. Grace be with you. (2 Tim 4:22 ULT)

The Lord be with your spirit. **May God give** grace to you.

> They blessed Rebekah, and said to her, “Our sister, may you be the mother of thousands of ten thousands, and may your descendants possess the gate of those who hate them.” (Genesis 24:60 ULT)

They blessed Rebekah, and said to her, “Our sister, may **God grant that** you be the mother of thousands of ten thousands, and may **God empower** your descendants **to** possess the gate of those who hate them.”

(3) Translate the blessing in a form that is natural and clear in your language.

Here are some ideas for ways that people might say a blessing in their language.

> The Lord be with your spirit. Grace be with you. (2 Tim 4:22 ULT)

May the Lord be with your spirit. May God cause his grace to be with you.

May you have God’s presence with you. May you experience grace from God.

> “Our sister, may you be the mother of thousands of ten thousands, and may your descendants possess the gate of those who hate them.” (Genesis 24:60 ULT)

“Our sister, we pray to God that you may be the mother of thousands of ten thousands, and appeal to him that your descendants may possess the gate of those who hate them.”

“Our sister, by God’s power you will be the mother of thousands of ten thousands, and your descendants will possess the gate of those who hate them.”

Revelation References:

Revelation 1:4 Revelation 22:21

Biblical Money

Description

In early Old Testament times, people weighed their metals, such as silver and gold, and would pay a certain weight of that metal in order to buy things. Later, people started to make coins that each contained a standard amount of a certain metal. The daric is one such coin. In New Testament times, people used silver and copper coins.

The two tables below show some of the most well-known units of money found in the Old Testament (OT) and New Testament (NT). The table for Old Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it weighed. The table for New Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it was worth in terms of a day's wage.

Unit in OT	**Metal**	**Weight**
daric	gold coin	8.4 grams
shekel	various metals	11 grams
talent	various metals	33 kilograms
Unit in NT	**Metal**	**Day's Wage**
denarius/ denarii	silver coin	1 day
drachma	silver coin	1 day
mite	copper coin	1/64 day
shekel	silver coin	4 days
talent	silver	6,000 days

Translation Principle

Do not use modern money values since these change from year to year. Using them will cause the Bible translation to become outdated and inaccurate.

Translation Strategies

The value of most money in the Old Testament was based on its weight. So when translating these weights in the Old Testament, see Biblical Weight. The strategies below are for translating the value of money in the New Testament.

(1) Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)
(2) Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many coins were used.
(3) Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.
(4) Use the biblical term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a footnote.
(5) Use the biblical term and explain it in a footnote.

Translation Strategies Applied

The translations strategies are all applied to Luke 7:41 below.

> The one owed 500 denarii, and the other, 50. (Luke 7:41b ULT)

1. Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)

> "The one owed **500 denali**, and the other, **50**."

1. Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many pieces or coins were used.

> "The one owed **500 silver coins**, and the other, **50**."

(3) Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.

> "The one owed **500 days' wages**, and the other, **50**."

(4) Use the Bible term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a footnote.

> "The one owed **500 denarii** 1, and the other owed **50 denarii**. 2"

The footnotes would look like:

> [1] 500 days' wages [2] 50 days' wages

(5) Use the Bible term and explain it in a footnote.

> "The one owed **500 denarii**,1 and the other, **50**." (Luke 7:41 ULT)

> [1] A denarius was the amount of silver that people could earn in one day of work.

Revelation References:

Revelation 6:6

Biblical Volume

Description

The following terms are the most common units of volume used in the Bible to state how much a certain container could hold. The containers and measurements are given for both liquids (such as wine) and dry solids (such as grain). The metric values are not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures probably differed in exact amount from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are an attempt to give an average measurement.

Type	Original Measure	Liters
Dry	omer	2 liters
Dry	ephah	22 liters
Dry	homer	220 liters
Dry	cor	220 liters
Dry	seah	7.7 liters
Dry	lethek	114.8 liters
Liquid	metrete	40 liters
Liquid	bath	22 liters
Liquid	hin	3.7 liters
Liquid	kab	1.23 liters
Liquid	log	0.31 liters

Translation Principles

- The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
- Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
- Whatever measures you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kinds of measures in the text or a footnote.

- If you do not use the biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one hin as "3.7 liters," readers might think that the measurement is exactly 3.7 liters, not 3.6 or 3.8. It would be better to use a more approximate measure such as "three and a half liters" or "four liters."
- When God tells people how much of something to use, and when people use those amounts in obedience to him, do not say "about" in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how much they used.

When the unit of measure is stated

Translation Strategies

(1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)
(2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
(3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
(4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
(5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Isaiah 5:10 below.

> For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only one bath, and one homer of seed will yield only an ephah. (Isaiah 5:10 ULT)

(1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)

> "For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only one **bat**, and one **homer** of seed will yield only an **efa**."

(2) Use the measurements given in the UST. Usually they are metric measurements. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

> "For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only **22 liters** and **220 liters** of seed will yield only **22 liters**."

> "For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only **22**, and **ten baskets** of seed will yield only **one basket**."

(3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

> "For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only **six gallons**, and **six and a half bushels** of seed will yield only **20 quarts**."

(4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note. The following shows both measurements in the text.

> "For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only **one bath (six gallons)**, and **one homer (six and a half bushels)** of seed will yield only **an ephah (20 quarts)**."

(5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note. The following shows the ULT measurements in footnotes.

> "For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only 22 liters[1], and 220 liters[2] of seed will yield only 22 liters[3]."

The footnotes would look like:

> [1] one bath
> [2] one homer
> [3] one ephah

When the unit of measure is implied

Sometimes the Hebrew does not specify a particular unit of volume but only uses a number. In these cases, many English versions, including the ULT and UST, add the word "measure."

> When you came to a heap of **20 measures** of grain, there were only **ten**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **50 measures** of wine, there were only 20. (Haggai 2:16 ULT)

Translation Strategies

(1) Translate literally by using the number without a unit.
(2) Use a generic word like "measure" or "quantity" or "amount."
(3) Use the name of an appropriate container, such as "basket" for grain or "jar" for wine.
(4) Use a unit of measure that you are already using in your translation.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Haggai 2:16 below.

> When you came to a heap of **20 measures** of grain, there were only **ten**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **fifty measures** of wine, there were only **20**. (Haggai 2:16 ULT)

(1) Translate literally by using the number without a unit.

> When you came to a heap of **20** of grain, there were only **ten**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **50** of wine, there were only **20**.

(2) Use a generic word like "measure" or "quantity" or "amount."

> When you came to a heap of **20 amounts** of grain, there were only **ten**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **fifty amounts** of wine, there were only **20**.

(3) Use the name of an appropriate container, such as "basket" for grain or "jar" for wine.

> When you came to a heap of **20 baskets** of grain, there were only **ten**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **50 jars** of wine, there were only **20**.

(4) Use a unit of measure that you are already using in your translation.

> When you came to a heap for **20 liters** of grain, there were only **ten liters**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **50 liters** of wine, there were only **20 liters**.

Revelation References:

Revelation 6:6

Biblical Weight

Description

The following terms are the most common units of weight in the Bible. The term "shekel" means "weight," and many other weights are described in terms of the shekel. Some of these weights were used for money. The metric values in the table below are not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures differed in exact amount from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are only an attempt to give an average measurement.

Original Measure	Shekels	Grams	Kilograms
shekel	1 shekel	11 grams	-
bekah	1/2 shekel	5.7 grams	-
pim	2/3 shekel	7.6 grams	-
gerah	1/20 shekel	0.57 grams	-
mina	50 shekels	550 grams	1/2 kilogram
talent	3,000 shekels	-	34 kilograms

Translation Principles

1. The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
2. Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
3. Whatever measure you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kind of measure in the text or a footnote.
4. If you do not use the biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one gerah as ".57 grams," readers might think that the measurement is exact. It would be better to say "half a gram."
5. Sometimes it can be helpful to use the word "about" to show that a measurement is not exact. For example, 2 Samuel 21:16 says that Goliath's spear weighed 300 shekels. Instead of translating this as "3300 grams" or "3.3 kilograms," it can be translated as "about three and one half kilograms."
6. When God tells people how much something should weigh, and when people use those weights, do not say "about" in the translation. Otherwise, it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how much the thing should weigh.

Translation Strategies

(1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)
(2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
(3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this, you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
(4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
(5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Exodus 38:29 below.

> The bronze from the wave offering weighed **70 talents and 2,400 shekels**. (Exodus 38:29 ULT)

(1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)

> "The bronze from the wave offering weighed **70 talents and 2,400 sekeles**."

(2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

> "The bronze from the wave offering weighed **2,400 kilograms**."

(3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

> "The bronze from the wave offering weighed **5,300 pounds**."

(4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a footnote. The following shows both measurements in the text.

> "The bronze from the wave offering weighed **70 talents (2,380 kilograms)** and **2,400 shekels (26.4 kilograms)**."

(5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a footnote. The following shows the ULT measurements in notes.

> "The bronze from the offering weighed **70 talents and 2,400 shekels**. 1"

The footnote would look like:

> [1] This was a total of about 2,400 kilograms.

Revelation References:

Revelation 16:21

Fractions

Description

A fraction is a number that represents part of a whole. When an item is divided into several equal parts, a fraction refers to one or more of those parts.

For the drink offering, you must offer **a third** of a hin of wine. (Numbers 15:7a ULT)

A hin is a container of a set size which is used for measuring wine and other liquids. The people were to think about dividing a hin container into three equal parts, filling up only one of those parts and offering that amount.

> … **a third** of the ships were destroyed. (Revelation 8:9b ULT)

There were many ships. If all those ships were divided into three equal groups of ships, one group of ships was destroyed.

Most fractions in English simply have the letters "th" added to the end of the number, such as fourth, sixth, ninth, tenth.

| Number of parts the whole is divided into | Fraction | | -------- | -------- | | four | fourth | | ten | tenth | | one hundred | one hundredth | | one thousand | one thousandth |

Some fractions in English do not follow that pattern.

| Number of parts the whole is divided into | Fraction | | -------- | -------- | | two | half | | three | third | | five | fifth |

Reason This is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not use fractions. They may simply talk about parts or groups, but they do not use fractions to tell how big a part is or how many parts are included in a group.

Examples From the Bible

> Now to the **half-tribe** of Manasseh, Moses had given a possession in Bashan, but to the other **half**, Joshua gave a possession among their brothers across the Jordan on the west. (Joshua 22:7 ULT)

The tribe of Manasseh divided into two groups. The phrase "the half-tribe of Manasseh" refers one of those groups. The phrase "the other half" refers to the other group.

> So the four angels who had been prepared for that hour, that day, that month, and that year, were released so that they would kill **a third** of mankind. (Revelation 9:15 ULT)

If all the people in the world were to be divided into three equal groups, then the number of people in one group would be killed.

> You must also prepare **a fourth** of a hin of wine as the drink offering. (Numbers 15:5 ULT)

They were to imagine dividing a hin of wine into four equal parts and prepare the amount equal to one of them.

Translation Strategies

If a fraction in your language would give the right meaning, consider using it. If not, you could consider these strategies.

(1) Tell the number of parts or groups that the item would be divided into, and then tell the number of parts or groups that is being referred to.
(2) For measurements such as for weight and length, use a unit that your people might know or the unit in the UST.
(3) For measurements, use ones that are used in your language. In order to do that you would need to know how your measurements relates to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

Examples of These Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Tell the number of parts or groups that the item would be divided into, and then tell the number of parts or groups that is being referred to.

> **A third** of the ocean became red like blood (Revelation 8:8 ULT)
>
> > It was like they **divided** the ocean **into three parts**, and **one part** of the ocean became blood.

Then you must offer with the bull a grain offering of **three-tenths** of an ephah of fine flour mixed with **half a hin** of oil. (Numbers 15:9 ULT)

> … then you must **divide** an ephah of fine flour **into ten parts** and **divide** a hin of oil **into two parts**. Then mix **three of those parts** of the flour with **one of the parts** of oil. Then you must offer that grain offering along with the bull.

(2) For measurements, use the measurements that are given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

> … **two-thirds of a shekel** … (1 Samuel 13:21b ULT)
>
> … **eight grams** of silver … (1 Samuel 13:21b UST)
>
> … **three-tenths of an ephah** of fine flour mixed with **half a hin** of oil. (Numbers 15:9b ULT)
>
> > … **six and one-half liters** of finely ground flour mixed with **two liters** of olive oil. (Numbers 15:9b UST)

(3) For measurements, use ones that are used in your language. In order to do that you would need to know how your measurements relates to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

> … **three-tenths of an ephah** of fine flour mixed with **half a hin** of oil. (Numbers 15:9b ULT)
>
> > **six quarts** of fine flour mixed with **two quarts** of oil.

Revelation References:

Revelation 6:8 Revelation 8 Introduction Revelation 8:8 Revelation 9:15 Revelation 12:4

How to Translate Names

Description

The Bible contains the names of many people, groups of people, and places. Some of these names may sound strange and be hard to say. Sometimes readers may not know what a name refers to, and sometimes they may need to understand what a name means. This page will help you see how you can translate these names and how you can help people understand what they need to know about them.

Meaning of names

Most names in the Bible have meaning. Most of the time, names in the Bible are used simply to identify the people and places they refer to, but sometimes the meaning of a name is especially important.

> For this **Melchizedek**, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, was the one who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him. (Hebrews 7:1 ULT)

Here the writer uses the name “Melchizedek” primarily to refer to a man who had that name, and the title “king of Salem” tells us that he ruled over a certain city.

> His name first indeed means “king of righteousness,” and then also “king of Salem,” that is, “king of peace.” (Hebrews 7:2b ULT)

Here the writer explains the meanings of Melchizedek’s name and title because those things tell us more about the person. Other times, the writer does not explain the meaning of a name because he expects the reader to already know the meaning. If the meaning of the name is important to understand the passage, you can include the meaning in the text or in a footnote.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Readers may not know some of the names in the Bible. They may not know whether a name refers to a person or place or something else.
- Readers may need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand the passage.
- Some names may have different sounds or combinations of sounds that are not used in your language or are unpleasant to say in your language. For strategies to address this problem, see Borrow Words.
- Some people and places in the Bible have two names. Readers may not realize that two names refer to the same person or place.

Examples From the Bible

> Then you crossed over the **Jordan** and came to **Jericho**, and the men of Jericho, and the **Amorites** … fought against you, but I gave them into your hand. (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

Readers might not know that "Jordan" is the name of a river, "Jericho" is the name of a city, and "Amorites" is the name of a group of people.

> She said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?" Therefore, the well was called **Beer Lahai Roi**. (Genesis 16:13b-14a ULT)

Readers may not understand the second sentence if they do not know that "Beer Lahai Roi" means "Well of the Living One who sees me."

> And she called his name **Moses** and she said, "For out of the water I drew him." (Exodus 2:10b ULT)

Readers may not understand why she said this if they do not know that the name Moses sounds like the Hebrew words "pull out."

> **Saul** was in agreement with his execution. (Acts 8:1a ULT)
>
> But when the apostles, Barnabas and **Paul**, heard of it, they tore their clothing. (Acts 14:14a ULT)

Readers may not know that the names Saul and Paul refer to the same person.

Translation Strategies

(1) If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.
(2) If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
(3) Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.
(4) If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.
(5) Or if a person or place has two different names, then use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

> Then you crossed over the **Jordan** and came to **Jericho**, and the men of Jericho, and the **Amorites** … fought against you, but I gave them into your hand. (Joshua 24:11 ULT)
>
> > You went over the **Jordan River** and came to the **city of Jericho**. The men of Jericho fought against you, along with **the tribe of the Amorites.**
>
> At that hour, certain Pharisees approached, saying to him, "Leave and go away from here, because **Herod** wants to kill you." (Luke 13:31 ULT)
>
> > At that hour, certain Pharisees approached, saying to him, "Go and leave here, because **King Herod** wants to kill you."

(2) If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.

> And she called his name **Moses** and she said, "For out of the water I drew him." (Exodus 2:10b ULT)
>
> > She called his name **Moses (which sounds like 'drawn out'),** and she said, "For out of the water I drew him."

(3) Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.

> She said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?" Therefore, the well was called **Beer Lahai Roi**. (Genesis 16:13b-14a ULT)
>
> > She said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?" Therefore, the well was called **Well of the Living One who sees me**.

(4) If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently. For example, Paul is called "Saul" before Acts 13 and "Paul" after Acts 13. You could translate his name as "Paul" all of the time, except in Acts 13:9 where it talks about him having both names.

> … a young man named **Saul**. (Acts 7:58b ULT)
>
> > … a young man named **Paul** 1

The footnote would look like:

> > [1] Most versions say "Saul" here, but most of the time in the Bible he is called "Paul."

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

> But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)
>
> > But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

(5) Or if a person or place has two names, use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name. For example, you could write "Saul" where the source text has "Saul" and "Paul" where the source text has "Paul."

> a young man named **Saul** (Acts 7:58 ULT)
>
> > a young man named **Saul**

The footnote would look like:

> > [1] This is the same man who is called Paul beginning in Acts 13.

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

> But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)
>
> > But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

Then after the story has explained the name change, you could translate this way.

> It came about in Iconium that **Paul** and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULT)

> > It came about in Iconium that **Paul**[1] and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue

The footnote would look like:

> > [1] This is the same man who was called Saul before Acts 13.

Revelation References:

Revelation Introduction Revelation 1:1 Revelation 1:11 Revelation 2:6 Revelation 2:13 Revelation 2:14 Revelation 2:15 Revelation 2:20 Revelation 3:12 Revelation 7:5 Revelation 7:6 Revelation 7:7 Revelation 7:8 Revelation 9:14 Revelation 12:9 Revelation 14:1 Revelation 14:8 Revelation 16:12 Revelation 16:16 Revelation 17:5 Revelation 19:11 Revelation 20:8

Numbers

Description

There are many numbers in the Bible. They can be written as words (“five”) or as numerals (“5”). Some numbers are very large, such as “two hundred” (200), “twenty-two thousand” (22,000), or “one hundred million” (100,000,000). Some languages do not have words for all of these numbers. Translators need to decide how to translate numbers and whether to write them as words or numerals.

Some numbers are exact and others are rounded.

> Abram was **86** years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULT)

Eighty-six (86) is an exact number.

> That day about **3,000** of the people died. (Exodus 32:28b ULT)

Here the number three thousand (3,000) is a round number. It may have been a little more than that or a little less than that. The word “about” shows that it is not an exact number.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not have words for some of these numbers.

Translation Principles

- Exact numbers should be translated as closely and specifically as they can be.
- Rounded numbers can be translated more generally.

Examples From the Bible

> When Jared had lived **162** years, he became the father of Enoch. After he became the father of Enoch, Jared lived **800** years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Jared lived **962** years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:18-20 ULT)

The numbers 162, 800, and 962 are exact numbers and should be translated with something as close to those numbers as possible.

> Our sister, may you be the mother of **thousands of ten thousands.** (Genesis 24:60b ULT)

This is a rounded number. It does not say exactly how many descendants she should have, but it was a huge number of them.

Translation Strategies

(1) Write numbers using numerals.
(2) Write numbers using your language's words or the Gateway Language words for those numbers.
(3) Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parentheses after them.
(4) Combine words for large numbers.
(5) Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

We will use the following verse in our examples:

> Now, see, at great effort I have prepared for Yahweh's house **100,000** talents of gold, **1,000,000** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities. (1 Chronicles 22:14a ULT)

(1) Write numbers using numerals.

> I have prepared for Yahweh's house **100,000** talents of gold, **1,000,000** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(2) Write numbers using your language's words or the Gateway Language words for those numbers.

> I have prepared for Yahweh's house **one hundred thousand** talents of gold, **one million** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(3) Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.

> I have prepared for Yahweh's house one **hundred thousand (100,000)** talents of gold, **one million (1,000,000)** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(4) Combine words for large numbers.

> I have prepared for Yahweh's house **one hundred thousand** talents of gold, **a thousand thousand** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(5) Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

> I have prepared for Yahweh's house **a great amount of gold (100,000 talents)**, **ten times that amount of silver (1,000,000 talents)**, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

Consistency

Be consistent in your translations. Decide how the numbers will be translated, using numbers or numerals. There are different ways of being consistent.

- Use words to represent numbers all of the time. (You might have very long words.)
- Use numerals to represent numbers all of the time.
- Use words to represent the numbers that your language has words for and use numerals for the numbers that your language does not have words for.
- Use words for low numbers and numerals for high numbers.
- Use words for numbers that require few words and numerals for numbers that require more than a few words.
- Use words to represent numbers, and write the numerals in parentheses after them.

Consistency in the ULT and UST

The *unfoldingWord® Literal Text* (ULT) and the *unfoldingWord® Simplified Text* (UST)

use words for the numbers one through ten and use numerals for all numbers above ten.

> When Adam had lived **130** years, he became the father of a son in his own likeness, after his image, and he called his name Seth. After Adam became the father of Seth, he lived **800** years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Adam lived **930** years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:3-5 ULT)

Revelation References:

Revelation 5:11 Revelation 7:4 Revelation 7:5 Revelation 9:16 Revelation 14:1

Ordinal Numbers

Description

Ordinal numbers are used in the Bible mainly to tell the position of something in a list.

> And God has indeed appointed some in the church, **first** apostles, **second** prophets, **third** teachers, then miracles. (1 Corinthians 12:28a ULT)

This is a list of workers that God gave to the church in their order.

Ordinal Numbers in English

Most ordinal numbers in English simply have "-th" added to the end.

Numeral	Number	Ordinal Number
4	four	fourth
10	ten	tenth
100	one hundred	one hundredth
1,000	one thousand	one thousandth

Some ordinal numbers in English do not follow that pattern.

Numeral	Number	Ordinal Number
1	one	first
2	two	second
3	three	third
5	five	fifth
12	twelve	twelfth

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not have special numbers for showing the order of items in a list. There are different ways to deal with this.

Examples From the Bible

> The **first** lot went to Jehoiarib, the **second** to Jedaiah, the **third** to Harim, the **fourth** to Seorim … the **twenty-third** to Delaiah, and the **twenty-fourth** to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

The people cast lots and one went to each of these people in the order given.

> You must place in it four rows of precious stones. The **first** row must have a ruby, a topaz, and a garnet. The **second** row must have an emerald, a sapphire, and a diamond. The **third** row must have a jacinth, an agate, and an amethyst. The **fourth** row must have a beryl, and an onyx, and a jasper. They must be mounted in gold settings. (Exodus 28:17-20 ULT)

This describes four rows of stones. The first row is probably the top row, and the fourth row is probably the bottom row.

Translation Strategies

If your language has ordinal numbers and using them would give the right meaning, consider using them. If not, here are some strategies to consider:

(1) Use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.
(2) Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Tell the total number of items, and use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.

> The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim … the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)
>
> > There were **24** lots. **One lot** went to Jehoiarib, **another** to Jedaiah, **another** to Harim … **another** to Delaiah, **and the last** went to Maaziah.
> >
> > There were **24** lots. **One lot** went to Jehoiarib, **the next** to Jedaiah, **the next** to Harim … **the next** to Delaiah, **and the last** went to Maaziah.
>
> A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became **four** rivers. The name of **the first** is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of **the second** river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of **the third** river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. **The fourth** river is the Euphrates. (Genesis 2:10-14 ULT)
>
> > A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became **four** rivers. The name of **one** is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of **the next** river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of **the next** river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. The **last** river is the Euphrates.

(2) Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

> The **first** lot went to Jehoiarib, the **second** to Jedaiah, the **third** to Harim, the **fourth** to Seorim … the **twenty-third** to Delaiah, and the **twenty-fourth** to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)
>
> > They cast **24** lots. The lots went to Jerhoiarib, Jedaiah, Harim, Seorim … Delaiah, and Maaziah.

Revelation References:

Revelation 2:11 Revelation 6 Introduction Revelation 6:3 Revelation 8 Introduction Revelation 8:1 Revelation 8:7 Revelation 9:1 Revelation 9:12 Revelation 9:13 Revelation 9:14 Revelation 11:15 Revelation 16 Introduction Revelation 16:2 Revelation 17:11 Revelation 20:5 Revelation 20:6 Revelation 20:14 Revelation 21:1 Revelation 21:4 Revelation 21:8 Revelation 21:19 Revelation 21:20

Symbolic Action

Description

A symbolic action is something that someone does in order to express a certain idea. For example, in some cultures people nod their heads up and down to mean “yes” or turn their heads from side to side to mean “no.” Symbolic actions do not mean the same things in all cultures. In the Bible, sometimes people perform symbolic actions and sometimes they only refer to the symbolic action.

Examples of symbolic actions

- In some cultures people shake hands when they meet to show that they are willing to be friendly.
- In some cultures people bow when they meet to show respect to each other.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

An action may have a meaning in one culture and a different meaning or no meaning at all in another culture. For example, in some cultures raising the eyebrows means “I am surprised” or “What did you say?” In other cultures it means “yes.”

In the Bible, people did things that had certain meanings in their culture. When we read the Bible, we might not understand what someone meant if we interpret the action based on what it means in our own culture today.

You (the translator) need to understand what people in the Bible meant when they used symbolic actions. If an action does not mean the same thing in your own culture, then you need to figure out how to translate what the action meant.

Examples From the Bible

> And behold, a man came whose name was Jairus, and he was a ruler of the synagogue. And **falling at the feet of Jesus**, he begged him to come to his house. (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: He did this to show great respect to Jesus.

> Look, I am standing at the door and am knocking. If anyone hears my voice and opens the door, I will come into him and will eat with him, and he with me. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: When people wanted someone to welcome them into their home, they stood at the door and knocked on it.

Translation Strategies

If people would correctly understand what a symbolic action meant to the people in the Bible, consider using it. If not, here are some strategies for translating it.

(1) Tell what the person did and why he did it.
(2) Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.
(3) Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning. Do this only in poetry, parables, and sermons. Do not do this when there actually was a person who did a specific action.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Tell what the person did and why he did it.

> And **falling at the feet of Jesus** (Luke 8:41 ULT)
>
> > Jairus fell down at Jesus’ feet in order to show that he greatly respected him.

> Look, I am **standing at the door and am knocking**. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)
>
> > Look, I stand at the door and knock on it, asking you to let me in.

(2) Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.

> And **falling at the feet of Jesus** (Luke 8:41 ULT)
>
> > Jairus showed Jesus great respect.

> Look, I am **standing at the door and am knocking**. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)
>
> > Look, I stand at the door and ask you to let me in.

(3) Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning.

> And **falling at the feet of Jesus** (Luke 8:41 ULT) — Since Jairus actually did this, you should not substitute an action from your own culture.

> Look, I am **standing at the door and am knocking**. (Revelation 3:20 ULT) — Jesus was not standing at a real door. Rather he was speaking about wanting to have a relationship with people. So in cultures where it is polite to clear one's throat when wanting to be let into a house, you could use that.
>
> > Look, I stand at the door and clear my throat.

Revelation References:

Revelation 1:17 Revelation 3:4 Revelation 3:9 Revelation 4:10 Revelation 4:10 Revelation 5:8 Revelation 5:14 Revelation 7:9 Revelation 7:9 Revelation 10:5 Revelation 11:3 Revelation 11:9 Revelation 11:10 Revelation 18:19 Revelation 19:4 Revelation 19:10

Irregular Use of Tenses

Description

Normally, languages indicate when an event happens by marking it as past, present, or future (or some subset of those categories) through using different verb tenses. But sometimes speakers use those verb tenses in other ways to draw special attention to what they are saying. This article will discuss three ways that this happens in the Bible.

Past For Future

In the Bible, sometimes the past tense is used to refer to things that will happen in the future. This is a figure of speech that is used in prophecy to show that the event will certainly happen. It is sometimes called the "predictive past" or "prophetic perfect."

> Therefore my people have gone into captivity for lack of understanding; their honored leaders go hungry, and their common people have nothing to drink. (Isaiah 5:13 ULT)

In the example above, the people of Israel had not yet gone into captivity, but God spoke of their going into captivity as if it had already happened because he had decided that they certainly would go into captivity.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue:

Speakers of languages that do not use the past tense in prophecy to refer to future events may think that these are events that have already happened.

Examples From the Bible

> Now Jericho was tightly closed because of the sons of Israel. No one went out and no one came in. Yahweh said to Joshua, "See, I have delivered Jericho and its king and its powerful soldiers into your hand." (Joshua 6:1-2 ULT)

> For to us a child has been born, to us a son has been given; and the rule will be on his shoulder. (Isaiah 9:6a ULT)

In the examples above, God spoke of things that would happen in the future as if they had already happened.

> But even Enoch, the seventh from Adam, prophesied about them, saying, “Look! The Lord came with thousands and thousands of his holy ones.” (Jude 1:14 ULT)

Enoch was speaking of something that would happen far in the future, but he used the past tense when he said, “the Lord came.”

Present For Past

In the Bible, sometimes the present tense is used to refer to events that happened in the past. This is a figure of speech that makes these events more vivid or prominent for the reader. The effect can be to draw the reader into the story because these events are told as though they are happening now. The reader, however, knows that the events happened in the past. This is sometimes called the “historical present.”

> Now the mother-in-law of Simon was lying down, being sick with a fever, and immediately they speak to him concerning her. (Mark 1:30 ULT)

In the example above, Mark had been narrating events that happened in the past, using the past tense. But when he came to the part about the disciples speaking to Jesus about Simon’s mother-in-law, he changed from past tense to present tense.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue:

Speakers of languages that do not use the present tense to refer to past events may think that these events are happening now or that the Bible translation makes no sense.

Examples From the Bible

> And Simon and the ones with him searched for him 37 and found him and say to him, “Everyone is seeking you.” 38 And he says to them, “Let us go elsewhere, (Mark 1:36-38 ULT)

As in the above example, the historical present is often used to make direct speech stand out from the narrative.

> And he enters into Capernaum, and immediately on the Sabbaths, having entered into the synagogue, he began to teach. (Mark 1:21 ULT)

As in the above example, the historical present sometimes serves to set the scene for a new set of events. By using the historical present in this way, the writer draws the reader into the scene, and then relates the events using the past tense.

Present For Future

In the Bible, sometimes the present tense is used for a future event. Usually, this is to communicate that the event will happen very soon. Also, like the predictive past, this can communicate that the event is sure to happen or that the speaker is fully committed to making the event happen. This is sometimes called the “imminent future.”

> And Moses said, “Thus says Yahweh: ‘About the middle of the night I am going out in the midst of Egypt, (Exodus 11:4 ULT)

In the example above, Yahweh uses the present tense for something that he will do soon.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue:

Speakers of languages that do not use the present tense to refer to future events may think that these events are happening at the time of speaking or writing or that the Bible translation is confusing or wrong.

Examples From the Bible

> For behold me, raising up the Chaldeans, that fierce and impetuous nation… (Habakkuk 1:6 ULT)

> Therefore, remember from where you have fallen and repent and do the first works. But if not, I am coming to you and I will remove your lampstand from its place—if you do not repent. (Revelation 2:5 ULT)

In the examples above, God speaks of a future event as though he is doing it in the present. This is a way of emphasizing the certainty of the event.

> Therefore my people have gone into captivity for lack of understanding; their honored leaders go hungry, and their common people have nothing to drink. (Isaiah 5:13 ULT)

In the example above, the present tense continues the sense of the predictive past, communicating future events that are sure to happen.

Translation Strategies

If the tense that is used in the Literal Translation would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

(1) Use the future tense to refer to future events.
(2) Use the past tense to refer to past events.
(3) Use the tense that your language commonly uses to communicate the time of the event.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the future tense to refer to future events.

> For to us a child **has been born**, to us a son **has been given**. (Isaiah 9:6a ULT)

> > For to us a child **will be born**, to us a son **will be given**.

> Yahweh said to Joshua, “See, **I have delivered** Jericho and its king and its powerful soldiers into your hand.” (Joshua 6:2 ULT)

> > Yahweh said to Joshua, “See, **I will deliver** Jericho and its king and its powerful soldiers into your hand.”

> And Moses said, “Thus says Yahweh: ‘About the middle of the night **I am going out** in the midst of Egypt, (Exodus 11:4 ULT)

> > And Moses said, “Thus says Yahweh: ‘About the middle of the night **I will go out** in the midst of Egypt,

(2) Use the past tense to refer to past events.

> And Simon and the ones with him searched for him and found him and **say** to him, “Everyone is seeking you.” And he **says** to them, “Let us go elsewhere, (Mark 1:36-38 ULT)

> > And Simon and the ones with him searched for him and found him and **said** to him, “Everyone is seeking you.” And he **said** to them, “Let us go elsewhere,

> And he **enters** into Capernaum, and immediately on the Sabbaths, having entered into the synagogue, he began to teach. (Mark 1:21 ULT)

> > And he **entered** into Capernaum, and immediately on the Sabbaths, having entered into the synagogue, he began to teach.

(3) Use the tense that your language commonly uses to communicate the time of the event.

> Yahweh said to Joshua, “See, **I have delivered** Jericho and its king and its powerful soldiers into your hand.” (Joshua 6:2 ULT)

> > Yahweh said to Joshua, “See, **I am delivering** Jericho and its king and its powerful soldiers into your hand.” Or: Yahweh said to Joshua, “See, **I am about to deliver** Jericho and its king and its powerful soldiers into your hand.”

> And Moses said, “Thus says Yahweh: ‘About the middle of the night **I am going out** in the midst of Egypt, (Exodus 11:4 ULT)

> And Moses said, “Thus says Yahweh: ‘About the middle of the night **I will be going out** in the midst of Egypt,
> Or: And Moses said, “Thus says Yahweh: ‘About the middle of the night **I shall certainly go out** in the midst of Egypt,

Revelation References:

Revelation 1:2 Revelation 12:2 Revelation 12:4

Textual Variants

Description

Thousands of years ago, people wrote the books of the Bible. Other people then copied them by hand and translated them. They did this work very carefully, and over the years many people made thousands of copies. However, people who looked at them later saw that there were small differences between them. Some copiers accidentally left out some words, or some mistook one word for another that looked like it. Occasionally, they added words or even whole sentences, either by accident or because they wanted to explain something. Modern Bibles are translations of the old copies. Some modern Bibles include some of these sentences that were added. In the ULT, these added sentences are usually written in footnotes.

Bible scholars have read many old copies and compared them with each other. For each place in the Bible where there was a difference, they have figured out which wordings are most likely correct. The translators of the ULT based the ULT New Testament on wordings that scholars say are most likely correct. The ULT Old Testament is based on the Westminster Leningrad Codex, which is considered to be the best representative of the ancient copies. Because people who use the ULT may have access to Bibles that are based on other copies, the ULT translators have sometimes included information about some of the differences between them, either in the ULT footnotes or in the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes.

Translators are encouraged to translate the text in the ULT and to write about added sentences in footnotes, as is done in the ULT. However, if the local church really wants those sentences to be included in the main text, translators may put them in the text and include a footnote about them.

Examples From the Bible

Matthew 18:10-11 ULT has a footnote about verse 11.

> [10] See that you do not despise one of these little ones. For I say to you that in heaven their angels always look on the face of my Father who is in heaven. [11] [1]
>
> [1] Many authorities, some ancient, insert v. 11: **For the Son of Man came to save that which was lost.**

John 7:53-8:11 is not in the best earliest copies. It has been included in the ULT, but it is marked off with square brackets ([ ]) at the beginning and end, and there is a footnote after verse 11.

> 53 [Then everyone went to his own house … 11 She said, “No one, Lord.” Jesus said, “Neither do I condemn you. Go and sin no more.”] [2]
>
> [2] Some ancient manuscripts include John 7:53-8:11

Psalm 100:3 ULT follows the Westminster Leningrad Codex. It says:

> Know that Yahweh, he {is} God; he, he made us, **and not we**,

There are some other ancient copies that say:

> Know that Yahweh, he {is} God; he, he made us, **and we are his**,

There is an unfoldingWord® Translation Note at that place to tell the translator about this other reading and that either one is an acceptable choice.

Translation Strategies

When there is a textual variant, you may choose to follow the ULT or another version that you have access to.

(1) Translate the verses as they are in the ULT and include a footnote about the alternate reading such as the one that the ULT provides or one in the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes.

(2) Translate the verses as another version has them, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

The translation strategies are applied to Mark 7:14-16 ULT, which has a footnote about verse 16.

> [14] He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. [15] There is nothing from outside the man that can defile him when it enters into him. But the things that come out of the man are the things that defile the man.” [16] [1]
>
> [1] Some ancient manuscripts include verse 16: **If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.**

(1) Translate the verses as they are in the ULT and include the footnote that the ULT provides.

> [14] He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. [15] There is nothing from outside the man that can defile him when it enters into him. But the things that come out of the man are the things that defile the man.” [16] [1]
>
> [1] Some ancient manuscripts include verse 16: **If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.**

(2) Translate the verses as another version has them, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

> [14] He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. [15]There is nothing from outside the man that can defile him when it enters into him. But the things that come out of the man are the things that defile the man. [16] If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.” [1]
>
> > [1] Some ancient manuscripts do not include verse 16.

Revelation References:

Revelation 1:8 Revelation 5:14 Revelation 8:7 Revelation 8:13 Revelation 11:17 Revelation 14:5 Revelation 15:3 Revelation 16:5 Revelation 18:2 Revelation 21:3 Revelation 21:24 Revelation 22:14 Revelation 22:19

Copy or Borrow Words

Description

Sometimes the Bible includes things that are not part of your culture and for which your language may not have a word. The Bible also includes people and places for which you may not have names.

When that happens you can “borrow” the word from the Bible in a familiar language and use it in your translation in your own language. This means that you basically copy it from the other language. This page tells how to “borrow” words. (There are also other ways to translate words for things that are not in your language. See Translate Unknowns.)

Examples From the Bible

> Seeing one fig tree along the roadside, he went to it. (Matthew 21:19a ULT)

If there are no fig trees where your language is spoken, there might not be a name for this kind of tree in your language.

> Above him were the **seraphim**; each one had six wings; with two each covered his face, and with two he covered his feet, and with two he flew. (Isaiah 6:2 ULT)

Your language might not have a name for this kind of creature.

> The declaration of the word of Yahweh to Israel by the hand of **Malachi**. (Malachi 1:1 ULT)

Malachi might not be a name that people who speak your language use.

Translation Strategies

There are several things to be aware of when borrowing words from another language.

- Different languages use different scripts, such as the Hebrew, Greek, Latin, Cyrillic, Devanagari, and Korean scripts. These scripts use different shapes to represent the letters in their alphabets.

- Languages that use the same script might pronounce the letters in that script differently. For example, when speaking German, people pronounce the letter “j” the same way that people pronounce the letter “y” when speaking English.

- Languages do not all have the same sounds or combinations of sounds. For example, many languages do not have the soft “th” sound in the English word “think,” and some languages cannot start a word with a combination of sounds like “st” as in “stop.”

There are several ways to borrow a word.

(1) If your language uses a different script from the language you are translating from, you can simply substitute each letter shape with the corresponding letter shape of the script of your language.
(2) You can spell the word as the Other Language spells it, and pronounce it the way your language normally pronounces those letters.
(3) You can pronounce the word similarly to the way the Other Language does, and adjust the spelling to fit the rules of your language.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If your language uses a different script from the language you are translating from, you can simply substitute each letter shape with the corresponding letter shape of the script of your language.

> צְפַנְיָה — A man’s name in Hebrew letters.
>
> > “Zephaniah” — The same name in Roman letters

(2) You can spell the word as the Other Language spells it, and pronounce it the way your language normally pronounces those letters.

> Zephaniah — This is a man’s name.
>
> > “Zephaniah” — The name as it is spelled in English, but you can pronounce it according to the rules of your language.

(3) You can pronounce the word similarly to the way the Other Language does, and adjust the spelling to fit the rules of your language.

> Zephaniah — If your language does not have the “z,” you could use “s.” If your writing system does not use “ph” you could use “f.” Depending on how you pronounce the “i” you could spell it with “i” or “ai” or “ay.”
>
> > “Sefania”
> >
> > “Sefanaia”
> >
> > “Sefanaya”

Revelation References:

Revelation Introduction Revelation 1:6 Revelation 1:18 Revelation 3:14 Revelation 6:8 Revelation 9 Introduction Revelation 9:11 Revelation 12:9 Revelation 16:16 Revelation 19 Introduction Revelation 21 Introduction Revelation 21:19 Revelation 22:20

Translate Unknowns

While working to translate the Bible, you (the translator) might find yourself asking: "How do I translate words like lion, fig tree, mountain, priest, or temple when people in my culture have never seen these things and we do not have a word for them?"

Description

Unknowns are things that occur in the source text that are not known to the people of your culture. The unfoldingWord® Translation Words pages and the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes will help you understand what they are. After you understand them, you will need to find ways to refer to those things so that people who read your translation will understand what they are.

> They said to him, "We have nothing here except five loaves of **bread** and two fish." (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

Bread is a particular food made by mixing finely crushed grains with oil, and then cooking the mixture so that it is dry. (Grains are the seeds of a kind of grass.) In some cultures people do not have bread and do not know what it is.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Readers may not know some of the things that are in the Bible because those things are not part of their own culture.
- Readers may have difficulty understanding a text if they do not know some of the things that are mentioned in it.

Translation Principles

- Use words that are already part of your language if possible.
- Keep expressions short if possible.
- Represent God's commands and historical facts accurately.

Examples From the Bible

> So I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **jackals**. (Jeremiah 9:11a ULT)

Jackals are wild animals like dogs that live in only a few parts of the world. So they are not known in many places.

> Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep's clothing, but inwardly they are ravenous **wolves**. (Matthew 7:15 ULT)

If wolves do not live where the translation will be read, the readers may not understand that they are fierce, wild animals like dogs that attack and eat sheep.

> They offered him wine mixed with **myrrh**, but he did not drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULT)

People may not know what myrrh is and that it was used as a medicine.

> … to him who made **great lights** … (Psalm 136:7a ULT)

Some languages have terms for things that give light, like the sun and fire, but they have no general term for lights.

> Your sins … will be white like **snow**. (Isaiah 1:18b ULT)

People in many parts of the world have not seen snow, but they may have seen it in pictures.

Translation Strategies

Here are ways you might translate a term that is not known in your language:

(1) Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.
(2) Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.
(3) Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase

to help people understand it.
(4) Use a word that is more general in meaning.
(5) Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.

> Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are inwardly they are **ravenous wolves**. (Matthew 7:15 ULT)
>
> > Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep's clothing, but **inwardly they are very hungry and dangerous animals**.

"Ravenous wolves" is part of a metaphor here, so the reader needs to know that they are very dangerous to sheep in order to understand this metaphor. (If sheep are also unknown, then you will need to also use one of the translation strategies to translate sheep, or change the metaphor to something else, using a translation strategy for metaphors. See Translating Metaphors.)

> "We have nothing here except five **loaves of bread** and two fish." (Matthew 14:17 ULT)
>
> > We have nothing here except five **loaves of baked grain seeds** and two fish.

(2) Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.

> Your sins … will be white like **snow.** (Isaiah 1:18b ULT) This verse is not about snow. It uses snow in a figure of speech to help people understand how white something will be.
>
> > Your sins … will be white like **milk**.
> >
> > Your sins … will be white like **the moon**.

(3) Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.

> Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with **myrrh**. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULT) — People may understand better what myrrh is if it is used with the general word "medicine."
>
> > Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with **a medicine called myrrh**. But he refused to drink it.

> "We have nothing here except five **loaves of bread** and two fish." (Matthew 14:17 ULT) — People may understand better what bread is if it is used with a phrase that tells what it is made of (seeds) and how it is prepared (crushed and baked).
>
> > We have nothing here except five loaves of **baked crushed seed bread** and two fish.

(4) Use a word that is more general in meaning.

> I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **jackals** (Jeremiah 9:11a ULT)
>
> > I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **wild dogs**

> "We have nothing here except five **loaves of bread** and two fish." (Matthew 14:17 ULT)
>
> > We have nothing here except five **loaves of baked food** and two fish.

(5) Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

> … to him who made **great lights** … (Psalm 136:7a ULT)
>
> > to him who made **the sun and the moon**

Revelation References:

Revelation 1:13 Revelation 1:14 Revelation 2:14 Revelation 3:20 Revelation 4:3 Revelation 4:3 Revelation 6:5 Revelation 6:12 Revelation 6:12 Revelation 6:13 Revelation 6:13 Revelation 6:15 Revelation 8:11 Revelation 9:3 Revelation 9:9 Revelation 9:10 Revelation 9:11 Revelation 9:17 Revelation 12:3 Revelation 12:5 Revelation 12:9 Revelation 13 Introduction Revelation 13:2 Revelation 14:14 Revelation 14:19 Revelation 14:20 Revelation 15:6 Revelation 17:4 Revelation 17:4 Revelation 18:12 Revelation 18:12 Revelation 18:12 Revelation 18:12 Revelation 18:12 Revelation 18:13 Revelation 18:16 Revelation 18:17 Revelation 18:21 Revelation 19:18 Revelation 21:11

Verse Bridges

Description

In some cases, you will see in the unfoldingWord® Simplified Text (UST) that two or more verse numbers are combined, such as 17-18. This is called a verse bridge. This means that the information in the verses was rearranged so that the story or message could be more easily understood.

> 29 These were the clans of the Horites: Lotan, Shobal, Zibeon, and Anah, 30 Dishon, Ezer, Dishan: these are clans of the Horites, according to their clan lists in the land of Seir. (Genesis 36:29-30 ULT)

> 29-30 The people groups who were descendants of Hor lived in Seir land. The names of the people groups are Lotan, Shobal, Zibeon, Anah, Dishon, Ezer, and Dishan. (Genesis 36:29-30 UST)

In the ULT text, verses 29 and 30 are separate, and the information about the people living in Seir is at the end of verse 30. In the UST text, the verses are joined, and the information about them living in Seir is at the beginning. For many languages, this is a more logical order of information.

Examples From the Bible

Where the UST has a verse bridge, the ULT will have separate verses.

> 4-5 Yahweh our God will bless you in the land that he is giving to you. If you obey Yahweh our God and obey all the commandments that I am giving to you today, there will not be any poor people among you. (Deuteronomy 15:4-5 UST)

> [4] However, there should be no poor among you (for Yahweh will surely bless you in the land that he gives you as an inheritance to possess), [5] if only you diligently listen to the voice of Yahweh your God, to keep all these commandments that I am commanding you today. (Deuteronomy 15:4-5 ULT)

> [16-17] But Yahweh said to him, “I will not permit you to eat the fruit of the tree that will enable you to know what actions are good to do and what actions are evil to do. If you eat any fruit from that tree, on the day you eat it you will surely die. But I will permit you to eat the fruit of any of the other trees in the park.” (Genesis 2:16-17 UST)

> [16] Yahweh God commanded the man, saying, “From every tree in the garden you may freely eat. [17] But from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil you may not eat, for on the day that you eat from it, you will surely die.” (Genesis 2:16-17 ULT)

Translation Strategies

Order the information in a way that will be clear to your readers. If the order of information is clear as it is in the ULT, then use that order. But if the order is confusing or gives the wrong meaning, then change the order so that it is more clear.

(1) If you put information from one verse before information from an earlier verse, then combine the verses and put a hyphen between the two verse numbers.

See how to mark verses in translationStudio.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If information from one verse is put before information from an earlier verse, then combine the verses and put the verse numbers before the first verse with a hyphen between them.

> 2 You must select three cities for yourself in the middle of your land that Yahweh your God is giving you to possess. 3 You must build a road and divide the borders of your land into three parts, the land that Yahweh your God is causing you to inherit, so that everyone who kills another person may flee there. (Deuteronomy 19:2-3 ULT)

> 2-3 You must divide into three parts the land that he is giving to you. Then select a city in each part. You must make good roads in order that people can get to those cities easily. Someone who kills another person can escape to one of those cities to be safe. (Deuteronomy 19:2-3 UST)

Revelation References:

Revelation 1:5

Symbolic Prophecy

Description

Symbolic prophecy is a type of message that God gave to a prophet so that the prophet would tell others. These messages use images and symbols to show what God will do in the future.

The main books that have these prophecies are Isaiah, Ezekiel, Daniel, Zechariah, and Revelation. Shorter examples of symbolic prophecy are also found in other Scriptures, such as in Matthew 24, Mark 13, and Luke 21.

The Bible tells both how God gave each message and what the message was. When God gave the messages, he often did so in miraculous ways such as in dreams and visions. (See Dream and Vision for help translating "dreams" and "visions.") When prophets saw these dreams and visions, they often saw images and symbols about God and heaven. Some of these images included a throne, golden lamp stands, a powerful man with white hair and white clothes, and eyes like fire and legs like bronze. Some of these images were seen by more than one prophet.

The prophecies about the world also contain images and symbols. For example, in some of the prophecies, strong animals represent kingdoms, horns represent kings or kingdoms, a dragon or serpent represents the devil, the sea represents the nations, and weeks represent longer periods of time. Some of these images were also seen by more than one prophet.

The prophecies tell about the evil in this world, how God will judge the world and punish sin, and how God will establish his righteous kingdom in the new world he is creating. They also tell about things that will happen concerning heaven and hell.

Much of prophecy in the Bible is presented as poetry. In some cultures people assume that if something is said in poetry, then it might not be true or very important. However, the prophecies in the Bible are true and very important, whether they are presented in poetic forms or non-poetic forms.

Sometimes the past tense is used in these books for events that happened in the past. However, sometimes the past tense is used for events that would happen in the future. There are two reasons for this. When prophets told about things that they saw in a dream or vision, they often used the past tense because their dream was in the past. The other reason for using the past tense to refer to future events was to emphasize that those events would certainly happen. The events were so certain to happen, it was as if they had already happened. We call this second use of the past tense "the predictive past." (See Predictive Past.)

Some of these things happened after the prophets told about them, and some of them will happen at the end of this world.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some of the images are hard to understand because we have never seen things like them before.
- Descriptions of things that we have never seen or that do not exist in this world are hard to translate.
- In places where God or the prophet used the past tense, readers may have difficulty knowing whether he was talking about something that had already happened or something that would happen later.

Translation Principles

- Translate the images in the text. Do not try to interpret them and translate their meaning.
- When an image appears in more than one place in the Bible, and it is described in the same way, try to translate it the same way in all those places.
- If either poetic forms or non-poetic forms would imply to your readers that the prophecy is not true or is unimportant, use a form that would not imply those things.

- Sometimes it is difficult to understand in what order the events described in the various prophecies happen. Simply write them as they appear in each prophecy.
- Translate tense in a way that the readers can understand what the speaker meant. If readers would not understand the predictive past, it is acceptable to use the future tense.
- Some of the prophecies were fulfilled after the prophets wrote about them. Some of them have not been fulfilled yet. Do not clarify in the prophecy when these prophecies were fulfilled or how they were fulfilled.

Examples From the Bible

The following passages describe powerful beings that Ezekiel, Daniel, and John saw. Images mentioned in these visions include hair that is white as wool, a voice like many waters, a golden belt, and legs or feet like polished bronze. Though the prophets saw various details, it would be good to translate the details that are the same in the same way. The bolded phrases in the passage from Revelation also occur in the passages from Daniel and Ezekiel.

> In the middle of the lampstands there was one like a son of man, wearing a robe that reached down to his feet and he wore a golden sash across his chest. **His head and hair were as white as wool**—as white as snow—and his eyes were like a flame of fire. **His feet were like polished bronze**, like bronze that had been refined in a furnace, and **his voice was like the sound of many rushing waters**. He had seven stars in his right hand, and a sword with two sharp edges was coming out of his mouth. His face was shining like the sun at its strongest. (Revelation 1:13-16 ULT)

> As I looked, thrones were set in place, and the Ancient of Days took his seat. His clothing was as white as snow, and **the hair of his head was like pure wool**. (Daniel 7:9 ULT)

> I looked up and saw a man dressed in linen, with a belt around his waist made of pure gold from Uphaz. His body was like topaz, his face was like lightning, his eyes were like flaming torches, his arms and **his feet were like polished bronze**, and the sound of his words was like the sound of a great crowd. (Daniel 10:5-6 ULT)

> Behold! The glory of the God of Israel came from the east; **his voice was like the sound of many waters**, and the earth shone with his glory! (Ezekiel 43:2 ULT)

The following passage shows the use of the past tense to refer to past events. The bolded verbs refer to past events.

> The vision of Isaiah son of Amoz, that he **saw** concerning Judah and Jerusalem, in the days of Uzziah, Jotham, Ahaz, and Hezekiah, kings of Judah. (Isaiah 1:1 ULT)

> Hear, heavens, and give ear, earth; for Yahweh **has spoken**: (Isaiah 1:2a ULT)

> "I **have nourished** and **brought up** children, but they **have rebelled** against me." (Isaiah 1:2b ULT)

The following passage shows the future tense and different uses of the past tense. The bolded verbs are examples of the predictive past, where the past tense is used to show that the events certainly will happen.

> The gloom will be dispelled from her who was in anguish. In an earlier time he humiliated the land of Zebulun and the land of Naphtali, but in the later time he will make it glorious, the way to the sea, beyond the Jordan, Galilee of the nations. The people who walked in darkness **have seen** a great light; those who have lived in the land of the shadow of death, the light **has shone** on them. (Isaiah 9:1-2 ULT)

Translation Strategies

- If the prophecy uses the past tense to talk about the future and this would be misunderstood in your language, use the strategies in Predictive Past.

- If the images in the prophecy are of things that are unknown in your culture, use the strategies in Translate Unknowns.

Revelation References:

Revelation Introduction Revelation 4 Introduction Revelation 6 Introduction Revelation 9 Introduction Revelation 10 Introduction Revelation 15 Introduction Revelation 17 Introduction

Background Information

Description

When people tell a story, they normally tell the events in the order that they happened. This sequence of events makes up the storyline. The storyline is full of action verbs that move the story along in time. But sometimes a writer may take a break from the storyline and give some information to help his listeners understand the story better. This type of information is called background information. The background information might be about things that happened before the events he has already told about, or it might explain something in the story, or it might be about something that would happen much later in the story.

Example — The bolded phrases in the story below are all background information.

Peter and John went on a hunting trip because **their village was going to have a feast the next day**. **Peter was the best hunter in the village. He once killed three wild pigs in one day!** They walked for hours through low bushes until they heard a wild pig. The pig ran, but they managed to shoot the pig and kill it. Then they tied up its legs with some rope **they had brought with them** and carried it home on a pole. When they brought it to the village, Peter's cousin saw the pig and realized that it was his own pig. Peter had mistakenly killed his cousin's pig.

Background information often tells about something that had happened earlier or something that would happen much later. Examples of these are: "their village was going to have a feast the next day," "He once killed three wild pigs in one day," and "that they had brought with them."

Often background information uses "be" verbs like "was" and "were," rather than action verbs. Examples of these are "their village was going to have a feast the next day," and "Peter **was** the best hunter in the village."

Background information can also be marked with words that tell the reader that this information is not part of the event line of the story. In this story, some of these words are "because," "once," and "had."

A writer may use background information:

- to help their listeners be interested in the story
- to help their listeners understand something in the story
- to help the listeners understand why something is important in the story
- to tell the setting of a story

> - Setting includes:
> - where the story takes place
> - when the story takes place
> - who is present when the story begins
> - what is happening when the story begins

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Languages have different ways of marking background information and storyline information.
- You (the translator) need to know the order of the events in the Bible, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.
- You will need to translate the story in a way that marks the background information in a way that your own readers will understand the order of events, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.

Examples From the Bible

> Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael. Abram **was 86 years old** when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:15-16 ULT)

The first sentence tells about two events. Hagar gave birth and Abraham named his son. The second sentence is background information about how old Abram was when those things happened.

> And Jesus himself **was beginning about 30 years old**. He **was the son (as it was assumed)** of Joseph, of Heli, (Luke 3:23 ULT)

The verses before this tell about when Jesus was baptized. This sentence introduces a section of background information about Jesus' age and ancestors (Luke 3:23-38). The story resumes in chapter 4 where it tells about Jesus going to the wilderness.

> Then **it happened on a Sabbath** that he **was going through the grain fields**, and his disciples **were picking and eating the heads of grain**, **rubbing them in their hands**. But some of the Pharisees said … (Luke 6:1-2a ULT)

These verses give the setting of the story. The events took place in a grain field on the Sabbath day. Jesus, his disciples, and some Pharisees were there, and Jesus' disciples were picking heads of grain and eating them. The main action in the story starts with the phrase, "But some of the Pharisees said …."

Translation Strategies

To keep translations clear and natural you will need to study how people tell stories in your language. Observe how your language marks background information. You may need to write down some stories in order to study this. Observe what kinds of verbs your language uses for background information and what kinds of words or other markers signal that something is background information. Do these same things when you translate, so that your translation is clear and natural and people can understand it easily.

(1) Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information.
(2) Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first. (This is not always possible when the background information is very long.)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information. The examples below explain

how this was done in the ULT English translations.

> **And** Jesus himself **was** beginning about 30 years old. He **was** the son **(as it was assumed)** of Joseph, of Heli. (Luke 3:23 ULT)

As here, English sometimes uses the word "and" to show that there is some kind of change in the story. The verb "was" shows that it is background information. A set of parentheses is also a way to mark background information. Here, "as it was assumed" gives background information to the phrase, "He was the son." People assumed that Joseph was Jesus' father, although his true father was God.

> Therefore, also exhorting many other things, he preached the good news to the people. But Herod the tetrarch, having been rebuked by him concerning Herodias, the wife of his brother, and **concerning all the evil things that Herod had done**, added even this to them all: He locked John up in prison. (Luke 3:18-20 ULT)

The bolded phrase happened before John rebuked Herod. In English, the helping verb "had" in "had done" shows that Herod did those things before John rebuked him.

(2) Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first.

> Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael. **Abram was 86 years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram**. (Genesis 16:16 ULT)
>
> > "**When Abram was 86 years old**, Hagar gave birth to his son, and Abram named his son Ishmael."

> Therefore, also exhorting many other things, he preached the good news to the people. But Herod the tetrarch, having been rebuked by him concerning Herodias, the wife of his brother, and **concerning all the evil things that Herod had done**, added even this to them all: He locked John up in prison. (Luke 3:18-20 ULT)

The translation below reorders John's rebuke and Herod's actions.

> "Now Herod the tetrarch married his brother's wife, Herodias, and **he did many other evil things**, so John rebuked him. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison."

Revelation References:

Revelation 19:8 Revelation 20:5

Poetry

Description

Poetry is one of the ways that people use the words and sounds of their language to make their speech and writing more beautiful and to express strong emotion. Through poetry, people can communicate deeper emotion than they can through simple non-poetic forms. Poetry gives more weight and elegance to statements of truth, such as proverbs, and is also easier to remember than ordinary speech.

In poetry we commonly find:

- many figures of speech such as Apostrophe
- arrangements of clauses into particular patterns such as:
  - parallel lines (See Parallelism)
  - acrostics (beginning lines with successive letters of the alphabet)
  - chiasms (in which the first line relates to the last line, the second to the next-to-last line, etc.):

> You should not give what is holy to the dogs,
>
> > and should not throw your pearls in front of the pigs.
> >
> > Otherwise they will trample them under their feet,
>
> and having turned, they might tear you to pieces. (Matt 7:6 ULT)

- repetition of some or all of a line:

> Praise him, all his angels; praise him, all his hosts. Praise him, sun and moon; praise him, all you shining stars. (Psalm 148:2-3 ULT)

- lines of similar length:

> Listen to my call to you,
>
> Yahweh; think about my groanings.
>
> Listen to the sound of my call, my King and my God,
>
> for it is to you that I pray. (Psalm 5:1-2 ULT)

- the same sound used at the end or at the beginning of two or more lines:

> “Twinkle, twinkle little **star**. How I wonder what you **are**.” (from an English rhyme)

- the same sound repeated many times:

> “Peter, Peter, pumpkin eater” (from an English rhyme)

- The same root word used as both a verb and as a noun:

> Your old men will **dream dreams** (Joel 2:28 ULT)

> Yahweh,…**light lightning** and scatter them (Psalm 144:5-6 ULT)

We also find:

- old words and expressions
- dramatic imagery
- different use of grammar — including:
  - incomplete sentences
  - lack of connective words

Some places to look for poetry in your language

1. Songs, particularly old songs or songs used in children’s games
2. Religious ceremony or chants of priests or witch doctors
3. Prayers, blessings, and curses
4. Old legends

Elegant or fancy speech

Elegant or fancy speech is similar to poetry in that it uses beautiful language, but it does not use all of the language’s features of

poetry, and it does not use them as much as poetry does. Popular speakers in the language often use elegant speech, and this is probably the easiest source of text to study to find out what makes speech elegant in your language.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue:

- Different languages use poetry for different things. If a poetic form would not communicate the same meaning in your language, you may need to write it without the poetry.
- Different languages use different poetic devices. A poetic device that conveys elegance or emotion in a biblical language may be confusing or misunderstood in another language.
- In some languages, using poetry for a particular part of the Bible would make it much more powerful.

Examples From the Bible

The Bible uses poetry for songs, teaching, and prophecy. Almost all of the books of the Old Testament have poetry in them and many of the books are completely made up of poetry.

> … for you saw my affliction; you knew the distress of my soul. (Psalm 31:7b ULT)

This example of Parallelism has two lines that mean the same thing.

> Yahweh, judge the nations; vindicate me, Yahweh, because I am righteous and innocent, Most High. (Psalm 7:8 ULT)

This example of parallelism shows the contrast between what David wants God to do to him and what he wants God to do to the unrighteous nations. (See Parallelism.)

> Keep your servant also from arrogant sins; let them not rule over me. (Psalm 19:13a ULT)

This example of personification speaks of sins as if they could rule over a person. (See Personification.)

> Oh, give thanks to Yahweh; for he is good,
>
> for his covenant faithfulness endures fo
>
> Oh, give thanks to the God of gods,
>
> for his covenant faithfulness endures fo
>
> Oh, give thanks to the Lord of lords,
>
> for his covenant faithfulness endures fo

(Psalm 136:1-3 ULT)

This example repeats the phrases “give thanks” and “his covenant faithfulness endures forever.”

Translation Strategies

If the style of poetry that is used in the source text would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other ways of translating it.

(1) Translate the poetry using one of your styles of poetry.
(2) Translate the poetry using your style of elegant speech.
(3) Translate the poetry using your style of ordinary speech.

If you use poetry it may be more beautiful.

If you use ordinary speech it may be more clear.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

> Blessed is the man who does not walk in the advice of the wicked, or stand in the pathway with sinners, or sit in the assembly of mockers. But his delight is in the law of Yahweh, and on his law he meditates day and night. (Psalm 1:1-2 ULT)

The following are examples of how people might translate Psalm 1:1-2.

(1) Translate the poetry using one of your styles of poetry. (The style in this example

has words that sound similar at the end of each line.)

> "Happy is the person not encouraged **to sin**, Disrespect for God he will not **begin**, To those who laugh at God he is **no kin.** God is his constant **delight**, He does what God says **is right**, He thinks of it all day **and night**."

(2) Translate the poetry using your style of elegant speech.

> This is the kind of person who is truly blessed: the one who does not follow the advice of wicked people nor stop along the road to speak with sinners nor join the gathering of those who mock God. Rather, he takes great joy in Yahweh's law, and he meditates on it day and night.

(3) Translate the poetry using your style of ordinary speech.

> The people who do not listen to the advice of bad people are really happy. They do not spend time with people who continually do evil things or join with those who do not respect God. Instead, they love to obey Yahweh's law, and they think about it all the time.

Revelation References:

Revelation 6:2 Revelation 8:6 Revelation 14:2 Revelation 17:6 Revelation 18:6 Revelation 18:20 Revelation 21:3

Politeness

Description

People say certain things, or say things in a certain way, in order to communicate that they respect the people to whom they are speaking. We can refer to this as speaking politely. The ways of speaking politely are generally agreed on by those who share a culture. People also use polite ways of speaking to avoid offending others. This can be especially important if the person being addressed has an influential or powerful position.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue:

Every language has ways to communicate politeness to other speakers of that language, but different languages do not communicate politeness in the same ways. A phrase that is polite in one language may be offensive in another language, or it may simply be confusing. Translators need to recognize politeness in the Bible and communicate the same polite meaning using the appropriate form of politeness in the target language.

Examples From the Bible

> **do not trouble yourself** (Luke 7:6 ULT)

The centurion sent friends to give Jesus this polite message that Jesus should not come to his house.

> **I ask you, have me excused** (Luke 14:18 ULT)

In this culture, this was a polite formula for declining a social invitation.

> **May I find favor in your eyes, my lord**, since you have comforted me, and since you have spoken to the heart of **your female servant**. (Ruth 2:13 ULT)

Ruth uses several phrases of politeness as she talks to Boaz. **May I find favor in your eyes** is an idiomatic phrase that communicates that Boaz is in a high position, **my lord** is an honorific form of address, and she refers to

herself humbly as **your female servant** even though she is not actually one of his servants.

> **Please** let **a little** water be brought… Let me also bring **a bit** of bread (Genesis 18:4-5 ULT)

Abraham describes his generosity as something small in order to be polite. This was a way to communicate to his guests that they were not imposing on him at all. Abraham also uses a word translated as "please" to make his request more polite.

> Then he brought him outside and said, "**Please** look at the heavens and count the stars…" (Genesis 15:5)

In the above example, God is speaking to Abram, inviting him to look at the stars. He also uses the word translated as "please." God has no need to be polite, but this communicates respect for Abram.

Honorifics

A specific category of politeness is the way that people address other people who are important, powerful, or worthy of honor in other ways. We can refer to this form of politeness as using honorific language. Honorific language can be in the form of special titles or, in some languages, special forms of the words used.

> to the **most excellent** Governor Felix (Acts 23:26 ULT)

The expression **most excellent** was an honorific title by which people addressed Roman government officials.

> **O king, live forever!** (Daniel 5:10 ULT)

This was the polite and respectful way to address the king before saying anything else to him.

Politeness under other categories

People often use language that is non-standard or figurative to communicate politeness. In these cases, there will be a Translation Note under the category of the figure of speech rather than under the category of politeness. The Note will discuss the issue of the figurative speech and then also mention that this is being used to be polite. For example, the following verses will have Translation Notes under the categories given rather than under politeness.

Metaphor

> Men, **brothers and fathers**, hear my defense to you now. (Acts 22:1 ULT)

Paul is using the word **brothers** to refer to his fellow Israelites. He is using the word **fathers** to refer either to Jewish leaders who may be present or to Jewish men who are older than he is. In both cases he is speaking respectfully.

Idiom

> **I beg of you**, about whom is the prophet saying this…? (Acts 8:34 ULT)

The Ethiopian official is using an idiomatic expression as a polite way to introduce a request.

Symbolic action

> **And having fallen down**, they worshiped him (Matt 2:11 ULT)

The act of kneeling down before someone showed deep respect for the person.

Speaking of oneself in the third person

> please do not pass by **your servant**. (Gen 18:3 ULT)

Abraham refers to himself as **your servant** here in order to show respect to his guests.

Euphemism

> And having said this, **he fell asleep**. (Acts 7:60 ULT)

Luke is describing the death of Stephen when he says **he fell asleep**. He is using this polite way of referring to something unpleasant to avoid offending his readers.

Other Uses of the Imperative

> **You pray to the Lord for me**, so that nothing of which you have spoken may come upon me. (Acts 8:24 ULT)

The verb **pray** is an imperative, but it communicates a polite request rather than a command.

Rhetorical question

> **Lord, are you not concerned that my sister has left me alone to serve**? (Luke 10:40 ULT)

Martha is complaining that Jesus is allowing Mary to sit listening to him when there is so much work to do. But Martha respects Jesus, so she uses the question form to make her complaint more polite.

Translation Strategies

If the phrase used in the ULT would be natural and be a polite expression in your language, consider using it. If not, use the strategy below.

(1) Use a phrase that would be both natural and polite in your language for this situation.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use a phrase that would be both natural and polite in your language for this situation.

> **do not trouble yourself** (Luke 7:6 ULT)

I do not want you to go out of your way
or
Please do not bother

> **I ask you, have me excused** (Luke 14:18 ULT)

Please accept my apology for not being able to attend

> **May I find favor in your eyes, my lord**, since you have comforted me, and since you have spoken to the heart of **your female servant**. (Ruth 2:13 ULT)

You are too kind to me, good sir; you have comforted me and you have spoken to my heart **even though I am not worthy of it**.

> Please let **a little** water be brought… Let me also bring **a bit** of bread (Genesis 18:4-5 ULT)

I have **plenty** of water… I also have **plenty** of food

> "**Please** look at the heavens and count the stars…" (Genesis 15:5)

"Look up at the heavens, **if you will**, and count the stars…"

> **O king, live forever!** (Daniel 5:10 ULT)

Your majesty, **I wish you well**!

> **I beg of you**, about whom is the prophet saying this…? (Acts 8:34 ULT)

Please tell me, about whom is the prophet saying this…?

> **You pray to the Lord for me**, so that nothing of which you have spoken may come upon me. (Acts 8:24 ULT)

Please pray to the Lord for me so that nothing of which you have spoken may come upon me.
or
I ask you to pray to the Lord for me so that nothing of which you have spoken may come upon me.

> **Lord, are you not concerned that my sister has left me alone to serve**? (Luke 10:40 ULT)

Lord, it seems as if you do not care that my sister has left me alone to serve.

Revelation References:

Revelation 7:14 Revelation 11:8 Revelation 14:13

Pronouns — When to Use Them

Description

When we talk or write, we use pronouns to refer to people or things without always having to repeat the noun or name. Usually, the first time we refer to someone in a story, we use a descriptive phrase or a name. The next time we might refer to that person with a simple noun or by name. After that we might refer to him simply with a pronoun as long as we think that our listeners will be able to understand easily to whom the pronoun refers.

> Now there was **a man from the Pharisees whose name was Nicodemus, a Jewish leader**. **This man** came to Jesus at night. Jesus replied and said to **him** … (John 3:1, 2a, 3a ULT)

In John 3, Nicodemus is first referred to with noun phrases and his name. Then he is referred to with the noun phrase "this man." Then he is referred to with the pronoun "him."

Each language has its rules and exceptions to this usual way of referring to people and things.

- In some languages, the first time something is referred to in a paragraph or chapter, it is referred to with a noun rather than a pronoun.
- The main character is the person whom a story is about. In some languages, after a main character is introduced in a story, he is usually referred to with a pronoun. Some languages have special pronouns that refer only to the main character.
- In some languages, marking on the verb helps people know who the subject is. (See Verbs.) In some of these languages, listeners rely on this marking to help them understand who the subject is. Speakers will use a pronoun, noun phrase, or proper name only when they want either to emphasize or to clarify who the subject is.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- If translators use a pronoun at the wrong time for their language, readers might not know about whom the writer is talking.
- If translators too frequently refer to a main character by name, listeners of some languages might not realize that the person is a main character, or they might think that there is a new character with the same name.
- If translators use pronouns, nouns, or names at the wrong time, people might think that there is some special emphasis on the person or thing to which it refers.

Examples From the Bible

The example below occurs at the beginning of a chapter. In some languages it might not be clear to whom the pronouns refer.

> Then Jesus entered into the synagogue again, and there was a man who had a withered hand. Some people watched **him** closely to see if **he** would heal **him** on the Sabbath so that they might accuse **him**. (Mark 3:1-2 ULT)

In the example below, two men are named in the first sentence. It might not be clear whom "he" in the second sentence refers to.

> Now after some days had passed, **King Agrippa** and Bernice came down to Caesarea to pay their respects to **Festus**. After **he** had been there for many days, Festus presented to the king the things concerning Paul. (Acts 25:13-14)

Jesus is the main character of the book of Matthew, but in the verses below he is referred to four times by name. This may lead speakers of some languages to think that Jesus is not the main character. Or it might lead them to think that there is more than one person named Jesus in this story. Or it might lead them to think that there is some kind of emphasis on him, even though there is no emphasis.

> At that time **Jesus** went on the Sabbath day through the grainfields. **His** disciples were hungry and began to pluck heads of grain and eat them. But when the Pharisees saw that, they said to **Jesus**, "See, your disciples do what is unlawful to do on the Sabbath." But **Jesus** said to them, "Have you never read what David did, when he was hungry, and the men who were with him?" Then **Jesus** left from there and went into their synagogue. (Matthew 12:1-3,9 ULT)

Translation Strategies

(1) If it would not be clear to your readers to whom or to what a pronoun refers, use a name or a noun.
(2) If repeating a noun or name would lead people to think that a main character is not a main character, or that the writer is talking about more than one person with that name, or that there is some kind of emphasis on someone when there is no emphasis, use a pronoun instead.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If it would not be clear to your readers to whom or to what a pronoun refers, use a name or a noun.

> Again **he** walked into the synagogue, and a man with a withered hand was there. Some Pharisees watched **him** to see if **he** would heal the man on the Sabbath. (Mark 3:1-2)
>
> > Again **Jesus** walked into the synagogue, and a man with a withered hand was there. Some Pharisees watched **Jesus** to see if **he** would heal the man on the Sabbath.

(2) If repeating a noun or name would lead people to think that a main character is not a main character, or that the writer is talking about more than one person with that name, or that there is some kind of emphasis on someone when there is no emphasis, use a pronoun instead.

> At that time **Jesus** went on the Sabbath day through the grainfields. **His** disciples were hungry and began to pluck heads of grain and eat them. But when the Pharisees saw that, they said to **Jesus**, "See, your disciples do what is unlawful to do on the Sabbath." But **Jesus** said to them, "Have you never read what David did, when he was hungry, and the men who were with him?" Then **Jesus** left from there and went into their synagogue. (Matthew 12:1-3,9 ULT)

This may be translated as:

> At that time **Jesus** went on the Sabbath day through the grainfields. **His** disciples were hungry and began to pluck heads of grain and eat them. But when the Pharisees saw that, they said to **him**, "See, your disciples do what is unlawful to do on the Sabbath." But **he** said to them, "Have you never read what David did, when he was hungry, and the men who were with him?" Then **he** left from there and went into their synagogue.

Revelation References:

Revelation 1:5 Revelation 1:6 Revelation 1:7 Revelation 2:16 Revelation 2:24 Revelation 2:27 Revelation 3:9 Revelation 3:19 Revelation 4:11 Revelation 5:7 Revelation 6:3 Revelation 6:4 Revelation 8:1 Revelation 8:5 Revelation 9:5 Revelation 10:11 Revelation 11:12 Revelation 12:6 Revelation 12:8 Revelation 13:16 Revelation 13:16 Revelation 14:3 Revelation 15:3 Revelation 16:4 Revelation 16:5 Revelation 16:10 Revelation 16:15 Revelation 16:16 Revelation 18 Introduction Revelation 18:2 Revelation 19:9 Revelation 20:4 Revelation 20:10 Revelation 21 Introduction Revelation 21:15 Revelation 21:26 Revelation 22:1 Revelation 22:6 Revelation 22:18

Quotations and Quote Margins

Description

When saying that someone said something, we often tell who spoke, whom they spoke to, and what they said. The information about who spoke and whom they spoke to is called the quote margin. What the person said is the quotation. (This is also called a quote.) In some languages the quote margin may come first, last, or even in between two parts of the quotation.

The quote margins are bolded below.

- **She said**, “The food is ready. Come and eat.”
- “The food is ready. Come and eat,” **she said**.
- “The food is ready,” **she said.** “Come and eat.”

Also in some languages, the quote margin may have more than one verb meaning “said.”

> But his mother **answered** and **said**, “No. Rather, he will be called John.” (Luke 1:60 ULT)

When writing that someone said something, some languages put the quote (what was said) in quotation marks called inverted commas (“ ”). Some languages use other symbols around the quotation, such as these angle quote marks (« »), or something else.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Translators need to put the quote margin where it is most clear and natural in their language.
- Translators need to decide whether they want the quote margin to have one or two verbs meaning “said.”
- Translators need to decide which marks to use around the quotation.

Examples From the Bible

Quote margin before the quote

> **Then Zechariah said to the angel**, “How will I know this? For I am an old man and my wife is advanced in her days.” (Luke 1:18 ULT)

> Then tax collectors also came to be baptized, and **they said to him**, “Teacher, what should we do?” (Luke 3:12 ULT)

> So **he said to them**, “Collect nothing more than what you have been ordered.” (Luke 3:13 ULT)

Quote margin after the quote

> Yahweh relented concerning this. “It will not happen,” **he said**. (Amos 7:3 ULT)

Quote margin between two parts of the quote

> “I will hide my face from them,” **he said,** “and I will see what their end will be; for they are a perverse generation, children who are unfaithful.” (Deuteronomy 32:20 ULT)

> For look, days are coming—**this is Yahweh’s declaration**—when I will restore the fortunes of my people, Israel and Judah. (Jeremiah 30:3a ULT)

Translation Strategies

(1) Decide where to put the quote margin.
(2) Decide whether to use one or two words meaning “said.”

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Decide where to put the quote margin.

> **He said**, “Therefore, those among you who are leaders should go down with us. If there is something wrong with the man, let them accuse him.” (Acts 25:5 ULT)
>
> > “Therefore, those who can should go there with us,” **he said**. “If there is something wrong with the man, you should accuse him.”
>
> > “Therefore, those who can should go there with us. If there is something wrong with the man, you should accuse him,” **he said**.
>
> > “Therefore, those who can,” **he said**, “should go there with us. If there is something wrong with the man, you should accuse him.”

(2) Decide whether to use one or two words meaning “said.”

> But his mother **answered and said**, “No. Rather, he will be called John.” (Luke 1:60 ULT)
>
> > But his mother **replied**, “No. Rather, he will be called John.”
>
> > But his mother **said**, “No. Rather, he will be called John.”
>
> > But his mother **answered** like this. “No. Rather, he will be called John,” she **said**.

Revelation References:

Revelation 1:8 Revelation 1:11

Symbolic Language

Description

Symbolic language in speech and writing is the use of symbols to represent other things, other events, etc. In the Bible it occurs most in prophecy and poetry, especially in visions and dreams about things that will happen in the future. Though people may not immediately know the meaning of a symbol, it is important to keep the symbol in the translation.

> Eat this scroll; then go speak to the house of Israel. (Ezekiel 3:1 ULT)

This was in a dream. Eating the scroll is a symbol of Ezekiel reading and understanding well what was written on the scroll, and accepting these words from God into himself.

Purposes of Symbolism

- One purpose of symbolism is to help people understand the importance or severity of an event by putting it in other, very dramatic terms.
- Another purpose of symbolism is to tell some people about something while hiding the true meaning from others who do not understand the symbolism.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

People who read the Bible today may find it hard to recognize that the language is symbolic, and they may not know what the symbol stands for.

Translation Principles

- When symbolic language is used, it is important to keep the symbol in the translation.
- It is also important not to explain the symbol more than the original speaker or writer did, since he may not have wanted everyone living then to be able to understand it easily.

Examples From the Bible

> After this I saw in my visions of the night **a fourth animal**, terrifying, frightening, and very strong. It had **large iron teeth**; it devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled underfoot what was left. It was different from the other animals, and it had **ten horns**. (Daniel 7:7 ULT)

The meaning of the bolded symbols is explained in Daniel 7:23-24 as shown below. The animals represent kingdoms, iron teeth represent a powerful army, and the horns represent powerful leaders.

> This is what that person said, 'As for the fourth animal, it will be **a fourth kingdom** on earth that will be different from all the other kingdoms. It will devour the whole earth, and it will trample it down and break it into pieces. As for the ten horns, out of this kingdom **ten kings** will arise, and another will arise after them. He will be different from the previous ones, and he will conquer the three kings.' (Daniel 7:23-24 ULT)

> I turned around to see the voice that was speaking to me, and as I turned I saw **seven golden lampstands**. In the middle of the lampstands there was one like a son of man … He had **seven stars** in his right hand and **a sword with two sharp edges** was coming out of his mouth. As for the hidden meaning about the seven stars that you saw in my right hand, and the seven golden lampstands: **The seven stars are the angels of the seven churches**, and **the seven lampstands are the seven churches**. (Revelation 1:12-13a, 16a, 20 ULT)

This passage explains the meaning of the seven lampstands and the seven stars. The two-edged sword represents God's word and judgment.

Translation Strategies

(1) Translate the text with the symbols. Often the speaker or author explains the meaning later in the passage.
(2) Translate the text with the symbols. Then explain the symbols in footnotes.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate the text with the symbols. Often the speaker or author explains the meaning later in the passage.

> This is what that person said, 'As for the fourth animal, it will be **a fourth kingdom** on earth that will be different from all the other kingdoms. It will devour the whole earth, and it will trample it down and break it into pieces. As for the ten horns, out of this kingdom **ten kings** will arise, and another will arise after them. He will be different from the previous ones, and he will conquer the three kings.' (Daniel 7:23-24 ULT)

(2) Translate the text with the symbols. Then explain the symbols in footnotes.

> After this I saw in my visions of the night **a fourth animal**, terrifying, frightening, and very strong. It had **large iron teeth**; it devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled underfoot what was left. It was different from the other animals, and it had **ten horns**. (Daniel 7:7 ULT)

> After this I saw in my dream at night a fourth animal, [1] terrifying, frightening, and very strong. It had large iron teeth; [2] it devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled underfoot what was left. It was different from the other animals, and it had ten horns. [3]

> The footnotes would look like:

> [1] The animal is a symbol for a kingdom.
> [2] The iron teeth is a symbol for the kingdom's powerful army.
> [3] The horns are a symbol of powerful kings.

Revelation References:

Revelation 1:4 Revelation 1:16 Revelation 2:12 Revelation 4:5 Revelation 4:9 Revelation 5:14 Revelation 11:4 Revelation 19:15

Appendix: Translation Words

abomination, abominable

Definition:

The term “abomination” is used to refer to something that causes disgust or extreme dislike.

- The Egyptians considered the Hebrew people to be an “abomination.” This means that the Egyptians disliked the Hebrews and did not want to associate with them or be near them.
- Some of the things that the Bible calls “an abomination to Yahweh” include lying, pride, sacrificing humans, worship of idols, murder, and sexual sins such as adultery and homosexual acts.
- In teaching his disciples about the end times, Jesus referred to a prophecy by the prophet Daniel about an “abomination of desolation” that would be set up as a rebellion against God, defiling his place of worship.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “abomination” could also be translated by “something God hates” or “something disgusting” or “disgusting practice” or “very evil action.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the phrase “is an abomination to” could include “is greatly hated by” or “is disgusting to” or “is totally unacceptable to” or “causes deep disgust.”
- The phrase “abomination of desolation” could be translated as “defiling object that causes people to be greatly harmed” or “disgusting thing that causes great sorrow.”

(See also: adultery, desecrate, desolate, false god, sacrifice)

Bible References:

- Ezra 9:1-2
- Genesis 46:34
- Isaiah 1:13
- Matthew 24:15
- Proverbs 26:25

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0887, H6292, H8251, H8262, H8263, H8441, G09460

Revelation References:

Revelation 17:4 Revelation 17:5 Revelation 21:8 Revelation 21:27

adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress

Definition:

The term “adultery” refers to a sin that occurs when a married person has sexual relations with someone who is not that person’s spouse. Both of them are guilty of adultery. The term “adulterous” describes this kind of behavior or any person who commits this sin.

- The term “adulterer” refers generally to any person who commits adultery.
- Sometimes the term “adulteress” is used to specify that it was a woman who committed adultery.
- Adultery breaks the promises that a husband and wife made to each other in their covenant of marriage.
- God commanded the Israelites to not commit adultery.

Translation Suggestions:

- If the target language does not have one word that means “adultery,” this term could be translated with a phrase such as “having sexual relations with someone else’s wife” or “being intimate with another person’s spouse.”
- Some languages may have an indirect way of talking about adultery, such as “sleeping with someone else’s spouse” or “being unfaithful to one’s wife.” (See: euphemism)

(See also: commit, covenant, sexual immorality, faithful)

Bible References:

- Exodus 20:14
- Hosea 4:1-2
- Luke 16:18
- Matthew 5:28
- Matthew 12:39
- Revelation 2:22

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:6** “Do not commit **adultery**.”
- **28:2** Do not commit **adultery**.
- **34:7** “The religious leader prayed like this, ‘Thank you, God, that I am not a sinner like other men-such as robbers, unjust men, **adulterers**, or even like that tax collector.’”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5003, H5004, G34280, G34290, G34300, G34310, G34320

Revelation References:

Revelation 2:22

Almighty

Definition:

The term “Almighty” literally means “all-powerful.” In the Bible, this term always refers to God.

- The titles “the Almighty” or “the Almighty One” refer to God and reveal that he has complete power and authority over everything.
- This term is also used to describe God in the titles “Almighty God” and “God Almighty” and “Lord Almighty” and “Lord God Almighty.”

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated as “All-powerful” or “Completely Powerful One” or “God, who is completely powerful.”
- Ways to translate the phrase “Lord God Almighty” could include “God, the Powerful Ruler” or “Powerful Sovereign God” or “Mighty God who is Master over everything.”

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: God, lord)

Bible References:

- Exodus 6:2-5
- Genesis 17:1
- Genesis 35:11-13
- Job 8:3
- Numbers 24:15-16
- Revelation 1:7-8
- Ruth 1:19-21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H7706, G38410

Revelation References:

Revelation 1:8 Revelation 4:8 Revelation 11:17 Revelation 15:3 Revelation 16:7 Revelation 16:14 Revelation 19:6 Revelation 19:15 Revelation 21:22

altar

Definition:

An altar was a raised structure on which the Israelites burned animals and grains as offerings to God.

- During Bible times, simple altars were often made by forming a mound of packed-down dirt or by carefully placing large stones to form a stable pile.
- Some special box-shaped altars were made of wood overlaid with metals such as gold, brass, or bronze.
- Other people groups living near the Israelites also built altars to offer sacrifices to their gods.

(See also: altar of incense, false god, grain offering, sacrifice)

Bible References:

- Genesis 8:20
- Genesis 22:9
- James 2:21
- Luke 11:49-51
- Matthew 5:23
- Matthew 23:19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an **altar** and sacrificed some of each kind of animal which could be used for a sacrifice.
- **5:8** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his son Isaac and laid him on an **altar**.
- **13:9** A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the **altar**.
- **16:6** He (Gideon) built a new altar dedicated to God near where the **altar** to the idol used to be and made a sacrifice to God on it.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0741, H2025, H4056, H4196, G10410, G23790

Revelation References:

Revelation 6:9 Revelation 8:3 Revelation 8:3 Revelation 8:5 Revelation 9:13 Revelation 11:1 Revelation 14:18 Revelation 16:7

amen, truly

Definition:

The term “amen” is a word used to emphasize or call attention to what a person has said. It is often used at the end of a prayer. Sometimes it is translated as “truly.”

- When used at the end of a prayer, “amen” communicates agreement with the prayer or expresses a desire that the prayer be fulfilled.
- In his teaching, Jesus used “amen” to emphasize the truth of what he said. He often followed that by “and I say to you” to introduce another teaching that related to the previous teaching.
- When Jesus uses “amen” this way, some English versions (and the ULT) translate this as “verily” or “truly.”
- Another word meaning “truly” is sometimes translated as “surely” or “certainly” and is also used to emphasize what the speaker is saying.

Translation Suggestions:

- Consider whether the target language has a special word or phrase that is used to emphasize something that has been said.
- When used at the end of a prayer or to confirm something, “amen” could be translated as “let it be so” or “may this happen” or “that is true.”
- When Jesus says, “truly I tell you,” this could also be translated as “Yes, I tell you sincerely” or “That is true, and I also tell you.”
- The phrase “truly, truly I tell you” could be translated as “I tell you this very sincerely” or “I tell you this very earnestly” or “what I am telling you is true.”

(See also: fulfill, true)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 27:15
- John 5:19
- Jude 1:24-25
- Matthew 26:33-35
- Philemon 1:23-25

- Revelation 22:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0543, G02810

Revelation References:

Revelation 1:6 Revelation 1:7 Revelation 3:14 Revelation 5:14 Revelation 7:12 Revelation 7:12 Revelation 19:4 Revelation 22:20 Revelation 22:21

angel, archangel

Definition:

An angel is a powerful spirit being whom God created. Angels exist to serve God by doing whatever he tells them to do. The term "archangel" refers to the angel who rules or leads all the other angels.

- The word "angel" literally means "messenger."
- The term "archangel" literally means "chief messenger." The only angel referred to in the Bible as an "archangel" is Michael.
- In the Bible, angels gave messages to people from God. These messages included instructions about what God wanted the people to do.
- Angels also told people about events that were going to happen in the future or events that had already happened.
- Angels have God's authority as his representatives and sometimes in the Bible they spoke as if God himself was speaking.
- Other ways that angels serve God are by protecting and strengthening people.
- A special phrase, "angel of Yahweh," has more than one possible meaning: (1) It may mean "angel who represents Yahweh" or "messenger who serves Yahweh." (2) It may refer to Yahweh himself, who looked like an angel as he talked to a person. Either one of these meanings would explain the angel's use of "I" as if Yahweh himself was talking.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "angel" could include "messenger from God" or "God's heavenly servant" or "God's spirit messenger."
- The term "archangel" could be translated as "chief angel" or "head ruling angel" or "leader of the angels."
- Also consider how these terms are translated in a national language or another local language.

- The phrase “angel of Yahweh” should be translated using the words for “angel” and “Yahweh.” This will allow for different interpretations of that phrase. Possible translations could include “angel from Yahweh” or “angel sent by Yahweh” or “Yahweh, who looked like an angel.”

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: chief, head, messenger, Michael, ruler, servant)

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 24:16
- Acts 10:3-6
- Acts 12:23
- Colossians 2:18-19
- Genesis 48:16
- Luke 2:13
- Mark 8:38
- Matthew 13:50
- Revelation 1:20
- Zechariah 1:9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:12** God placed large, powerful **angels** at the entrance to the garden to keep anyone from eating the fruit of the tree of life.
- **22:3** The **angel** responded to Zechariah, “I was sent by God to bring you this good news.”
- **23:6** Suddenly, a shining **angel** appeared to them (the shepherds), and they were terrified. The **angel** said, “Do not be afraid, because I have some good news for you.”
- **23:7** Suddenly, the skies were filled with **angels** praising God.
- **25:8** Then **angels** came and took care of Jesus.
- **38:12** Jesus was very troubled and his sweat was like drops of blood. God sent an **angel** to strengthen him.
- **38:15** “I could ask the Father for an army of **angels** to defend me.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0047, H0430, H4397, H4398, H8136, G00320, G07430, G24650

Revelation References:

Revelation Introduction Revelation 1:1 Revelation 1:20 Revelation 2:1 Revelation 2:8 Revelation 2:12 Revelation 2:18 Revelation 3:1 Revelation 3:5 Revelation 3:7 Revelation 3:14 Revelation 5:2 Revelation 5:11 Revelation 7:1 Revelation 7:2 Revelation 7:2 Revelation 7:11 Revelation 8:2 Revelation 8:3 Revelation 8:4 Revelation 8:5 Revelation 8:6 Revelation 8:8 Revelation 8:12 Revelation 8:13 Revelation 9:1 Revelation 9:11 Revelation 9:13 Revelation 9:14 Revelation 9:14 Revelation 9:15 Revelation 10:1 Revelation 10:5 Revelation 10:7 Revelation 10:8 Revelation 10:10 Revelation 11:15 Revelation 12:9 Revelation 14:6 Revelation 14:10 Revelation 14:15 Revelation 14:18 Revelation 14:19 Revelation 15:1 Revelation 15:6 Revelation 15:7 Revelation 15:8 Revelation 16:1 Revelation 16:5 Revelation 17:1 Revelation 17:7 Revelation 18:1 Revelation 18:21 Revelation 19:17 Revelation 21:9 Revelation 21:12 Revelation 21:17 Revelation 22:6 Revelation 22:8 Revelation 22:16

anoint, anointed, anointing

Definition:

The term “anoint” means to rub or pour oil on a person or object. In biblical times, there were several reasons for anointing someone with oil. Often this was a Symbolic Action, representing God empowering that person with the Holy Spirit for special service to him.

- In the Old Testament, priests, kings, and prophets were anointed with oil to set them apart for special service to God.
- Objects such as altars or the tabernacle were also anointed with oil to show that they were to be used to worship and glorify God.
- In the New Testament, sick people were anointed with oil for their healing.
- Sometimes the oil was mixed with spices, giving it a sweet, perfumed smell.
- The New Testament records two times that Jesus was anointed with perfumed oil by a woman, as an act of worship.
- People prepared dead bodies for burial by anointing them with perfumed oils and spices.
- In the New Testament, receiving the Holy Spirit is described as anointing.
- The titles “Messiah” (Hebrew) and “Christ” (Greek) mean “the Anointed (One).”
- Jesus the Messiah is the one who was chosen and anointed as a Prophet, High Priest, and King.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “anoint” could be translated as “pour/put oil on” or “consecrate by pouring oil on” or “consecrate” or “appoint.”
- Depending on the context, to “be anointed” could be translated as “be consecrated with oil” or “be appointed” or “be consecrated” or “be given the Holy Spirit.”
- A phrase like “the anointed priest,” could be translated as “the priest who was consecrated with oil” or “the priest who was set apart by the pouring on of oil.”

(See also: Christ, consecrate, high priest, King of the Jews, priest, prophet)

Bible References:

- 1 John 2:20
- 1 John 2:27
- 2 Corinthians 1:21
- 1 Samuel 16:2-3
- Acts 4:27-28
- Amos 6:5-6
- Exodus 29:5-7
- James 5:13-15

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0047, H0430, H1101, H1878, H3323, H4397, H4398, H4473, H4886, H4888, H4899, H5480, H8136, G00320, G02180, G07430, G14720, G20250, G34620, G55450, G55480

Revelation References:

Revelation 3:18

apostle, apostleship

Definition:

The “apostles” were men sent by Jesus to preach about God and his kingdom. The term “apostleship” refers to the position and authority of those who were chosen as apostles.

- The word “apostle” means “someone who is sent out for a special purpose.” The apostle has the same authority as the one who sent him.
- Jesus’ twelve closest disciples became the first apostles. Other men, such as Paul and James, also became apostles.
- By God’s power, the apostles were able to boldly preach the gospel and heal people, and were able to force demons to come out of people.

Translation Suggestions:

- The word “apostle” can also be translated with a word or phrase that means “someone who is sent out” or “sent-out one” or “person who is called to go out and preach God’s message to people.”
- It is important to translate the terms “apostle” and “disciple” in different ways.
- Also consider how this term was translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: authority, disciple, James (son of Zebedee), Paul, the twelve)

Bible References:

- Jude 1:17-19
- Luke 9:12-14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **26:10** Then Jesus chose twelve men who were called his **apostles**. The **apostles** traveled with Jesus and learned from him.
- **30:1** Jesus sent his **apostles** to preach and to teach people in many different villages.
- **38:2** Judas was one of Jesus’ **apostles**. He was in charge of the **apostles’** money bag, but he loved money and often stole from the bag.
- **43:13** The disciples devoted themselves to the **apostles’** teaching, fellowship, eating together, and prayer.
- **46:8** Then a believer named Barnabas took Saul to the **apostles** and told them how Saul had preached boldly in Damascus.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G06510, G06520, G24910, G53760, G55700

Revelation References:

Revelation 2:2 Revelation 18:20

ark

Definition:

The term “ark” literally refers to a rectangular wooden box that is made to hold or protect something. An ark can be large or small, depending on what it is being used for.

- In the English Bible, the word “ark” is first used to refer to the very large, rectangular, wooden boat that Noah built to escape the worldwide flood. The ark had a flat bottom, a roof, and walls.
- Ways to translate this term could include “very large boat” or “barge” or “cargo ship” or “large, box-shaped boat.”
- The Hebrew word that is used to refer to this huge boat is the same word used for the basket or box that held baby Moses when his mother put him in the Nile River to hide him. In that case it is usually translated as “basket.”
- In the phrase “ark of the covenant,” a different Hebrew word is used for “ark.” This could be translated as “box” or “chest” or “container.”
- When choosing a term to translate “ark,” it is important in each context to consider what size it is and what it is being used for.

(See also: ark of the covenant, basket)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 3:20
- Exodus 16:33-36
- Exodus 30:6
- Genesis 8:4-5
- Luke 17:27
- Matthew 24:37-39

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0727, H8392, G27870

Revelation References:

Revelation 11:19

ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh, box, Box of the Testimony, Box of the Covenant of Yahweh

Definition:

These terms refer to a special wooden chest, overlaid with gold, that contained the two stone tablets on which the Ten Commandments were written. It also contained Aaron’s staff and a jar of manna.

- The term “ark” here could be translated as “box” or “chest” or “container.”
- The objects in this chest reminded the Israelites of God’s covenant with them.
- The ark of the covenant was located in the “most holy place.”
- God’s presence was above the ark of the covenant in the most holy place of the tabernacle, where he spoke to Moses on behalf of the Israelites.
- During the time that the ark of the covenant was in the most holy place of the temple, the high priest was the only one who could approach the ark, once a year on the Day of Atonement.
- Many English versions translate the term “covenant decrees” literally as “testimony.” This refers to the fact that the Ten Commandments were a testimony or witness to God’s covenant with his people. It is also translated as “covenant law.”

(See also: ark, covenant, atonement, holy place, testimony)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 6:15
- Exodus 25:10-11
- Hebrews 9:5
- Judges 20:27
- Numbers 7:89
- Revelation 11:19

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0727, H1285, H3068

Revelation References:

Revelation 11:19

authority

Definition:

The term “authority” usually refers to a position of influence, responsibility, or rule over another person.

- Kings and other governing rulers have authority over the people they are ruling.
- The word “authorities” can refer to people, governments, or organizations that have authority over others.
- The word “authorities” can also refer to spirit beings who have power over people who have not submitted themselves to God’s authority.
- Masters have authority over their servants or slaves. Parents have authority over their children.
- Governments have the authority or right to make laws that govern their citizens.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “authority” can also be translated as “control” or “right” or “qualifications.”
- Sometimes “authority” is used with the meaning of “power.”
- When “authorities” is used to refer to people or organizations who rule people, it could also be translated as “leaders” or “rulers” or “powers.”
- The phrase “by his own authority” could also be translated as “with his own right to lead” or “based on his own qualifications.”
- The expression, “under authority” could be translated as “responsible to obey” or “having to obey others’ commands.”

(See also: dominion, king, ruler, power)

Bible References:

- Colossians 2:10
- Esther 9:29
- Genesis 41:35
- Jonah 3:6-7
- Luke 12:5
- Luke 20:1-2
- Mark 1:22
- Matthew 8:9

- Matthew 28:19
- Titus 3:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8633, G08310, G14130, G18490, G18500, G20030, G27150, G52470

Revelation References:

Revelation 2:26 Revelation 5 Introduction Revelation 6:8 Revelation 11:6 Revelation 12:10 Revelation 13:2 Revelation 13:4 Revelation 13:5 Revelation 13:7 Revelation 13:12 Revelation 14:18 Revelation 16:9 Revelation 17:12 Revelation 17:13 Revelation 18:1 Revelation 22:14

believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief

Definition:

The terms "believe" and "believe in" are closely related, but have slightly different meanings:

1. believe

- To believe something is to accept or trust that it is true.
- To believe someone is to acknowledge that what that person has said is true.

2. believe in

- To "believe in" someone means to "trust in" that person. It means to trust that the person is who he says he is, that he always speaks the truth, and that he will do what he has promised to do.
- When a person truly believes in something, he will act in such a way that shows that belief.
- The phrase "have faith in" usually has the same meaning as "believe in."
- To "believe in Jesus" means to believe that he is the Son of God, that he is God himself who also became human and who died as a sacrifice to pay for our sins. It means to trust him as Savior and live in a way that honors him.

3. believer

In the Bible, the term "believer" refers to someone who believes in and relies on Jesus Christ as Savior.

- The term "believer" literally means "person who believes."
- The term "Christian" eventually came to be the main title for believers because it indicates that they believe in Christ and obey his teachings.

4. unbelief

The term "unbelief" refers to not believing something or someone.

- In the Bible, "unbelief" refers to not believing in or not trusting in Jesus as one's Savior.
- A person who does not believe in Jesus is called an "unbeliever."

Translation Suggestions:

- To "believe" could be translated as to "know to be true" or "know to be right."
- To "believe in" could be translated as "trust completely" or "trust and obey" or "completely rely on and follow."
- Some translations may prefer to say "believer in Jesus" or "believer in Christ."
- This term could also be translated by a word or phrase that means "person who trusts in Jesus" or "someone who knows Jesus and lives for him."
- Other ways to translate "believer" could be "follower of Jesus" or "person who knows and obeys Jesus."
- The term "believer" is a general term for any believer in Christ, while "disciple" and "apostle" were used more specifically for people who knew Jesus while he was alive. It is best to translate these terms in different ways, in order to keep them distinct.
- Other ways to translate "unbelief" could include "lack of faith" or "not believing."
- The term "unbeliever" could be translated as "person who does not believe in Jesus" or "someone who does not trust in Jesus as Savior."

(See also: believe, apostle, Christian, disciple, faith, trust)

Bible References:

- Genesis 15:6
- Genesis 45:26
- Job 9:16-18
- Habakkuk 1:5-7
- Mark 6:4-6
- Mark 1:14-15
- Luke 9:41
- John 1:12
- Acts 6:5
- Acts 9:42
- Acts 28:23-24
- Romans 3:3
- 1 Corinthians 6:1
- 1 Corinthians 9:5
- 2 Corinthians 6:15
- Hebrews 3:12
- 1 John 3:23

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:4** Noah warned the people about the coming flood and told them to turn to God, but they did not **believe** him.
- **4:8** Abram **believed** God's promise. God declared that Abram was righteous because he **believed** God's promise.
- **11:2** God provided a way to save the firstborn of anyone who **believed in** him.
- **11:6** But the Egyptians did not **believe** God or obey his commands.
- **37:5** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever **believes in** me will live, even though he dies. Everyone who **believes in** me will never die. Do you **believe** this?"
- **43:1** After Jesus returned to heaven, the disciples stayed in Jerusalem as Jesus had commanded them to do. The **believers** there constantly gathered together to pray.
- **43:3** While the **believers** were all together, suddenly the house where they were was filled with a sound like a strong wind. Then something that looked like flames of fire appeared over the heads of all the **believers**.
- **43:13** Every day, more people became **believers**.
- **46:6** That day many people in Jerusalem started persecuting the followers of Jesus, so the **believers** fled to other places. But in spite of this, they preached about Jesus everywhere they went.
- **46:1** Saul was the young man who guarded the robes of the men who killed Stephen. He did not believe in Jesus, so he persecuted the **believers**.

- **46:9** Some **believers** who fled from the persecution in Jerusalem went far away to the city of Antioch and preached about Jesus.
- **46:9** It was at Antioch that **believers** in Jesus were first called "Christians."
- **47:14** They also wrote many letters to encourage and teach the **believers** in the churches.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0539, H0540, G05430, G05440, G05690, G05700, G05710, G39820, G41000, G41020, G41030, G41350

Revelation References:

Revelation 21:8

beloved

Definition:

The term "beloved" is an expression of affection that describes someone who is loved and dear to someone else.

- The term "beloved" literally means "loved (one)" or "(who is) loved."
- God refers to Jesus as his "beloved Son."
- In their letters to Christian churches, the apostles frequently address their fellow believers as "beloved."

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated as "loved" or "loved one" or "well-loved," or "very dear."
- In the context of talking about a close friend, this could be translated as "my dear friend" or "my close friend." In English it is natural to say "my dear friend, Paul" or "Paul, who is my dear friend." Other languages may find it more natural to order this in a different way.
- Note that the word "beloved" comes from the word for God's love, which is unconditional, unselfish, and sacrificial.

(See also: love)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 4:14
- 1 John 3:2
- 1 John 4:7
- Mark 1:11
- Mark 12:6
- Revelation 20:9
- Romans 16:8
- Song of Songs 1:14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0157, H1730, H2532, H3033, H3039, H4261, G00250, G00270, G52070

Revelation References:

Revelation 20:9

blameless

Definition:

The term “blameless” literally means “without blame.” It is used to refer to a person who obeys God wholeheartedly, but it does not mean that the person is sinless.

- Abraham and Noah were considered blameless before God.
- A person who has a reputation for being “blameless” behaves in a way that honors God.
- According to one verse, a person who is blameless is “one who fears God and turns away from evil.”

Translation Suggestions:

- This could also be translated as “with no fault to his character” or “completely obedient to God” or “avoiding sin” or “keeping away from evil.”

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:10
- 1 Thessalonians 3:11-13
- 2 Peter 3:14
- Colossians 1:22
- Genesis 17:1-2
- Philippians 2:15
- Philippians 3:6

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5352, H5355, H8535, G02730, G02740, G02980, G02990, G03380, G04100, G04230

Revelation References:

Revelation 14:5

blasphemy, blaspheme, blasphemous

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “blasphemy” refers to speaking in a way that shows a deep disrespect for God or people. To “blaspheme” someone is to speak against that person so that others think something false or bad about him.

- Most often, to blaspheme God means to slander or insult him by saying things that are not true about him or by behaving in an immoral way that dishonors him.
- It is blasphemy for a human being to claim to be God or to claim that there is a God other than the one true God.
- Some English versions translate this term as “slander” when it refers to blaspheming people.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “blaspheme” can be translated as to “say evil things against” or to “dishonor God” or to “slander.”
- Ways to translate “blasphemy” could include “speaking wrongly about others” or “slander” or “spreading false rumors.”

(See also: dishonor, slander)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 1:12-14
- Acts 6:11
- Acts 26:9-11
- James 2:5-7
- John 10:32-33
- Luke 12:10
- Mark 14:64
- Matthew 12:31
- Matthew 26:65
- Psalms 74:10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1288, H1442, H2778, H5006, H5007, H5344, G09870, G09880, G09890

Revelation References:

Revelation 13:5 Revelation 13:6 Revelation 13:6 Revelation 16:9 Revelation 16:11 Revelation 16:21 Revelation 17:3

bless, blessed, blessing

Definition:

To “bless” someone or something means to cause good and beneficial things to happen to the person or thing that is being blessed.

- Blessing someone also means expressing a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to that person.
- In Bible times, a father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children.
- When people “bless” God or express a desire that God be blessed, this means they are praising him.
- The term “bless” is sometimes used for consecrating food before it is eaten, or for thanking and praising God for the food.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “bless” could also be translated as to “provide abundantly for” or to “be very kind and favorable toward.”
- “God has brought great blessing to” could be translated as “God has given many good things to” or “God has provided abundantly for” or “God has caused many good things to happen to”.
- “He is blessed” could be translated as “he will greatly benefit” or “he will experience good things” or “God will cause him to flourish.”
- “Blessed is the person who” could be translated as “How good it is for the person who.”
- Expressions like “blessed be the Lord” could be translated as “May the Lord be praised” or “Praise the Lord” or “I praise the Lord.”
- In the context of blessing food, this could be translated as “thanked God for the food” or “praised God for giving them food” or “consecrated the food by praising God for it.”

(See also: praise)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 10:16
- Acts 13:34

- Ephesians 1:3
- Genesis 14:20
- Isaiah 44:3
- James 1:25
- Luke 6:20
- Matthew 26:26
- Nehemiah 9:5
- Romans 4:9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:7** God saw that it was good and he **blessed** them.
- **1:15** God made Adam and Eve in his own image. He **blessed** them and told them, "Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth."
- **1:16** So God rested from all he had been doing. He **blessed** the seventh day and made it holy, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **4:4** "I will make your name great. I will **bless** those who **bless** you and curse those who curse you. All families on earth will be **blessed** because of you."
- **4:7** Melchizedek **blessed** Abram and said, "May God Most High who owns heaven and earth **bless** Abram."
- **7:3** Isaac wanted to give his **blessing** to Esau.
- **8:5** Even in prison, Joseph remained faithful to God, and God **blessed** him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0833, H0835, H1288, H1289, H1293, G17570, G21270, G21280, G21290, G31060, G31070, G31080, G60500

Revelation References:

Revelation 1:3 Revelation 14:13 Revelation 16:15 Revelation 19:9 Revelation 20:6 Revelation 22:7 Revelation 22:14

bind, bond, bound

Definition:

The term "bind" means to tie something or fasten it securely. Something that is tied or joined together is called a "bond." The term "bound" is the past tense of this term.

- To be "bound" means to have something tied or wrapped around something else.
- In a figurative sense, a person can be "bound" to a vow, which means he is "required to fulfill" what he promised to do.
- The term "bonds" refers to anything that binds, confines, or imprisons someone. It usually refers to physical chains, fetters or ropes that keep a person from being free to move.
- In Bible times, bonds such as ropes or chains were used to attach prisoners to the wall or floor of a stone prison.
- The term "bind" can also be used to talk about wrapping cloth around a wound to help it heal.
- A dead person would be "bound" with cloth in preparation for burial.
- The term "bond" is used figuratively to refer to something, such as sin, that controls or enslaves someone.
- A bond can also be a close relationship between people in which they support each other emotionally, spiritually and physically. This applies to the bond of marriage.
- For example, a husband and wife are "bound" or tied to each other. It is a bond that God does not want broken.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "bind" could also be translated as "tie" or "tie up" or "wrap (around)."
- Figuratively, it could be translated as to "restrain" or to "prevent" or to "keep from (something)."
- A special use of "bind" in Matthew 16 and 18 means "forbid" or "not permit."
- The term "bonds" could be translated as "chains" or "ropes" or "shackles."

- Figuratively the term “bond” could be translated as “knot” or “connection” or “close relationship.”
- The phrase “bond of peace” means “being in harmony, which brings people in closer relationship to each other” or “the tying together that peace brings.”
- To “bind up” could be translated as “wrap around” or “put a bandage on.”
- To “bind” oneself with a vow could be translated as “promise to fulfill a vow” or “commit to fulfill a vow.”
- Depending on the context, the term “bound” could also be translated as “tied” or “tied up” or “chained” or “obligated (to fulfill)” or “required to do.”

(See also: fulfill, peace, prison, servant, vow)

Bible References:

- Leviticus 8:7

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0247, H0481, H0519, H0615, H0631, H0632, H0640, H1366, H1367, H1379, H2280, H2706, H3256, H3533, H3729, H4147, H4148, H4205, H4562, H5650, H5656, H5659, H6029, H6123, H6616, H6696, H6872, H6887, H7194, H7405, H7573, H7576, H8198, H8244, H8379, G02540, G03310, G03320, G11950, G11960, G11980, G11990, G12100, G13970, G13980, G14010, G14020, G26110, G26150, G37340, G37840, G38140, G40190, G40290, G43850, G48860, G48870, G52650

Revelation References:

Revelation 9:14 Revelation 20:2

call, called, call out, called out

Definition:

The terms “call” and “call out,” in this sense, mean to speak loudly.

- To “call out” to someone means to shout, to announce, or to proclaim. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.
- In some contexts the terms “call” and “call out” mean to loudly ask for help.

Translation Suggestions:

- The expression “call out to you” could be translated as “ask you for help” or “pray to you urgently.”
- To “call out” could be translated as “say loudly” or “shout” or “say with a loud voice.” Make sure the translation of this does not sound like the person is angry.

(See also: pray, cry, call to summon, call name)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0559, H2199, H4744, H6817, H7121, H7123, H7769, H7773, G01540, G03630, G14580, G15280, G19410, G19510, G20280, G20460, G25640, G28210, G28220, G28400, G29190, G30040, G31060, G33330, G33430, G36030, G36860, G36870, G43160, G43410, G43770, G47790, G48670, G54550, G55370, G55810

Revelation References:

Revelation 1:9 Revelation 2:20 Revelation 11:8 Revelation 12:9 Revelation 14:18 Revelation 16:16 Revelation 17:14 Revelation 19:11 Revelation 19:13

Christ, Messiah

Definition:

The terms “Messiah” and “Christ” mean “Anointed One” and refer to Jesus, God’s Son.

- Both “Messiah” and “Christ” are used in the New Testament to refer to God’s Son, whom God the Father appointed to rule as king over his people, and to save them from sin and death.
- In the Old Testament, the prophets wrote prophecies about the Messiah hundreds of years before he came to earth.
- Often a word meaning “anointed (one)” is used in the Old Testament to refer to the Messiah who would come.
- Jesus fulfilled many of these prophecies and did many miraculous works that proves he is the Messiah; the rest of these prophecies will be fulfilled when he returns.
- The word “Christ” is often used as a title, as in “the Christ” and “Christ Jesus.”
- “Christ” also came to be used as part of his name, as in “Jesus Christ.”

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated using its meaning, “the Anointed One” or “God’s Anointed Savior.”
- Many languages use a transliterated word that looks or sounds like “Christ” or “Messiah.” (See: How to Translate Unknowns)
- The transliterated word could be followed by the definition of the term as in, “Christ, the Anointed One.”
- Be consistent in how this is translated throughout the Bible so that it is clear that the same term is being referred to.
- Make sure the translations of “Messiah” and “Christ” work well in contexts where both terms occur in the same verse (such as John 1:41).

(See also: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Son of God, David, Jesus, anoint)

Bible References:

- 1 John 5:1-3
- Acts 2:35
- Acts 5:40-42
- John 1:40-42
- John 3:27-28
- John 4:25
- Luke 2:10-12
- Matthew 1:16

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:7** The **Messiah** was God’s Chosen One who would save the people of the world from sin.
- **17:8** As it happened, the Israelites would have to wait a long time before the **Messiah** came, almost 1,000 years.
- **21:1** From the very beginning, God planned to send the **Messiah**.
- **21:4** God promised King David that the **Messiah** would be one of David’s own descendants.
- **21:5** The **Messiah** would start the New Covenant.
- **21:6** God’s prophets also said that the **Messiah** would be a prophet, a priest, and a king.
- **21:9** The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the **Messiah** would be born from a virgin.
- **43:7** “But God raised him to life again to fulfill the prophecy which says, ‘You will not let your **Holy One** rot in the grave.’”
- **43:9** “But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both Lord and **Messiah**!”
- **43:11** Peter answered them, “Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus **Christ** so that God will forgive your sins.”
- **46:6** Saul reasoned with the Jews, proving that Jesus was the **Messiah**.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4899, G33230, G55470

Revelation References:

Revelation 1:1 Revelation 1:2 Revelation 1:5 Revelation 11:15 Revelation 12:10 Revelation 20:4 Revelation 20:6

church, Church

Definition:

In the New Testament, the term “church” refers to all people who believe in Jesus. Sometimes “church” refers to a part of that larger group who regularly met together in a certain place, such as the “church at Ephesus.”

- This term literally refers to an assembly or congregation of people who were “called out” of the general population to meet together for a special purpose.
- Often the believers in a particular city would meet together in someone’s home to pray together and to hear and discuss scripture. These local churches were given the name of the city such as the “church at Ephesus.”
- In the Bible, “church” does not refer to a building.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “church” could be translated as a “gathering together” or “assembly” or “congregation” or “ones who meet together.”
- The word or phrase that is used to translate this term should also be able to refer to all believers, not just one small group.
- Make sure that the translation of “church” does not just refer to a building.
- The term used to translate “assembly” in the Old Testament could also be used to translate this term.
- Also consider how it is translated in a local or national Bible translation. (See: How to Translate Unknowns.)

(See also: assembly, believe, Christian)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:12
- 1 Thessalonians 2:14
- 1 Timothy 3:5
- Acts 9:31
- Acts 14:23
- Acts 15:41
- Colossians 4:15
- Ephesians 5:23
- Matthew 16:18
- Philippians 4:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **43:12** About 3,000 people believed what Peter said and became disciples of Jesus. They were baptized and became part of the **church** at Jerusalem.
- **46:9** Most of the people in Antioch were not Jews, but for the first time, very many of them also became believers. Barnabas and Saul went there to teach these new believers more about Jesus and to strengthen the **church**.
- **46:10** So the **church** in Antioch prayed for Barnabas and Saul and placed their hands on them. Then they sent them off to preach the good news of Jesus in many other places.
- **47:13** The good news of Jesus kept spreading, and the **Church** kept growing.
- **50:1** For almost 2,000 years, more and more people around the world have been hearing the good news about Jesus the Messiah. The **Church** has been growing.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G15770

Revelation References:

Revelation 1:4 Revelation 1:11 Revelation 1:20 Revelation 1:20 Revelation 2:1 Revelation 2:7 Revelation 2:8 Revelation 2:11 Revelation 2:12 Revelation 2:17 Revelation 2:18 Revelation 2:23 Revelation 3:1 Revelation 3:6 Revelation 3:7 Revelation 3:14 Revelation 3:22 Revelation 22:16

confess, confession

Definition:

To confess means to admit or assert that something is true. A “confession” is a statement or admission that something is true.

- The term “confess” can refer to boldly stating the truth about God. It can also refer to admitting that we have sinned.
- The Bible says that if people confess their sins to God, he will forgive them.
- James the apostle wrote in his letter that when believers confess their sins to each other, this brings spiritual healing.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Philippians that someday everyone will confess or declare that Jesus is Lord.
- Paul also said that if people confess that Jesus is Lord and believe that God raised him from the dead, they will be saved.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “confess” could include, “admit” or “testify” or “declare” or “acknowledge” or “affirm.”
- Different ways to translate “confession” could be, “declaration” or “testimony” or “statement about what we believe” or “admitting sin.”

(See also: faith, testimony)

Bible References:

- 1 John 1:8-10
- 2 John 1:7-8
- James 5:16
- Leviticus 5:5-6
- Matthew 3:4-6
- Nehemiah 1:6-7
- Philippians 2:9-11
- Psalms 38:17-18

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3034, H8426, G18430, G36700, G36710

Revelation References:

Revelation 3:5

covenant

Definition:

In the Bible, the term "covenant" refers to a formal, binding agreement between two parties that one or both parties must fulfill.

- This agreement can be between individuals, between groups of people, or between God and people.
- When people make a covenant with each other, they promise that they will do something, and they must do it.
- Examples of human covenants include marriage covenants, business agreements, and treaties between countries.
- Throughout the Bible, God made several different covenants with his people.
- In some of the covenants, God promised to fulfill his part without conditions. For example, when God established his covenant with mankind promising to never destroy the earth again with a worldwide flood, this promise had no conditions for people to fulfill.
- In other covenants, God promised to fulfill his part only if the people obeyed him and fulfilled their part of the covenant.

The term "new covenant" refers to the commitment or agreement God made with his people through the sacrifice of his Son, Jesus.

- God's "new covenant" was explained in the part of the Bible called the "New Testament."
- This new covenant is in contrast to the "old" or "former" covenant that God had made with the Israelites in Old Testament times.
- The new covenant is better than the old one because it is based on the sacrifice of Jesus, which completely atoned for people's sins forever. The sacrifices made under the old covenant did not do this.
- God writes the new covenant on the hearts those who become believers in Jesus. This causes them to want to obey God and to begin to live holy lives.
- The new covenant will be completely fulfilled in the end times when God establishes his reign on earth. Everything will once again be very good, as it was when God first created the world.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, "binding agreement" or "formal commitment" or "pledge" or "contract."
- Some languages may have different words for covenant depending on whether one party or both parties have made a promise they must keep. If the covenant is one-sided, it could be translated as "promise" or "pledge."
- Make sure the translation of this term does not sound like people proposed the covenant. In all cases of covenants between God and people, it was God who initiated the covenant.
- The term "new covenant" could be translated as "new formal agreement" or "new pact" or "new contract."
- The word "new" in these expressions has the meaning of "fresh" or "new kind of" or "another."

(See also: covenant, promise)

Bible References:

- Genesis 9:12
- Genesis 17:7
- Genesis 31:44
- Exodus 34:10-11
- Joshua 24:24-26
- 2 Samuel 23:5
- 2 Kings 18:11-12
- Mark 14:24
- Luke 1:73
- Luke 22:20
- Acts 7:8
- 1 Corinthians 11:25-26
- 2 Corinthians 3:6
- Galatians 3:17-18
- Hebrews 12:24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 4:9 Then God made a **covenant** with Abram. A **covenant** is an agreement between two parties.
- 5:4 “I will make Ishmael a great nation, too, but my **covenant** will be with Isaac.”
- 6:4 After a long time, Abraham died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the **covenant** were passed on to Isaac.
- 7:10 “The **covenant** promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to Jacob.”
- 13:2 God said to Moses and the people of Israel, “If you will obey my voice and keep my **covenant**, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a holy nation.”
- 13:4 Then God gave them the **covenant** and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods.”
- 15:13 Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the **covenant** that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai.
- 21:5 Through the prophet Jeremiah, God promised that he would make a **New Covenant**, but not like the covenant God made with Israel at Sinai. In the **New Covenant**, God would write his law on the people’s hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins. The Messiah would start the **New Covenant**.
- 21:14 Through the Messiah’s death and resurrection, God would accomplish his plan to save sinners and start the **New Covenant**.
- 38:5 Then Jesus took a cup and said, “Drink this. It is my blood of the **New Covenant** that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins. Do this to remember me every time you drink it.”
- 48:11 But God has now made a **New Covenant** that is available to everyone. Because of this **New Covenant**, anyone from any people group can become part of God’s people by believing in Jesus.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1285, H2319, H3772, G08020, G12420, G49340

Revelation References:

Revelation 11:19

crucify, crucified

Definition:

The term "crucify" means to execute someone by attaching him to a cross and leaving him there to suffer and die in great pain.

- The victim was either tied to the cross or nailed to it. Crucified people died from blood loss or from suffocation.
- The ancient Roman Empire frequently used this method of execution to punish and kill people who were terrible criminals or who had rebelled against the authority of their government.
- The Jewish religious leaders asked the Roman governor to order his soldiers to crucify Jesus. The soldiers nailed Jesus to a cross. He suffered there for six hours, and then died.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "crucify" could be translated as "kill on a cross" or "execute by nailing to a cross."

(See also: cross, Rome)

Bible References:

- Acts 2:23
- Galatians 2:20-21
- Luke 23:20-22
- Luke 23:34
- Matthew 20:17-19
- Matthew 27:23-24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:11** But the Jewish leaders and the crowd shouted, "**Crucify** him (Jesus)!"
- **39:12** Pilate became afraid that the crowd would begin to riot, so he ordered his soldiers to **crucify** Jesus.played a major role in the crucifixion of Jesus Christ.
- **40:1** After the soldiers mocked Jesus, they led him away to **crucify** him. They made him carry the cross on which he would die.
- **40:4** Jesus was **crucified** between two robbers.
- **43:6** "Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know. But you **crucified** him!"
- **43:9** "You **crucified** this man, Jesus."
- **44:8** Peter answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah. You **crucified** Jesus, but God raised him to life again!"

Word Data:

- Strong's: G03880, G43620, G47170, G49570

Revelation References:

Revelation 11:8

curse, cursed, cursing

Definition:

The term “curse” means to cause negative things to happen to the person or thing that is being cursed.

- A curse can be a statement that harm will happen to someone or something.
- To curse someone can also be an expression of desire that bad things will happen to them.
- It can also refer to the punishment or other negative things that someone causes to happen to someone.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as “cause bad things to happen to” or “declare that something bad will happen to” or “swear to cause evil things to happen to.”
- In the context of God sending curses on his disobedient people, it could be translated as “punish by allowing bad things to happen.”
- The term “cursed” when used to describe people could be translated as “(this person) will experience much trouble.”
- The phrase “cursed be” could be translated as “May (this person) experience great difficulties.”
- The phrase, “Cursed is the ground” could be translated as “The soil will not be very fertile.”
- However, if the target language has the phrase “cursed be” and it has the same meaning, then it is good to keep the same phrase.

(See also: bless)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 14:24-26
- 2 Peter 2:12-14
- Galatians 3:10
- Galatians 3:14
- Genesis 3:14
- Genesis 3:17
- James 3:10
- Numbers 22:6
- Psalms 109:28

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:9** God said to the snake, “You are **cursed**!”
- **2:11** “Now the ground is **cursed**, and you will need to work hard to grow food.”
- **4:4** “I will bless those who bless you and **curse** those who **curse** you.”
- **39:7** Then Peter vowed, saying, “May God **curse** me if I know this man!”
- **50:16** Because Adam and Eve disobeyed God and brought sin into this world, God **cursed** it and decided to destroy it.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0422, H0423, H0779, H1288, H2763, H2764, H3994, H5344, H6895, H7043, H7045, H7621, H8381, G03310, G03320, G06850, G19440, G25510, G26520, G26530, G26710, G26720, G60350

Revelation References:

Revelation 22:3

demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit

Definition:

All these terms refer to demons, which are spirit beings that oppose God's will.

- God created angels to serve him. When the devil rebelled against God, some of the angels also rebelled and were thrown out of heaven. It is believed that demons and evil spirits are these "fallen angels."
- Sometimes these demons are called "unclean spirits." The term "unclean" means "impure" or "evil" or "unholy."
- Because demons serve the devil, they do evil things. Sometimes they live inside people and control them.
- Demons are more powerful than human beings, but not as powerful as God.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "demon" could also be translated as "evil spirit."
- The term "unclean spirit" could also be translated as "impure spirit" or "corrupt spirit" or "evil spirit."
- Make sure that the word or phrase used to translate this term is different from the term used to refer to the devil.
- Also consider how the term "demon" is translated in a local or national language. (See: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: demon-possessed, Satan, false god, angel, evil, clean)

Bible References:

- James 2:19
- James 3:15
- Luke 4:36
- Mark 3:22
- Matthew 4:24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **26:9** Many people who had **demons** in them were brought to Jesus. When Jesus commanded them, the **demons** came out of the people, and often shouted, "You are the Son of God!"
- **32:8** The **demons** came out of the man and entered the pigs.
- **47:5** Finally one day when the slave girl started yelling, Paul turned to her and said to the **demon** that was in her, "In the name of Jesus, come out of her." Right away the **demon** left her.
- **49:2** He (Jesus) walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out **demons**, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2932, H7307, H7451, H7700, G01690, G11390, G11400, G11410, G11420, G41900, G41510, G41520, G41890

Revelation References:

Revelation 9:20 Revelation 16:13 Revelation 16:14 Revelation 18:2 Revelation 18:2

chosen, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect

Definition:

The term “the elect” literally means “chosen ones” or “chosen people” and refers to those whom God has appointed or selected to be his people. “Chosen One” or “Chosen One of God” is a title that refers to Jesus, who is the chosen Messiah.

- The term “choose” means to select something or someone or to decide something. It is often used to refer to God appointing people to belong to him and to serve him.
- To be “chosen” means to be “selected” or “appointed” to be or do something.
- God chose people to be holy, to be set apart by him for the purpose of bearing good spiritual fruit. That is why they are called “the chosen (ones)” or “the elect.”
- The term “chosen one” is sometimes used in the Bible to refer to certain people such as Moses and King David whom God had appointed as leaders over his people. It is also used to refer to the nation of Israel as God’s chosen people.
- The phrase “the elect” is an older term that literally means “the chosen ones” or “the chosen people.” This phrase in the original language is plural when referring to believers in Christ.
- In older English Bible versions, the term “elect” is used in both the Old and New Testaments to translate the word for “chosen one(s).” More modern versions use “elect” only in the New Testament, to refer to people who have been saved by God through faith in Jesus. Elsewhere in the Bible text, they translate this word more literally as “chosen ones.”

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate “elect” with a word or phrase that means “chosen ones” or “chosen people.” This could also be translated as “people whom God chose” or “the ones God appointed to be his people.”
- The phrase “who were chosen” could also be translated as “who were appointed” or “who were selected” or “whom God chose.”
- “I chose you” could be translated as “I appointed you” or “I selected you.”
- In reference to Jesus, “Chosen One” could also be translated as “God’s chosen One” or “God’s specially appointed Messiah” or “the One God appointed (to save people).”

(See also: appoint, Christ)

Bible References:

- 2 John 1:1
- Colossians 3:12
- Ephesians 1:3-4
- Isaiah 65:22-23
- Luke 18:7
- Matthew 24:19-22
- Romans 8:33

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0970, H0972, H0977, H1262, H1305, H4005, H6901, G01380, G01400, G15860, G15880, G15890, G19510, G37240, G44000, G44010, G47580, G48990, G55000

Revelation References:

Revelation 17:14

eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever

Definition:

The terms “everlasting” and “eternal” have very similar meanings and refer to something that will always exist or that lasts forever.

- The term “eternity” refers to a state of being that has no beginning or end. It can also refer to life that never ends.
- After this present life on earth, humans will spend eternity either in heaven with God or in hell apart from God.
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” are used in the New Testament to refer to living forever with God in heaven.

The term “forever” refers to never-ending time.

- The phrase “forever and ever” has the idea of time that never ends and expresses what eternity or eternal life is like. It emphasizes that something will always happen or exist. It refers to time that never ends.
- God said that David’s throne would last “forever.” This is referred to the fact that David’s descendant Jesus will reign as king forever.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “eternal” or “everlasting” could include “unending” or “never stopping” or “always continuing.”

- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” could also be translated as “life that never ends” or “life that continues without stopping” or “the raising up of our bodies to live forever.”

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “eternity” could include “existing outside of time” or “unending life” or “life in heaven.”

- Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: How to Translate Unknowns)

- “Forever” could also be translated by “always” or “never ending.”

- The phrase “will last forever” could also be translated as “always exist” or “will never stop” or “will always continue.”

- The emphatic phrase “forever and ever” could also be translated as “for always and always” or “not ever ending” or “which never, ever ends.”

- David’s throne lasting forever could be translated as “David’s descendant will reign forever” or “a descendant of David will always be reigning.”

(See also: David, reign, life)

Bible References:

- Genesis 17:8
- Genesis 48:4
- Exodus 15:17
- 2 Samuel 3:28-30
- 1 Kings 2:32-33
- Job 4:20-21
- Psalms 21:4
- Isaiah 9:6-7
- Isaiah 40:27-28
- Daniel 7:18
- Luke 18:18
- Acts 13:46
- Romans 5:21
- Hebrews 6:19-20
- Hebrews 10:11-14
- 1 John 1:2
- 1 John 5:12
- Revelation 1:4-6
- Revelation 22:3-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:1** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, “Teacher, what must I do to inherit **eternal life**?”
- **28:1** One day, a rich young ruler came up to Jesus and asked him, “Good Teacher, what must I do to have **eternal life**?” Jesus said to him, “Why do you ask me about what is good? There is only One who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have **eternal life**, obey God’s laws.”

- **28:10** Jesus answered, “Everyone who has left houses, brothers, sisters, father, mother, children, or property for my name’s sake, will receive 100 times more and will also receive **eternal life**.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3117, H4481, H5331, H5703, H5705, H5769, H5865, H5957, H6924, G01260, G01650, G01660, G13360

Revelation References:

Revelation 14:6 Revelation 20 Introduction Revelation 21 Introduction

evil, wicked, wickedness, unpleasant

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “evil” can refer either to the concept of moral wickedness or emotional unpleasantness. The context will usually make it clear which meaning is intended in the specific instance of the term.

- While “evil” may describe a person’s character, “wicked” may refer more to a person’s behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
- The term “wickedness” refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
- The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering and being cruel and unkind.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the terms “evil” and “wicked” can be translated as “bad” or “sinful” or “immoral.”
- Other ways to translate these could include “not good” or “not righteous” or “not moral.”
- Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: disobey, sin, good, righteous, demon)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 24:11
- 1 Timothy 6:10
- 3 John 1:10
- Genesis 2:17
- Genesis 6:5-6
- Job 1:1
- Job 8:20
- Judges 9:57
- Luke 6:22-23
- Matthew 7:11-12
- Proverbs 3:7
- Psalms 22:16-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 2:4 "God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and **evil** like he does."
- 3:1 After a long time, many people were living in the world. They had become very **wicked** and violent.
- 3:2 But Noah found favor with God. He was a righteous man living among **wicked** people.
- 4:2 God saw that if they all kept working together to do **evil**, they could do many more sinful things.
- 8:12 "You tried to do **evil** when you sold me as a slave, but God used the **evil** for good!"
- 14:2 They (Canaanites) worshiped false gods and did many **evil** things.
- 17:1 But then he (Saul) became a **wicked** man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- 18:11 In the new kingdom of Israel, all the kings were **evil**.
- 29:8 The king was so angry that he threw the **wicked** servant into prison until he could pay back all of his debt.
- 45:2 They said, "We heard him (Stephen) speak **evil** things about Moses and God!"
- 50:17 He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, **evil**, pain, or death.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H0605, H1100, H1681, H1942, H2154, H2162, H2254, H2617, H3399, H3415, H4209, H4849, H5753, H5766, H5767, H5999, H6001, H6090, H7451, H7455, H7489, H7561, H7562, H7563, H7564, G00920, G01130, G04590, G09320, G09870, G09880, G14260, G25490, G25510, G25540, G25550, G25560, G25570, G25590, G25600, G26350, G26360, G41510, G41890, G41900, G41910, G53370

Revelation References:

Revelation 2:2 Revelation 20 Introduction

faith

Definition:

In general, the term "faith" refers to a belief, trust or confidence in someone or something.

- To "have faith" in someone is to believe that what he says and does is true and trustworthy.
- To "have faith in Jesus" means to believe all of God's teachings about Jesus. It especially means that people trust in Jesus and his sacrifice to cleanse them from their sin and to rescue them from the punishment they deserve because of their sin.
- True faith or belief in Jesus will cause a person to produce good spiritual fruits or behaviors because the Holy Spirit is living in him.
- Sometimes "faith" refers generally to all the teachings about Jesus, as in the expression "the truths of the faith."
- In contexts such as "keep the faith" or "abandon the faith," the term "faith" refers to the state or condition of believing all the teachings about Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, "faith" can be translated as "belief" or "conviction" or "confidence" or "trust."
- For some languages these terms will be translated using forms of the verb "believe." (See: abstractnouns)
- The expression "keep the faith" could be translated by "keep believing in Jesus" or "continue to believe in Jesus."
- The sentence "they must keep hold of the deep truths of the faith" could be translated by "they must keep believing all the true things about Jesus that they have been taught."
- The expression "my true son in the faith" could be translated by something like "who is like a son to me because I taught him to believe in Jesus" or "my true spiritual son, who believes in Jesus."

(See also: believe, faithful)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 4:7
- Acts 6:7
- Galatians 2:20-21
- James 2:20

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **5:6** When Isaac was a young man, God tested Abraham's **faith** by saying, "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me."
- **31:7** Then he (Jesus) said to Peter, "You man of little **faith**, why did you doubt?"
- **32:16** Jesus said to her, "Your **faith** has healed you. Go in peace."
- **38:9** Then Jesus said to Peter, "Satan wants to have all of you, but I have prayed for you, Peter, that your **faith** will not fail."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0529, H0530, G16800, G36400, G41020, G60660

Revelation References:

Revelation 2:13 Revelation 2:19 Revelation 13:10 Revelation 14 Introduction Revelation 14:12 Revelation 20 Introduction

faithful, faithfulness, trustworthy

Definition:

To be "faithful" to God means to consistently live according to God's teachings. It means to be loyal to him by obeying him. The state or condition of being faithful is "faithfulness."

- A person who is faithful can be trusted to always keep his promises and to always fulfill his responsibilities to other people.
- A faithful person perseveres in doing a task, even when it is long and difficult.
- Faithfulness to God is the consistent practice of doing what God wants us to do.

Translation Suggestions:

- In many contexts, "faithful" can be translated as "loyal" or "dedicated" or "dependable."
- In other contexts, "faithful" can be translated by a word or phrase that means "continuing to believe" or "persevering in believing and obeying God."
- Ways that "faithfulness" could be translated could include "persevering in believing" or "loyalty" or "trustworthiness" or "believing and obeying God."

(See also: believe, faith, believe)

Bible References:

- Genesis 24:49
- Leviticus 26:40
- Numbers 12:7
- Joshua 2:14
- Judges 2:16-17
- 1 Samuel 2:9
- Psalm 12:1
- Proverbs 11:12-13
- Isaiah 1:26
- Jeremiah 9:7-9
- Hosea 5:7
- Luke 12:46
- Luke 16:10
- Colossians 1:7
- 1 Thessalonians 5:24
- 3 John 1:5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:5** Even in prison, Joseph remained **faithful** to God, and God blessed him.
- **14:12** Even so, God was still **faithful** to His promises to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.
- **15:13** The people promised to remain **faithful** to God and follow his laws.
- **17:9** David ruled with justice and **faithfulness** for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **35:12** "The older son said to his father, 'All these years I have worked **faithfully** for you!'"
- **49:17** But God is **faithful** and says that if you confess your sins, he will forgive you.
- **50:4** "If you remain **faithful** to me to the end, then God will save you."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0529, H0530, H0539, H0540, H0571, H0898, H2181, H4603, H4604, H4820, G05690, G05710, G41030

Revelation References:

Revelation 1:5 Revelation 2:10 Revelation 2:13 Revelation 3:14 Revelation 17:14 Revelation 19:11 Revelation 21:5 Revelation 22:6

god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry

Definition:

A false god is something that people worship instead of the one true God. The term "goddess" refers specifically to a female false god.

- These false gods or goddesses do not exist. Yahweh is the only God.
- People sometimes make objects into idols to worship as symbols of their false gods.
- In the Bible, God's people frequently turned away from obeying him in order to worship false gods.
- Demons often deceive people into believing that the false gods and idols they worship have power.
- Baal, Dagon, and Molech were three of the many false gods that were worshiped by people in Bible times.
- Asherah and Artemis (Diana) were two of the goddesses that ancient peoples worshiped.

An idol is an object that people make so they can worship it. Something is described as "idolatrous" if it involves giving honor to something other than the one true God.

- People make idols to represent the false gods that they worship.
- These false gods do not exist; there is no God besides Yahweh.
- Sometimes demons work through an idol to make it seem like it has power, even though it does not.
- Idols are often made of valuable materials like gold, silver, bronze, or expensive wood.
- An "idolatrous kingdom" means a "kingdom of people who worship idols" or a "kingdom of people who worship earthly things."
- The term "idolatrous figure" is another word for a "carved image" or an "idol."

Translation Suggestions:

- There may already be a word for "god" or "false god" in the language or in a nearby language.
- The term "idol" could be used to refer to false gods.
- In English, a lower case "g" is used to refer to false gods, and upper case "G" is used to refer to the one true God. Other languages also do that.
- Another option would be to use a completely different word to refer to the false gods.
- Some languages may add a word to specify whether the false god is described as male or female.

(See also: God, Asherah, Baal, Molech, demon, image, kingdom, worship)

Bible References:

- Genesis 35:2
- Exodus 32:1
- Psalms 31:6
- Psalms 81:8-10
- Isaiah 44:20
- Acts 7:41
- Acts 7:43
- Acts 15:20
- Acts 19:27
- Romans 2:22
- Galatians 4:8-9
- Galatians 5:19-21
- Colossians 3:5
- 1 Thessalonians 1:9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **10:2** Through these plagues, God showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's **gods**.
- **13:4** Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other **gods**."
- **14:2** They (Canaanites) worshiped false **gods** and did many evil things.
- **16:1** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite **gods** instead of Yahweh, the true God.
- **18:13** But most of Judah's kings were evil, corrupt, and they worshiped idols. Some of the kings even sacrificed their children to false **gods**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H0367, H0410, H0426, H0430, H0457, H1322, H1544, H1892, H2553, H3649, H4656, H4906, H5236, H5566, H6089, H6090, H6091, H6456, H6459, H6673, H6736, H6754, H7723, H8163, H8251, H8267, H8441, H8655, G14930, G14940, G14950, G14960, G14970, G22990, G27120

Revelation References:

Revelation 9:20 Revelation 21:8 Revelation 22:15

fear, afraid, frighten

Definition:

The terms “fear” often refers to the unpleasant emotion a person feels when experiencing a potential threat to their safety or well-being. In the Bible, however, the term “fear” can also mean an attitude of worship, respect, awe, or obedience toward another person, usually someone powerful such as God or a king.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “fear” can be translated in various ways. Some possibilities include: “be afraid;” “deeply respect,” or “deep respect;” “revere,” or “reverence;” or perhaps “be in awe of.”
- The sentence “The fear of God fell on all of them” might be translated in various ways. Some possibilities include: “Suddenly they all felt a deep awe and respect for God;” or “Immediately, they all felt very amazed and revered God deeply;” or “Right then, they all felt very afraid of God (because of his great power).”
- The phrase “fear Yahweh” could be translated as “reverence Yahweh” or “deeply respect Yahweh.”
- The phrase “fear not” could also be translated as “do not be afraid” or “stop being afraid.”

(See also: awe, Yahweh, Lord, marvel, power)

Bible References:

- 1 John 4:18
- Acts 2:43
- Acts 19:15-17
- Genesis 50:21
- Isaiah 11:3-5
- Job 6:14
- Jonah 1:9
- Luke 12:5
- Matthew 10:28
- Proverbs 10:24-25

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0367, H0926, H1204, H1481, H1672, H1674, H1763, H2119, H2296, H2727, H2729, H2730, H2731, H2844, H2849, H2865, H3016, H3025, H3068, H3372, H3373, H3374, H4032, H4034, H4035, H4116, H4172, H6206, H6342, H6343, H6345, H6427, H7264, H7267, H7297, H7374, H7461, H7493, H8175, G08700, G11670, G11680, G11690, G16300, G17190, G21240, G21250, G29620, G53980, G53990, G54000, G54010

Revelation References:

Revelation 1:17 Revelation 2:10 Revelation 11:11 Revelation 11:18 Revelation 14:7 Revelation 15:4 Revelation 18:10 Revelation 18:15 Revelation 19:5

fellowship

Definition:

In general, the term “fellowship” refers to friendly interactions between members of a group of people who share similar interests and experiences.

- In the Bible, the term “fellowship” usually refers to the unity of believers in Christ.
- Christian fellowship is a shared relationship that believers have with one another through their relationship with Christ and the Holy Spirit.
- The early Christians expressed their fellowship through listening to the teaching of God’s Word and praying together, through the sharing of their belongings, and through eating meals together.
- Christians also have fellowship with God through their faith in Jesus and his sacrificial death on the cross which removed the barrier between God and people.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “fellowship” could include “a sharing together” or “relationship” or “companionship” or “Christian community.”

Bible References:

- 1 John 1:3
- Acts 2:40-42
- Philippians 1:3-6
- Philippians 2:1
- Philippians 3:10
- Psalms 55:12-14

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2266, H8667, G28420, G28440, G33520, G47900

Revelation References:

Revelation 18:4

fulfill, fulfilled, carried out

Definition:

The term “fulfill” means to complete or accomplish something that was expected.

- When a prophecy is fulfilled, it means that God causes to happen what was predicted in the prophecy.
- If a person fulfills a promise or a vow, it means that he does what he has promised to do.
- To fulfill a responsibility means to do the task that was assigned or required.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “fulfill” could be translated as “accomplish” or “complete” or “cause to happen” or “obey” or “perform.”
- The phrase “has been fulfilled” could also be translated as “has come true” or “has happened” or “has taken place.”
- Ways to translate “fulfill,” as in “fulfill your ministry,” could include “complete” or “perform” or “practice” or “serve other people as God has called you to do.”

(See also: prophet, Christ, minister, call)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 2:27
- Acts 3:17-18
- Leviticus 22:17-19
- Luke 4:21
- Matthew 1:22-23
- Matthew 5:17
- Psalms 116:12-15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:4** John **fulfilled** what the prophets said, “See I send my messenger ahead of you, who will prepare your way.”
- **40:3** The soldiers gambled for Jesus’ clothing. When they did this, they **fulfilled** a prophecy that said, “They divided my garments among them, and gambled for my clothing.”

- **42:7** Jesus said, “I told you that everything written about me in God’s word must be **fulfilled**.”
- **43:5** “This **fulfills** the prophecy made by the prophet Joel in which God said, ‘In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.’”
- **43:7** “This **fulfills** the prophecy which says, ‘You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.’”
- **44:5** “Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to **fulfill** the prophecies that the Messiah would suffer and die.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1214, H5487, G10960, G41380

Revelation References:

Revelation 6:11 Revelation 17:17

Gentile

Definition:

The term “Gentile” refers to anyone who is not a Jew. Gentiles are people who are not descendants of Jacob.

- In the Bible, the term “uncircumcised” is also used figuratively to refer to Gentiles because many of them did not circumcise their male children as the Israelites did.
- Because God chose the Jews to be his special people, they thought of the Gentiles as outsiders who could never be God’s people.
- The Jews were also called “Israelites” or “Hebrews” at different times in history. They referred to anyone else as a “Gentile.”
- Gentile could also be translated as “not a Jew” or “non-Jewish” or “not an Israelite” (Old Testament) or “non-Jew.”.
- Traditionally, Jews would neither eat with nor associate with Gentiles, which at first caused problems within the early church.

(See also: Israel, Jacob, Jew)

Bible References:

- Acts 9:13-16
- Acts 14:5-7
- Galatians 2:16
- Luke 2:32
- Matthew 5:47
- Matthew 6:5-7
- Romans 11:25

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1471, G14820, G14840, G16720

Revelation References:

Revelation 11:2

glory, glorious, glorify

Definition:

The term "glory" is a general term for a family of concepts including value, worth, importance, honor, splendor, or majesty. The term "glorify" means to ascribe glory to someone or something, or to show or tell how glorious something or someone is.

- In the Bible, the term "glory" is especially used to describe God, who is more valuable, more worthy, more important, more honorable, more splendid, and more majestic than anyone or anything in the universe. Everything about his character reveals his glory.
- People can glorify God by telling about the wonderful things he has done. They can also glorify God by living in accordance with God's character, because doing so shows to others his value, worth, importance, honor, splendor, and majesty.
- The expression to "glory in" means to boast about or take pride in something.

Old Testament

- The specific phrase "the glory of Yahweh" in the Old Testament usually refers to some perceptible manifestation of Yahweh's presence in a particular location.

New Testament

- God the Father will glorify God the Son by revealing to all people the full extent of how glorious Jesus is.
- Everyone who believes in Christ will be glorified with him. This use of the term "glorify" carries a unique meaning. It means that when people who believe in Christ are raised to life, they will be changed physically to be like Jesus as he appeared after his resurrection.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate "glory" could include "splendor" or "majesty" or "awesome greatness" or "extreme value."
- The term "glorious" could be translated as "full of glory" or "extremely valuable" or "brightly shining" or "awesomely majestic."
- The expression "give glory to God" could be translated as "honor God's greatness" or "praise God because of his splendor" or "tell others how great God is."
- The expression "glory in" could also be translated as "praise" or "take pride in" or "boast about" or "take pleasure in."
- "Glorify" could also be translated as "give glory to" or "bring glory to" or "cause to appear great."
- The phrase "glorify God" could also be translated as "praise God" or "talk about God's greatness" or "show how great God is" or "honor God (by obeying him)."
- The term "be glorified" could also be translated as "be shown to be very great" or "be praised" or "be exalted."

(See also: honor, majesty, exalt, obey, praise)

Bible References:

- Exodus 24:17
- Numbers 14:9-10
- Isaiah 35:2
- Luke 18:43
- Luke 2:9
- John 12:28
- Acts 3:13-14
- Acts 7:1-3
- Romans 8:17
- 1 Corinthians 6:19-20
- Philippians 2:14-16
- Philippians 4:19
- Colossians 3:1-4
- 1 Thessalonians 2:5
- James 2:1-4
- 1 Peter 4:15-16
- Revelation 15:4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **23:7** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, "**Glory** to God in heaven and peace on earth to the people he favors!"
- **25:6** Then Satan showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their **glory** and said, "I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me."

- **37:1** When Jesus heard this news, he said, “This sickness will not end in death, but it is for the **glory** of God.”
- **37:8** Jesus responded, “Did I not tell you that you would see God’s **glory** if you believe in me?”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0117, H0142, H0155, H0215, H1342, H1921, H1926, H1935, H1984, H3367, H3513, H3519, H3520, H6286, H6643, H7623, H8597, G13910, G13920, G17400, G17410, G27440, G48880

Revelation References:

Revelation 1:6 Revelation 4 Introduction Revelation 4:9 Revelation 4:11 Revelation 5:12 Revelation 5:13 Revelation 7:12 Revelation 11:13 Revelation 14:7 Revelation 15:4 Revelation 15:8 Revelation 16:9 Revelation 18:1 Revelation 18:7 Revelation 19:1 Revelation 19:7 Revelation 21:11 Revelation 21:23 Revelation 21:24 Revelation 21:26

God

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “God” refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God’s personal name is “Yahweh.”

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as “Yahweh,” which means “he is” or “I am” or “the One who (always) exists.”
- The Bible also teaches about false “gods,” which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “God” could include “Deity” or “Creator” or “Supreme Being” or “Supreme Creator” or “Infinite Sovereign Lord” or “Eternal Supreme Being.”
- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for “God” in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god. Another way to make this distinction would be to use different terms for “God” and “god.” NOTE: In the biblical text, when a person who does not worship Yahweh speaks about Yahweh and uses the word “god,” it is acceptable to render the term without a capital letter in reference to Yahweh (see Jonah 1:6, 3:9).

- The phrase "I will be their God and they will be my people" could also be translated as "I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: create, false god, God the Father, Holy Spirit, false god, Son of God, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- 1 John 1:7
- 1 Samuel 10:7-8
- 1 Timothy 4:10
- Colossians 1:16
- Deuteronomy 29:14-16
- Ezra 3:1-2
- Genesis 1:2
- Hosea 4:11-12
- Isaiah 36:6-7
- James 2:20
- Jeremiah 5:5
- John 1:3
- Joshua 3:9-11
- Lamentations 3:43
- Micah 4:5
- Philippians 2:6
- Proverbs 24:12
- Psalms 47:9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:1** **God** created the universe and everything in it in six days.
- **1:15** **God** made man and woman in his own image.
- **5:3** "I am **God** Almighty. I will make a covenant with you."
- **9:14** **God** said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am Yahweh, the **God** of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- **10:2** Through these plagues, **God** showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's gods.
- **16:1** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true **God**.
- **22:7** "You, my son, will be called the prophet of the **Most High God** who will prepare the people to receive the Messiah!"
- **24:9** There is only one **God**. But John heard **God** the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- **25:7** "Worship only the Lord your **God** and only serve him."
- **28:1** "There is only one who is good, and that is **God**."
- **49:9** But **God** loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with **God** forever.
- **50:16** But some day **God** will create a new heaven and a new earth that will be perfect.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0136, H0305, H0410, H0426, H0430, H0433, H2486, H2623, H3068, H3069, H3863, H4136, H6697, G01120, G05160, G09320, G09350, G10960, G11400, G20980, G21240, G21280, G21500, G21520, G21530, G22990, G23040, G23050, G23120, G23130, G23140, G23150, G23160, G23170, G23180, G23190, G23200, G33610, G37850, G41510, G52070, G53770, G54630, G55370, G55380

Revelation References:

Revelation 1:1 Revelation 1:8 Revelation 2:7 Revelation 3:1 Revelation 3:2 Revelation 3:12 Revelation 3:12 Revelation 3:12 Revelation 3:12 Revelation 3:14 Revelation 4:5 Revelation 4:8 Revelation 4:11 Revelation 5:6 Revelation 5:9 Revelation 5:10 Revelation 7:2 Revelation 7:3 Revelation 7:10 Revelation 7:11 Revelation 7:12 Revelation 7:15 Revelation 7:17 Revelation 8:2 Revelation 8:4 Revelation 9:4 Revelation 9:13 Revelation 10:7 Revelation 11:1 Revelation 11:11 Revelation 11:13 Revelation 11:16 Revelation 11:16 Revelation 11:17 Revelation 11:19 Revelation 12:5 Revelation 12:6 Revelation 12:10 Revelation 12:17 Revelation 13:6 Revelation 14:4 Revelation 14:7 Revelation 14:10 Revelation 14:12 Revelation 14:19 Revelation 15:1 Revelation 15:2 Revelation 15:3 Revelation 15:3 Revelation 15:7 Revelation 15:8 Revelation 16:1 Revelation 16:7 Revelation 16:9 Revelation 16:11 Revelation 16:14 Revelation 16:19 Revelation 16:21 Revelation 17:17 Revelation 17:17 Revelation 18:5 Revelation 18:8 Revelation 18:20 Revelation 19:1 Revelation 19:4 Revelation 19:5 Revelation 19:6 Revelation 19:9 Revelation 19:10 Revelation 19:15 Revelation 19:17 Revelation 20:6 Revelation 21:2 Revelation 21:3 Revelation 21:3 Revelation 21:7 Revelation 21:10 Revelation 21:11 Revelation 21:22 Revelation 21:23 Revelation 22:1 Revelation 22:3 Revelation 22:5 Revelation 22:6 Revelation 22:9 Revelation 22:18 Revelation 22:19

godly, godliness, ungodly, godless, ungodliness, godlessness

Definition:

The term “godly” is used to describe a person who acts in a way that honors God and shows what God is like. “Godliness” is the character quality of honoring God by doing his will.

- A person who has godly character will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit, such as love, joy, peace, patience, kindness, and self control.
- The quality of godliness shows that a person has the Holy Spirit and is obeying him.

The terms “ungodly” and “godless” describe people who are in rebellion against God. Living in an evil way, without thought of God, is called “ungodliness” or “godlessness.”

- The meanings of these words are very similar. However, “godless” and “godlessness” may describe a more extreme condition in which people or nations do not even acknowledge God or his right to rule them.
- God pronounces judgment and wrath on ungodly people, on everyone who rejects him and his ways.

Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase “the godly” could be translated as “godly people” or “people who obey God.” (See: nominaladj)

- The adjective “godly” could be translated as “obedient to God” or “righteous” or “pleasing to God.”

- The phrase “in a godly manner” could be translated as “in a way that obeys God” or “with actions and words that please God.”

- Ways to translate “godliness” could include “acting in a way that pleases God” or “obeying God” or “living in a righteous manner.”

- Depending on the context, the term "ungodly" could be translated as "displeasing to God" or "immoral" or "disobeying God."

- The terms "godless" and "godlessness" literally mean that the people are "without God" or "having no thought of God" or "acting in a way that does not acknowledge God."

- Other ways to translate "ungodliness" or "godlessness" could be "wickedness" or "evil" or "rebellion against God".

(See also evil, honor, obey, righteous)

Bible References:

- Job 27:10
- Proverbs 11:9
- Acts 3:12
- 1 Timothy 1:9-11
- 1 Timothy 4:7
- 2 Timothy 3:12
- Hebrews 12:14-17
- Hebrews 11:7
- 1 Peter 4:18
- Jude 1:16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0430, H1100, H2623, H5760, H7563, G05160, G07630, G07640, G07650, G21240, G21500, G21520, G21530, G23160, G23170

Revelation References:

Revelation 11 Introduction

God the Father, heavenly Father, Father

Definition:

The terms "God the Father" and "heavenly Father" refer to Yahweh, the one true God. Another term with the same meaning is "Father," used most often when Jesus was referring to him.

- God exists as God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit. Each one is fully God, and yet they are only one God. This is a mystery that mere humans cannot fully understand.
- God the Father sent God the Son (Jesus) into the world and he sends the Holy Spirit to his people.
- Anyone who believes in God the Son becomes a child of God the Father, and God the Holy Spirit comes to live in that person. This is another mystery that human beings cannot fully understand.

Translation Suggestions:

- In translating the phrase "God the Father," it is best to translate "Father" with the same word that the language naturally uses to refer to a human father.
- The term "heavenly Father" could be translated by "Father who lives in heaven" or "Father God who lives in heaven" or "God our Father from heaven."
- Usually "Father" is capitalized when it, refers to God.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: ancestor, God, heaven, Holy Spirit, Jesus, Son of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 8:4-6
- 1 John 2:1
- 1 John 2:23
- 1 John 3:1
- Colossians 1:1-3
- Ephesians 5:18-21

- Luke 10:22
- Matthew 5:16
- Matthew 23:9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:9** There is only one God. But John heard **God the Father** speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- **29:9** Then Jesus said, "This is what my **heavenly Father** will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart."
- **37:9** Then Jesus looked up to heaven and said, "**Father**, thank you for hearing me."
- **40:7** Then Jesus cried out, "It is finished! **Father**, I give my spirit into your hands."
- **42:10** "So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of **the Father**, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **43:8** "Jesus is now exalted to the right hand of **God the Father**."
- **50:10** "Then the righteous ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of **God their Father**."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0001, H0002, G39620

Revelation References:

Revelation 1:6 Revelation 2:28 Revelation 3:5
Revelation 3:21 Revelation 14:1

good news, gospel

Definition:

The term "gospel" literally means "good news" and refers to a message or announcement that tells people something that benefits them and makes them glad.

- In the Bible, this term usually refers to the message about God's salvation for people through Jesus' sacrifice on the cross.
- In most English Bibles, "good news" is usually translated as "gospel" and is also used in phrases such as, the "gospel of Jesus Christ," the "gospel of God" and the "gospel of the kingdom."

Translation Suggestions:

- Different ways to translate this term could include, "good message" or "good announcement" or "God's message of salvation" or "the good things God teaches about Jesus."
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the phrase, "good news of" could include, "good news/message about" or "good message from" or "the good things God tells us about" or "what God says about how he saves people."

(See also: kingdom, sacrifice, save)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 1:5
- Acts 8:25
- Colossians 1:23
- Galatians 1:6
- Luke 8:1-3
- Mark 1:14
- Philippians 2:22
- Romans 1:3

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **23:6** The angel said, "Do not be afraid, because I have some **good news** for you. The Messiah, the Master, has been born in Bethlehem!"

- **26:3** Jesus read, “God has given me his Spirit so that I can proclaim **good news** to the poor, freedom to captives, recovery of sight for the blind, and release to the oppressed. This is the year of the Lord’s favor.”
- **45:10** Philip also used other Scriptures to tell him the **good news of Jesus**.
- **46:10** Then they sent them off to preach the **good news about Jesus** in many other places.
- **47:1** One day, Paul and his friend Silas went to the town of Philippi to proclaim the **good news about Jesus**.
- **47:13** The **good news about Jesus** kept spreading, and the Church kept growing.
- **50:1** For almost 2,000 years, more and more people around the world have been hearing the **good news about Jesus** the Messiah.
- **50:2** When Jesus was living on earth he said, “My disciples will preach the **good news** about the kingdom of God to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come.”
- **50:3** Before he returned to heaven, Jesus told Christians to proclaim the **good news** to people who have never heard it.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G20970, G20980, G42830

Revelation References:

Revelation 14:6

grace, gracious

Definition:

The word “grace” refers to help or blessing that is given to someone who has not earned it. The term “gracious” describes someone who shows grace to others.

- God’s grace toward sinful human beings is a gift that is freely given.
- The concept of grace also refers to being kind and forgiving to someone who has done wrong or hurtful things.
- The expression to “find grace” is an expression that means to receive help and mercy from God. Often it includes the meaning that God is pleased with someone and helps him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways that “grace” could be translated include “divine kindness” or “God’s favor” or “God’s kindness and forgiveness for sinners” or “merciful kindness.”
- The term “gracious” could be translated as “full of grace” or “kind” or “merciful” or “mercifully kind.”
- The expression “he found grace in the eyes of God” could be translated as “he received mercy from God” or “God mercifully helped him” or “God showed his favor to him” or “God was pleased with him and helped him.”

Bible References:

- Acts 4:33
- Acts 6:8
- Acts 14:4
- Colossians 4:6
- Colossians 4:18
- Genesis 43:28-29
- James 4:7
- John 1:16
- Philippians 4:21-23
- Revelation 22:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2580, H2587, H2589, H2603, H8467, G21430, G54850, G55430

Revelation References:

Revelation 1:4 Revelation 22:21

Hades, Sheol

Definition:

The terms “Hades” (in Greek) and “Sheol” (in Hebrew) are proper names for the place where the spirits of dead people would go after they had died.

- In these ancient cultures, people thought of this as an underground dwelling place where the spirits of dead people existed in a shadowy, semi-conscious form.
- Although these terms are place names, in the Bible they often mean the same thing as “death” or “the grave.”
- Throughout most of biblical history, “Sheol” and “Hades” refer to a neutral place where all of the dead go to await judgment, both the righteous and the unrighteous. In the New Testament, however, “Hades” begins to be seen as a place for only the unrighteous, in contrast with “Abraham’s side” (Luke 16:22) or “paradise” (Luke 23:43), which describe the place for the righteous.

Translation Suggestions

- Both “Sheol” and “Hades” can be translated in various ways, depending on the context. Some possibilities include: “place of the dead,” “place for dead spirits,” “the underworld,” “the pit,” “the grave,” or “death.”
- Some translations keep the proper names “Sheol” and “Hades,” spelling them to fit the sound patterns of the language of translation. (See: How to Translate Unknowns).
- A phrase could also be added to each term to explain it. Examples of doing this are, “Sheol, place where dead people are” and “Hades, place of death.”

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: death, heaven, hell, tomb)

Bible References:

- Acts 2:31
- Genesis 44:29

- Jonah 2:2
- Luke 10:15
- Luke 16:23
- Matthew 11:23
- Matthew 16:18
- Revelation 1:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7585, G00860

Revelation References:

Revelation 1:18 Revelation 6:8 Revelation 20:13 Revelation 20:14

heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly

Definition:

The term that is translated as "heaven" usually refers to where God lives. The same word can also mean "sky," depending on the context.

- The term "heavens" refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars. It also includes the heavenly bodies, such as far-off planets, that we cannot directly see from the earth.
- The term "sky" refers to the blue expanse above the earth that has clouds and the air we breathe. Often the sun and moon are also said to be "up in the sky."
- In some contexts in the Bible, the word "heaven" could refer to either the sky or the place where God lives.

Translation Suggestions:

- For "kingdom of heaven" in the book of Matthew, it is best to keep the word "heaven" since this is distinctive to Matthew's gospel.
- The terms "heavens" or "heavenly bodies" could also be translated as "sun, moon, and stars" or "all the stars in the universe."
- The phrase, "stars of heaven" could be translated as "stars in the sky" or "stars in the galaxy" or "stars in the universe."

(See also: kingdom of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 8:22-24
- 1 Thessalonians 1:8-10
- 1 Thessalonians 4:17
- Deuteronomy 9:1
- Ephesians 6:9
- Genesis 1:1
- Genesis 7:11
- John 3:12
- John 3:27
- Matthew 5:18
- Matthew 5:46-48

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:2** They even began building a tall tower to reach **heaven**.
- **14:11** He (God) gave them bread from **heaven**, called "manna."
- **23:7** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, "Glory to God in **heaven** and peace on earth to the people he favors!"
- **29:9** Then Jesus said, "This is what my **heavenly** Father will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart."
- **37:9** Then Jesus looked up to **heaven** and said, "Father, thank you for hearing me."
- **42:11** Then Jesus went up to **heaven**, and a cloud hid him from their sight.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1534, H6160, H6183, H7834, H8064, H8065, G09320, G20320, G33210, G37700, G37710, G37720

Revelation References:

Revelation 3:12 Revelation 4:1 Revelation 4:2 Revelation 5:3 Revelation 5:13 Revelation 6:13 Revelation 6:14 Revelation 8:1 Revelation 8:13 Revelation 9:1 Revelation 10:1 Revelation 10:4 Revelation 10:5 Revelation 10:6 Revelation 10:8 Revelation 11:6 Revelation 11:12 Revelation 11:12 Revelation 11:13 Revelation 11:15 Revelation 11:19 Revelation 12:1 Revelation 12:3 Revelation 12:4 Revelation 12:8 Revelation 12:10 Revelation 12:12 Revelation 13:6 Revelation 13:13 Revelation 14:2 Revelation 14:7 Revelation 14:13 Revelation 15 Introduction Revelation 15:1 Revelation 15:5 Revelation 16:11 Revelation 16:21 Revelation 18:1 Revelation 18:4 Revelation 18:5 Revelation 18:20 Revelation 19 Introduction Revelation 19:1 Revelation 19:11 Revelation 19:14 Revelation 20 Introduction Revelation 20:9 Revelation 20:11 Revelation 21:1 Revelation 21:1 Revelation 21:2 Revelation 21:10

Hebrew

Definition:

The term "Hebrew" refers in a very general sense to the people group descended from Abraham through the line of Isaac and Jacob.

- The specific word "Hebrew" can refer either to a individual person in the people group or to the language spoken by that people group.
- The vast majority of the Old Testament was written in the language called "Hebrew." However, in most cases in the New Testament, the specific term "Hebrew" probably refers to the Aramaic language rather than the Hebrew language.
- In different places in the Bible, the Hebrews were also called "Israelites" or "Jews." When translating, it is best to keep all three terms distinct in the text, as long as it is clear that these terms refer to the same people group.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Israel, Jew, Jewish leaders)

Bible References:

- Acts 26:12-14
- Genesis 39:13-15
- Genesis 40:15
- Genesis 41:12-13
- John 5:1-4
- John 19:13
- Jonah 1:8-10
- Philippians 3:5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5680, G14440, G14450, G14460, G14470

Revelation References:

Revelation 9:11 Revelation 16:16

hell, lake of fire

Definition:

Hell is the final place of unending pain and suffering where God will punish everyone who rebels against him and rejects his plan of saving them through Jesus' sacrifice. It is also referred to as the "lake of fire."

- Hell is described as a place of fire and severe suffering.
- Satan and the evil spirits who follow him will be thrown into hell for eternal punishment.
- People who do not believe in Jesus' sacrifice for their sin and do not trust in him to save them, will be punished forever in hell.

Translation Suggestions:

- These terms should probably be translated differently since they occur in different contexts.
- Some languages cannot use "lake" in the phrase "lake of fire" because it refers to water.
- The term "hell" could be translated as "place of suffering" or "final place of darkness and pain."
- The term "lake of fire" could also be translated as "sea of fire" or "huge fire (of suffering)" or "field of fire."

(See also: heaven, death, Hades, abyss)

Bible References:

- James 3:6
- Luke 12:5
- Mark 9:42-44
- Matthew 5:21-22
- Matthew 5:29
- Matthew 10:28-31
- Matthew 23:33
- Matthew 25:41-43
- Revelation 20:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **50:14** He (God) will throw them into **hell**, where they will weep and grind their teeth in anguish forever. A fire that never goes out will continually burn them, and worms will never stop eating them.
- **50:15** He will throw Satan into **hell** where he will burn forever, along with everyone who chose to follow him rather than to obey God.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7585, G00860, G04390, G04400, G10670, G30410, G44420, G44430, G44470, G44480, G50200, G53940, G54570

Revelation References:

Revelation 20 Introduction

holy, holiness, unholy, sacred

Definition:

The terms "holy" and "holiness" refer to the character of God that is totally set apart and separated from everything that is sinful and imperfect.

- Only God is absolutely holy. He makes people and things holy.
- A person who is holy belongs to God and has been set apart for the purpose of serving God and bringing him glory.
- An object that God has declared to be holy is one that he has set apart for his glory and use, such as an altar that is for the purpose of offering sacrifices to him.
- People cannot approach him unless he allows them to, because he is holy and they are merely human beings, sinful and imperfect.
- In the Old Testament, God set apart the priests as holy for special service to him. They had to be ceremonially cleansed from sin in order to approach God.
- God also set apart as holy certain places and things that belonged to him or in which he revealed himself, such as his temple.

Literally, the term "unholy" means "not holy." It describes someone or something that does not honor God.

- This word is used to describe someone who dishonors God by rebelling against him.
- A thing that is called "unholy" could be described as being common, profane or unclean. It does not belong to God.

The term "sacred" describes something that relates to worshiping God or to the pagan worship of false gods.

- In the Old Testament, the term "sacred" was often said to describe the stone pillars and other objects used in the worship of false gods. This could also be translated as "religious."
- "Sacred songs" and "sacred music" refer to music that was sung or played for God's glory. This could be translated as "music for worshiping Yahweh" or "songs that praise God."
- The phrase "sacred duties" referred to the "religious duties" or "rituals" that a priest performed to lead people in worshiping God. It could also refer to the rituals performed by a pagan priest to worship a false god

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "holy" might include "set apart for God" or "belonging to God" or "completely pure" or "perfectly sinless" or "separated from sin."

- To "make holy" is often translated as "sanctify" in English. It could also be translated as "set apart (someone) for God's glory."

- Ways to translate "unholy" could include "not holy" or "not belonging to God" or "not honoring to God" or "not godly."

- In some contexts, "unholy" could be translated as "unclean."

(See also: Holy Spirit, consecrate, sanctify, set apart)

Bible References:

- Genesis 28:22
- 2 Kings 3:2
- Lamentations 4:1
- Ezekiel 20:18-20
- Matthew 7:6
- Mark 8:38
- Acts 7:33
- Acts 11:8
- Romans 1:2
- 2 Corinthians 12:3-5
- Colossians 1:22
- 1 Thessalonians 3:13
- 1 Thessalonians 4:7
- 2 Timothy 3:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:16** He (God) blessed the seventh day and made it **holy**, because on this day he rested from his work.

- **9:12** “You are standing on **holy** ground.”
- **13:2** “If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a **holy** nation.”
- **13:5** “Always be sure to keep the Sabbath day **holy**.”
- **22:5** “So the baby will be **holy**, the Son of God.”
- **50:2** As we wait for Jesus to return, God wants us to live in a way that is **holy** and that honors him.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0430, H2455, H2623, H4676, H4720, H6918, H6922, H6942, H6944, H6948, G00370, G00380, G00400, G00400, G00410, G00420, G04620, G18590, G21500, G24120, G24130, G28390, G37410, G37420

Revelation References:

Revelation 3:7 Revelation 4:8 Revelation 4:8 Revelation 4:8 Revelation 6:10 Revelation 11:2 Revelation 14:10 Revelation 15:4 Revelation 20:6 Revelation 21:2 Revelation 21:10 Revelation 22:11 Revelation 22:11 Revelation 22:19

Holy One

Definition:

The term “Holy One” is a title in the Bible that almost always refers to God.

- In the Old Testament, this title often occurs in the phrase “Holy One of Israel.”
- In the New Testament, Jesus is also referred to as the “Holy One.”
- The term “holy one” is sometimes used in the Bible to refer to an angel.

Translation Suggestions:

- The literal term is “the Holy” (with “One” being implied.) Many languages (like English) will translate this with the implied noun included (such as “One” or “God”).
- This term could also be translated as “God, who is holy” or “the Set Apart One.”
- The phrase “the Holy One of Israel” could be translated as “the Holy God whom Israel worships” or “the Holy One who rules Israel.”
- It is best to translate this term using the same word or phrase that is used to translate “holy.”

(See also: holy, God)

Bible References:

- 1 John 2:20
- 2 Kings 19:22
- Acts 2:27
- Acts 3:13-14
- Isaiah 5:15-17
- Isaiah 41:14
- Luke 4:33-34

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2623, H0376, H6918, G00400, G37410

Revelation References:

Revelation 16:5

Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit

Definition:

These terms all refer to the Holy Spirit, who is God. The one true God exists eternally as the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit.

- The Holy Spirit is also referred to as "the Spirit" and "Spirit of Yahweh" and "Spirit of truth."
- Because the Holy Spirit is God, he is absolutely holy, infinitely pure, and morally perfect in all his nature and in everything he does.
- Along with the Father and the Son, the Holy Spirit was active in creating the world.
- When God's Son, Jesus, returned to heaven, God sent the Holy Spirit to his people to lead them, teach them, comfort them, and enable them to do God's will.
- The Holy Spirit guided Jesus and he guides those who believe in Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could simply be translated with the words used to translate "holy" and "spirit."
- Ways to translate this term could also include "Pure Spirit" or "Spirit who is Holy" or "God the Spirit."

(See also: holy, spirit, God, Lord, God the Father, Son of God, gift)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:10
- 1 Thessalonians 4:7-8
- Acts 8:17
- Galatians 5:25
- Genesis 1:1-2
- Isaiah 63:10
- Job 33:4
- Matthew 12:31
- Matthew 28:18-19
- Psalms 51:10-11

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:1** But **God's Spirit** was there over the water.
- **24:8** When Jesus came up out of the water after being baptized, **the Spirit of God** appeared in the form of a dove and came down and rested on him.
- **26:1** After overcoming Satan's temptations, Jesus returned in the power of **the Holy Spirit** to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- **26:3** Jesus read, "God has given me **his Spirit** so that I can proclaim good news to the poor, freedom to captives, recovery of sight for the blind, and release to the oppressed."
- **42:10** "So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and **the Holy Spirit** and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **43:3** They were all filled with the **Holy Spirit** and they began to speak in other languages.
- **43:8** "And Jesus has sent the **Holy Spirit** just as he promised he would do. The **Holy Spirit** is causing the things that you are are now seeing and hearing."
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins. Then he will also give you the gift of the **Holy Spirit**."
- **45:1** He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the **Holy Spirit** and of wisdom.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3068, H6944, H7307, G00400, G41510

Revelation References:

Revelation 1:10 Revelation 2:7 Revelation 2:11 Revelation 2:17 Revelation 3:6 Revelation 3:22 Revelation 4:2 Revelation 14:13 Revelation 17:3 Revelation 21:10 Revelation 22:17

honor

Definition:

The terms “honor” and “to honor” refer to giving someone respect, esteem, or reverence.

- Honor is usually given to someone who is of higher status and importance, such as a king or God.
- God instructs Christians to honor others.
- Children are instructed to honor their parents in ways that include respecting them and obeying them.
- The terms “honor” and “glory” are often used together, especially when referring to Jesus. These may be two different ways of referring to the same thing.
- Ways of honoring God include thanking and praising him, and showing him respect by obeying him and living in a way that shows how great he is.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “honor” could include “respect” or “esteem” or “high regard.”
- The term to “honor” could be translated as to “show special respect to” or to “cause to be praised” or to “show high regard for” or to “highly value.”

(See also: dishonor, glory, praise)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 2:8
- Acts 19:17
- John 4:44
- John 12:26
- Mark 6:4
- Matthew 15:6

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1420, H1921, H1922, H1923, H1926, H1927, H1935, H2082, H2142, H3366, H3367, H3368, H3372, H3373, H3374, H3444, H3513, H3519, H3655, H3678, H5081, H5375, H5457, H6213, H6286, H6437, H6942, H6944, H6965, H7236, H7613, H7812, H8597, H8416, G08200, G13910, G13920, G17840, G21510, G25700, G31700, G44110, G45860, G50910, G50920, G50930, G53990

Revelation References:

Revelation 4:9 Revelation 4:11 Revelation 5:12 Revelation 5:13 Revelation 7:12 Revelation 21:26

in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him

Definition:

The phrase “in Christ” and related terms refer to the state or condition of being in relationship with Jesus Christ through faith in him.

- Other related terms include “in Christ Jesus, in Jesus Christ, in the Lord Jesus, in the Lord Jesus Christ.”
- Possible meanings for the term “in Christ” could include “because you belong to Christ” or “through the relationship you have with Christ” or “based on your faith in Christ.”
- These related terms all have the same meaning of being in a state of believing in Jesus and being his disciple.
- Note: Sometimes the word “in” belongs with the verb. For example, “share in Christ” means to “share in” the benefits that come from knowing Christ. To “glory in” Christ means to be glad and give praise to God for who Jesus is and what he has done. To “believe in” Christ means to trust him as Savior and know him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “in Christ” and “in the Lord” (and related phrases) could include:
  - “who belong to Christ”
  - “because you believe in Christ”
  - “because Christ has saved us”
  - “in service to the Lord”
  - “relying on the Lord”
  - “because of what the Lord has done.”
- People who “believe in” Christ or who “have faith in” Christ believe what Jesus taught and are trusting him to save them because of his sacrifice on the cross that paid the penalty for their sins. Some languages may have one word that translates verbs like “believe in” or “share in” or “trust in.”

(See also: Christ, Lord, Jesus, believe, faith)

Bible References:

- 1 John 2:5
- 2 Corinthians 2:17
- 2 Timothy 1:1
- Galatians 1:22
- Galatians 2:17
- Philemon 1:6
- Revelation 1:10
- Romans 9:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G15190, G29620, G55470

Revelation References:

Revelation 1:9 Revelation 14:13

inherit, inheritance, heir

Definition:

The term “inherit” refers to receiving something valuable from a parent after a parent dies. The term can also refer to receiving something valuable from some other person because of a special relationship with that person. An “inheritance” is the things that are received, and an “heir” is a person who receives an inheritance.

- A physical inheritance that is received may be money, land, or other kinds of property.
- God promised Abraham and his descendants that they would inherit the land of Canaan, that it would belong to them forever.

Translation Suggestions:

- As always, consider first whether there are already terms in the target language for the concept of an heir or an inheritance, and use those terms.
- Depending on the context, other ways that the term “inherit” could be translated might include “receive” or “possess” or “come into possession of.”
- Ways to translate “inheritance” could include “promised gift” or “secure possession.”
- The term “heir” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “privileged child who receives the father’s possessions.”
- The term “heritage” could be translated as “inherited blessings.”

(See also: heir, Canaan, Promised Land, possess)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 6:9
- 1 Peter 1:4
- 2 Samuel 21:3
- Acts 7:4-5
- Deuteronomy 20:16
- Galatians 5:21
- Genesis 15:7
- Hebrews 9:15
- Jeremiah 2:7
- Luke 15:11
- Matthew 19:29
- Psalm 79:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:6** When Abram arrived in Canaan God said, “Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an **inheritance**.”
- **27:1** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, “Teacher, what must I do to **inherit** eternal life?”
- **35:3** “There was a man who had two sons. The younger son told his father, ‘Father, I want my **inheritance** now!’ So the father divided his property between the two sons.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2490, H2506, H3423, H3425, H4181, H5157, H5159, G28160, G28170, G28190, G28200

Revelation References:

Revelation 21:7

Israel, Israelites

Definition:

The term “Israel” is the name that God gave to Jacob. Often it refers to the nation that is descended from him.

- The name Israel probably means “He struggles with God.”
- The descendants of Jacob became known as the “sons of Israel” or the “people of Israel” or the “nation of Israel” or the “Israelites.”
- God formed his covenant with the people of Israel. They were his chosen people.
- The nation of Israel consisted of twelve tribes.
- Soon after King Solomon died, Israel was divided into two kingdoms: the southern kingdom, called “Judah,” and the northern kingdom, called “Israel.”
- Often the term “Israel” can be translated as “the people of Israel” or “the nation of Israel,” depending on the context.

(See also: Jacob, kingdom of Israel, Judah, nation, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:1
- 1 Kings 8:2
- Acts 2:36
- Acts 7:24
- Acts 13:23
- John 1:49-51
- Luke 24:21
- Mark 12:29
- Matthew 2:6
- Matthew 27:9
- Philippians 3:4-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:15** The descendants of the twelve sons became the twelve tribes of **Israel**.
- **9:3** The Egyptians forced the **Israelites** to build many buildings and even whole cities.
- **9:5** A certain **Israelite** woman gave birth to a baby boy.
- **10:1** They said, “This is what the God of **Israel** says, ‘Let my people go!’”
- **14:12** But despite all this, the people of __Israel __ complained and grumbled against God and against Moses.
- **15:9** God fought for **Israel** that day. He caused the Amorites to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the Amorites.
- **15:12** After this battle, God gave each tribe of __Israel __ its own section of the Promised Land. Then God gave **Israel** peace along all its borders.
- **16:16** So God punished __Israel __ again for worshiping idols.
- **43:6** “Men of **Israel**, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3478, H3479, H3481, H3482, G09350, G24740, G24750

Revelation References:

Revelation 2:14 Revelation 7:4 Revelation 21:12

Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus

Definition:

Jesus is God's Son. The name "Jesus" means "Yahweh saves." The term "Christ" is a title that means "anointed one" and is another word for Messiah.

- The two names are often combined as "Jesus Christ" or "Christ Jesus." These names emphasize that God's Son is the Messiah, who came to save people from being punished eternally for their sins.
- In a miraculous way, the Holy Spirit caused the eternal Son of God to be born as a human being. His mother was told by an angel to call him "Jesus" because he was destined to save people from their sins.
- Jesus did many miracles that revealed that he is God and that he is the Christ, or the Messiah.

Translation Suggestions:

- In many languages "Jesus" and "Christ" are spelled in a way that keeps the sounds or spelling as close to the original as possible. For example, "Jesucristo," "Jezus Christus," "Yesus Kristus", and "Hesukristo" are some of the ways that these names are translated into different languages.
- For the term "Christ," some translators may prefer to use only some form of the term "Messiah" throughout.
- Also consider how these names are spelled in a nearby local or national language.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Christ, God, God the Father, high priest, kingdom of God, Mary, Savior, Son of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 6:11
- 1 John 2:2
- 1 John 4:15
- 1 Timothy 1:2
- 2 Peter 1:2
- 2 Thessalonians 2:15
- 2 Timothy 1:10
- Acts 2:23
- Acts 5:30
- Acts 10:36
- Hebrews 9:14
- Hebrews 10:22
- Luke 24:20
- Matthew 1:21
- Matthew 4:3
- Philippians 2:5
- Philippians 2:10
- Philippians 4:21-23
- Revelation 1:6

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:4** The angel said, "You will become pregnant and give birth to a son. You are to name him **Jesus** and he will be the Messiah."
- **23:2** "Name him **Jesus** (which means, 'Yahweh saves'), because he will save the people from their sins."
- **24:7** So John baptized him (Jesus), even though **Jesus** had never sinned.
- **24:9** There is only one God. But John heard God the Father speak, and saw **Jesus** the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized **Jesus**.
- **25:8** **Jesus** did not give in to Satan's temptations, so Satan left him.
- **26:8** Then **Jesus** went throughout the region of Galilee, and large crowds came to him. They brought many people who were sick or handicapped, including those who could not see, walk, hear, or speak, and **Jesus** healed them.
- **31:3** Then **Jesus** finished praying and went to the disciples. He walked on top of the water across the lake toward their boat!
- **38:2** He (Judas) knew that the Jewish leaders denied that **Jesus** was the Messiah and that they were plotting to kill him.
- **40:8** Through his death, **Jesus** opened a way for people to come to God.
- **42:11** Then **Jesus** was taken up to heaven, and a cloud hid him from their sight. **Jesus** sat down at the right hand of God to rule over all things.

- **50:17** **Jesus** and his people will live on the new earth, and he will reign forever over everything that exists. He will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death. **Jesus** will rule his kingdom with peace and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G24240, G55470

Revelation References:

Revelation 1:1 Revelation 1:2 Revelation 1:5 Revelation 1:9 Revelation 1:9 Revelation 12:17 Revelation 14:12 Revelation 17:6 Revelation 19:10 Revelation 19:10 Revelation 20:4 Revelation 22:16 Revelation 22:20 Revelation 22:21

Jew, Jewish

Definition:

Jews are people who are descendants of Abraham's grandson Jacob. The word "Jew" comes from the word "Judah."

- People began to call the Israelites "Jews" after they returned to Judah from their exile in Babylon.
- Jesus the Messiah was Jewish. However, the Jewish religious leaders rejected Jesus and demanded that he be killed.

(See also: Abraham, Jacob, Israel, Babylon, Jewish leaders)

Bible References:

- Acts 2:5
- Acts 10:28
- Acts 14:5-7
- Colossians 3:11
- John 2:14
- Matthew 28:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:11** The Israelites were now called **Jews** and most of them had lived their whole lives in Babylon.
- **20:12** So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of **Jews** returned to the city of Jerusalem in Judah.
- **37:10** Many of the **Jews** believed in Jesus because of this miracle.
- **37:11** But the religious leaders of the **Jews** were jealous, so they gathered together to plan how they could kill Jesus and Lazarus.
- **40:2** Pilate commanded that they write, "King of the **Jews**" on a sign and put it on the cross above Jesus' head.
- **46:6** Right away, Saul began preaching to the **Jews** in Damascus, saying, "Jesus is the Son of God!"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3054, H3061, H3062, H3064, H3066, G24500, G24510, G24520, G24530, G24540

Revelation References:

Revelation 2:9 Revelation 3:9

judge, judgment

Definition:

The terms “judge” and “judgment” often refer to making a decision about whether or not something is good, wise, or right. However, these terms can also refer to actions performed by a person as the result of a decision, usually in the context of deciding that something is bad, wrong, or evil.

- The terms “judge” and “judgment” can also mean “to cause harm to” (usually because God has decided a person or nation’s actions are wicked).
- The “judgment of God” often refers to his decision to condemn something or someone as sinful.
- God’s judgment usually includes punishing people for their sin.
- The term “judge” can also mean “condemn.” God instructs his people not to judge each other in this way.
- Another meaning is “arbitrate between” or “judge between,” as in deciding which person is right in a dispute between them.
- In some contexts, God’s “judgments” are what he has decided is right and just. They are similar to his decrees, laws, or precepts.
- “Judgment” can refer to wise decision-making ability. A person who lacks “judgment” does not have the wisdom to make wise decisions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate to “judge” could include to “decide” or to “condemn” or to “punish” or to “decree.”
- The term “judgment” could be translated as “punishment” or “decision” or “verdict” or “decree” or “condemnation.”
- In some contexts, the phrase “in the judgment” could also be translated as “on judgment day” or “during the time when God judges people.”

(See also: decree, judge, judgment day, just, law, law)

Bible References:

- 1 John 4:17
- 1 Kings 3:9
- Acts 10:42-43
- Isaiah 3:14
- James 2:4
- Luke 6:37
- Micah 3:9-11
- Psalm 54:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:16** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would **judge** them as guilty, and he would punish them.
- **21:8** A king is someone who rules over a kingdom and **judges** the people. The Messiah would come would be the perfect king who would sit on the throne of his ancestor David. He would reign over the whole world forever, and who would always **judge** honestly and make the right decisions.
- **39:4** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted to the other religious leaders, "We do not need any more witnesses! You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your **judgment**?"
- **50:14** But God will **judge** everyone who does not believe in Jesus. He will throw them into hell, where they will weep and grind their teeth in anguish forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0148, H0430, H1777, H1778, H1779, H1780, H1781, H1782, H2940, H4055, H4941, H6414, H6415, H6416, H6417, H6419, H6485, H8196, H8199, H8201, G01440, G03500, G09680, G11060, G12520, G13410, G13450, G13480, G13490, G29170, G29190, G29200, G29220, G29230, G42320

Revelation References:

Revelation 6:10 Revelation 11:18 Revelation 14:7 Revelation 16:5 Revelation 16:7 Revelation 17:1 Revelation 18:8 Revelation 18:10 Revelation 18:20 Revelation 18:20 Revelation 19:2 Revelation 19:2 Revelation 19:11 Revelation 20 Introduction Revelation 20:4 Revelation 20:12 Revelation 20:13

kingdom of God, kingdom of heaven

Definition:

The terms "kingdom of God" and "kingdom of heaven" both refer to God's rule and authority over his people and over all creation.

- The Jews often used the term "heaven" to refer to God, to avoid saying his name directly. (See: metonymy)
- In the New Testament book that Matthew wrote, he referred to God's kingdom as "the kingdom of heaven," probably because he was writing primarily for a Jewish audience.
- The kingdom of God refers to God ruling people spiritually as well as ruling over the physical world.
- The Old Testament prophets said that God would send the Messiah to rule with righteousness. Jesus, the Son of God, is the Messiah who will rule over God's kingdom forever.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "kingdom of God" can be translated as "God's rule (as king)" or "when God reigns as king" or "God's rule over everything."
- Depending on the context, the term "kingdom of heaven" could also be translated as "God's rule from heaven as king" or "God in heaven reigning" or "heaven's reign" or "heaven ruling over everything." If it is not possible to translate this simply and clearly, the phrase "kingdom of God" could be translated instead.
- Some translators may prefer to capitalize "Heaven" to show that it refers to God. Others may include a note in the text, such as "kingdom of heaven (that is, 'kingdom of God')."
- A footnote at the bottom of the page of a printed Bible may also be used to explain the meaning of "heaven" in this expression.

(See also: God, heaven, king, kingdom, King of the Jews, reign)

Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 1:5
- Acts 8:12-13
- Acts 28:23
- Colossians 4:11
- John 3:3
- Luke 7:28
- Luke 10:9
- Luke 12:31-32
- Matthew 3:2
- Matthew 4:17
- Matthew 5:10
- Romans 14:17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:2** He (John) preached to them, saying, "Repent, for the **kingdom of God** is near!"
- **28:6** Then Jesus said to his disciples, "It is extremely hard for rich people to enter into the **kingdom of God**! Yes, it is easier for a camel to go through the eye of a needle than for a rich man to enter the **kingdom of God**."
- **29:2** Jesus said, "The **kingdom of God** is like a king who wanted to settle accounts with his servants."
- **34:1** Jesus told many other stories about the **kingdom of God**. For example, he said, "The **kingdom of God** is like a mustard seed that someone planted in his field."
- **34:3** Jesus told another story, "The **kingdom of God** is like yeast that a woman mixes into some bread dough until it spreads throughout the dough."
- **34:4** "The **kingdom of God** is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field.. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again."
- **34:5** "The **kingdom of God** is also like a perfect pearl of great value."
- **42:9** He proved to his disciples in many ways that he was alive, and he taught them about the **kingdom of God**.
- **49:5** Jesus said that the **kingdom of God** is more valuable than anything else in the world.
- **50:2** When Jesus was living on earth he said, "My disciples will preach the good news about the **kingdom of God** to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come."

Word Data:

- Strong's: G09320, G23160, G37720

Revelation References:

Revelation 1:6 Revelation 1:9 Revelation 12:10

lamb, Lamb of God

Definition:

The term “lamb” refers to a young sheep. Sheep are four-legged animals with thick, woolly hair, used for sacrifices to God. Jesus is called the “Lamb of God” because he was sacrificed to pay for people’s sins.

- These animals are easily led astray and need protecting. God compares human beings to sheep.
- God instructed his people to sacrifice physically perfect sheep and lambs to him.
- Jesus is called the “Lamb of God” who was sacrificed to pay for people’s sins. He was a perfect, unblemished sacrifice because he was completely without sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- If sheep are known in the language area, the name for their young should be used to translate the terms “lamb” and “Lamb of God.”
- “Lamb of God” could be translated as “God’s (sacrificial) Lamb,” or “Lamb sacrificed to God” or “(sacrificial) Lamb from God.”
- If sheep are not known, this term could be translated as “a young sheep” with a footnote that describes what sheep are like. The note could also compare sheep and lambs to an animal from that area that lives in herds, that is timid and defenseless, and that often wanders away.
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation of a nearby local or national language.

(See: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: sheep, shepherd)

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 12:3
- Ezra 8:35-36
- Isaiah 66:3
- Jeremiah 11:19
- John 1:29
- John 1:36
- Leviticus 14:21-23
- Leviticus 17:1-4
- Luke 10:3
- Revelation 15:3-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **5:7** As Abraham and Isaac walked to the place of the sacrifice Isaac asked, “Father, we have wood for the sacrifice, but where is the **lamb**?”
- **11:2** God provided a way to save the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him. Each family had to choose a perfect **lamb** or goat and kill it.
- **24:6** The next day, Jesus came to be baptized by John. When John saw him, he said, “Look! There is the **Lamb of God** who will take away the sin of the world.”
- **45:8** He read, “They led him like a **lamb** to be killed, and as a **lamb** is silent, he did not say a word.”
- **48:8** When God told Abraham to offer his son, Isaac, as a sacrifice, God provided a **lamb** for the sacrifice instead of his son, Isaac. We all deserve to die for our sins! But God provided Jesus, the **Lamb** of God, as a sacrifice to die in our place.
- **48:9** When God sent the last plague on Egypt, he told each Israelite family to kill a perfect **lamb** and spread its blood around the tops and sides of their door frames.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H7716, G07210, G23160

Revelation References:

Revelation 5:6 Revelation 5:8 Revelation 5:12 Revelation 5:13 Revelation 6:1 Revelation 6:16 Revelation 7:9 Revelation 7:10 Revelation 7:14 Revelation 7:17 Revelation 12:11 Revelation 13:8 Revelation 13:11 Revelation 14:1 Revelation 14:4 Revelation 14:4 Revelation 14:10 Revelation 15:3 Revelation 17:14 Revelation 17:14 Revelation 19:7 Revelation 19:9 Revelation 21:9 Revelation 21:22 Revelation 21:23 Revelation 21:27 Revelation 22:1 Revelation 22:3

lord, Lord, master, sir

Definition:

In the Bible, the term "lord" generally refers to someone who has ownership or authority over other people. In the Bible, however, the term is used to address many different kinds of people, including God.

- This word is sometimes translated as "master" when addressing Jesus or when referring to someone who owns slaves.
- Some English versions translate this as "sir" in contexts where someone is politely addressing someone of higher status.

When "Lord" is capitalized, it is a title that refers to God. (Note, however, that when it is used as a form of addressing someone or it occurs at the beginning of a sentence it may be capitalized and have the meaning of "sir" or "master.")

- In the Old Testament, this term is also used in expressions such as "Lord God Almighty" or "Lord Yahweh" or "Yahweh our Lord."

- In the New Testament, the apostles used this term in expressions such as "Lord Jesus" and "Lord Jesus Christ," which communicate that Jesus is God.

- The term "Lord" in the New Testament is also used alone as a direct reference to God, especially in quotations from the Old Testament. For example, the Old Testament text has "Blessed is he who comes in the name of Yahweh" and the New Testament text has "Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord."

- In the ULT and UST, the title "Lord" is only used to translate the actual Hebrew and Greek words that mean "Lord." It is never used as a translation of God's name (Yahweh), as is done in many translations.

- Some languages translate "Lord" as "Master" or "Ruler" or some other term that communicates ownership or supreme rule.

- In the appropriate contexts, many translations capitalize the first letter of this term to make it clear to the reader that this is a title referring to God.

- For places in the New Testament where there is a quote from the Old Testament, the term "Lord God" could be used to make it clear that this is a reference to God.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated with the equivalent of "master" when it refers to a person who owns slaves. It can also be used by a servant to address the person he works for.
- When it refers to Jesus, if the context shows that the speaker sees him as a religious teacher, it can be translated with a respectful address for a religious teacher, such as "master."
- If the person addressing Jesus does not know him, "lord" could be translated with a respectful form of address such as "sir." This translation would also be used for other contexts in which a polite form of address to a man is called for.
- When referring to God the Father or to Jesus, this term is considered a title, written as "Lord" (capitalized) in English.

(See also: God, Jesus, ruler, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Genesis 39:2
- Joshua 3:9-11
- Psalms 86:15-17
- Jeremiah 27:4
- Lamentations 2:2
- Ezekiel 18:29
- Daniel 9:9
- Daniel 9:17-19
- Malachi 3:1
- Matthew 7:21-23
- Luke 1:30-33
- Luke 16:13
- Romans 6:23
- Ephesians 6:9
- Philippians 2:9-11
- Colossians 3:23
- Hebrews 12:14
- James 2:1

- 1 Peter 1:3
- Jude 1:5
- Revelation 15:4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:5** But Jesus replied to Satan by quoting from the Scriptures. He said, “In God’s word, he commands his people, ‘Do not test the **Lord** your God.’”
- **25:7** Jesus replied, “Get away from me, Satan! In God’s word he commands his people, ‘Worship only the **Lord** your God and only serve him.’”
- **26:3** This is the year of the **Lord’s** favor.
- **27:2** The law expert replied that God’s law says, “Love the **Lord** your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind.”
- **31:5** Then Peter said to Jesus, “**Master**, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water”
- **43:9** “But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both **Lord** and Messiah!”
- **47:3** By means of this demon she predicted the future for people, she made a lot of money for her **masters** as a fortuneteller.
- **47:11** Paul answered, “Believe in Jesus, the **Master**, and you and your family will be saved.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0113, H0136, H1167, H1376, H4756, H7980, H8323, G02030, G06340, G09620, G12030, G29620

Revelation References:

Revelation 1:8 Revelation 1:10 Revelation 4:8 Revelation 4:11 Revelation 6:10 Revelation 7:14 Revelation 11:4 Revelation 11:8 Revelation 11:15 Revelation 11:17 Revelation 11:19 Revelation 14:13 Revelation 15:3 Revelation 15:4 Revelation 16:7 Revelation 17:14 Revelation 17:14 Revelation 18:8 Revelation 19:6 Revelation 19:16 Revelation 19:16 Revelation 21:22 Revelation 22:5 Revelation 22:6 Revelation 22:20 Revelation 22:21

love, beloved

Definition:

To love another person is to care for that person and do things that will benefit him. There are different meanings for “love” some languages may express using different words:

1. The kind of love that comes from God is focused on the good of others even when it does not benefit oneself. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do. God himself is love and is the source of true love.
    - Jesus showed this kind of love by sacrificing his life in order to rescue us from sin and death. He also taught his followers to love others sacrificially.
    - When people love others with this kind of love, they act in ways that show they are thinking of what will cause the others to thrive. This kind of love especially includes forgiving others.
    - In the ULT, the word “love” refers to this kind of sacrificial love, unless a Translation Note indicates a different meaning.
2. Another word in the New Testament refers to brotherly love, or love for a friend or family member.
    - This term refers to natural human love between friends or relatives.
    - The term can also be used in such contexts as, “They love to sit in the most important seats at a banquet.” This means that they “like very much” or “greatly desire” to do that.
3. The word “love” can also refer to romantic love between a man and a woman.

Translation Suggestions:

- Unless indicated otherwise in a Translation Note, the word “love” in the ULT refers to the kind of sacrificial love that comes from God.

- Some languages may have a special word for the kind of unselfish, sacrificial love that God has. Ways to translate this might include, “devoted, faithful caring” or “care for unselfishly” or “love from God.” Make sure that the word used to translate God’s love can include giving up one’s own interests to benefit others and loving others no matter what they do.
- Sometimes the English word “love” describes the deep caring that people have for friends and family members. Some languages might translate this with a word or phrase that means “like very much” or “care for” or “have strong affection for.”
- In contexts where the word “love” is used to express a strong preference for something, this could be translated by “strongly prefer” or “like very much” or “greatly desire.”
- Some languages may also have a separate word that refers to romantic or sexual love between a husband and wife.
- Many languages must express “love” as an action. So for example, they might translate “love is patient, love is kind” as, “when a person loves someone, he is patient with him and kind to him.”

(See also: covenant, death, sacrifice, save, sin)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 13:7
- 1 John 3:2
- 1 Thessalonians 4:10
- Galatians 5:23
- Genesis 29:18
- Isaiah 56:6
- Jeremiah 2:2
- John 3:16
- Matthew 10:37
- Nehemiah 9:32-34
- Philippians 1:9
- Song of Songs 1:2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:2** The law expert replied that God’s law says, “**Love** the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind. And **love** your neighbor as yourself.”
- **33:8** “The thorny ground is a person who hears God’s word, but, as time passes, the cares, riches, and pleasures of life choke out his **love** for God.”
- **36:5** As Peter was talking, a bright cloud came down on top of them and a voice from the cloud said, “This is my Son whom I **love**.”
- **39:10** “Everyone who **loves** the truth listens to me.”
- **47:1** She (Lydia) **loved** and worshiped God.
- **48:1** When God created the world, everything was perfect. There was no sin. Adam and Eve **loved** each other, and they **loved** God.
- **49:3** He (Jesus) taught that you need to **love** other people the same way you love yourself.
- **49:4** He (Jesus) also taught that you need to **love** God more than you **love** anything else, including your wealth.
- **49:7** Jesus taught that God **loves** sinners very much.
- **49:9** But God **loved** everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- **49:13** God **loves** you and wants you to believe in Jesus so he can have a close relationship with you.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0157, H0158, H0159, H0160, H2245, H2617, H2836, H3039, H4261, H5689, H5690, H5691, H7355, H7356, H7453, H7474, G00250, G00260, G53600, G53610, G53620, G53630, G53650, G53670, G53680, G53690, G53770, G53810, G53820, G53830, G53880

Revelation References:

Revelation 1:5 Revelation 2:4 Revelation 2:19 Revelation 3:9 Revelation 3:19 Revelation 12:11 Revelation 22:15

manna

Definition:

Manna was a white, grain-like food that God provided for the Israelites to eat during the 40 years of living in the wilderness after they left Egypt.

- Manna looked like white flakes which appeared each morning on the ground under the dew. It tasted sweet, like honey.
- The Israelites gathered the manna flakes every day except on the Sabbath.
- On the day before the Sabbath, God told the Israelites to gather twice the amount of manna so they would not have to gather it on their day of rest.
- The word "manna" means "what is it?"
- In the Bible, manna is also referred to as "bread from heaven" and "grain from heaven."

Translation Suggestions

- Other ways to translate this term could include "thin white flakes of food" or "food from heaven."
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: bread, desert, grain, heaven, Sabbath)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 8:3
- Exodus 16:27
- Hebrews 9:3-5
- John 6:30-31
- Joshua 5:12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4478, G31310

Revelation References:

Revelation 2:17

to minister, ministry

Definition:

In the Bible, the term "ministry" refers to serving others by teaching them about God and caring for their spiritual needs.

- In the Old Testament, the priests would "minister" to God in the temple by offering sacrifices to him.
- Their "ministry" also included taking care of the temple and offering prayers to God on behalf of the people.
- The job of "ministering" to people can include serving them spiritually by teaching them about God.
- It can also refer to serving people in physical ways, such as caring for the sick and providing food for the poor.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of ministering to people, to "minister" could also be translated as to "serve" or to "care for" or to "meet the needs of."
- When referring to ministering in the temple, the term "minister" could be translated as "serve God in the temple" or "offer sacrifices to God for the people."
- In the context of ministering to God, this could be translated as to "serve" or to "work for God."
- The phrase "ministered to" could also be translated as "took care of" or "provided for" or "helped."

(See also: serve, sacrifice)

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 20:23-26
- Acts 6:4
- Acts 21:17-19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6399, H8120, H8334, H8335, G12470, G12480, G12490, G20230, G20380, G24180, G30080, G30090, G30100, G30110, G39300, G52560, G52570, G55240

Revelation References:

Revelation 2:19

people of God

Definition:

The concept of the "people of God" in the Bible refers to people with whom God has established a covenant relationship.

- In the Old Testament, the phrase "people of God" refers to the nation of Israel. The nation of Israel was chosen by God and set apart from the other nations of the world in order to serve and obey him.
- In the New Testament, the phrase "people of God" refers to the "Church," meaning everyone who believes in Jesus. This includes both Jews and Gentiles. In the New Testament, sometimes this group of people is called the "sons of God" or "children of God."
- When God uses the phrase "my people," he is referring to people who have a covenant relationship with him. God's people are chosen by him, and he wants them to live in a way that is pleasing to him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "people of God" could be translated as "God's people" or "the people who worship God" or "people who serve God" or "people who belong to God."
- When God says "my people" other ways to translate it could include "the people I have chosen" or "the people who worship me" or "the people who belong to me."
- Similarly, "your people" could be translated as "the people who belong to you" or "the people you chose to belong to you."
- Also "his people" could be translated as "the people who belong to him" or "the people God chose to belong to himself."

(See also: Israel, people group)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:2
- Acts 7:34
- Acts 7:51-53
- Acts 10:36-38

- Daniel 9:24-25
- Isaiah 2:5-6
- Jeremiah 6:20-22
- Joel 3:16-17
- Micah 6:3-5
- Revelation 13:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0430, H5971, G23160, G29920

Revelation References:

Revelation 18:4 Revelation 21:3

perish

Definition:

The term "perish" means to die or be destroyed, usually as the result of violence or disaster. In the New Testament, it often has the spiritual meaning of being lost or separated from the people of God.

Spiritual Meaning of "Perish:"

- People who are "perishing" are those who have refused to trust in Jesus for their salvation.
- Those who "perish" will not live eternally with God in heaven. Instead, they will live eternally in hell under God's punishment.
- Everyone will die physically, but only those who do not trust in Jesus for their salvation will perish eternally.
- When "perish" is used in a spiritual sense, make sure that your translation expresses this differently than dying physically.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include "be lost from God's people," "die eternally," "be punished in hell," or "be destroyed."
- Try to use a term or expression that does not only mean "die physically" or "cease to exist."

(See also: death, everlasting)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 1:23
- 2 Corinthians 2:16-17
- 2 Thessalonians 2:10
- Jeremiah 18:18
- Psalms 49:18-20
- Zechariah 9:5-7
- Zechariah 13:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0006, H0007, H0008, H1478, H1820, H1826, H5486, H5595, H6544, H8045, G05990, G06220, G06840, G08530, G13110, G27040, G48810, G53560

Revelation References:

Revelation 18:14

pray, prayer

Definition:

The terms “pray” and “prayer” refer to talking with God. These terms are also used to refer to people trying to talk to a false god.

- People can pray silently, talking to God with their thoughts, or they can pray aloud, speaking to God with their voice. Sometimes prayers are written down, such as when David wrote his prayers in the Book of Psalms.
- Prayer can include asking God for mercy, for help with a problem, and for wisdom in making decisions.
- Often people ask God to heal people who are sick or who need his help in other ways.
- People also thank and praise God when they are praying to him.
- Praying includes confessing our sins to God and asking him to forgive us.
- Talking to God is sometimes called “communing” with him as our spirit communicates with his spirit, sharing our emotions and enjoying his presence.
- This term could be translated as “talking to God” or “communicating with God.” The translation of this term should be able to include praying that is silent.

(See also: false god, forgive, praise)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 3:9
- Acts 8:24
- Acts 14:26
- Colossians 4:4
- John 17:9
- Luke 11:1
- Matthew 5:43-45
- Matthew 14:22-24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **6:5** Isaac **prayed** for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins.
- **13:12** But Moses **prayed** for them, and God listened to his **prayer** and did not destroy them.

- **19:8** Then the prophets of Baal **prayed** to Baal, “Hear us, O Baal!”
- **21:7** Priests also **prayed** to God for the people.
- **38:11** Jesus told his disciples to **pray** that they would not enter into temptation.
- **43:13** The disciples continually listened to the teaching of the apostles, spent time together, ate together, and **prayed** with each other.
- **49:18** God tells you to **pray**, to study his word, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0559, H0577, H1156, H2470, H3863, H3908, H4994, H6279, H6293, H6419, H6739, H7592, H7878, H7879, H7881, H8034, H8605, G01540, G11620, G11890, G17830, G20650, G21710, G21720, G38700, G43350, G43360

Revelation References:

Revelation 5:8 Revelation 8:3 Revelation 8:4

priest, priesthood

Definition:

In the Bible, a priest was someone who was chosen to offer sacrifices to God on behalf of God’s people. The “priesthood” was the name for the office or condition of being a priest.

- In the Old Testament, God chose Aaron and his descendants to be his priests for the people of Israel.
- The “priesthood” was a right and a responsibility that was passed down from father to son in the Levite clan.
- The Israelite priests had the responsibility of offering the people’s sacrifices to God, along with other duties in the temple.
- Priests also offered regular prayers to God on behalf of his people and performed other religious rites.
- The priests pronounced formal blessings on people and taught them God’s laws.
- In Jesus’ time, there were different levels of priests, including the chief priests and the high priest.
- Jesus is our “great high priest” who intercedes for us in God’s presence. He offered himself as the ultimate sacrifice for sin. This means that the sacrifices made by human priests are no longer needed.
- In the New Testament, every believer in Jesus is called a “priest” who can come directly to God in prayer to intercede for himself and other people.
- In ancient times, there were also pagan priests who presented offerings to false gods such as Baal.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “priest” could be translated as “sacrifice person” or “God’s intermediary” or “sacrificial mediator” or “person God appoints to represent him.”
- The translation of “priest” should be different from the translation of “mediator.”

- Some translations may prefer to always say something like “Israelite priest” or “Jewish priest” or “Yahweh’s priest” or “priest of Baal” to make it clear that this does not refer to a modern-day type of priest.
- The term used to translate “priest” should be different from the terms for “chief priest” and “high priest” and “Levite” and “prophet.”

(See also: Aaron, high priest, mediator, sacrifice)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 6:41
- Genesis 14:17-18
- Genesis 47:22
- John 1:19-21
- Luke 10:31
- Mark 1:44
- Mark 2:25-26
- Matthew 8:4
- Matthew 12:4
- Micah 3:9-11
- Nehemiah 10:28-29
- Nehemiah 10:34-36
- Revelation 1:6

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:7** “Melchizedek, the **priest** of God Most High”
- **13:9** Anyone who disobeyed God’s law could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God. A **priest** would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person’s sin and made that person clean in God’s sight. God chose Moses’ brother, Aaron, and Aaron’s descendants to be his **priests**.
- **19:7** So the **priests** of Baal prepared a sacrifice but did not light the fire.
- **21:7** An Israelite **priest** was someone who made sacrifices to God on behalf of the people as a substitute for the punishment of their sins. **Priests** also prayed to God for the people.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3547, H3548, H3549, H3550, G07480, G07490, G24050, G24060, G24070, G24090, G24200

Revelation References:

Revelation 1:6 Revelation 5:10 Revelation 20:6

prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

Definition:

A "prophet" is a man who speaks God's messages to people. A woman who does this is called a "prophetess."

- Often prophets warned people to turn away from their sins and obey God.
- A "prophecy" is the message that the prophet speaks. To "prophesy" means to speak God's messages.
- Often the message of a prophecy was about something that would happen in the future.
- Many prophecies in the Old Testament have already been fulfilled.
- In the Bible the collection of books written by prophets are sometimes referred to as "the prophets."
- For example the phrase, "the law and the prophets" is a way of referring to all the Hebrew scriptures, which are also known as the "Old Testament."
- An older term for a prophet was "seer" or "someone who sees."
- Sometimes the term "seer" refers to a false prophet or to someone who practices divination.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "prophet" could be translated as "God's spokesman" or "man who speaks for God" or "man who speaks God's messages."
- A "seer" could be translated as "person who sees visions" or "man who sees the future from God."
- The term "prophetess" could be translated as "spokeswoman for God" or "woman who speaks for God" or "woman who speaks God's messages."
- Ways to translate "prophecy" could include, "message from God" or "prophet message."
- The term "prophesy" could be translated as "speak words from God" or "tell God's message."
- The figurative expression, "law and the prophets" could also be translated as "the books of the law and of the prophets" or "everything written about God and his people, including God's laws and what his prophets preached." (See: synecdoche)
- When referring to a prophet (or seer) of a false god, it may be necessary to translate this as "false prophet (seer)" or "prophet (seer) of a false god" or "prophet of Baal," for example.

(See also: Baal, divination, false god, false prophet, fulfill, law, vision)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:14-16
- Acts 3:25
- John 1:43-45
- Malachi 4:4-6
- Matthew 1:23
- Matthew 2:18
- Matthew 5:17
- Psalm 51:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a **prophet** of God.
- **17:13** God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the **prophet** Nathan to tell David how evil his sin was.
- **19:1** Throughout the history of the Israelites, God sent them **prophets**. The **prophets** heard messages from God and then told the people God's messages.
- **19:6** All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 **prophets** of Baal, came to Mount Carmel.
- **19:17** Most of the time, the people did not obey God. They often mistreated the **prophets** and sometimes even killed them.
- **21:9** The **prophet** Isaiah **prophesied** that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- **43:5** "This fulfills the **prophecy** made by the **prophet** Joel in which God said, 'In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.'"
- **43:7** "This fulfills the **prophecy** which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.'"

- **48:12** Moses was a great **prophet** who proclaimed the word of God. But Jesus is the greatest **prophet** of all. He is the Word of God.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2372, H2374, H4853, H5012, H5013, H5016, H5017, H5029, H5030, H5031, H5197, G24950, G43940, G43950, G43960, G43970, G43980, G55780

Revelation References:

Revelation 1:3 Revelation 2:20 Revelation 10:7 Revelation 10:11 Revelation 11 Introduction Revelation 11:3 Revelation 11:6 Revelation 11:10 Revelation 11:18 Revelation 16:6 Revelation 18:20 Revelation 18:24 Revelation 19:10 Revelation 20 Introduction Revelation 22:6 Revelation 22:7 Revelation 22:9 Revelation 22:10 Revelation 22:18 Revelation 22:19

pure, purify, purification

Definition:

To be "pure" means to have no flaw or to have nothing mixed in that is not supposed to be there. To purify something is to cleanse it and remove anything that contaminates or pollutes it.

- In regard to Old Testament laws, "purify" and "purification" refer mainly to the cleansing from things that make an object or a person ritually unclean, such as disease, body fluids, or childbirth.
- The Old Testament also had laws telling people how to be purified from sin, usually by the sacrifice of an animal. This was only temporary and the sacrifices had to be repeated over and over again.
- In the New Testament, to be purified often refers to being cleansed from sin.
- The only way that people can be completely and permanently purified from sin is through repenting and receiving God's forgiveness, through trusting in Jesus and his sacrifice.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "purify" could be translated as "make pure" or "cleanse" or "cleanse from all contamination" or "get rid of all sin."
- A phrase such as "when the time for their purification was over" could be translated as "when they had purified themselves by waiting the required number of days."
- The phrase "provided purification for sins" could be translated as "provided a way for people to be completely cleansed from their sin."
- Other ways to translate "purification" could include "cleansing" or "spiritual washing" or "becoming ritually clean."

(See also: atonement, clean, spirit)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 1:5
- Exodus 31:6-9
- Hebrews 9:13-15
- James 4:8

- Luke 2:22
- Revelation 14:4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1249, H1252, H1253, H1305, H1865, H2134, H2135, H2141, H2212, H2398, H2403, H2561, H2889, H2890, H2891, H2892, H2893, H3795, H3800, H4795, H5343, H5462, H6337, H6884, H6942, H8562, G00480, G00490, G00530, G00540, G15060, G25110, G25120, G25130, G25140

Revelation References:

Revelation 15:6 Revelation 21:18 Revelation 21:18 Revelation 21:21

redeem, redeemer, redemption

Definition:

The term "redeem" refers to buying back something or someone that has been previously owned or held captive. A "redeemer" is someone who redeems something or someone.

- God gave laws to the Israelites about how to redeem people or things. For example, someone could redeem a person who was in slavery by paying the price so that the slave could go free. The word "ransom" also refers to this practice.
- If someone's land had been sold, a relative of that person could "redeem" or "buy back" that land so that it would stay in the family.
- These practices show how God redeems people who are in slavery to sin. When he died on the cross, Jesus paid the full price for people's sins and redeemed all those who trust in him for salvation. People who have been redeemed by God are set free from sin and its punishment.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "redeem" could also be translated as "buy back" or "pay to free (someone)" or "ransom."
- The term "redemption" could be translated as "ransom" or "freedom payment" or "buying back."
- The words "ransom" and "redeem" have basically the same meaning, so some languages may have only one term to translate both these words. The word "ransom," however, can also mean the payment necessary to "redeem" something or someone. The term "redeem" never refers to the actual payment itself.

(See also: free, ransom)

Bible References:

- Colossians 1:13-14
- Ephesians 1:7-8
- Ephesians 5:16

- Galatians 3:13-14
- Galatians 4:5
- Luke 2:38
- Ruth 2:20

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1350, H1353, H6299, H6302, H6304, H6306, H6561, H7069, G00590, G06290, G18050, G30840, G30850

Revelation References:

Revelation 14:4

repent, repentance

Definition:

The terms "repent" and "repentance" refer to turning away from sin and turning back to God.

- To "repent" literally means to "change one's mind."
- In the Bible, "repent" usually means to turn away from a sinful, human way of thinking and acting, and to turn to God's way of thinking and acting.
- When people truly repent of their sins, God forgives them and helps them start obeying him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "repent" can be translated with a word or phrase that means "turn back (to God)" or "turn away from sin and toward God" or "turn toward God, away from sin."
- Often the term "repentance" can be translated using the verb "repent." For example, "God has given repentance to Israel" could be translated as "God has enabled Israel to repent."
- Other ways to translate "repentance" could include "turning away from sin" or "turning to God and away from sin."

(See also: forgive, sin, turn)

Bible References:

- Acts 3:19-20
- Luke 3:3
- Luke 3:8
- Luke 5:32
- Luke 24:47
- Mark 1:14-15
- Matthew 3:3
- Matthew 3:11
- Matthew 4:17
- Romans 2:4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:2** After many years of disobeying God and being oppressed by their enemies, the Israelites **repented** and asked God to rescue them.
- **17:13** David **repented** of his sin and God forgave him.
- **19:18** They (prophets) warned people that God would destroy them if they did not **repent**.
- **24:2** Many people came out to the wilderness to listen to John. He preached to them, saying, "**Repent**, for the kingdom of God is near!"
- **42:8** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to **receive** forgiveness for their sins."
- **44:5** "So now, **repent** and turn to God so that your sins will be washed away."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5150, H5162, H5164, G02780, G33380, G33400, G33410

Revelation References:

Revelation 2:5 Revelation 2:5 Revelation 2:16 Revelation 2:22 Revelation 3:3 Revelation 3:19 Revelation 9:20 Revelation 16:9 Revelation 16:11

resurrection

Definition:

The term "resurrection" refers to the act of becoming alive again after having died.

- To resurrect someone means to bring that person back to life again. Only God has the power to do this.
- The word "resurrection" often refers to Jesus' coming back to life after he died.
- When Jesus said, "I am the Resurrection and the Life" he meant that he is the source of resurrection, and the one who causes people to come back to life.

Translation Suggestions:

- A person's "resurrection" could be translated as his "coming back to life" or his "becoming alive again after being dead."
- The literal meaning of this word is "a rising up" or "the act of being raised (from the dead)." These would be other possible ways to translate this term.

(See also: life, death, raise)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:13
- 1 Peter 3:21
- Hebrews 11:35
- John 5:28-29
- Luke 20:27
- Luke 20:36
- Matthew 22:23
- Matthew 22:30
- Philippians 3:11

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:14** Through the Messiah's death and **resurrection**, God would accomplish his plan to save sinners and start the New Covenant.
- **37:5** Jesus replied, "I am the **Resurrection** and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he dies."

Word Data:

- Strong's: G03860, G14540, G18150

Revelation References:

Revelation 20:5 Revelation 20:6

righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness

Definition:

The term "righteousness" refers to God's absolute goodness, justice, faithfulness, and love. Having these qualities makes God "righteous." Because God is righteous, he must condemn sin.

- These terms are also often used to describe a person who obeys God and is morally good. However, because all people have sinned, no one except God is completely righteous.
- Examples of people the Bible who were called "righteous" include Noah, Job, Abraham, Zachariah, and Elisabeth.
- When people trust in Jesus to save them, God cleanses them from their sins and declares them to be righteous because of Jesus' righteousness.

The term "unrighteous" means to be sinful and morally corrupt. "Unrighteousness" refers to sin or the condition of being sinful.

- These terms especially refer to living in a way that disobeys God's teachings and commands.
- Unrighteous people are immoral in their thoughts and actions.
- Sometimes "the unrighteous" refers specifically to people who do not believe in Jesus.

The terms "upright" and "uprightness" refer to acting in a way that follows God's laws.

- The meaning of these words includes the idea of standing up straight and looking directly ahead.
- A person who is "upright" is someone who obeys God's rules and does not do things that are against his will.
- Terms such as "integrity" and "righteous" have similar meanings and are sometimes used in parallelism constructions, such as "integrity and uprightness." (See: parallelism)

Translation Suggestions:

- When it describes God, the term "righteous" could be translated as "perfectly good and just" or "always acting rightly."
- God's "righteousness" could also be translated as "perfect faithfulness and goodness."
- When it describes people who are obedient to God, the term "righteous" could also be translated as "morally good" or "just" or "living a God-pleasing life."
- The phrase "the righteous" could also be translated as "righteous people" or "God-fearing people."
- Depending on the context, "righteousness" could also be translated with a word or phrase that means "goodness" or "being perfect before God" or "acting in a right way by obeying God" or "doing perfectly good."
- The term "unrighteous" could simply be translated as "not righteous."
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include "wicked" or "immoral" or "people who rebel against God" or "sinful."
- The phrase "the unrighteous" could be translated as "unrighteous people."
- The term "unrighteousness" could be translated as "sin" or "evil thoughts and actions" or "wickedness."
- If possible, it is best to translate this in a way that shows its relationship to "righteous, righteousness."
- Ways to translate "upright" could include "acting rightly" or "one who acts rightly" or "following God's laws" or "obedient to God" or "behaving in a way that is right."
- The term "uprightness" could be translated as "moral purity" or "good moral conduct" or "rightness."
- The phrase "the upright" could be translated as "people who are upright" or "upright people."

(See also: evil, faithful, good, holy, integrity, just, law, law, obey, pure, righteous, sin, unlawful)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 19:16
- Job 1:8
- Psalms 37:30
- Psalms 49:14
- Psalms 107:42
- Ecclesiastes 12:10-11
- Isaiah 48:1-2
- Ezekiel 33:13
- Malachi 2:6
- Matthew 6:1
- Acts 3:13-14
- Romans 1:29-31
- 1 Corinthians 6:9
- Galatians 3:7
- Colossians 3:25
- 2 Thessalonians 2:10
- 2 Timothy 3:16
- 1 Peter 3:18-20
- 1 John 1:9
- 1 John 5:16-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:2** But Noah found favor with God. He was a **righteous** man, living among wicked people.
- **4:8** God declared that Abram was **righteous** because he believed in God's promise.
- **17:2** David was a humble and **righteous** man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **23:1** Joseph, the man Mary was engaged to, was a **righteous** man.
- **50:10** Then the **righteous** ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of God their Father.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H1368, H2555, H3072, H3474, H3476, H3477, H3483, H4334, H4339, H4749, H5228, H5229, H5324, H5765, H5766, H5767, H5977, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6665, H6666, H6968, H8535, H8537, H8549, H8552, G00930, G00940, G04580, G13410, G13420, G13430, G13440, G13450, G13460, G21180, G37160, G37170

Revelation References:

Revelation 15:3 Revelation 15:4 Revelation 16:5 Revelation 16:7 Revelation 19:2 Revelation 19:8 Revelation 19:11 Revelation 22:11 Revelation 22:11 Revelation 22:11 Revelation 22:11

saint

Definition:

The term "saints" literally means "holy ones" and refers to believers in Jesus.

- Later in church history, a person known for his good works was given the title "saint," but that was not how this term was used during New Testament times.
- Believers in Jesus are saints or holy ones, not because of what they have done, but rather because of their faith in the saving work of Jesus Christ. He is the one who makes them holy.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "saints" could include "holy ones" or "holy people" or "holy believers in Jesus" or "set apart ones."
- Be careful not to use a term that refers to people of only one Christian group.

(See also: holy)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 5:10
- 2 Corinthians 9:12-15
- Revelation 16:6
- Revelation 20:9-10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2623, H6918, H6922, G00400

Revelation References:

Revelation 5:8 Revelation 8:3 Revelation 8:4 Revelation 11:18 Revelation 13:7 Revelation 13:10 Revelation 14:12 Revelation 16:6 Revelation 17:6 Revelation 18:20 Revelation 18:24 Revelation 19:8 Revelation 20:9 Revelation 22:21

Satan, devil, evil one

Definition:

Although the devil is a spirit being that God created, he rebelled against God and became God's enemy. The devil is also called "Satan" and "the evil one."

- The devil hates God and all that God created because he wants to take the place of God and be worshiped as God.
- Satan tempts people to rebel against God.
- God sent his Son, Jesus, to rescue people from Satan's control.
- The name "Satan" means "adversary" or "enemy."
- The word "devil" means "accuser."

Translation Suggestions:

- The word "devil" could also be translated as "the accuser" or "the evil one" or "the king of evil spirits" or "the chief evil spirit."
- "Satan" could be translated as "Opponent" or "Adversary" or some other name that shows that he is the devil.
- These terms should be translated differently from demon and evil spirit.
- Consider how these terms are translated in a local or national language.

(See: How to Translate Unknowns)

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: demon, evil, kingdom of God, tempt)

Bible References:

- 1 John 3:8
- 1 Thessalonians 2:17-20
- 1 Timothy 5:15
- Acts 13:10
- Job 1:8
- Mark 8:33
- Zechariah 3:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:1** The snake who deceived Eve was **Satan**. The promise meant that the Messiah who would come would defeat **Satan** completely.
- **25:6** Then **Satan** showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their glory and said, "I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me."
- **25:8** Jesus did not give in to **Satan's** temptations, so **Satan** left him.
- **33:6** So Jesus explained, "The seed is the word of God. The path is a person who hears God's word, but does not understand it, and the **devil** takes the word from him."
- **38:7** After Judas took the bread, **Satan** entered into him.
- **48:4** God promised that one of Eve's descendants would crush **Satan's** head, and **Satan** would wound his heel. This meant that **Satan** would kill the Messiah, but God would raise him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of **Satan** forever.
- **49:15** God has taken you out of **Satan's** kingdom of darkness and put you into God's kingdom of light.
- **50:9** "The weeds represent the people who belong to the **evil one**. The enemy who planted the weeds represents the **devil**."
- **50:10** "When the world ends, the angels will gather together all the people who belong to the **devil** and throw them into a raging fire, where they will cry and grind their teeth in terrible suffering."
- **50:15** When Jesus returns, he will completely destroy **Satan** and his kingdom. He will throw **Satan** into hell where he will burn forever, along with everyone who chose to follow him rather than to obey God.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7700, H7854, H8163, G11390, G11400, G11410, G11420, G12280, G41900, G45660, G45670

Revelation References:

Revelation 2:9 Revelation 2:10 Revelation 2:13 Revelation 2:13 Revelation 2:24 Revelation 3:9 Revelation 12:9 Revelation 12:9 Revelation 12:12 Revelation 20:2 Revelation 20:2 Revelation 20:7 Revelation 20:10

save, saved, safe, salvation, rescue

Definition:

The term “save” refers to keeping someone from experiencing something bad or harmful. To “be safe” means to be protected from harm or danger.

- In a physical sense, people can be saved or rescued from harm, danger, or death.
- In a spiritual sense, if a person has been “saved,” then God, through Jesus’ death on the cross, has forgiven him and rescued him from being punished in hell for his sin.
- People can save or rescue people from danger, but only God can save people from being punished eternally for their sins.

The term “salvation” refers to being saved or rescued from evil and danger.

- In the Bible, “salvation” usually refers to the spiritual and eternal deliverance granted by God to those who repent of their sins and believe in Jesus.
- The Bible also talks about God saving or delivering his people from their physical enemies.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “save” could include “deliver” or “keep from harm” or “take out of harm’s way” or “keep from dying.”

- In the expression “whoever would save his life,” the term “save” could also be translated as “preserve” or “protect.”

- The term “safe” could be translated as “protected from danger” or “in a place where nothing can harm.”

- The term “salvation” could also be translated using words related to “save” or “rescue,” as in “God’s saving people (from being punished for their sins)” or “God’s rescuing his people (from their enemies).”

- "God is my salvation" could be translated as "God is the one who saves me."
- "You will draw water from the wells of salvation" could be translated as "You will be refreshed as with water because God is rescuing you."

(See also: cross, deliver, punish, sin, Savior)

Bible References:

- Genesis 49:18
- Genesis 47:25-26
- Psalms 80:3
- Jeremiah 16:19-21
- Micah 6:3-5
- Luke 2:30
- Luke 8:36-37
- Acts 4:12
- Acts 28:28
- Acts 2:21
- Romans 1:16
- Romans 10:10
- Ephesians 6:17
- Philippians 1:28
- 1 Timothy 1:15-17
- Revelation 19:1-2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:8** Moses tried to **save** his fellow Israelite.
- **11:2** God provided a way to **save** the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him.
- **12:5** Moses told the Israelites, "Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and **save** you."
- **12:13** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to praise God because he **saved** them from the Egyptian army.
- **16:17** This pattern repeated many times: the Israelites would sin, God would punish them, they would repent, and God would send a deliverer to **save** them.
- **44:8** "You crucified Jesus, but God raised him to life again! You rejected him, but there is no other way to be **saved** except through the power of Jesus!"
- **47:11** The jailer trembled as he came to Paul and Silas and asked, "What must I do to be **saved**?" Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the Master, and you and your family will be **saved**."
- **49:12** Good works cannot **save** you.
- **49:13** God will **save** everyone who believes in Jesus and receives him as their Master. But he will not **save** anyone who does not believe in him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0983, H2421, H2502, H3444, H3467, H3468, H4190, H4422, H4931, H5338, H6308, H6403, H7682, H7951, H7965, H8104, H8199, H8668, G08030, G08040, G08060, G12950, G15080, G49820, G49910, G49920, G51980

Revelation References:

Revelation 7:10 Revelation 12:10 Revelation 19:1

sign, proof, reminder

Definition:

The term “sign” usually refers an object, event, or action that communicates a special meaning.

- In the Bible, signs are sometimes given in connection to a promise or covenant that God has made:
  - The book of Genesis describes the rainbow God created in the sky as a sign (or reminder) to himself that he has promised he will never again destroy all life with a worldwide flood.
  - In the book of Genesis, God commanded the Israelites to circumcise their sons as a sign (or indicator) of the fact that he had made his covenant with them.
- Signs can reveal or point to something:
  - The book of Luke describes that an angel gave shepherds a sign that would help them know which baby in Bethlehem was the newborn Messiah.
  - Judas kissed Jesus as a sign to the religious leaders that Jesus was the one they should arrest.
- Signs can prove that something is true:
  - The book of Exodus describes the plagues that destroyed Egypt as signs that showed who Yahweh was and proved that he was greater than Pharaoh and the Egyptian gods.
  - The book of Acts describes the miracles performed by the prophets and apostles as signs that proved they were speaking God’s message.
  - The book of John describes the miracles that Jesus performed as signs that proved he was truly the Messiah.

Translation Suggestions:

- The frequent expression “signs and wonders” could be translated as “proofs and miracles” or “miraculous works that prove God’s power” or “amazing miracles that show how great God is.”
- Depending on its context, “sign” could also be translated as “signal” or “symbol” or “mark” or “evidence” or “proof” or “gesture.”
- To “make signs with the hands” could also be translated as “motion with the hands” or “gesture with the hands” or “make gestures.”
- In some languages, there may be one word for a “sign” that proves something and a different word for a “sign” that is a miracle.

(See also: miracle, apostle, Christ, covenant, circumcise)

Bible References:

- Acts 2:18-19
- Exodus 4:8-9
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Genesis 1:14
- Genesis 9:12
- John 2:18
- Luke 2:12
- Mark 8:12
- Psalms 89:5-6

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0226, H0852, H2368, H2858, H4150, H4159, H4864, H5251, H5824, H6161, H6725, H6734, H7560, G03640, G08800, G12130, G12290, G17180, G17300, G17320, G17700, G39020, G41020, G45910, G45920, G49530, G49730, G52800

Revelation References:

Revelation 12:1 Revelation 12:3 Revelation 13:13 Revelation 13:14 Revelation 15:1 Revelation 16:14 Revelation 19:20

sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

Definition:

The term "sin" refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God's will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

- Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people do not know about.
- Thoughts and actions that disobey God's will are called "sinful."
- Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a "sinful nature," a nature that that controls them and causes them to sin.
- A "sinner" is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
- Sometimes the word "sinners" was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who did not keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
- The term "sinner" was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "sin" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "disobedience to God" or "going against God's will" or "evil behavior and thoughts" or "wrongdoing."
- To "sin" could also be translated as to "disobey God" or to "do wrong."
- Depending on the context "sinful" could be translated as "full of wrongdoing" or "wicked" or "immoral" or "evil" or "rebelling against God."
- Depending on the context the term "sinner" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "person who sins" or "person who does wrong things" or "person who disobeys God" or "person who disobeys the law."
- The term "sinners" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "very sinful people" or "people considered to be very sinful" or "immoral people."
- Ways to translate "tax collectors and sinners" could include "people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people" or "very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors."
- Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people do not see or know about.
- The term "sin" should be general, and different from the terms for "wickedness" and "evil."

(See also: disobey, evil, flesh, tax collector)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 9:1-3
- 1 John 1:10
- 1 John 2:2
- 2 Samuel 7:12-14
- Acts 3:19
- Daniel 9:24
- Genesis 4:7
- Hebrews 12:2
- Isaiah 53:11
- Jeremiah 18:23
- Leviticus 4:14
- Luke 15:18
- Matthew 12:31
- Romans 6:23
- Romans 8:4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:15** God said, "I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are **sinful** from the time they are children."
- **13:12** God was very angry with them because of their **sin** and planned to destroy them.
- **20:1** The kingdoms of Israel and Judah both **sinned** against God. They broke the covenant that God made with them at Sinai.
- **21:13** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no **sin**. He would die to receive the punishment for other people's **sin**.

- **35:1** One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other **sinners** who had gathered to hear him.
- **38:5** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of **sins**."
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your **sins**."
- **48:8** We all deserve to die for our **sins**!
- **49:17** Even though you are a Christian, you will still be tempted to **sin**. But God is faithful and says that if you confess your **sins**, he will forgive you. He will give you strength to fight against **sin**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0817, H0819, H2398, H2399, H2400, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2408, H2409, H5771, H6588, H7683, H7686, G02640, G02650, G02660, G02680, G03610, G37810, G39000, G42580

Revelation References:

Revelation 1:5 Revelation 18:4 Revelation 18:5 Revelation 20 Introduction

Son of God, the Son

Definition:

The term "Son of God" refers to Jesus, the Word of God, who came into the world as a human being. He is also often referred to as "the Son."

- The Son of God has the same nature as God the Father, and is fully God.
- God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit are all of one essence.
- Unlike human sons, the Son of God has always existed.
- In the beginning, the Son of God was active in creating the world, along with the Father and the Holy Spirit.

Because Jesus is God's Son, he loves and obeys his Father, and his Father loves him.

Translation Suggestions:

- For the term "Son of God," it is best to translate "Son" with the same word the language would naturally use to refer to a human son.
- Make sure the word used to translate "son" fits with the word used to translate "father" and that these words are the most natural ones used to express a true father-son relationship in the project language.
- Using a capital letter to begin "Son" may help show that this is talking about God.
- The phrase "the Son" is a shortened form of "the Son of God," especially when it occurs in the same context as "the Father."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Christ, ancestor, God, God the Father, Holy Spirit, Jesus, son, sons of God)

Bible References:

- 1 John 4:10
- Acts 9:20
- Colossians 1:17
- Galatians 2:20
- Hebrews 4:14
- John 3:18

- Luke 10:22
- Matthew 11:27
- Revelation 2:18
- Romans 8:29

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:5** The angel explained, “The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the power of God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the **Son of God**.”
- **24:9** God had told John, “The Holy Spirit will come down and rest on someone you baptize. That person is **the Son of God**.”
- **31:8** The disciples were amazed. They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, “Truly, you are **the Son of God**.”
- **37:5** Martha answered, “Yes, Master! I believe you are the Messiah, the **Son of God**.”
- **42:10** “So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, **the Son**, and the Holy Spirit, and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- **46:6** Right away, Saul began preaching to the Jews in Damascus, saying, “Jesus is the **Son of God**!”
- **49:9** But God loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only **Son** so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0426, H0430, H1121, H1247, G23160, G52070

Revelation References:

Revelation 2:18

Son of Man, son of man

Definition:

The title “Son of Man” was used by Jesus to refer to himself. He often used this term instead of saying “I” or “me.”

- In the Bible, “son of man” could be a way of referring to or addressing a man. It could also mean “human being.”
- Throughout the Old Testament book of Ezekiel, God frequently addressed Ezekiel as “son of man.” For example he said, “You, son of man, must prophesy.”
- The prophet Daniel saw a vision of a “son of man” coming with the clouds, which is a reference to the coming Messiah.
- Jesus also said that the Son of Man will be coming back someday on the clouds.
- These references to the Son of Man coming on the clouds reveal that Jesus the Messiah is God.

Translation Suggestions:

- When Jesus uses the term “Son of Man” it could be translated as “the One who became a human being” or “the Man from heaven.”
- Some translators occasionally include “I” or “me” with this title (as in “I, the Son of Man”) to make it clear that Jesus was talking about himself.
- Check to make sure that the translation of this term does not give a wrong meaning (such as referring to an illegitimate son or giving the wrong impression that Jesus was only a human being).
- When used to refer to a person, “son of man” could also be translated as “you, a human being” or “you, man” or “human being” or “man.”

(See also: heaven, son, Son of God, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:56
- Daniel 7:14
- Ezekiel 43:6-8
- John 3:12-13
- Luke 6:5
- Mark 2:10

- Matthew 13:37
- Psalms 80:17-18
- Revelation 14:14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0120, H0606, H1121, H1247, G04440, G52070

Revelation References:

Revelation 1:13 Revelation 14:14

soul, self

Definition:

The term "soul" can either refer generally to the non-physical part of a person or refer specifically to a person's awareness of themselves as a person distinct from others.

- In the Bible, the terms "soul" and "spirit" may be two different concepts, or they may be two terms that refer to the same concept.
- When a person dies, his soul leaves his body.
- In contrast to the body, the "soul" can be spoken of as the part of a person that "relates to God."

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "soul" could also be translated as "inner self" or "inner person."
- In some contexts, "my soul" could be translated as "I" or "me."
- Usually the phrase "the soul" can be translated as "the person" or "he" or "him," depending on the context.
- Some languages might only have one word for the concepts "soul" and "spirit."
- In Hebrews 4:12, the figurative phrase "dividing soul and spirit" could mean "deeply discerning or exposing the inner person."

(See also: spirit)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 2:8
- Acts 2:27-28
- Acts 2:41
- Genesis 49:6
- Isaiah 53:10-11
- James 1:21
- Jeremiah 6:16-19
- Jonah 2:7-8
- Luke 1:47
- Matthew 22:37
- Psalms 19:7
- Revelation 20:4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5082, H5315, H5397, G55900

Revelation References:

Revelation 6:9 Revelation 18:13 Revelation 18:14 Revelation 20:4 Revelation 21 Introduction

spirit, wind, breath

Definition:

The term "spirit" refers to the non-physical part of a person which cannot be seen. In biblical times, the concept of a person's spirit was closely related to the concept of a person's breath. The term can also refer to wind, that is, the movement of air in the natural world.

- The term "spirit" can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, such as an evil spirit.
- In general, the term "spiritual" describes things in the non-physical world.
- The term "spirit of" can also mean "having the characteristics of," such as in "spirit of wisdom" or "in the spirit of Elijah." Sometimes the Bible applies this term in the context of a person's attitude or emotional state, such as "spirit of fear" and "spirit of jealousy."
- Jesus said that God is a spirit.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, some ways to translate "spirit" might include "non-physical being" or "inside part" or "inner being."
- In some contexts, the term "spirit" could be translated as "evil spirit" or "evil spirit being."
- Sometimes the term "spirit" is used to express the feelings of a person, as in "my spirit was grieved in my inmost being." This could also be translated as "I felt grieved in my spirit" or "I felt deeply grieved."
- The phrase "spirit of" could be translated as "character of" or "influence of" or "attitude of" or "thinking (that is) characterized by."
- Depending on the context, "spiritual" could be translated as "non-physical" or "from the Holy Spirit" or "God's" or "part of the non-physical world."
- The phrase "spiritual maturity" could be translated as "godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit."

- The term “spiritual gift” could be translated as “special ability that the Holy Spirit gives.”
- Sometimes this term can be translated as “wind” when referring to the simple movement of air or “breath” when referring to air movement caused by living beings.

(See also: soul, Holy Spirit, demon, breath)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:5
- 1 John 4:3
- 1 Thessalonians 5:23
- Acts 5:9
- Colossians 1:9
- Ephesians 4:23
- Genesis 7:21-22
- Genesis 8:1
- Isaiah 4:4
- Mark 1:23-26
- Matthew 26:41
- Philippians 1:27

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:3** Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves **spiritually**, God came down on top of Mount Sinai with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast.
- **40:7** Then Jesus cried out, “It is finished! Father, I give my **spirit** into your hands.” Then he bowed his head and gave up his **spirit**.
- **45:5** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, “Jesus, receive my **spirit**.”
- **48:7** All the people groups are blessed through him, because everyone who believes in Jesus is saved from sin, and becomes a **spiritual** descendant of Abraham.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0178, H1172, H5397, H7307, H7308, G41510, G41520, G41530, G53260, G54270

Revelation References:

Revelation 1:4 Revelation 3:1 Revelation 4:5 Revelation 5:6 Revelation 11:11 Revelation 15 Introduction Revelation 16:14 Revelation 19:10 Revelation 22:6

synagogue

Definition:

A synagogue is a building where Jewish people meet together to worship God.

- Since ancient times, a synagogue's services have included times of prayer, scripture reading, and teaching about the scriptures.
- The Jews originally started building synagogues as places to pray and worship God in their own cities, because many of them lived far away from the temple in Jerusalem.
- Jesus often taught in synagogues and healed people there.
- The word "synagogue" can be used figuratively to refer to the group of people meeting there.

(See also: heal, Jerusalem, Jew, pray, temple, word of God, worship)

Bible References:

- Acts 6:9
- Acts 14:1-2
- Acts 15:21
- Acts 24:10-13
- John 6:59
- Luke 4:14
- Matthew 6:1-2
- Matthew 9:35-36
- Matthew 13:54

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4150, G06560, G07520, G48640

Revelation References:

Revelation 2:9 Revelation 3:9

tabernacle

Definition:

The tabernacle was a special tent-like structure where the Israelites worshiped God during the 40 years they traveled around in the desert.

- God had given the Israelites detailed instructions for building this large tent, which had two rooms and was surrounded by an enclosed courtyard.
- Each time the Israelites moved to a different place in the desert to live, the priests would take the tabernacle apart and carry it to their next campsite. Then they would set it up again in the center of their new camp.
- The tabernacle was constructed of wood frames hung with curtains made of cloth, goat hair, and animal skins. The courtyard surrounding it was enclosed with more curtains.
- The two sections of the tabernacle were the Holy Place (where the altar for burning incense was located) and the Most Holy Place (where the ark of the covenant was kept).
- The courtyard of the tabernacle had an altar for burning animal sacrifices and a special washbasin for ritual cleansing.
- The Israelites stopped using the tabernacle when the temple was built in Jerusalem by Solomon.

Translation Suggestions:

- The word "tabernacle" means "dwelling place." Other ways to translate it could include, "sacred tent" or "tent where God was" or "God's tent."
- Make sure that the translation of this term is different from the translation of "temple."

(See also: altar, altar of incense, ark of the covenant, temple, tent of meeting)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 21:30
- 2 Chronicles 1:2-5
- Acts 7:43

- Acts 7:45
- Exodus 38:21
- Joshua 22:19-20
- Leviticus 10:16-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0168, H4908, H5520, H5521, H5522, H7900, G46330, G46340, G46360, G46380

Revelation References:

Revelation 13:6 Revelation 15:5 Revelation 21:3

temple, house, house of God

Definition:

A temple is a building dedicated to the worship of a specific diety where that diety was thought to dwell. Nations around Israel had temples dedicated to their various gods. The temple in Israel was a building surrounded by walled courtyards where the Israelites came to pray and to offer sacrifices to God. It was located on Mount Moriah in the city of Jerusalem.

- Often the term "temple" referred to the whole temple complex, including the courtyards that surrounded the main building. Sometimes it referred only to the building.
- The temple building had two rooms, the Holy Place and the Most Holy Place.
- God referred to the temple as his dwelling place.
- King Solomon built the first temple during his reign. It was supposed to be the permanent place of worship in Jerusalem.

Translation Suggestions:

- Usually when the text says that people were "in the temple," it is referring to the courtyards outside the building. This could be translated as "in the temple courtyards" or "in the temple complex."
- Where it refers specifically to the building itself, some translations translate "temple" as "temple building," to make it the reference clear.
- Ways to translate "temple" could include, "God's holy house" or "sacred worship place."
- Often in the Bible, the temple is referred to as "the house of Yahweh" or "the house of God."

(See also: sacrifice, Solomon, Babylon, Holy Spirit, tabernacle, courtyard, Zion, house)

Bible References:

- Acts 3:2
- Acts 3:8
- Ezekiel 45:18-20
- Luke 19:46

- Nehemiah 10:28
- Psalm 79:1-3

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:6** David wanted to build a **temple** where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- **18:2** In Jerusalem, Solomon built the **Temple** for which his father David had planned and gathered materials. Instead of at the Tent of Meeting, people now worshiped God and offered sacrifices to him at the **Temple**. God came and was present in the **Temple**, and he lived there with his people.
- **20:7** They (Babylonians) captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the **Temple**, and took away all the treasures.
- **20:13** When the people arrived in Jerusalem, they rebuilt the **Temple** and the wall around the city.
- **25:4** Then Satan took Jesus to the highest point on the **Temple** and said, "If you are the Son of God, throw yourself down, for it is written, 'God will command his angels to carry you so your foot does not hit a stone.'"
- **40:7** When he died, there was an earthquake and the large curtain that separated the people from the presence of God in the **Temple** was torn in two, from the top to the bottom.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H1964, H1965, G14930, G24110, G34850

Revelation References:

Revelation 3:12 Revelation 7:15 Revelation 11:1 Revelation 11:2 Revelation 11:19 Revelation 11:19 Revelation 14:15 Revelation 15:5 Revelation 15:6 Revelation 15:8 Revelation 15:8 Revelation 16:1 Revelation 16:17 Revelation 21:22 Revelation 21:22

test, tested, testing, testing in the fire

Definition:

The term "test" refers to a difficult or painful experience that reveals a person's strengths and weaknesses.

- God tests people, but he does not tempt them to sin. Satan, however, tempts people to sin.
- God sometimes uses tests to expose people's sin. A test helps a person to turn away from sin and to draw closer to God.
- Gold and other metals are tested with fire to find out how pure and strong they are. This is a picture of how God uses painful circumstances to test his people.
- To "put to the test" can mean, "challenge something or someone to prove its value."
- In the context of putting God to the test, it means to try to make him do a miracle for us, taking advantage of his mercy.
- Jesus told Satan that it is wrong to put God to the test. He is the almighty, holy God who is above everything and everyone.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term to "test" could also be translated as, to "challenge" or to "cause to experience difficulties" or to "prove."
- Ways to translate "a test" could be, "a challenge" or "a difficult experience."
- To "put to the test" could be translated as to "test" or to "set up a challenge" or to "force to prove oneself."
- In the context of testing God, this could be translated as "trying to force God to prove his love."
- In some contexts, when God is not the subject, the term "test" can mean "tempt."

(See also: tempt)

Bible References:

- 1 John 4:1
- 1 Thessalonians 5:21
- Acts 15:10
- Genesis 22:1
- Isaiah 7:13
- James 1:12

- Lamentations 3:40-43
- Malachi 3:10
- Philippians 1:10
- Psalm 26:2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5254, H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G12420, G12630, G13030, G13820, G19570, G31400, G31410, G31420, G31430, G39840, G43030, G44510, G48280, G60200

Revelation References:

Revelation 2:2 Revelation 2:10 Revelation 3:10 Revelation 3:10

testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness, evidence

Definition:

When a person gives "testimony" he makes a statement about something he knows, claiming that the statement is true. To "testify" is to give "testimony."

- In some places in the Old Testament, "Testimony" refers specifically to the tablets of stone on which Yahweh wrote his ten commandments. From that use it came to refer to God's law more broadly.
- Often a person "testifies" about something he has experienced directly.
- A witness who gives "false testimony" does not tell the truth about what happened.
- Sometimes the term "testimony" refers to a prophecy that a prophet has stated.
- In the New Testament, this term was often used to refer to how Jesus' followers testified about the events of Jesus' life, death, and resurrection.

The term "witness" refers to a person who has personally experienced something that happened. Usually a witness is also someone who testifies about what they know is true. The term "eyewitness" emphasizes that the person was actually there and saw what happened.

- To "witness" something means to see it happen.
- At a trial, a witness "gives witness" or "bears witness." This has the same meaning as "testify."
- Witnesses are expected to tell the truth about what they have seen or heard.
- A witness who does not tell the truth about what happened is called a "false witness." He is said to "give false witness" or to "bear false witness."
- The expression "be a witness between" means that something or someone will be evidence that a contract has been made. The witness will make sure each person does what he has promised to do.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "testify" or "give testimony" could also be translated as "tell the facts" or "tell what was seen or heard" or "tell from personal experience" or "give evidence" or "tell what happened."
- Ways to translate "testimony" could include, "report of what happened" or "statement of what is true" or "evidence" or "what has been said" or "prophecy."
- Ways to translate "Testimony" could include, "the stone slabs on which I wrote my commands" or "God's law" or "God's commands" or "the record of the agreement between Yahweh and Israel."
- The phrase, "as a testimony to them" could be translated as to "show them what is true" or to "prove to them what is true."
- The phrase, "as a testimony against them" could be translated as "which will show them their sin" or "exposing their hypocrisy" or "which will prove that they are wrong."
- To "give false testimony" could be translated as "say false things about" or "state things that are not true."
- The term "witness" or "eyewitness" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "person seeing it" or "the one who saw it happen" or "those who saw and heard (those things)."
- Something that is "a witness" could be translated as "guarantee" or "sign of our promise" or "something that testifies that this is true."
- The phrase "you will be my witnesses" could also be translated as "you will tell other people about me" or "you will teach people the truth that I taught you" or "you will tell people what you have seen me do and heard me teach."
- To "witness to" could be translated as to "tell what was seen" or to "testify" or to "state what happened."
- To "witness" something could be translated as to "see something" or to "experience something happen."

(See also: ark of the covenant, guilt, judge, prophet, true)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 31:28
- Micah 6:3
- Matthew 26:60
- Mark 1:44
- John 1:7
- John 3:33
- Acts 4:32-33
- Acts 7:44
- Acts 13:31
- Romans 1:9
- 1 Thessalonians 2:10-12
- 1 Timothy 5:19-20
- 2 Timothy 1:8
- 2 Peter 1:16-18
- 1 John 5:6-8
- 3 John 1:12
- Revelation 12:11

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:2** Inside the house, the Jewish leaders put Jesus on trial. They brought many **false witnesses** who lied about him.
- **39:4** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted, "We do not need any more **witnesses**. You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your judgment?"
- **42:8** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all people groups everywhere. You are **witnesses** of these things."
- **43:7** "We are **witnesses** to the fact that God raised Jesus to life again."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5707, H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G02670, G12630, G19570, G26490, G31400, G31410, G31420, G31430, G31440, G43030, G48280, G49010, G55750, G55760, G55770, G60200

Revelation References:

Revelation 1:2 Revelation 1:2 Revelation 1:5 Revelation 1:9 Revelation 2:13 Revelation 3:14 Revelation 6:9 Revelation 11:3 Revelation 11:7 Revelation 12:11 Revelation 12:17 Revelation 15:5 Revelation 17:6 Revelation 19:10 Revelation 19:10 Revelation 20:4 Revelation 22:16 Revelation 22:18 Revelation 22:20

will of God

Definition:

The “will of God” refers to God’s desires and plans.

- God’s will especially relates to his interactions with people and how he wants people to respond to him.
- It also refers to his plans or desires for the rest of his creation.
- The term to “will” means to “determine” or to “desire.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The “will of God” could also be translated as “what God desires” or “what God has planned” or “God’s purpose” or “what is pleasing to God.”

Bible References:

- 1 John 2:15-17
- 1 Thessalonians 4:3-6
- Colossians 4:12-14
- Ephesians 1:1-2
- John 5:30-32
- Mark 3:33-35
- Matthew 6:8-10
- Psalms 103:21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6310, H6634, H7522, G10120, G10130, G23070, G23080, G23090, G25960

Revelation References:

Revelation 4:11

wise, wisdom

Definition:

The term “wise” describes someone who understands what is the right and moral thing to do and then does that. “Wisdom” is the understanding and practice of what is true and morally right.

- Being wise includes the ability to make good decisions, especially choosing to do what pleases God.
- People become wise by listening to God and humbly obeying his will.
- A wise person will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit in his life, such as joy, kindness, love, and patience.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “wise” could include “obedient to God” or “sensible and obedient” or “God-fearing.”
- “Wisdom” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “wise living” or “sensible and obedient living” or “good judgment.”
- It is best to translate “wise” and “wisdom” in such a way that they are different terms from other key terms like righteous or obedient.

(See also: obey, fruit)

Bible References:

- Acts 6:3
- Colossians 3:15-17
- Exodus 31:6
- Genesis 3:6
- Isaiah 19:12
- Jeremiah 18:18
- Matthew 7:24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:5** She also wanted to be **wise**, so she picked some of the fruit and ate it.
- **18:1** When Solomon asked for **wisdom**, God was pleased and made him the **wisest** man in the world.
- **23:9** Some time later, **wise** men from countries far to the east saw an unusual star in the sky.
- **45:1** He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the Holy Spirit and of **wisdom**.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0998, H1350, H2445, H2449, H2450, H2451, H2452, H2454, H2942, H3820, H3823, H6195, H6493, H6912, H7535, H7919, H7922, H8454, G46780, G46790, G46800, G49200, G54280, G54290, G54300

Revelation References:

Revelation 5:12 Revelation 7:12 Revelation 13:18 Revelation 17:9

woe

Definition:

The term “woe” refers to a feeling of great distress. It also gives a warning that someone will experience severe trouble.

- The expression “woe to” is followed by a warning to people that they will experience suffering as punishment for their sins.
- In several places in the Bible, the word “woe” is repeated, to emphasize an especially terrible judgment.
- A person who says “woe is me” or “woe to me” is expressing sorrow about severe suffering.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “woe” could also be translated as “great sorrow” or “sadness” or “calamity” or “disaster.”
- Other ways to translate the expression “Woe to (name of city)” could include, “How terrible it will be for (name of city)” or “The people in (that city) will be severely punished” or “Those people will suffer greatly.”
- The expression, “Woe is me!” or “Woe to me!” could be translated as “How sad I am!” or “I am so sad!” or “How terrible this is for me!”
- The expression “Woe to you” could also be translated as “You will suffer terribly” or “You will experience terrible troubles.”

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 13:17-18
- Habakkuk 2:12
- Isaiah 31:1-2
- Jeremiah 45:1-3
- Jude 1:9-11
- Luke 6:24
- Luke 17:1-2
- Matthew 23:23

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0188, H0190, H0337, H0480, H1929, H1945, H1958, G37590

Revelation References:

Revelation 8:13 Revelation 8:13 Revelation 8:13 Revelation 9:12 Revelation 9:12 Revelation 11:14 Revelation 11:14 Revelation 12:12 Revelation 18:10 Revelation 18:10 Revelation 18:16 Revelation 18:16 Revelation 18:19 Revelation 18:19

word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, scripture

Definition:

In the Bible, the term "word of God" refers to anything that God has communicated to people. This includes spoken and written messages. Jesus is also called "the Word of God."

- The term "scriptures" means "writings." It is only used in the New Testament and refers to the Hebrew scriptures, which is the Old Testament. These writings were God's message that he had told people to write down so that many years in the future people could still read it.
- The related terms "word of Yahweh" and "word of the Lord" often refer to a specific message from God that was given to a prophet or other person in the Bible.
- Sometimes this term occurs as simply "the word" or "my word" or "your word" (when talking about God's word).
- In the New Testament, Jesus is called "the Word" and "the Word of God." These titles mean that Jesus fully reveals who God is, because he is God himself.

The term "word of truth" is another way of referring to "God's word," which is his message or teaching. It does not refer to just one word.

- God's word of truth includes everything that God has taught people about himself, his creation, and his plan of salvation through Jesus.
- This term emphasizes the fact that what God has told us is true, faithful, and real.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include "the message of Yahweh" or "God's message" or "the teachings from God."
- It may be more natural in some languages to make this term plural and say "God's words" or "the words of Yahweh."
- The expression "the word of Yahweh came" is often used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. This could be translated as "Yahweh spoke this message" or "Yahweh spoke these words."
- The term "scripture" or "scriptures" could be translated as "the writings" or "the written message from God." This term should be translated differently from the translation of the term "word."
- When "word" occurs alone and it refers to God's word, it could be translated as "the message" or "God's word" or "the teachings." Also consider the alternate translations suggested above.
- When the Bible refers to Jesus as "the Word," this term could be translated as "the Message" or "the Truth."
- "Word of truth" could be translated as "God's true message" or "God's word, which is true."
- It is important for the translation of this term to include the meaning of being true.

(See also: prophet, true, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Genesis 15:1
- 1 Kings 13:1
- Jeremiah 36:1-3
- Luke 8:11
- John 5:39
- Acts 6:2
- Acts 12:24
- Romans 1:2
- 2 Corinthians 6:7
- Ephesians 1:13
- 2 Timothy 3:16
- James 1:18
- James 2:8-9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:7** In **God's word** he commands his people, "Worship only the Lord your God and only serve him."
- **33:6** So Jesus explained, "The seed is the **word of God**."

- **42:3** Then Jesus explained to them what **God's word** says about the Messiah.
- **42:7** Jesus said, "I told you that everything written about me in **God's word** must be fulfilled." Then he opened their minds so they could understand **God's word**.
- **45:10** Philip also used other **scriptures** to tell him the good news of Jesus.
- **48:12** But Jesus is the greatest prophet of all. He is the **Word of God**.
- **49:18** God tells you to pray, to study his **word**, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0561, H0565, H1697, H3068, G30560, G44870

Revelation References:

Revelation 1:2 Revelation 1:9 Revelation 3:8 Revelation 3:10 Revelation 6:9 Revelation 19:13 Revelation 20:4

world, worldly

Definition:

The term "world" usually refers to the part of the universe where people live: the earth. The term "worldly" describes the evil values and behaviors of people living in this world.

- In its most general sense, the term "world" refers to the heavens and the earth, as well as everything in them.
- In many contexts, "world" actually means "people in the world."
- Sometimes it is implied that this refers to the evil people on earth or the people who do not obey God.
- The apostles also used "world" to refer to the selfish behaviors and corrupt values of the people living in this world. This can include self-righteous religious practices which are based on human efforts.
- People and things characterized by these values are said to be "worldly."

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "world" could also be translated as "universe" or "people of this world" or "corrupt things in the world" or "evil attitudes of people in the world."
- The phrase "all the world" often means "many people" and refers to the people living in a certain region. For example, "all the world came to Egypt" could be translated as "many people from the surrounding countries came to Egypt" or "people from all the countries surrounding Egypt came there."
- Another way to translate "all the world went to their hometown to be registered in the Roman census" would be "many of the people living in regions ruled by the Roman empire went…"
- Depending on the context, the term "worldly" could be translated as "evil" or "sinful" or "selfish" or "ungodly" or "corrupt" or "influenced by the corrupt values of people in this world."
- The phrase "saying these things in the world" can be translated as "saying these things to the people of the world."

- In other contexts, “in the world” could also be translated as “living among the people of the world” or “living among ungodly people.”

(See also: corrupt, heaven, Rome, godly)

Bible References:

- 1 John 2:15
- 1 John 4:5
- 1 John 5:5
- John 1:29
- Matthew 13:36-39

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0776, H2309, H2465, H5769, H8398, G10930, G28860, G28890, G36250

Revelation References:

Revelation 3:10 Revelation 11:15 Revelation 12:9 Revelation 13:8 Revelation 16:14 Revelation 17:8

prostrate, bow down, worship

Definition:

To “prostrate” oneself means to lie flat on the ground, usually in submission to a person of authority such as a king or some other powerful person. This same term can also mean to “worship,” referring to the actions of honoring, praising, and obeying God.

- This term often means literally “bow down” or “prostrate oneself” to humbly honor someone.
- We worship God when we serve and honor him, by praising him and obeying him.
- When the Israelites worshiped God, it often included sacrificing an animal on an altar.
- This term can be used both of people who worship Yahweh as the One True God and others who worship false gods.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “worship” could be translated as “bow down to” or “honor and serve” or “honor and obey.”
- In some contexts, it could also be translated as “humbly praise” or “give honor and praise.”

(See also: bow, fear, sacrifice, praise, honor)

Bible References:

- Colossians 2:18-19
- Deuteronomy 29:18
- Exodus 3:11-12
- Luke 4:7
- Matthew 2:2
- Matthew 2:8

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:4** Then God gave them the covenant and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not **worship** other gods.”
- **14:2** The Canaanites did not **worship** or obey God. They **worshiped** false gods and did many evil things.

- **17:6** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could **worship** God and offer him sacrifices.
- **18:12** All of the kings and most of the people of the kingdom of Israel **worshiped** idols.
- **25:7** Jesus replied, “Get away from me, Satan! In God’s word he commands his people, ‘**Worship** only the Lord your God and only serve him.’”
- **26:2** On the Sabbath, he (Jesus) went to the place of **worship**.
- **47:1** There they met a woman named Lydia who was a merchant. She loved and **worshiped** God.
- **49:18** God tells you to pray, to study his word, to **worship** him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5457, H5647, H6087, H7812, G13910, G14790, G21510, G23180, G23230, G23560, G30000, G35110, G43520, G43530, G45730, G45740, G45760

Revelation References:

Revelation 4 Introduction Revelation 4:10 Revelation 5:14 Revelation 7:11 Revelation 9:20 Revelation 11:1 Revelation 11:16 Revelation 13:4 Revelation 13:4 Revelation 13:8 Revelation 13:12 Revelation 13:15 Revelation 14:7 Revelation 14:11 Revelation 15:4 Revelation 16:2 Revelation 19:4 Revelation 19:10 Revelation 19:10 Revelation 19:20 Revelation 20:4 Revelation 22:8 Revelation 22:9

wrath, fury

Definition:

Wrath is an intense anger that is sometimes long-lasting. The Bible describes both people and God as experiencing intense anger. When speaking about God’s “wrath,” make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful fit of rage (which might be true of a human person).

- In the Bible, “wrath” often refers to God’s righteous judgment of sin and punishment of people who rebel against him.
- The “wrath of God” can also refer to his judgment and punishment for sin.
- God’s wrath is the righteous penalty for those who do not repent of their sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways this term could be translated include “intense anger” or “righteous judgment” or “anger.”
- God’s wrath is just and holy. When talking about God’s wrath, make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful human rage.

(See also: judge, sin)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 1:8-10
- 1 Timothy 2:8-10
- Luke 3:7
- Luke 21:23
- Matthew 3:7
- Revelation 14:10
- Romans 1:18
- Romans 5:9

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0639, H2197, H2528, H2534, H2740, H3707, H3708, H5678, H7107, H7109, H7110, H7265, H7267, G23720, G37090, G39490, G39500

Revelation References:

Revelation 6:16 Revelation 6:17 Revelation 11:18 Revelation 14:10 Revelation 14:10 Revelation 14:19 Revelation 15:1 Revelation 15:7 Revelation 16 Introduction Revelation 16:1 Revelation 16:19 Revelation 16:19 Revelation 19:15 Revelation 19:15

zeal, zealous

Definition:

The terms “zeal” and “zealous” refer to being strongly devoted to supporting a person or idea.

- Zeal includes having strong desire and actions that promote a good cause. It is often used to describe someone who faithfully obeys God and teaches others to do that too.
- Being zealous includes putting intense effort into doing something and continuing to persevere in that effort.
- The “zeal of the Lord” or the “zeal of Yahweh” refers to God’s strong, persistent actions to bless his people or to see justice done.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “be zealous” could also be translated by, “be strongly diligent” or “make an intense effort.”
- The term “zeal” could also be translated as “energetic devotion” or “eager determination” or “righteous enthusiasm.”
- The phrase, “zeal for your house” could be translated, “strongly honoring your temple” or “fervent desire to take care of your house.”

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 12:31
- 1 Kings 19:9-10
- Acts 22:3
- Galatians 4:17
- Isaiah 63:15
- John 2:17-19
- Philippians 3:6
- Romans 10:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H7065, H7068, G22050, G22060, G22070, G60410

Revelation References:

Revelation 3:19

Zion, Mount Zion

Definition:

Originally, the term “Zion” or “Mount Zion” referred to a stronghold or fortress that King David captured from the Jebusites. Both these terms became other ways of referring to Jerusalem.

- Mount Zion and Mount Moriah were two of the hills that the city of Jerusalem was located on. Later, “Zion” and “Mount Zion” became used as general terms to refer to both of these mountains and to the city of Jerusalem. Sometimes they also referred to the temple that was located in Jerusalem. (See: metonymy)
- David named Zion, or Jerusalem, the “City of David.” This is different from David’s hometown, Bethlehem, which was also called the City of David.
- The term “Zion” is used in other figurative ways, to refer to Israel or to God’s spiritual kingdom or to the new, heavenly Jerusalem that God will create.

(See also: Abraham, David, Jerusalem, Bethlehem, Jebusites)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:5
- Amos 1:2
- Jeremiah 51:35
- Psalm 76:1-3
- Romans 11:26

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6726

Revelation References:

Revelation 14:1

Asher

Definition:

Asher was Jacob’s eighth son. He was Zilpah’s second son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the “tribe of Asher” or “Asher.”
- His name sounds similar to a Hebrew word meaning “blessed, happy.”
- The tribe of Asher settled in the northwest corner of Canaan, on the Mediterannean Sea. When used as the name of a region of land, the term “Asher” refers to the land given to the tribe of Asher.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, Jacob, Zilpah)

Bible References:

- Genesis 30:13
- 1 Chronicles 2:1-2
- 1 Kings 4:16
- Ezekiel 48:1-3
- Luke 2:36-38

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0836

Revelation References:

Revelation 7:6

Asia

Definition:

In Bible times, “Asia” was the name of a province of the Roman Empire. It was located in the western part of what is now the country of Turkey.

- Paul traveled to Asia and shared the gospel in several cities there. Among these were the cities of Ephesus and Colossae.
- To avoid confusion with modern day Asia, it may be necessary to translate this as, “the ancient Roman province called Asia” or “Asia Province.”
- All of the churches referenced in Revelation were in the Roman province of Asia.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Rome, Paul, Ephesus)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 16:19-20
- 1 Peter 1:1-2
- 2 Timothy 1:15-18
- Acts 6:8-9
- Acts 16:7
- Acts 27:1-2
- Revelation 1:4-6
- Romans 16:5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G07730

Revelation References:

Revelation 1:4

Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian

Definition:

The city of Babylon was the capital of the ancient region of Babylonia, which was also part of the Babylonian Empire.

- Babylon was located along the Euphrates River, in the same region where the Tower of Babel had been built hundreds of years before.
- Sometimes the word “Babylon” refers to the entire Babylonian Empire. For example, the “king of Babylon” ruled the entire empire, not just the city.
- The Babylonians were a powerful people group who attacked the kingdom of Judah and kept the people in exile in Babylonia for 70 years.
- Part of this region was called “Chaldea” and the people living there were the “Chaldeans.” As a result, the term “Chaldea” was often used to refer to Babylonia. (See: synecdoche)

(See also: Babel, Chaldea, Judah, Nebuchadnezzar)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 9:1
- 2 Kings 17:24-26
- Acts 7:43
- Daniel 1:2
- Ezekiel 12:13
- Matthew 1:11
- Matthew 1:17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:6** About 100 years after the Assyrians destroyed the kingdom of Israel, God sent Nebuchadnezzar, king of the **Babylonians**, to attack the kingdom of Judah. **Babylon** was a powerful empire.
- **20:7** But after a few years, the king of Judah rebelled against **Babylon**. So, the **Babylonians** came back and attacked the kingdom of Judah. They captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.

- **20:9** Nebuchadnezzar and his army took almost all of the people of the kingdom of Judah to **Babylon**, leaving only the poorest people behind to plant the fields.
- **20:11** About seventy years later, Cyrus, the king of the Persians, defeated **Babylon**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3778, H3779, H8152, H0894, H0895, H0896, G08970

Revelation References:

Revelation 14:8 Revelation 16:19 Revelation 17:5 Revelation 18:2 Revelation 18:10 Revelation 18:21

Balaam

Definition:

Balaam was a pagan prophet whom King Balak hired to curse Israel while they were camped at the Jordan River in northern Moab, preparing to enter the land of Canaan.

- Balaam was from the city of Pethor, which was located in the region around the Euphrates River, about 400 miles away from the land of Moab.
- The Midianite king, Balak, was afraid of the strength and numbers of the Israelites, so he hired Balaam to curse them.
- As Balaam was traveling toward Israel, an angel of God stood in his path so that Balaam's donkey stopped. God also gave the donkey the ability to speak to Balaam.
- God did not allow Balaam to curse the Israelites and commanded him to bless them instead.
- Later however, Balaam still brought evil on the Israelites when he influenced them to worship the false god Baal-peor.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: bless, Canaan, curse, donkey, Euphrates River, Jordan River, Midian, Moab, Peor)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 2:16
- Deuteronomy 23:3-4
- Joshua 13:22-23
- Numbers 22:5
- Revelation 2:14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1109, G09030

Revelation References:

Revelation 2:14

Benjamin, Benjaminite

Definition:

Benjamin was Jacob's twelfth son. He was Rachel's second son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Benjamin" or "Benjamin" or the "Benjaminites."
- In Hebrew, the name Benjamin means "son of my right hand."
- The tribe of Benjamin settled just northwest of the Dead Sea, north of Jerusalem.
- The phrase "the land of Benjamin" refers to the territory that Yahweh gave to the descendants of Benjamin to live in.
- King Saul was from the tribe of Benjamin.
- The apostle Paul was from the tribe of Benjamin.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, Jacob, Rachel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 2:1-2
- 1 Kings 2:8
- Acts 13:21-22
- Genesis 35:18
- Genesis 42:4
- Genesis 42:35-36
- Philippians 3:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1144, G09580

Revelation References:

Revelation 7:8

David

Definition:

David was the second king of Israel and he loved and served God. He was the main writer of the book of Psalms.

- When David was still a young boy caring for his family's sheep, God chose him to become the next king of Israel.
- David became a great fighter and led the Israelite army in battles against their enemies. His defeat of Goliath the Philistine is well known.
- King Saul tried to kill David, but God protected him, and made him king after Saul's death.
- David committed a terrible sin, but he repented and God forgave him.
- Jesus, the Messiah, is called the "Son of David" because he is a descendant of King David.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Goliath, Philistines, Saul (OT))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 17:12-13
- 1 Samuel 20:34
- 2 Samuel 5:2
- 2 Timothy 2:8
- Acts 2:25
- Acts 13:22
- Luke 1:32
- Mark 2:26

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:2** God chose a young Israelite named **David** to be king after Saul. **David** was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. … **David** was a humble and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **17:3** **David** was also a great soldier and leader. When **David** was still a young man, he fought against a giant named Goliath.
- **17:4** Saul became jealous of the people's love for **David**. Saul tried many times to kill him, so **David** hid from Saul.

- **17:5** God blessed **David** and made him successful. **David** fought many battles and God helped him defeat Israel's enemies.
- **17:6** **David** wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- **17:9** **David** ruled with justice and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **17:13** God was very angry about what **David** had done, so he sent the prophet Nathan to tell **David** how evil his sin was. **David** repented of his sin and God forgave him. For the rest of his life, **David** followed and obeyed God, even in difficult times.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1732, G11380

Revelation References:

Revelation 3:7 Revelation 5:5 Revelation 22:16

Egypt, Egyptian

Definition:

Egypt is a country in the northeast part of Africa, to the southwest of the land of Canaan. An Egyptian is a person who is from the country of Egypt.

- In ancient times, Egypt was a powerful and wealthy country.
- Ancient Egypt was divided into two parts, Lower Egypt (northern part where the Nile River flowed downward into the sea) and Upper Egypt (southern part). In the Old Testament, these parts are referred to as "Egypt" and "Pathros" in the original language text.
- Several times when there was little food in Canaan, Israel's patriarchs traveled to Egypt to buy food for their families.
- For several hundred years, the Israelites were slaves in Egypt.
- Joseph and Mary went down to Egypt with the young child Jesus, to escape from Herod the Great.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Herod the Great, Joseph (NT), Nile River, patriarchs)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 4:7-9
- Acts 7:10
- Exodus 3:7
- Genesis 41:29
- Genesis 41:57
- Matthew 2:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:4** The slave traders took Joseph to **Egypt**. **Egypt** was a large, powerful country located along the Nile River.
- **8:8** Pharaoh was so impressed with Joseph that he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of **Egypt**!
- **8:11** So Jacob sent his older sons to __Egypt __ to buy food.

- **8:14** Even though Jacob was an old man, he moved to **Egypt** with all of his family, and they all lived there.
- **9:1** After Joseph died, all of his relatives stayed in **Egypt**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4713, H4714, G01240, G01250

Revelation References:

Revelation 11:8

Ephesus, Ephesian

Definition:

Ephesus was an ancient Greek city on the west coast of what is now the present-day country of Turkey.

- During the time of the early Christians, Ephesus was the capital of Asia, which was a small Roman province at that time.
- Because of its location, this city was an important center of trade and travel.
- A well-known pagan temple for the worship of the goddess Artemis (Diana) was located in Ephesus.
- Paul lived and worked in Ephesus for more than two years and later appointed Timothy to lead the new believers there.
- The book of Ephesians in the New Testament is a letter that Paul wrote to the believers in Ephesus.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Asia, Paul, Timothy)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:32
- 1 Timothy 1:3
- 2 Timothy 4:11-13
- Acts 19:1
- Ephesians 1:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: G21790, G21800, G21810

Revelation References:

Revelation 1:11 Revelation 2:1

Euphrates River, the River

Definition:

The Euphrates is the name of one of the four rivers that flowed through the Garden of Eden. It is the river that is most often mentioned in the Bible.

- The modern day river named Euphrates is located in the Middle East and is the longest and most important river in Asia.
- Together with the Tigris River, the Euphrates borders a region of land known as Mesopotamia.
- The ancient city of Ur where Abraham came from was at the mouth of the Euphrates River.
- This river was one of the boundaries of the land that God promised to give to Abraham (Genesis 15:18).
- Sometimes the Euphrates is simply called "the River."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 5:7-9
- 2 Chronicles 9:25-26
- Exodus 23:30-33
- Genesis 2:13-14
- Isaiah 7:20

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5104, H6578, G21660

Revelation References:

Revelation 9:14 Revelation 16:12

Gad

Definition:

Gad was Jacob's seventh son. He was Zilpah's first son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Gad" or "Gad" or "Gad."
- The name Gad is similar to the Hebrew word for "good fortune."
- The tribe of Gad settled on the eastern side of the Jordan River between the Sea of Galilee and the Dead Sea. This was to the north of Reuben and south of half of the tribe of Manasseh. When used as the name of a region of land, the term "Gad" refers to the land given to the tribe of Gad.
- Another man in the Bible named Gad was a prophet who confronted King David for his sin of taking a census of the Israelite people.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, Jacob, Zilpah)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 5:18
- Exodus 1:1-5
- Genesis 30:11
- Joshua 1:12
- Joshua 21:38

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1410, H1425, G10450

Revelation References:

Revelation 7:5

Greek, Grecian, Hellenist

Definition:

The term “Greek” refers to the language spoken in the country of Greece, it is also a person from the country of Greece. Greek was also spoken throughout the Roman Empire. The adjective “Grecian” means “Greek-speaking.”

- Since most non-Jewish people in the Roman Empire spoke Greek, Gentiles are often referred to as “Greeks” in the New Testament, especially when contrasted with Jews.
- The phrase “Grecian Jews” or “Hellenists” referred to Jews who spoke Greek in contrast to the “Hebraic Jews” who spoke only Hebrew, or perhaps Aramaic. The term “Hellenists” comes from the pronunciation of the Greek word for a Greek-speaker.
- Other ways to translate “Grecian” could include, “Greek-speaking” or “culturally Greek” or “Greek.”
- When referring to non-Jews, “Greek” could be translated as “Gentile.”

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Aram, Gentile, Greece, Hebrew, Rome)

Bible References:

- Acts 6:1
- Acts 9:29
- Acts 11:20
- Acts 14:1-2
- Colossians 3:11
- Galatians 2:3-5
- John 7:35

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3125, G16720, G16730, G16740, G16750, G16760

Revelation References:

Revelation 9:11

Issachar

Definition:

Issachar was Jacob’s ninth son. He was Leah’s fifth son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the “tribe of Issachar” or “Issachar.”
- The meaning of the name is unknown, but it is similar to a Hebrew word meaning “reward, hire.”
- The tribe of Issachar settled in central Canaan, southwest of the Sea of Galilee. Issachar’s land was bordered by the lands of Naphtali, Zebulun, Manasseh, and Gad.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, Jacob, Leah)

Bible References:

- Genesis 30:18
- Exodus 1:1-5
- Ezekiel 48:23-26
- Joshua 17:10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3485, G24660

Revelation References:

Revelation 7:7

Jerusalem

Definition:

Jerusalem was originally an ancient Canaanite city that later became the most important city in Israel. It is located about 34 kilometers west of the Salt Sea and just north of Bethlehem. It is still the capital city of Israel today.

- The name “Jerusalem” is first mentioned in the book of Joshua. Other Old Testament names for this city include “Salem” “city of Jebus,” and “Zion.” Both “Jerusalem” and “Salem,” have the root meaning of “peace.”
- Jerusalem was originally a Jebusite fortress called “Zion” which King David captured and made into his capital city.
- It was in Jerusalem that David’s son Solomon built the first temple in Jerusalem, on Mount Moriah, which was the mountain where Abraham had offered his son Isaac to God. The temple was rebuilt there after it was destroyed by the Babylonians.
- Because the temple was in Jerusalem, the major Jewish festivals were celebrated there.
- People normally referred to going “up” to Jerusalem since it is located in the mountains.

(See also: Babylon, Christ, David, Jebusites, Jesus, Solomon, temple, Zion)

Bible References:

- Galatians 4:26-27
- John 2:13
- Luke 4:9-11
- Luke 13:5
- Mark 3:7-8
- Mark 3:20-22
- Matthew 3:6
- Matthew 4:23-25
- Matthew 20:17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:5** David conquered **Jerusalem** and made it his capital city.
- **18:2** In **Jerusalem**, Solomon built the Temple for which his father David had planned and gathered materials.
- **20:7** They (Babylonians) captured the city of **Jerusalem**, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- **20:12** So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of Jews returned to the city of **Jerusalem** in Judah.
- **38:1** About three years after Jesus first began preaching and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in **Jerusalem**, and that he would be killed there.
- **38:2** After Jesus and the disciples arrived in **Jerusalem**, Judas went to the Jewish leaders and offered to betray Jesus to them in exchange for money.
- **42:8** “It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in **Jerusalem**, and then go to all people groups everywhere.”
- **42:11** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, “Stay in **Jerusalem** until you receive power when the Holy Spirit comes on you.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3389, H3390, G24140, G24150, G24190

Revelation References:

Revelation 3:12 Revelation 21:2 Revelation 21:10

Jezebel

Definition:

Jezebel was the wicked wife of King Ahab of Israel.

- Jezebel influenced Ahab and the rest of Israel to worship idols.
- She also killed many of God's prophets.
- Jezebel caused an innocent man named Naboth to be killed so that Ahab could steal Naboth's vineyard.
- Jezebel was finally killed due to all the evil things she had done. Elijah prophesied about how she would die and it happened exactly as he had predicted.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Ahab, Elijah, false god)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 16:31-33
- 1 Kings 19:1-3
- 2 Kings 9:7
- 2 Kings 9:31
- Revelation 2:20

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0348, G24030

Revelation References:

Revelation 2:20

John (the apostle)

Definition:

John was one of Jesus' twelve apostles and one of Jesus' closest friends.

- John and his brother James were sons of a fisherman named Zebedee.
- In the gospel that he wrote about Jesus' life, John referred to himself as "the disciple whom Jesus loved." This seems to indicate that John was an especially close friend of Jesus.
- The Apostle John wrote five New Testament books: the gospel of John, the Revelation of Jesus Christ, and three letters written to other believers.
- Note that the Apostle John was a different person than John the Baptist.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: apostle, reveal, James (son of Zebedee), John (the Baptist), Zebedee)

Bible References:

- Galatians 2:9-10
- John 1:19-21
- Mark 3:17-19
- Matthew 4:21-22
- Revelation 1:1-3

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **36:1** One day, Jesus took three of his disciples, Peter, James, and **John** with him. (The disciple named **John** was not the same person who baptized Jesus.) They went up on a high mountain by themselves.
- **44:1** One day, Peter and **John** were going to the Temple. As they approached the Temple gate, they saw a crippled man who was begging for money.
- **44:6** The leaders of the Temple were very upset by what Peter and **John** were saying. So they arrested them and put them into prison.

- **44:7** The next day, the Jewish leaders brought Peter and **John** to the high priest and the other religious leaders. They asked Peter and **John**, "By what power did you heal this crippled man?"
- **44:9** The leaders were shocked that Peter and **John** spoke so boldly because they could see that these men were ordinary men who were uneducated. But then they remembered that these men had been with Jesus. After they threatened Peter and **John**, they let them go.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G24910

Revelation References:

Revelation 1:1 Revelation 1:4 Revelation 1:9 Revelation 22:8

Joseph (OT)

Definition:

Joseph was Jacob's eleventh son. He was Rachel's first son. The descendants of his two sons Ephraim and Manasseh became two of the tribes of Israel.

- The Hebrew name Joseph is similar to both the Hebrew word meaning "to add, increase" and the Hebrew word meaning "to gather, take away."
- A large portion of the book of Genesis is dedicated to the story of Joseph, how he remained faithful to God throughout his many difficulties and forgave his brothers who had sold him to be a slave in Egypt.
- Eventually God raised Joseph to the second highest place of power in Egypt and used him to save the people of Egypt and the surrounding nations in a time when there was little food. Joseph helped save his own family from starving and brought them to live with him in Egypt.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, Ephraim, Manasseh, Jacob, Rachel)

Bible References:

- Genesis 30:22-24
- Genesis 33:1-3
- Genesis 37:1-2
- Genesis 37:23-24
- Genesis 41:55-57
- John 4:4-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:2** **Joseph's** brothers hated him because their father loved him most and because Joseph had dreamed that he would be their ruler.
- **8:4** The slave traders took **Joseph** to Egypt.
- **8:5** Even in prison, **Joseph** remained faithful to God, and God blessed him.
- **8:7** God had given **Joseph** the ability to interpret dreams, so Pharaoh had Joseph brought to him from the prison.

- **8:9** **Joseph** told the people to store up large amounts of food during the seven years of good harvests.
- **9:2** The Egyptians no longer remembered **Joseph** and all he had done to help them.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3084, H3130, G25000, G25010

Revelation References:

Revelation 7:8

Judah

Definition:

Judah was Jacob's fourth son. He was Leah's fourth son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Judah" or "Judah."
- His name sounds similar to the Hebrew word meaning "praise."
- The tribe of Judah settled in the southern part of Canaan, including the mountainous area to the south of the city of Jerusalem. When used as the name of a region of land, the term "Judah" refers to the land given to the tribe of Judah.
- In the Old Testament, the name Judah is sometimes used to refer to the whole southern kingdom of Israel (similar to how the name Ephraim is sometimes used to refer to the whole northern kingdom).
- King David, King Solomon, and all the kings of the southern kingdom were descendants of Judah. Jesus, too, was a descendant of Judah.
- The words "Jew" and "Judea" come from the name "Judah."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, Judah (kingdom), Jew, Judea, Jacob, Leah)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 2:1-2
- 1 Kings 1:9
- Genesis 29:35
- Genesis 38:2
- Luke 3:33
- Ruth 1:2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3063

Revelation References:

Revelation 5:5 Revelation 7:5

Levi, Levite

Definition:

Levi was Jacob's third son. He was Leah's third son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Levi" or the "Levites."
- The name Levi is similar to the Hebrew word for "join to."
- Unlike the other tribes, the tribe of Levi did not inherit a unified area of land in Canaan. Instead, they inherited various cities scattered throughout the regions belonging to the other tribes.
- The tribe of Levi was responsible for taking care of the tabernacle (and later, the temple) and conducting religious rituals, including offering sacrifices and prayers for the Israelite people.
- In the Old Testament, it is not always clear whether the term "Levite" refers generally to a descendant of Levi or specifically to a person who served in the temple helping the priests.
- The Old Testament law prescribed that all priests were to be chosen from the tribe of Levi. The Levite priests were set apart and dedicated for the special work of serving God in the temple.
- Two other men named "Levi" were ancestors of Jesus. Their names are listed in the genealogy in the gospel of Luke.
- Jesus' disciple Matthew was also called Levi.

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, priest, sacrifice, temple, Jacob, Leah, Matthew)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 2:1-2
- 1 Kings 8:3-5
- Acts 4:36-37
- Genesis 29:34
- John 1:19-21
- Luke 10:32

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3878, H3879, H3881, G30170, G30180, G30190, G30200

Revelation References:

Revelation 7:7

Manasseh

Definition:

Manasseh was the older son of Joseph. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The name Manasseh is similar to the the Hebrew word meaning “to forget.”
- The tribe of Manasseh was often called the “half-tribe of Manasseh” because only part of the tribe settled in the land of Canaan, on the west side of the Jordan River. The other part of the tribe settled on the east side of the Jordan.
- One of the kings of Judah was also named Manasseh. King Manasseh was an evil king who sacrificed his own children as burnt offerings to false gods.
- God punished King Manasseh by allowing him to be captured by an enemy army. Manasseh turned back to God and destroyed the altars where idols were worshiped.
- Three other men named Manasseh are mentioned in the Old Testament. One of them was the grandfather of some Danites who were priests for false gods. The other two were men who lived during the time of Ezra and were required to divorce their pagan wives, who had influenced them to worship false gods.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Joseph, Ephraim, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 15:9
- Deuteronomy 3:12-13
- Genesis 41:51
- Genesis 48:1-2
- Judges 1:27-28

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4519, H4520, G31280

Revelation References:

Revelation 7:6

Moses

Definition:

Moses was a prophet and leader of the Israelite people for over 40 years. He was the leader of the Israelite people when they came out of Egypt, as described in the book of Exodus.

- When Moses was a baby, Moses' parents put him in a basket in the reeds of the Nile River to hide him from the Egyptian Pharaoh. Moses' sister Miriam watched over him there. Moses' life was spared when the pharaoh's daughter found him and took him to the palace to raise him as her son.
- God chose Moses to free the Israelites from slavery in Egypt and to lead them to the Promised Land.
- After the Israelites' escape from Egypt and while they were wandering in the desert, God gave Moses two stone tablets with the Ten Commandments written on them.
- Near the end of his life, Moses saw the Promised Land, but did not get to live in it, because he disobeyed God.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Miriam, Promised Land, Ten Commandments)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:21
- Acts 7:30
- Exodus 2:10
- Exodus 9:1
- Matthew 17:4
- Romans 5:14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:12** One day while **Moses** was taking care of his sheep, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **12:5** **Moses** told the Israelites, "Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and save you."
- **12:7** God told **Moses** to raise his hand over the sea and divide the waters.
- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- **13:7** Then God wrote these Ten Commandments on two stone tablets and gave them to **Moses**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4872, H4873, G34750

Revelation References:

Revelation 15:3

Naphtali

Definition:

Naphtali was Jacob's sixth son. He was Bilhah's second son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Naphtali" or "Naphtali" or "Naphtalites."
- The name Naphtali is similar to the Hebrew word meaning "to twist, wrestle."
- The tribe of Naphtali settled in the northern part of Canaan, between the tribes of Manassah and Asher. Its eastern border was on the western shoreline of the Sea of Chinnereth. When used as the name of a region of land, the term "Naphtali" refers to the land given to the tribe of Naphtali.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, Jacob, Bilhah)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 4:15
- Deuteronomy 27:13-14
- Ezekiel 48:1-3
- Genesis 30:8
- Judges 1:33
- Matthew 4:13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5321, G35080

Revelation References:

Revelation 7:6

Reuben

Definition:

Reuben was Jacob's first son. He was Leah's first son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the tribe of Reuben or the Reubenites.
- In Hebrew, the name Reuben means "Look, a son!"
- The tribe of Reuben settled on the eastern side of the Jordan River along with the tribe of Gad and half the tribe of Manasseh.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, Jacob, Leah)

Bible References:

- Genesis 29:32
- Genesis 35:21-22
- Genesis 42:22
- Genesis 42:37

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7205, H7206, G45020

Revelation References:

Revelation 7:5

Simeon

Definition:

Simeon was Jacob's second son. He was Leah's second son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Simeon."
- The name Simeon is similar to the Hebrew word meaning "to hear."
- The tribe of Simeon occupied part of the southernmost territory in the promised land of Canaan. Its land was entirely surrounded by the land that belonged to Judah. When used as the name of a region of land, the term "Simeon" refers to the land given to the tribe of Simeon.
- When Joseph and Mary brought the baby Jesus to the temple in Jerusalem to dedicate him to God, an elderly man named Simeon praised God for allowing him to see the Messiah.
- Another man named Simeon is mentioned in Luke's geneology of Jesus.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, Jacob, Leah)

Bible References:

- Genesis 29:33
- Genesis 34:25
- Genesis 42:35-36
- Genesis 43:21-23
- Luke 2:25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8095, H8099, G48260

Revelation References:

Revelation 7:7

Sodom

Definition:

Sodom was a city in the southern part of Canaan where Abraham's nephew Lot lived with his wife and children.

- The land of the region surrounding Sodom was very well watered and fertile, so Lot chose to live there when he first settled in Canaan.
- The exact location of this city is not known because Sodom and the nearby city of Gomorrah were completely destroyed by God as punishment for the evil things the people there were doing.
- The most significant sin that the people of Sodom and Gomorrah were practicing was homosexuality.

(See also: Canaan, Gomorrah)

Bible References:

- Genesis 10:19
- Genesis 13:12
- Matthew 10:15
- Matthew 11:24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5467, G46700

Revelation References:

Revelation 11:8

Zebulun

Definition:

Zebulun was Jacob's tenth son. He was Leah's sixth son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Zebulun" or "Zebulun."
- The meaning of the name Zebulun is unknown, but it is similar to a Hebrew word probably meaning "to honor" or "to dwell."
- The tribe of Zebulun settled in northwest Canaan, bordered by the lands of Naphtali, Issachar, Manasseh, and Asher.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, Jacob, Leah)

Bible References:

- Exodus 1:1-5
- Genesis 30:20
- Isaiah 9:1
- Judges 4:10
- Matthew 4:13
- Matthew 4:16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2074, H2075, G21940

Revelation References:

Revelation 7:8

twelve tribes of Israel, twelve tribes

Definition:

The term "twelve tribes of Israel" refers to the twelve sons of Jacob and their descendants.

- These are the names of Jacob's twelve sons: Reuben, Simeon, Levi, Judah, Dan, Naphtali, Gad, Asher, Issachar, Zebulun, Joseph and Benjamin.
- There are several places in the Bible where the list of the twelve tribes is slightly different. Sometimes Levi, Joseph, or Dan is left out of the list and sometimes Joseph's two sons Ephraim and Manasseh are included in the list.

(See also: Reuben, Simeon, Levi, Judah, Dan, Naphtali, Gad, Asher, Issachar, Zebulun, Joseph, Benjamin, Ephraim, Manasseh, Israel, Jacob, tribe)

Bible References:

- Acts 26:7
- Genesis 49:28
- Luke 22:28-30
- Matthew 19:28

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3478, H7626, H8147, G14270, G24740, G54430

Revelation References:

Revelation 21:12

abyss, bottomless pit

Definition:

The term “abyss” refers to a very large, deep hole or chasm that has no bottom.

- In the Bible, “the abyss” is a place of punishment.
- For example, when Jesus commanded evil spirits to come out of a man, they begged him not to send them to the abyss.
- The word “abyss” could also be translated as “bottomless pit” or “deep chasm.”
- This term should be translated differently from “hades,” “sheol,” or “hell.”

(See Also: Hades, hell, punish)

Bible References:

- Luke 8:30-31
- Romans 10:7

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G00120, G54210

Revelation References:

Revelation 9:1 Revelation 9:2 Revelation 9:11 Revelation 11:7 Revelation 17:8 Revelation 20:3

adversary, enemy

Definition:

An “adversary” is a person (or group of people) who is opposed to someone else. The term “enemy” has a similar meaning.

- Your adversary can be a person who tries to oppose or harm another person.
- When two nations fight, each can be called an “adversary” of the other.
- In the Bible, the devil is referred to as an “adversary” and an “enemy.”
- The term “adversary” may be translated as “opponent” or “enemy,” but it suggests a stronger form of opposition.

(See also: Satan)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 5:14
- Isaiah 9:11
- Job 6:23
- Lamentations 4:12
- Luke 12:59
- Matthew 13:25

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0341, H6146, H6887, H6862, H6965, H7790, H7854, H8130, H8324, G04760, G04800, G21890, G21900, G52270

Revelation References:

Revelation 11:5 Revelation 11:12

age, aged, old, old age, years old

Definition:

In this sense, the term “age” refers to the number of years a person has lived. In the Bible the terms “aged” and “old” are both used to describe someone who has lived a for many years.

Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase “at a very old age” could be translated as “at many years old” or “when he was very old” or “when he had lived a very long time.”
- The term “aged” could also be translated as “old” or “very old” depending on context.

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G01650, G01660

Revelation References:

Revelation 1:6 Revelation 1:18 Revelation 1:18 Revelation 4:9 Revelation 4:9 Revelation 4:10 Revelation 4:10 Revelation 5:13 Revelation 5:13 Revelation 7:12 Revelation 7:12 Revelation 10:6 Revelation 10:6 Revelation 11:15 Revelation 11:15 Revelation 14:11 Revelation 14:11 Revelation 15:3 Revelation 15:7 Revelation 15:7 Revelation 19:3 Revelation 19:3 Revelation 20:10 Revelation 20:10 Revelation 22:5 Revelation 22:5

age, era, time

Definition:

Used in this sense the term “age” refers to a time period.

- Other words used to express an extended period of time include “era” and “season.”
- Jesus refers to “this age” as the present time when evil, sin, and disobedience toward God fill the earth.
- There will be a future age when righteousness will reign in a new heaven and a new earth.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “age” could be translated as “era” or “time period” or “time.”
- The phrase “this present evil age” means “during this time right now when people are very evil.”
- The phrase “end of the age” (used in Jesus’ words in Matthew 28:20) means “end of this period of history” or “end of this present age” and refers to the end of this present age at Jesus’ second coming.

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2165, H6256, H6471, G21190, G21210, G22350, G25400, G35680, G41830, G42180, G44550, G51190, G55500, G55510, G56100

Revelation References:

Revelation 1:3 Revelation 6:11 Revelation 11:18 Revelation 12:12 Revelation 12:14 Revelation 12:14 Revelation 12:14 Revelation 20:3 Revelation 22:10

assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting, gather, community

Definition:

The term “assembly” usually refers to a group of people who come together for some reason, often to discuss problems, give advice, or make decisions. An assembly can be a group that is organized in an official and somewhat permanent way, or it can be a group of people who come together temporarily for a specific purpose or occasion.

Old Testament

- In the Old Testament there was a special kind of assembly called a “sacred assembly” in which the people of Israel would gather to worship Yahweh.
- Sometimes the term “assembly” referred to the Israelites in general, as a group.

New Testament

- In the New Testament, an assembly of 70 Jewish leaders in major cities such as Jerusalem would meet to judge legal matters and to settle disputes between people. This assembly was known as the “Sanhedrin” or the “Council.”

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “assembly” could also be translated as “special gathering” or “congregation” or “council” or “army” or “large group.”
- When the term “assembly” refers generally to the Israelites as a whole, it could also be translated as “community” or “people of Israel.”
- The phrase, “all the assembly” could be translated as “all the people” or “the whole group of Israelites” or “everyone.” (See: hyperbole)
- A large gathering of enemy soldiers was sometimes also referred to as an “assembly.” This could be translated as “army.”

(See also: council)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 8:14
- Acts 7:38
- Ezra 10:12-13
- Hebrews 12:22-24
- Leviticus 4:20-21
- Nehemiah 8:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0622, H1481, H2199, H3259, H4150, H4186, H4744, H5475, H5712, H6116, H6908, H6950, H6951, H6952, G15770, G38310, G48630, G48640, G48710, G49050

Revelation References:

Revelation 16:14 Revelation 16:16 Revelation 19:17 Revelation 19:19 Revelation 20:8

avenge, avenger, revenge, vengeance

Definition:

To “avenge” or “take revenge” or “execute vengeance” is to punish someone in order to pay him back for the harm he did. The act of avenging or taking revenge is “vengeance.”

- Usually “avenge” implies an intent to see justice done or to right a wrong,
- When referring to people, the expression “take revenge” or “get revenge” usually involves wanting to get back at the person who did the harm.
- When God “takes vengeance” or “executes vengeance,” he is acting in righteousness because he is punishing sin and rebellion.

Translation Suggestions:

- The expression to “avenge” could also be translated as to “right a wrong” or to “get justice for.”
- When referring to human beings, to “take revenge” could be translated as “pay back” or “hurt in order to punish” or “get back at.”
- Depending on the context, “vengeance” could be translated as “punishment” or “punishment of sin” or “payment for wrongs done.” If a word meaning “retaliation” is used, this would apply to human beings only.
- When God says, “take my vengeance,” this could be translated by “punish them for wrongs done against me” or “cause bad things to happen because they have sinned against me.”
- When referring to God’s vengeance, make sure it is clear that God is right in his punishment of sin.

(See also: punish, just, righteous)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 24:12-13
- Ezekiel 25:15
- Isaiah 47:3-5
- Leviticus 19:17-18
- Psalms 18:47
- Romans 12:19

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1350, H3467, H5358, H5359, H5360, H8199, G15560, G15570, G15580, G37090

Revelation References:

Revelation 6:10 Revelation 19:2

barley

Definition:

The term “barley” refers to a kind of grain that is used to make bread.

- The barley plant has a long stalk with a head at the top where the seeds or grains grow.
- Barley does well in warmer weather so it is often harvested in spring or summer.
- When barley is threshed, the edible seeds are separated from the worthless chaff.
- Barley grain is ground up into flour, which is then mixed with water or oil to make bread.
- If barley is not known, this could be translated as “grain called barley” or “barley grain.”

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: grain, thresh, wheat)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:12-14
- Job 31:40
- Judges 7:14
- Numbers 5:15
- Revelation 6:6

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H8184, G29150, G29160

Revelation References:

Revelation 6:6

bear, bearer, bore, borne, produce, produced

Definition:

Used in this sense, the term “bear” means to “produce” or “give birth to.”

- A common expression in the Bible is “bear fruit,” which means “produce fruit”
- When speaking of a woman who will bear a child, this means “give birth to” a child
- Depending on context, this term could be translated as “produce” or “give birth to.”

(Translation suggestions: fruit)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3205, H3209, H3211, H5375, G01420, G03990, G04300, G09410, G10800, G41600, G47220, G50410, G50880, G53420, G54090

Revelation References:

Revelation 2:2 Revelation 17:7

bear

Definition:

A bear is a large, four-legged furry animal with dark brown or black hair, with sharp teeth and claws. Bears were common in Israel during Bible times.

- These animals live in forests and mountain areas; they eat fish, insects, and plants.
- In the Old Testament, the bear is used as a symbol of strength.
- While tending sheep, the shepherd David fought a bear and defeated it.
- Two bears came out of the forest and attacked a group of youths who had mocked the prophet Elisha.

(See also: David, Elisha)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1677, G07150

Revelation References:

Revelation 13:2

beast

Definition:

In the Bible, the term "beast" is often just another way of saying "animal."

- A wild beast is a type of animal that lives freely in the forest or fields and has not been trained by people.
- A domestic beast is an animal that lives with people and is kept for food or for performing work, such as plowing fields. Often the term "livestock" is used to refer to this kind of animal.
- The Old Testament book of Daniel and the New Testament book of Revelation describe visions which have beasts that represent evil powers and authorities that oppose God. (See: Metaphor)
- Some of these beasts are described as having strange features, such as several heads and many horns. They often have power and authority, indicating that they may represent countries, nations, or other political powers.
- Ways to translate this could include "creature" or "created thing" or "animal" or "wild animal," depending on the context.

(See also: authority, Daniel, livestock, nation, power, reveal, Beelzebul)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:32
- 1 Samuel 17:44
- 2 Chronicles 25:18
- Jeremiah 16:1-4
- Leviticus 7:21
- Psalms 49:12-13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0338, H0929, H1165, H2123, H2416, H2423, H2874, H3753, H4806, H7409, G22260, G23410, G23420, G29340, G49680, G50740

Revelation References:

Revelation 6:8 Revelation 11:7 Revelation 13:2 Revelation 13:3 Revelation 13:4 Revelation 13:4 Revelation 13:4 Revelation 13:11 Revelation 13:12 Revelation 13:12 Revelation 13:14 Revelation 13:14 Revelation 13:15 Revelation 13:15 Revelation 13:15 Revelation 13:17 Revelation 13:18 Revelation 14:11 Revelation 15:2 Revelation 16:2 Revelation 16:10 Revelation 16:13 Revelation 17:3 Revelation 17:7 Revelation 17:8 Revelation 17:8 Revelation 17:11 Revelation 17:12 Revelation 17:13 Revelation 17:16 Revelation 17:17 Revelation 19:19 Revelation 19:20 Revelation 19:20 Revelation 20:4 Revelation 20:10

day

Definition:

The term “day” generally refers to the time it takes for the alternating periods of light and darkness in the sky to complete one cycle (that is, 24 hours). However, in the Bible the same term is often used to refer to a shorter period of time (such as the time between sunrise and sunset) or a longer period of time that is often not specified.

- “Day” is sometimes used in contrast to “night.” In these cases, the term refers to the period of time when the sky is light.
- The term may also refer to a specific point in time, such as “today.”
- Sometimes the term “day” is used figuratively to refer to a longer period of time, such as the “day of Yahweh” or “last days.” Some languages will use a different expression to translate these figurative uses or will translate “day” non-figuratively.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term literally as “day” or “daytime” using the word in your language that refers to the part of the day when there is light.
- Other translations of “day” could include “daytime,” “time,” “season,” “occasion” or “event,” depending on the context.

(See also: time, judgment day, last day)

Bible References:

- Acts 20:6
- Daniel 10:4
- Ezra 6:15
- Ezra 6:19
- Matthew 9:15

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3117, H3118, H6242, G22500

Revelation References:

Revelation 1:10 Revelation 2:10 Revelation 2:13 Revelation 4:8 Revelation 6:17 Revelation 7:15 Revelation 8:12 Revelation 9:6 Revelation 9:15 Revelation 10:7 Revelation 11:3 Revelation 11:6 Revelation 11:9 Revelation 11:11 Revelation 12:6 Revelation 12:10 Revelation 14:11 Revelation 16:14 Revelation 18:8 Revelation 20:10 Revelation 21:25

hour, moment

Definition:

The term “hour” is often used in the Bible to tell what time of day a certain event took place. It is also used figuratively to mean “time” or “moment.”

- The Jews counted daylight hours starting at sunrise (around 6 AM). For example, “the ninth hour” meant “around three in the afternoon.”
- Nighttime hours were counted starting at sunset (around 6 PM). For example, “the third hour of the night” meant “around nine in the evening” in our present-day system.
- Since references to time in the Bible will not correspond exactly to the present-day time system, phrases such as “around nine” or “about six o’clock” could be used.
- Some translations might add phrases like “in the evening” or “in the morning” or “in the afternoon” to make it clear what time of day is being talked about.
- The phrase, “in that hour” could be translated as “at that time” or “in that moment.”
- Referring to Jesus, the expression “his hour had come” could be translated as “the time had come for him to” or “the appointed time for him had come.”

Bible References:

- Acts 2:15
- John 4:51-52
- Luke 23:44
- Matthew 20:3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H8160, G56100

Revelation References:

Revelation 3:3 Revelation 3:10 Revelation 9:15 Revelation 11:13 Revelation 14:7 Revelation 14:15 Revelation 17:12 Revelation 18:10 Revelation 18:17 Revelation 18:19

month, monthly

Definition:

The term “month” refers to a period of time lasting about four weeks. The number of days in each month varies depending on whether a lunar or solar calendar is used.

- In the lunar calendar, the length of each month is based on the amount of time it takes for the moon to go around the earth, about twenty-nine days. In this system there are twelve or thirteen months in a year. Despite the year being twelve or thirteen months, the first month is always called the same name even though it may be a different season.
- The “new moon,” or beginning phase of the moon with its sliver of light, marks the beginning of each month in the lunar calendar.
- All the names of months referred to in the Bible are those of the lunar calendar since this was the system used by the Israelites. Modern Jews still use this calendar for religious purposes.
- The modern-day solar calendar is based on how long it takes the earth to go around the sun (about 365 days). In this system, the year is always divided up into twelve months, with the length of each month ranging from twenty-eight to thirty-one days.

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 20:34
- Acts 18:9-11
- Hebrews 11:23
- Numbers 10:10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2320, H3391, H3393, G33760

Revelation References:

Revelation 9:5 Revelation 9:10 Revelation 9:15 Revelation 11:2 Revelation 13:5 Revelation 22:2

year

Definition:

When used literally, the term “year” in the Bible refers to a period of time lasting 354 days. This is according to the lunar calendar system which is based on the time it takes for the moon to go around the earth.

- A year in the modern-day solar calendar lasts 365 days divided into twelve months, based on the amount of time it takes for the earth to travel around the sun.
- In both calendar systems a year has twelve months. But an extra thirteenth month is sometimes added to the year in the lunar calendar to make up for the fact that a lunar year is eleven days less than a solar year. This helps keep the two calendars more in line with each other.
- In the Bible, the term “year” is also used in a figurative sense to refer to a general time when a special event takes place. Examples of this include, “the year of Yahweh” or “in the year of drought” or “the favorable year of the Lord.” In these contexts, “year” could be translated as “time” or “season” or “time period.”

(See also: month)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 23:31
- Acts 19:8-10
- Daniel 8:1
- Exodus 12:2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3117, H7620, H7657, H8140, H8141, G17630, G20940

Revelation References:

Revelation 9:15 Revelation 20:2 Revelation 20:3 Revelation 20:4 Revelation 20:5 Revelation 20:6 Revelation 20:7

Book of Life

Definition:

The term “Book of Life” is used to refer to where God has written the names of all the people whom he has redeemed and given eternal life to.

- Revelation refers to this book as “the Lamb’s Book of Life.” This could be translated as “the book of life belonging to Jesus, the Lamb of God.” The sacrifice of Jesus on the cross paid the penalty for people’s sins so that they can have eternal life through faith in him.
- The word for “book” can also mean “scroll” or “letter” or “writing” or “legal document.” It may be literal or figurative.

(See also: everlasting, lamb, life, sacrifice, scroll)

Bible References:

- Philippians 4:3
- Psalms 69:28-29
- Revelation 3:5-6
- Revelation 20:11-12

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2416, H5612, G09760, G22220

Revelation References:

Revelation 3:5 Revelation 13:8 Revelation 17:8 Revelation 20:15 Revelation 21:27

bow, bow down, kneel, bend, bend the knee

Definition:

To bow means to bend over to humbly express respect and honor toward someone. To “bow down” means to bend over or kneel down very low, often with face and hands toward the ground.

- Other expressions include “bow the knee” (meaning to kneel) and “bow the head” (meaning to bend the head forward in humble respect or in sorrow).
- Bowing down can also be a sign of distress or mourning. Someone who is “bowed down” has been brought to a low position of humility.
- Often a person will bow in the presence of someone who is of higher status or greater importance, such as kings and other rulers.
- Bowing down before God is an expression of worship to him.
- In the Bible, people bowed down to Jesus when they realized from his miracles and teaching that he had come from God.
- The Bible says that when Jesus comes back someday, everyone will bow the knee to worship him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means “bend forward” or “bend the head” or “kneel.”
- The term “bow down” could be translated as “kneel down” or “prostrate oneself.”
- Some languages will have more than one way of translating this term, depending on the context.

(See also: humble, worship)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 5:18
- Exodus 20:5
- Genesis 24:26
- Genesis 44:14
- Isaiah 44:19

- Luke 24:5
- Matthew 2:11
- Revelation 3:9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0086, H3721, H3766, H5753, H5791, H6915, H7743, H7812, H7817, G11200, G25780, G28270, G40980

Revelation References:

Revelation 3:9 Revelation 4:10 Revelation 5:8 Revelation 5:14 Revelation 7:11 Revelation 11:16 Revelation 19:4 Revelation 19:10 Revelation 22:8

bow and arrow, a bow

Definition:

This is a type of weapon that consists of shooting arrows from a stringed bow. In Bible times it was used for fighting against enemies and for killing animals for food.

- The bow is made out of wood, bone, metal, or other hard material, such as a deer's antler. It has a curved shape and is strung tightly with a string, cord, or vine. When not in use the bow string would not be attached to both ends of the bow so that the bow was not under the pressure of being bent all the time. When preparing to fight a warrior would bend the bow and attach the string to both ends.
- An arrow is a thin shaft with a sharp, pointed head on one end. In ancient times, the arrows could be made of a variety of materials such as wood, bone, stone, or metal.
- Bows and arrows are commonly used by hunters and warriors.
- The term "arrow" is also sometimes used figuratively in the Bible to refer to enemy attacks or divine judgment.

Bible References:

- Genesis 21:16
- Habakkuk 3:9-10
- Job 29:20-22
- Lamentations 2:4
- Psalms 58:6-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2671, H7198, G51150

Revelation References:

Revelation 6:2

breastplate, breastpiece

Definition:

The term “breastplate” refers to a piece of armor covering the front of the chest to protect a soldier during battle. The term “breastpiece” refers to a special piece of clothing that the Israelite high priest wore over the front part of his chest.

- A “breastplate” used by a soldier could be made of wood, metal, or animal skin. It was made to prevent arrows, spears, or swords from piercing the chest of the soldier.
- The “breastpiece” worn by the Israelite high priest was made of cloth and had valuable gems attached to it. The priest wore this when he was performing his duties of service to God in the temple.
- Other ways to translate the term “breastplate” could include “metal protective chest covering” or “armor piece protecting the chest.”
- The term “breastpiece” could be translated with a word that means “priestly clothing covering the chest” or “priestly garment piece” or “front piece of priest’s clothing.”

(See also: armor, high priest, pierce, priest, temple, warrior)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 5:8
- Exodus 39:14-16
- Isaiah 59:17
- Revelation 9:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2833, H8302, G23820

Revelation References:

Revelation 9:9 Revelation 9:9 Revelation 9:17

bride, bridal

Definition:

A bride is the woman in a marriage ceremony who will marry the bridegroom (the **man**).

Translation Suggestions:

You could use the term that your language uses to refer to the woman who is getting married in a marriage ceremony or if you do not have a term for this in your language you could use a descriptive phrase to describe what a bride is. Depending on the context you could translate the term “bride” with descriptive phrases such as “a woman getting married” or “a woman who is being married” or “the woman getting married.”

(See also: bridegroom, marriage)

Bible References:

- Exodus 22:16
- Isaiah 62:5
- Joel 2:16

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3618, G35650

Revelation References:

Revelation 18:23 Revelation 19:7 Revelation 21:2 Revelation 21:9 Revelation 22:17

bridegroom, groom

Definition:

In a marriage ceremony, the bridegroom, also called the groom, is the **man** who will marry the bride (the **woman**).

Translation Suggestions:

You could use the term that your language uses to refer to the man who is getting married in a marriage ceremony or if you do not have a term for this in your language you could use a descriptive phrase to describe what a bridegroom is. Depending on the context you could translate the terms "bridegroom" and "groom" with descriptive phrases such as "a man getting married" or "a man who is being married" or "the man getting married."

(See also: bride, marriage)

Bible References:

- Isaiah 62:5
- Joel 2:15-16
- John 3:30
- Luke 5:35
- Mark 2:19
- Mark 2:20
- Matthew 9:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2860, G35660

Revelation References:

Revelation 18:23

bronze

Definition:

The term "bronze" refers to a kind of metal that is made from melting together the metals, copper and tin. It has a dark brown color, slightly red.

- Bronze resists water corrosion and is a good conductor of heat.
- In ancient times, bronze was used for making tools, weapons, artwork, altars, cooking pots, and soldiers' armor, among other things.
- Many building materials for the tabernacle and temple were made of bronze.
- Idols of false gods were also often made of bronze metal.
- Bronze objects were made by first melting the bronze metal into a liquid and then pouring it into molds. This process was called "casting."

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: armor, tabernacle, temple)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 7:16
- 1 Samuel 17:37-38
- Daniel 2:44-45
- Exodus 25:3-7
- Revelation 1:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5153, H5154, H5174, H5178, G54700, G54740, G54750

Revelation References:

Revelation 1:15 Revelation 2:18 Revelation 9:20 Revelation 18:12

captive, captivate, captivity, catch

Definition:

The terms “captive” and “captivity” refer to people who have been captured and forced to live somewhere they do not want to live, such as in a foreign country.

- The Israelites from the kingdom of Judah were held captive in the kingdom of Babylonia for 70 years.
- Captives are often required to work for the people or nation that captured them.
- Daniel and Nehemiah were Israelite captives who worked for the Babylonian king.
- The expression to “take captive” is another way of talking about capturing someone.
- The expression, “carry you away captive” could also be translated as “force you to live as captives” or “take you away to another country as prisoners.”
- In a figurative sense, the apostle Paul tells Christians to “take captive” every thought and make it obedient to Christ.
- He also talks about how a person can be “taken captive” by sin, which means he is “controlled by” sin.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, to be “held captive” could also be translated by, “not allowed to be free” or “kept in prison” or “forced to live in a foreign country.”
- The expression, “led captive” or “taken captive” could be translated as “captured” or “imprisoned” or “forced to go to a foreign land.”
- The term “captives” could also be translated as “people who were captured” or “enslaved people.”
- Depending on the context, “captivity” could also be translated as “imprisonment” or “exile” or “forced stay in a foreign country.”

(See also: Babylon, exile, prison, seize)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 10:5
- Isaiah 20:4
- Jeremiah 43:3
- Luke 4:18

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1123, H1473, H1540, H1546, H1547, H7617, H7622, H7628, H7633, H7686, G01610, G01620, G01630, G01640, G22210

Revelation References:

Revelation 13:10

chariot, charioteer

Definition:

In ancient times, chariots were lightweight, two-wheeled carts that were pulled by horses.

- People would sit or stand in chariots, using them for war or travel.
- In war, an army that had chariots had a great advantage of speed and mobility over an army that did not have chariots.
- The ancient Egyptians and Romans were well-known for their use of horses and chariots.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: Egypt, Rome)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 9:22
- 2 Chronicles 18:28-30
- Acts 8:29
- Acts 8:38
- Daniel 11:40-41
- Exodus 14:25
- Genesis 41:43

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:10** So they followed the Israelites onto the path through the sea, but God caused the Egyptians to panic and caused their **chariots** to get stuck.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2021, H4817, H4818, H7393, H7395, H7398, G07160, G44800

Revelation References:

Revelation 9:9 Revelation 18:13

commander

Definition:

The term "commander" refers to a leader of an army who is responsible for leading and commanding a certain group of soldiers.

- A commander could be in charge of a small group of soldiers or a large group, such as a thousand men.
- This term is also used to refer to Yahweh as the commander of angel armies.
- Other ways to translate "commander" could include, "leader" or "captain" or "officer."
- The term to "command" an army could be translated as to "lead" or to "be in charge of."

(See also: command, ruler, centurion)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:4-6
- 2 Chronicles 11:11-12
- Daniel 2:14
- Mark 6:21-22
- Proverbs 6:7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2710, H2951, H1169, H4929, H5057, H6346, H7101, H7262, H7218, H7227, H7229, H7990, H8269, G55060

Revelation References:

Revelation 6:15 Revelation 19:18

corrupt, corrupted, corruption, incorruptibility, depraved

Definition:

The terms “corrupt” and “corruption” refer to a state of affairs in which people have become ruined, immoral, or dishonest.

- The term “corrupt” literally means to be “bent” or “broken” morally.
- A person who is corrupt has turned away from truth and is doing things that are dishonest or immoral.
- To corrupt someone means to influence that person to do dishonest and immoral things.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term to “corrupt” could be translated as to “influence to do evil” or to “cause to be immoral.”
- A corrupt person could be described as a person “who has become immoral” or “who practices evil.”
- This term could also be translated as “bad” or “immoral” or “evil.”
- The term “corruption” could be translated as “the practice of evil” or “evil” or “immorality.”

(See also: evil)

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 20:42-44
- Galatians 6:6-8
- Genesis 6:12
- Matthew 12:33-35
- Psalm 14:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2610, H3891, H4889, H7843, H7844, G08610, G13110, G27040, G53510, G53560

Revelation References:

Revelation 19:2

advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels

Definition:

The terms “counsel” and “advice” have the same meaning and refer to helping someone decide wisely about what to do in a certain situation. A wise “counselor” or “advisor” is someone who gives advice or counsel that will help a person make right choices.

- Kings often have official advisors or counselors to help them decide important matters that affect the people they are ruling.
- Sometimes the advice or counsel that is given is not good. Evil advisors may urge a king to take action or make a decree that will harm him or his people.
- Depending on the context, “advice” or “counsel” could also be translated as “help in deciding” or “warnings” or “exhortations” or “guidance.”
- The action, to “counsel” could be translated as to “advise” or to “make suggestions” or to “exhort.”
- Note that “counsel” is a different word than “council,” which refers to a group of people.

(See also: exhort, Holy Spirit, wise)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1697, H1847, H1875, H1884, H1907, H3272, H3289, H3982, H4156, H4431, H5475, H5779, H6440, H6963, H6098, H7592, H8458, G10110, G10120, G11060, G48230, G48250

Revelation References:

Revelation 3:18

cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox

Definition:

The terms “cow,” “bull,” “heifer,” “ox,” and “cattle” all refer to a kind of large, four-legged bovine animal that eats grass.

- The female of this kind of animal is called a “cow,” the male is a “bull,” and their offspring is a “calf.”
- In the Bible, cattle were among the “clean” animals that the people could eat and use for sacrifice. They were primarily raised for their meat and milk.

A “heifer” is an adult female cow that has not yet given birth to a calf.

An “ox” is a type of cattle that is specifically trained to do agricultural work. The plural of this term is “oxen.” Usually oxen are male and have been castrated.

- Throughout the Bible, oxen were depicted as animals tied together by a yoke to pull a cart or a plow.
- Having oxen work together under a yoke was such a common occurrence in the Bible that the phrase to “be under a yoke” became a metaphor for hard work and labor.
- A bull is also a male type of cattle, but it has not been castrated and has not been trained as a work animal.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: yoke)

Bible References:

- Genesis 15:9-11
- Exodus 24:5-6
- Numbers 19:1-2
- Deuteronomy 21:3-4
- 1 Samuel 1:24-25
- 1 Samuel 15:3
- 1 Samuel 16:2-3
- 1 Kings 1:9
- 2 Chronicles 11:15
- 2 Chronicles 15:10-11
- Matthew 22:4
- Luke 13:15
- Luke 14:5
- Hebrews 9:13

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0047, H0441, H0504, H0929, H1165, H1241, H4399, H4735, H4806, H5695, H5697, H6499, H6510, H6629, H7214, H7716, H7794, H7921, H8377, H8450, G10160, G11510, G23530, G29340, G34470, G34480, G41650, G50220

Revelation References:

Revelation 18:13

create, created, creation, creator

Definition:

The term “create” means to make something or to cause something to be. Whatever is created is called a “creation.” God is called the “Creator” because he caused everything in the entire universe to come into existence.

- When this term is used to refer to God creating the world, it means he made it out of nothing.
- When human beings “create” something, it means they made it out of things that already existed.
- Sometimes “create” is used in a figurative way to describe something abstract, such as creating peace, or creating a pure heart in someone.
- The term “creation” can refer to the very beginning of the world when God first created everything. It can also be used to refer generally to everything that God created. Sometimes the word “creation” refers more specifically to just the people in the world.

Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages may have to directly say that God created the world “out of nothing” to make sure this meaning is clear.
- The phrase, “since the creation of the world” means “since the time when God created the world.”
- A similar phrase, “at the beginning of creation” could be translated as “when God created the world at the beginning of time,” or “when the world was first created.”
- To preach the good news to “all creation” means to preach the good news to “all people everywhere on earth.”
- The phrase “Let all creation rejoice” means “Let everything that God created rejoice.”
- Depending on the context, “create” could be translated as “make” or “cause to be” or “make out of nothing.”
- The term “the Creator” could be translated as “the One who created everything” or “God, who made the whole world.”
- Phrases like “your Creator” could be translated as “God, who created you.”

(See also: God, good news, world)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 11:9-10
- 1 Peter 4:17-19
- Colossians 1:15
- Galatians 6:15
- Genesis 1:1
- Genesis 14:19-20

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3335, H4639, H6213, H6385, H7069, G20410, G26020, G26750, G29360, G29370, G29390, G41600, G54800

Revelation References:

Revelation 3:14 Revelation 4:11 Revelation 4:11 Revelation 5:13 Revelation 8:9 Revelation 10:6 Revelation 13:8 Revelation 17:8

creature, creation

Definition:

The term “creature” refers to all the living beings that God created, both humans and animals.

- The prophet Ezekiel described seeing “living creatures” in his vision of the glory of God. He did not know what they were, so he gave them this very general label.
- Note that the term “creation” has a different meaning since it includes everything God created, both living and nonliving things (such as land, water, and stars). The term “creature” only includes living things.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “creature” could be translated as “being” or “living being” or “created being.”
- The plural, “creatures” could be translated as “all living things” or “people and animals” or “animals” or “human beings.”

(See also: create)

Bible References:

- Daniel 4:10-12
- Ezekiel 1:9
- Joshua 10:28
- Leviticus 11:46-47
- Revelation 19:4

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1320, H1321, H1870, H2119, H2416, H4639, H5315, H5971, H7430, H8318, G22260, G29370, G29380

Revelation References:

Revelation 4:6 Revelation 4:8 Revelation 4:9 Revelation 5:6 Revelation 5:8 Revelation 5:11 Revelation 5:14 Revelation 6:1 Revelation 6:3 Revelation 6:5 Revelation 6:6 Revelation 6:7 Revelation 7:11 Revelation 14:3 Revelation 15:7 Revelation 19:4

crown, crowned

Definition:

A crown is a decorative, circular headpiece worn on the head of rulers such as kings and queens. The term to “crown” means to put a crown on someone’s head; figuratively it means, to “honor.”

- Crowns are usually made of gold or silver, and are embedded with precious gems such as emeralds and rubies.
- A crown was intended to be a symbol of a king’s power and wealth.
- By contrast, the crown made of thorn branches that the Roman soldiers placed on Jesus’ head was meant to mock him and hurt him.
- In ancient times, winners of athletic contests would be awarded a crown made out of olive branches. The apostle Paul mentions this crown in his second letter to Timothy.
- Used figuratively, to “crown” means to honor someone. We honor God by obeying him and praising him to others. This is like putting a crown on him and acknowledging that he is King.
- Paul calls fellow believers his “joy and crown.” In this expression, “crown” is used figuratively to mean that Paul has been greatly blessed and honored by how these believers have remained faithful in serving God.
- When used figuratively, “crown” could be translated as “prize” or “honor” or “reward.”
- The figurative use of to “crown” could be translated as to “honor” or to “decorate.”
- If a person is “crowned” this could be translated as “a crown was put on his head.”
- The expression, “he was crowned with glory and honor” could be translated as “glory and honor were bestowed on him” or “he was given glory and honor” or “he was endowed with glory and honor.”

(See also: glory, king, olive)

Bible References:

- John 19:3
- Lamentations 5:16
- Matthew 27:29
- Philippians 4:1
- Psalms 21:3
- Revelation 3:11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3803, H3804, H5145, H5849, H5850, H6936, G12380, G47350, G47370

Revelation References:

Revelation 2:10 Revelation 3:11 Revelation 4:4 Revelation 4:10 Revelation 6:2 Revelation 9:7 Revelation 12:1 Revelation 12:3 Revelation 14:14 Revelation 19:12

cry, cry out, outcry

Definition:

The terms "cry" or "cry out" usually mean to say something loudly or urgently. Someone can "cry out" in pain, distress, anger, or fear, often with the intent of asking for help.

- The phrase "cry out" can mean to shout or to call out with the intent of asking for help.
- The terms "cry" or "cry out" can also mean to pray.
- This term could also be translated as "exclaim loudly" or "urgently ask for help," depending on the context.
- An expression such as, "I cry out to you" could be translated as "I call to you for help" or "I urgently ask you for help."

(See also: call speak loudly, plead, pray)

Bible References:

- Job 27:9
- Mark 5:5-6
- Mark 6:48-50
- Psalm 22:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1058, H2199, H2201, H6030, H6463, H6670, H6682, H6817, H6818, H6873, H6963, H7121, H7123, H7321, H7440, H7442, H7723, H7737, H7768, H7771, H7775, H8663, G03100, G03490, G08630, G09940, G09950, G19160, G20190, G27990, G28050, G28960, G29050, G29060, G29290, G43770, G54550

Revelation References:

Revelation 5:4 Revelation 5:5 Revelation 6:10 Revelation 7:2 Revelation 7:10 Revelation 10:3 Revelation 10:3 Revelation 12:2 Revelation 14:15 Revelation 18:2 Revelation 18:9 Revelation 18:11 Revelation 18:15 Revelation 18:18 Revelation 18:19 Revelation 18:19 Revelation 19:17 Revelation 21:4

deceive, lie, deception, illusion

Definition:

The term “deceive” means to cause someone to believe something that is not true, often by telling a “lie.” The act of deceiving someone is called “lying,” “deceit,” or “deception.”

- Someone who causes others to believe something false is a “deceiver.” For example, Satan is called a “deceiver.” The evil spirits that he controls are also deceivers.
- To “lie” is to say something that is not true.
- A person, action, or message that is not truthful can be described as “deceptive.”
- The terms “deceit” and “deception” have the same meaning, but there are some small differences in how they are used.
- The descriptive terms “deceitful” and “deceptive” have the same meaning and are used in the same contexts.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “deceive” could include “lie to” or “cause to have a false belief” or “cause someone to think something that is not true.”
- The term “deceived” could also be translated as “caused to think something false” or “lied to” or “tricked” or “fooled” or “misled.”
- “Deceiver” could be translated as “liar” or “one who misleads” or “someone who deceives.”
- Depending on the context, the terms “deception” or “deceit” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “falsehood” or “lying” or “trickery” or “dishonesty.”
- The terms “deceptive” or “deceitful” could be translated as “untruthful” or “misleading” or “lying” to describe a person who speaks or acts in a way that causes other people to believe things that are not true.

(See also: true)

Bible References:

- 1 John 1:8
- 1 Timothy 2:14
- 2 Thessalonians 2:3-4
- Genesis 3:12-13
- Genesis 31:26-28
- Leviticus 19:11-12
- Matthew 27:64
- Micah 6:11

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0898, H2048, H3577, H3584, H3868, H4123, H4820, H4860, H5230, H5377, H5558, H6121, H6231, H6601, H7411, H7423, H7683, H7686, H7952, H8267, H8496, H8582, H8591, H8649, G05380, G05390, G13860, G13870, G13880, G18180, G38840, G41050, G41060, G41080, G54220, G54230

Revelation References:

Revelation 2:20 Revelation 12:9 Revelation 13:14 Revelation 18:23 Revelation 19:20 Revelation 20:3 Revelation 20:8 Revelation 20:10

defile, defiled, desecrate

Definition:

The terms “defile” and “be defiled” refer to becoming polluted or dirty. Something can be defiled in a physical, moral, or ritual sense.

- God warned the Israelites to not defile themselves by eating or touching things that he had declared as “unclean” and “unholy.”
- Certain things such as dead bodies and contagious diseases were declared by God to be unclean and would defile a person if they touched them.
- God commanded the Israelites to avoid sexual sins. These would defile them and make them unacceptable to God.
- There were also certain kinds of bodily processes that defiled a person temporarily until he could become ritually pure again.
- In the New Testament, Jesus taught that sinful thoughts and actions are what truly defile a person.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “defile” can also be translated as “cause to be unclean” or “cause to be unrighteous” or “cause to be ritually unacceptable.”
- To “be defiled” could be translated as “become unclean” or “be caused to be morally unacceptable (to God)” or “become ritually unacceptable.”

(See also: profane, clean)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 23:8
- Exodus 20:24-26
- Genesis 34:27
- Genesis 49:4
- Isaiah 43:27-28
- Leviticus 11:43-45
- Mark 7:14-16
- Matthew 15:10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1351, H1352, H1602, H2490, H2491, H2610, H2930, H2931, G28390, G28400, G33920, G34350

Revelation References:

Revelation 3:4 Revelation 14:4 Revelation 21:27

desert, wilderness

Definition:

A desert, or wilderness, is a dry, barren place where very few plants and trees can grow.

- A desert is a land area with a dry climate and few plants or animals.
- Because of the harsh conditions, very few people can live in the desert, so it is also referred to as "wilderness."
- "Wilderness" conveys the meaning of being remote, desolate and isolated from people.
- This word can also be translated as "deserted place" or "remote place" or "uninhabited place."

Bible References:

- Acts 13:16-18
- Acts 21:38
- Exodus 4:27-28
- Genesis 37:21-22
- John 3:14
- Luke 1:80
- Luke 9:12-14
- Mark 1:3
- Matthew 4:1
- Matthew 11:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0776, H2723, H3293, H3452, H4057, H6160, H6723, H6728, H6921, H8047, H8414, G20470, G20480

Revelation References:

Revelation 12:6 Revelation 12:14 Revelation 17:3

desolate, desolated, desolation, deserted, desolator

Definition:

The terms "desolate" and "desolation," when used to refer to a place or location, refer to the state or condition of being ruined and left fully or partially uninhabited. The term "desolate," when referring to a person or group of people, describes a state or condition of ruin, loneliness, and grief.

- If a field where crops are growing is made desolate, it means that something has destroyed the crops, such as insects or an invading army.
- A "desolate region" refers to an area of land that is partially deserted or abandoned and therefore has few people living there.
- If a city is "made desolate" it means that its buildings and goods have been destroyed or stolen, and its people have been killed or captured. The city becomes "empty" and "ruined." This is similar to the meaning of "devastate" or "devastated," but with more emphasis on the emptiness.
- A "desolate land" or "wilderness" was often where outcasts (such as lepers) and dangerous animals lived.
- Depending on the context, this term, when referring to a city or region, could be translated as "ruined" or "destroyed" or "laid waste" or "abandoned" or "deserted."
- Depending on the context, this term, when referring to a person or people group, could be translated as "lonely and outcast" or "deserted."
- A "desolator" is one who causes desolation.

(See also: desert, devastate, ruin, waste)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 22:19
- Acts 1:20
- Daniel 9:17-19
- Lamentations 3:11
- Luke 11:17

- Matthew 12:25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0490, H0816, H0910, H1565, H2717, H2720, H2721, H2723, H3173, H3341, H3456, H3582, H4875, H4923, H5352, H5800, H7582, H7701, H7722, H8047, H8074, H8076, H8077, G20480, G20490, G20500, G34430

Revelation References:

Revelation 17:16 Revelation 18:17 Revelation 18:19

destroy, destruction, annihilate

Definition:

The term "destroy" means to completely make an end to something, so that it no longer exists.

- The term "destroyer" means "a person who destroys."
- This term is often used in the Old Testament as a general reference to anyone who destroys other people, such as an invading army.
- When God sent the angel to kill all the firstborn males in Egypt, that angel was referred to as "the destroyer of the firstborn." This could be translated as "the one (or angel) who killed the firstborn males."
- In the book of Revelation about the end times, Satan or some other evil spirit is called "the Destroyer." He is the "one who destroys" because his purpose is to destroy and ruin everything God created.

(See also: angel, Egypt, firstborn, Passover)

Bible References:

- Exodus 12:23
- Hebrews 11:28
- Jeremiah 6:26
- Judges 16:24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0006, H0007, H0622, H0398, H1104, H1197, H1820, H1826, H1942, H2000, H2015, H2026, H2040, H2254, H2255, H2717, H2718, H2763, H2764, H3238, H3341, H3381, H3423, H3582, H3615, H3617, H3772, H3807, H4191, H4229, H4591, H4658, H4889, H5218, H5221, H5307, H5362, H5420, H5422, H5428, H5595, H5642, H6365, H6789, H6979, H7665, H7667, H7703, H7722, H7760, H7843, H7921, H8045, H8074, H8077, H8316, H8552, G03550, G03960, G06220, G08530, G13110, G18420, G20490, G25060, G25070, G26470, G26730, G27040, G30890, G36450, G41990, G53510, G53560

Revelation References:

Revelation 11:18 Revelation 11:18

detest, detested, detestable

Definition:

The term “detestable” describes something that should be disliked and rejected. To “detest” something means to strongly dislike it.

- Often the Bible talks about detesting evil. This means to hate evil and reject it.
- God used the word “detestable” to describe the evil practices of those who worshiped false gods.
- The Israelites were commanded to “detest” the sinful, immoral acts that some of the neighboring people groups practiced.
- God called all wrong sexual acts “detestable.”
- Divination, sorcery, and child sacrifice were all “detestable” to God.
- The term “detest” could be translated as “strongly reject” or “hate” or “regard as very evil.”
- The term “detestable” could also be translated as “horribly evil” or “disgusting” or “deserving rejection.”
- When applied to the righteous being “detestable to” the wicked, this could be translated as “considered very undesirable to” or “distasteful to” or “rejected by.”
- God told the Israelites to “detest” certain kinds of animals that God had declared to be “unclean” and not suitable for food. This could also be translated as “strongly dislike” or “reject” or “regard as unacceptable.”

(See also: divination, clean)

Bible References:

- Genesis 43:32
- Jeremiah 7:30
- Leviticus 11:10
- Luke 16:15
- Revelation 17:3-5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1602, H6973, H8130, H8251, H8262, H8263, H8441, H8581, G09460, G09470, G09480, G47670, G34040

Revelation References:

Revelation 18:2

devour

Definition:

The term “devour” means to eat or consume in an aggressive manner.

- Using this word in a figurative sense, Paul warned believers to not devour one another, meaning to not attack or destroy each other with words or actions (Galatians 5:15).
- Also in a figurative sense, the term “devour” is often used with a meaning of “completely destroy” as when talking about nations devouring each other or a fire devouring buildings and people.
- This term could also be translated as “completely consume” or “totally destroy.”

(See also: consume)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 5:8
- Amos 1:10
- Exodus 24:17
- Ezekiel 16:20
- Luke 15:30
- Matthew 23:13-15
- Psalms 21:9

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0398, H0399, H0400, H0402, H1104, H1105, H3216, H3615, H3857, H3898, H7462, H7602, G20680, G26660, G27190, G53150

Revelation References:

Revelation 10:10 Revelation 11:5 Revelation 12:4 Revelation 17:16 Revelation 20:9

drunk, drunkard

Definition:

The term “drunk” means to be intoxicated from drinking too much of an alcoholic beverage.

- A “drunkard” is a person who is often drunk. This kind of person could also be referred to as an “alcoholic.”
- The Bible tells believers not to be drunk with alcoholic drinks, but to be controlled by God’s Holy Spirit.
- The Bible teaches that drunkenness is unwise and influences a person to sin in other ways.
- Other ways to translate “drunk” could include “inebriated” or “intoxicated” or “having too much alcohol” or “filled with fermented drink.”

(See also: wine)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:11-13
- 1 Samuel 25:36
- Jeremiah 13:13
- Luke 7:34
- Luke 21:34
- Proverbs 23:19-21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5433, H7301, H7910, H7937, H7941, H7943, H8354, H8358, G31780, G31820, G31830, G31840, G36300, G36320

Revelation References:

Revelation 17:2 Revelation 17:6

eagle

Definition:

An eagle is a very large, powerful bird of prey that eats small animals such as fish, mice, snakes, and chickens.

- The Bible compares the speed and strength of an army to how fast and suddenly an eagle swoops down to catch its prey.
- Isaiah states that those who trust in the Lord will soar as an eagle does. This is figurative language used to describe the freedom and strength that comes from trusting and obeying God.
- In the book of Daniel, King Nebuchadnezzar’s hair length was compared to the length of an eagle’s feathers, which can be more than 50 centimeters long.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: Daniel, free, Nebuchadnezzar, power)

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 1:23
- Daniel 7:4
- Jeremiah 4:13-15
- Leviticus 11:13-16
- Revelation 4:7

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5403, H5404, G01050

Revelation References:

Revelation 8:13 Revelation 12:14

earth, land

Definition:

The term “earth” refers to the world on which human beings and other living things live. In the Bible, this term is sometimes translated as “land” when used in a general way to refer to the ground or the soil, or when used in a specific way to refer to a particular geographical area, usually a country or nation.

- In the Bible, the term “earth” is often paired with the term “heaven” as a way of indicating the abode of humankind on the earth in contrast with the abode of God in heaven.
- This term is usually translated “land” when paired with the name of a people group to denote the territory belonging to those people, such as “the land of Canaan.”
- The term “earthly” is sometimes used to refer to things that are physical and/or visible in contrast to things that are non-physical and/or invisible.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated by the word or phrase that the local language or nearby national languages use to refer to the planet earth on which we live.

- Depending on the context, “earth” could also be translated as “world” or “land” or “dirt” or “soil.”

- Ways to translate “earthly” could include “physical” or “things of this earth” or “visible.”

(See also: world, heaven)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 1:38-40
- 2 Chronicles 2:11-12
- Daniel 4:35
- Luke 12:51
- Matthew 6:10
- Matthew 11:25
- Zechariah 6:5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0127, H0772, H0776, H0778, H2789, H3007, H3335, H6083, H7494, G10930, G19190, G27090, G28860, G36250, G45780, G55170

Revelation References:

Revelation 1:5 Revelation 1:7 Revelation 3:10 Revelation 5:3 Revelation 5:3 Revelation 5:6 Revelation 5:10 Revelation 5:13 Revelation 5:13 Revelation 6:4 Revelation 6:8 Revelation 6:8 Revelation 6:10 Revelation 6:13 Revelation 6:15 Revelation 7:1 Revelation 7:1 Revelation 7:1 Revelation 7:2 Revelation 7:3 Revelation 8:5 Revelation 8:7 Revelation 8:7 Revelation 8:13 Revelation 9:1 Revelation 9:3 Revelation 9:3 Revelation 9:4 Revelation 10:5 Revelation 10:6 Revelation 11:4 Revelation 11:6 Revelation 11:10 Revelation 11:10 Revelation 11:18 Revelation 12:4 Revelation 12:9 Revelation 12:12 Revelation 12:13 Revelation 12:16 Revelation 12:16 Revelation 13:3 Revelation 13:8 Revelation 13:11 Revelation 13:12 Revelation 13:13 Revelation 13:14 Revelation 13:14 Revelation 14:3 Revelation 14:6 Revelation 14:7 Revelation 14:15 Revelation 14:16 Revelation 14:16 Revelation 14:18 Revelation 14:19 Revelation 14:19 Revelation 16:1 Revelation 16:2 Revelation 16:18 Revelation 16:18 Revelation 17:2 Revelation 17:2 Revelation 17:5 Revelation 17:8 Revelation 17:18 Revelation 18:1 Revelation 18:3 Revelation 18:3 Revelation 18:9 Revelation 18:11 Revelation 18:23 Revelation 18:24 Revelation 19:2 Revelation 19:19 Revelation 20:8 Revelation 20:9 Revelation 20:11 Revelation 21:1 Revelation 21:1 Revelation 21:24

elder

Definition:

The term “elder” refers to people (in the Bible, usually men) who have grown old enough to become mature adults and leaders within a community and to be respected for their wisdom and experience.

- The term “elder” came from the fact that elders were originally older men who, because of their age and experience, had greater wisdom.
- In the Old Testament, the elders helped lead the Israelites in matters of justice and the Law of Moses.
- In the New Testament, Jewish “elders” continued to be leaders in their communities and also were judges for the people.
- In the early Christian churches, Christian “elders” gave spiritual leadership to the local assemblies of believers. Elders in these churches sometimes included young men who were spiritually mature.
- This term could be translated as “respected leaders” or “spiritually mature men leading the church.”

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:1-3
- 1 Timothy 3:1-3
- 1 Timothy 4:14
- Acts 5:19-21
- Acts 14:23
- Mark 11:28
- Matthew 21:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1419, H2205, H7868, G10870, G31870, G42440, G42450, G48500

Revelation References:

Revelation 4:4 Revelation 4:10 Revelation 5:5 Revelation 5:6 Revelation 5:8 Revelation 5:11 Revelation 5:14 Revelation 7:11 Revelation 7:13 Revelation 11:16 Revelation 14:3 Revelation 19:4

endure, endurance

Definition:

The term “endure” means to last a long time or to bear something difficult with patience.

- It also means to stand firm when times of testing come, without giving up.
- The term “endurance” can mean “patience” or “bearing up under a trial” or “persevering when being persecuted.”
- The encouragement to Christians to “endure to the end” is telling them to obey Jesus, even if this causes them to suffer.
- To “endure suffering” can also mean to “experience suffering.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate the term “endure” could include “persevere” or “keep believing” or “continue to do what God wants you to do” or “stand firm.”
- In some contexts, to “endure” could be translated as to “experience” or to “go through.”
- With the meaning of lasting for a long time, the term “endure” could also be translated as “last” or “continue.” The phrase “will not endure” could be translated as “will not last” or “will not continue to survive.”
- Ways to translate “endurance” could include “perseverance” or “continuing to believe” or “remaining faithful.”

(See also: persevere)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 2:11-13
- James 1:3
- James 1:12
- Luke 21:19
- Matthew 13:21
- Revelation 1:9
- Romans 5:3-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0386, H3201, H3557, H5331, H5375, H5975, G04300, G09070, G15260, G20050, G20760, G25940, G33060, G47220, G52780, G52810, G52970, G53420

Revelation References:

Revelation 1:9 Revelation 2:2 Revelation 2:3 Revelation 3:10 Revelation 13:10 Revelation 14:12

exult, exultant

Definition:

The terms "exult" and "exultant" refer to being very happy because of a success or special blessing.

- To "exult" includes a feeling of celebrating something wonderful.
- A person can exult in God's goodness.
- The term "exultant" can also include being arrogant in one's feeling of gladness about success or prosperity.
- The term "exult" could also be translated as "celebrate joyfully" or "praise with great joy."
- Depending on the context, the term "exultant" could be translated as "praising triumphantly" or "celebrating with self praise" or "arrogant."

(See also: arrogant, joy, praise, rejoice)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 2:1
- Isaiah 13:3
- Job 6:10
- Psalm 68:1-3
- Zephaniah 2:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5539, H5947, H5970

Revelation References:

Revelation 19:7

false prophet

Definition:

A false prophet is a person who wrongly claims that his message comes from God.

- The prophecies of false prophets are not usually fulfilled. That is, they do not come true.
- False prophets teach messages that partially or totally contradict what the Bible says.
- This term could also be translated as "person who falsely claims to be God's spokesman" or "someone who falsely claims to speak God's words."
- The New Testament teaches that in the end times there will be many false prophets who will try to deceive people into thinking that they come from God.

(See also: fulfill, prophet, true)

Bible References:

- 1 John 4:1-3
- 2 Peter 2:1
- Acts 13:6-8
- Luke 6:26
- Matthew 7:16
- Matthew 24:23-25

Word Data:

- Strong's: G55780

Revelation References:

Revelation 16:13 Revelation 19:20 Revelation 20:10

famine

Definition:

The term "famine" refers to an extreme lack of food throughout a country or region, usually due to not enough rain.

- Food crops can fail from natural causes such as lack of rain, crop disease, or insects.
- Food shortages can also be caused by people, such as enemies who destroy crops.
- In the Bible, God sometimes caused famine as a way to punish nations when they sinned against him.
- In Amos 8:11 the term "famine" is used figuratively to refer to a time when God punished his people by not speaking to them. This could be translated with the word for "famine" in your language, or with a phrase such as "extreme lack" or "severe deprivation."

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 21:11-12
- Acts 7:11
- Genesis 12:10
- Genesis 45:6
- Jeremiah 11:21-23
- Luke 4:25
- Matthew 24:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3720, H7458, H7459, G30420

Revelation References:

Revelation 6:8 Revelation 18:8

feast, feasting

Definition:

The term “feast” is a very general term that refers to an event where people gather to celebrate something by eating a large meal together. In biblical times, a feast sometimes lasted for several days or more.

- Often there are special kinds of food that are eaten at a certain feast.
- The religious festivals that God commanded the Jews to celebrate usually included having a feast together. For this reason the festivals are often called “feasts.”
- In biblical times, kings and other rich and powerful people often gave feasts to entertain their family or friends.
- In the story about the lost son, the father had a special feast prepared to celebrate the return of his son.
- The term to “feast” could also be translated as to “eat lavishly” or to “celebrate by eating lots of food” or to “eat a special, large meal.”
- Depending on the context, “feast” could be translated as “celebrating together with a large meal” or “a meal with a lot of food” or “a celebration meal.”

(See also: festival, banquet)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 2:12-14
- Genesis 26:30
- Genesis 29:22
- Genesis 40:20
- Jude 1:12-13
- Luke 2:43
- Luke 14:7-9
- Matthew 22:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0398, H2077, H2282, H3899, H3900, H4150, H4797, H4960, H7646, H8057, H8354, G00260, G10620, G11730, G18590, G21650, G49100

Revelation References:

Revelation 19:9 Revelation 19:17

fig

Definition:

A fig is a small, soft, sweet fruit that grows on trees. When ripe, this fruit can be a variety of colors, including brown, yellow, or purple.

- Fig trees can grow 6 meters in height and their large leaves provide pleasant shade. The fruit is about 3-5 centimeters long.
- Adam and Eve used the leaves from fig trees to make clothing for themselves after they had sinned.
- Figs can be eaten raw, cooked, or dried. People also chop them into small pieces and press them into cakes to eat later.
- In Bible times, figs were important as a source of food and income.
- The presence of fruitful fig trees is frequently mentioned in the Bible as a sign of prosperity.
- Several times Jesus used fig trees as an illustration to teach his disciples spiritual truths.

Bible References:

- Habakkuk 3:17
- James 3:12
- Luke 13:7
- Mark 11:14
- Matthew 7:17
- Matthew 21:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1061, H1690, H6291, H8384, G36530, G48080, G48100

Revelation References:

Revelation 6:13 Revelation 6:13

firstborn

Definition:

The term "firstborn" refers to an offspring of people or animals that is born first, before the other offspring are born.

- In the Bible, "firstborn" usually refers to the first male offspring that is born.
- In Bible times, the firstborn son was given a place of prominence and twice as much of his family inheritance as the other sons.
- Often it was the firstborn male of an animal that was sacrificed to God.
- This concept can also be used figuratively. For example, the nation of Israel is called God's firstborn son because God gave it special privileges over other nations.
- Jesus, the Son of God is called God's firstborn because of his importance and authority over everyone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- When "first-born" occurs in the text alone, it could also be translated as "firstborn male" or "firstborn son," since that is what is implied. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)
- Other ways to translate this term could include "the son who was born first" or "the eldest son" or "the number one son."
- When used figuratively to refer to Jesus, this could be translated with a word or phrase that means "the son who has authority over everything" or "the Son who is first in honor."
- Caution: Make sure the translation of this term in reference to Jesus does not imply that he was created.

(See also: inherit, sacrifice, son)

Bible References:

- Colossians 1:15
- Genesis 4:3-5
- Genesis 29:26-27
- Genesis 43:33
- Luke 2:6-7
- Revelation 1:5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1060, H1062, H1067, H1069, G44160, G52070

Revelation References:

Revelation 1:5

firstfruit, firstfruits

Definition:

The term "firstfruits" refers to a portion of the first crop of fruits and vegetables that was reaped during each harvest season.

- The Israelites offered these first fruits to God as a sacrificial offering.
- This term is also used figuratively in the Bible to refer to a firstborn son as being the first fruits of the family. That is, because he was the first son to be born into that family, he was the one who carried on the family name and honor.
- Because Jesus rose from the dead, he is called the "firstfruits" of all believers in him, believers who have died but who will some day come back to life.
- Believers in Jesus are also called the "firstfruits" of all creation, indicating the special privilege and position of those whom Jesus redeemed and called to be his people.

Translation Suggestions:

- The literal use of this term could be translated as "first portion (of crops)" or "first part of the harvest."
- If possible, the figurative uses should be translated literally, to allow for different meanings in different contexts. This will also show the correlation between the literal meaning and the figurative uses.

(See also: firstborn)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 31:4-5
- 2 Thessalonians 2:13
- Exodus 23:16-17
- James 1:18
- Jeremiah 2:3
- Psalms 105:36

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1061, H6529, H7225, G05360

Revelation References:

Revelation 14:4

flood

Definition:

The term “flood” literally refers to a large amount of water that completely covers over the land.

- This term is also used figuratively to refer to an overwhelming amount of something, especially something that happens suddenly.
- In Noah’s time, people had become so evil that God caused a worldwide flood to come over the entire surface of the earth, even covering the mountaintops. Everyone who was not in the boat with Noah drowned. All other floods cover a much smaller land area.
- This term can also be an action, as in “the land was flooded by river water.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate the literal meaning of “flood” could include “an overflowing of water” or “large amounts of water.”
- The figurative comparison “like a flood” could keep the literal term, or a substitute term could be used that refers to something that has a flowing aspect to it, such as a river.
- For the expression “like a flood of water” where water is already mentioned, the word “flood” could be translated as “an overwhelming amount” or “an overflowing.”
- This term can be used as a metaphor, as in “do not let the flood sweep over me,” which means “do not let these overwhelming disasters happen to me” or “do not let me be devastated by disasters” or “don’t let your anger devastate me.” (See: Metaphor)
- The figurative expression “I flood my bed with tears” could be translated as “my tears cover my bed with water like a flood.”

(See also: ark, Noah)

Bible References:

- Daniel 11:10

- Genesis 7:6-7
- Luke 6:46-48
- Matthew 7:24-25
- Matthew 7:26-27
- Matthew 24:37-39

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3999, G26270

Revelation References:

Revelation 12:15

flute, pipe

Definition:

In Bible times, pipes were musical instruments made of bone or wood with holes to allow the sound to come out. A flute was a kind of pipe.

- Most pipes had reeds made out of a kind of thick grass that vibrated as air was blown over it.
- A pipe without any reeds was often called a "flute."
- A shepherd played a pipe to calm his flocks of sheep.
- Pipes and flutes were used for playing sad or joyful music.

(See also: flock, shepherd)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 14:7
- 1 Kings 1:38-40
- Daniel 3:3-5
- Luke 7:31-32
- Matthew 9:23
- Matthew 11:17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4953, H5748, H2485, H2490, G08320, G08340, G08360

Revelation References:

Revelation 18:22

sexual immorality, immorality, immoral, fornication

Definition:

The term “sexual immorality” refers to sexual activity that takes place outside the marriage relationship of a man and a woman. This is against God’s plan. Older English Bible versions call this “fornication.”

- This term can refer to any kind of sexual activity that is against God’s will, including homosexual acts and pornography.
- One type of sexual immorality is adultery, which is sexual activity specifically between a married person and someone who is not that person’s spouse.
- Another type of sexual immorality is “prostitution,” which involves being paid to have sex with someone.
- This term is also used figuratively to refer to Israel’s unfaithfulness to God when they worshiped false gods.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sexual immorality” could be translated as “immorality” as long as the correct meaning of the term is understood.
- Other ways to translate this term could include “wrong sexual acts” or “sex outside of marriage.”
- This term should be translated in a different way from the term “adultery.”
- The translation of this term’s figurative uses should retain the literal term if possible since there is a common comparison in the Bible between unfaithfulness to God and unfaithfulness in the sexual relationship.

(See also: adultery, false god, prostitute, faithful)

Bible References:

- Acts 15:20
- Acts 21:25-26
- Colossians 3:5-8
- Ephesians 5:3
- Genesis 38:24-26
- Hosea 4:13-14
- Matthew 5:31-32
- Matthew 19:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2181, H8457, G16080, G42020, G42030

Revelation References:

Revelation 2:14 Revelation 2:20 Revelation 14:8 Revelation 17:2 Revelation 17:2 Revelation 17:4 Revelation 18:3 Revelation 18:3 Revelation 18:9 Revelation 19:2 Revelation 21:8 Revelation 22:15

foundation, founder, founded

Definition:

Used in this sense, the verb “found” means build, create, or lay a base for. The phrase “founded on” means supported by or based on. A “foundation” is the base of support on which something is built or created.

- The foundation of a house or building must be strong and dependable in order to support the entire structure.
- The term “foundation” can also refer to the beginning of something or to the time when something was first created.
- A “foundation stone” was a stone that was laid as part of the foundation. These stones were tested to make sure they were strong enough to support an entire building.

Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase “before the foundation of the world” could be translated as “before the creation of the world” or “before the time when the world first existed” or “before everything was first created.”
- The term “founded on” could be translated as “securely built on” or “firmly based on.”
- Depending on the context, “foundation” could be translated as “strong base” or “solid support” or “beginning” or “creation.”

(See also: cornerstone, create)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 6:37-38
- 2 Chronicles 3:1-3
- Ezekiel 13:13-14
- Luke 14:29
- Matthew 13:35
- Matthew 25:34

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0134, H0787, H2713, H3245, H3247, H3248, H4143, H4144, H4146, H4328, H4349, H4527, H8356, G23100, G23110, G26020

Revelation References:

Revelation 13:8 Revelation 17:8 Revelation 21:19 Revelation 21:19

fountain, source, spring

Definition:

The terms “fountain” and “spring” usually refer to a large amount of water that flows out naturally from the ground.

- These words are also used figuratively in the Bible to refer to blessings flowing from God or to refer to something that cleanses and purifies.
- In modern times, a fountain is often a manmade object that has water flowing out of it, such as a drinking fountain. Make sure that the translation of this term refers to a natural source of flowing water.
- Compare the translation of this term with how the term “flood” is translated.

(See also: flood)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 2:17
- Genesis 7:11
- Genesis 8:2
- Genesis 24:13
- Genesis 24:42
- James 3:11

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0953, H1530, H1543, H3222, H4002, H4161, H4456, H4599, H4726, H5033, H5869, H5927, H6524, H6779, H8444, H8666, G02420, G40770

Revelation References:

Revelation 7:17 Revelation 14:7 Revelation 16:4 Revelation 21:6

frankincense

Definition:

Frankincense is a fragrant spice made from tree resin. It is used to make perfumes and incense.

- In Bible times, frankincense was an important spice used to prepare dead bodies for burial.
- This spice is also valuable for its healing and calming qualities.
- When learned men came from an eastern country to visit baby Jesus in Bethlehem, frankincense was one of the three gifts they brought him.

(See also: Bethlehem, learned men)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 9:28-29
- Exodus 30:34-36
- Matthew 2:11-12
- Numbers 5:15

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3828, G30300

Revelation References:

Revelation 18:13

free, freed, freedom, freeman, freewill, liberty

Definition:

The terms “free” or “freedom” refer to not being in slavery, or any other kind of bondage. Another word for “freedom” is “liberty.”

- The expression to “set someone free” or to “free someone” means to provide a way for someone to no longer be in slavery or captivity.
- In the Bible, these terms are often used figuratively to refer to how a believer in Jesus is no longer under the power of sin.
- Having “liberty” or “freedom” can also refer to no longer being required to obey the Law of Moses, but instead being free to live by the teachings and guidance of the Holy Spirit.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “free” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “not bound” or “not enslaved” or “not in slavery” or “not in bondage.”
- The term “freedom” or “liberty” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “the state of being free” or “the condition of not being a slave” or “not being bound.”
- The expression to “set free” could be translated as to “cause to be free” or to “rescue from slavery” or to “release from bondage.”
- A person who has been “set free” has been “released” or “taken out of” bondage or slavery.

(See also: bind, enslave, servant)

Bible References:

- Galatians 4:26
- Galatians 5:1
- Isaiah 61:1
- Leviticus 25:10
- Romans 6:18

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1865, H2600, H2666, H2668, H2670, H3318, H4800, H5068, H5069, H5071, H5337, H5352, H5355, H5425, H5674, H5800, H6299, H6362, H7342, H7971, G04250, G05250, G05580, G06290, G06300, G08590, G13440, G14320, G16570, G16580, G16590, G18490, G30890, G39550, G45060, G54830

Revelation References:

Revelation 6:15 Revelation 13:16 Revelation 19:18 Revelation 20:3 Revelation 21:6 Revelation 22:17

fruit, fruitful, unfruitful

Definition:

The term “fruit” refers to the part of a plant that can be eaten. Something that is “fruitful” produces a lot of fruit. Something that is “unfruitful” does not produce fruit.

- In general, the expression “fruit of” refers to anything that comes from or that is produced by something else. For example, the phrase “the fruit of every tree” refers to the fruit that comes from these trees.
- The expression “fruit of the land” refers generally to everything that the land produces for people to eat. This includes not only fruits such as grapes or dates, but also vegetables, nuts, and grains.

Translation Suggestions:

- When the term “fruit” refers to what a specific plant produces, the specific term for the fruit of that plant can be used, otherwise, use a general word for the edible things that plants produce, if possible. In many languages it may be more natural to use the plural “fruits” whenever it refers to more than one fruit.
- When used literally, the term “fruitful” could be translated as “producing much fruit.”
- The expression “fruit of the land” could also be translated as “food that the land produces” or “food crops that are growing in that region.”
- When used literally, the expression “will be more fruitful” could also be translated as “will produce more fruit.”

(See also: descendant, grain, grape, Holy Spirit, vine, womb)

Bible References:

- Genesis 1:11
- Matthew 7:17

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0004, H1061, H1063, H1069, H2233, H2981, H3581, H3759, H3899, H3978, H4022, H5108, H6509, H6529, H7019, H8393, H8570, G10810, G25900, G25920, G25930, G37030, G50520, G53520

Revelation References:

Revelation 18:14 Revelation 22:2 Revelation 22:2

furnace

Definition:

A furnace was a very large oven used for heating objects to a high temperature.

- In ancient times, most furnaces were used for melting metals to make objects such as cooking pots, jewelry, weapons, and idols.
- Furnaces were also used in the making of clay pottery.
- Sometimes a furnace is referred to figuratively to explain that something is very hot.

(See also: false god, image)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 8:51
- Genesis 19:28
- Proverbs 17:3
- Psalms 21:9
- Revelation 9:2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0861, H3536, H3564, H5948, H8574, G25750

Revelation References:

Revelation 1:15 Revelation 9:2

gate, gate bar, gatekeeper, gatepost, gateway

Definition:

The term "gate" refers to an access point in a fence, wall, or other kind of barrier that surrounds a house, property, city, etc.

- A city gate could be opened to allow people, animals, and cargo to travel in and out of the city.
- To protect the city, its walls and gates were thick and strong. Gates were closed and locked with a metal or wooden bar to prevent enemy soldiers from entering the city.
- A "bar" for a gate refers to a wood or metal bar that can be moved into place so that the doors of the gate cannot be opened from the outside.
- In Bible times, a city gate was often the social center for that town or city. It was a place where news of current events was exchanged between people, where business transactions occurred, and where civil judgments were made.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate "gate" could be "door" or "wall opening" or "barrier" or "entranceway."
- The phrase "bars of the gate" could be translated as "gate bolts" or "wooden beams to lock the gate" or "metal locking rods of the gate."

Bible References:

- Acts 9:24
- Acts 10:18
- Deuteronomy 21:18-19
- Genesis 19:1
- Genesis 24:60
- Matthew 7:13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1817, H5592, H6607, H8179, G23740, G44390, G44400

Revelation References:

Revelation 21:12 Revelation 21:12 Revelation 21:15 Revelation 21:21 Revelation 21:21 Revelation 21:25 Revelation 22:14

gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt around

Definition:

The term “gird” means to fasten something around something else. It often refers to using a belt or sash around the waist to keep a robe or tunic in place.

- The common biblical phrase, “gird up the loins” refers to tucking the bottom of a garment into a belt to allow a person to move more freely, usually to do work.
- This phrase can also mean “get ready to work” or to be prepared to do something difficult.
- The expression “gird up the loins” could be translated using an expression in the target language that has the same meaning. Or it could be translated figuratively as “prepare yourself for action” or “get yourself ready.”
- The term “girded with” could be translated as “encircled by” or “wrapped with” or “belted with.”

(See also: loins)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 1:13
- Job 38:3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0640, H0247, H2290, H2296, H8151, G03280, G12410, G40240

Revelation References:

Revelation 1:13 Revelation 15:6

gold, golden

Definition:

Gold is a yellow, high quality metal that was used for making jewelry and religious objects. It was the most valuable metal in ancient times.

- In Bible times, many different kinds of objects were made out of solid gold or were covered with a thin layer of gold.
- These objects included earrings and other jewelry, and idols, altars, and other objects used in the tabernacle or temple, such as the ark of the covenant.
- In Old Testament times, gold was used as a means of exchange in buying and selling. It was weighed on a scale to determine its value.
- Later on, gold and other metals such as silver were used to make coins to use in buying and selling
- When referring to something that is not solid gold, but only has a thin covering of gold, the term “golden” or “gold-covered” or “gold-overlaid” could also be used.
- Sometimes an object is described as “gold-colored,” which means it has the yellow color of gold, but may not actually be made of gold.

(See also: altar, ark of the covenant, false god, silver, tabernacle, temple)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 1:7
- 1 Timothy 2:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 1:15
- Acts 3:6
- Daniel 2:32

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1220, H1722, H2091, H2742, H3800, H5458, H6884, H6885, G55520, G55530, G55540, G55570

Revelation References:

Revelation 1:12 Revelation 1:13 Revelation 1:20 Revelation 2:1 Revelation 3:18 Revelation 4:4 Revelation 5:8 Revelation 8:3 Revelation 8:3 Revelation 9:7 Revelation 9:13 Revelation 9:20 Revelation 14:14 Revelation 15:6 Revelation 15:7 Revelation 17:4 Revelation 17:4 Revelation 18:12 Revelation 18:16 Revelation 21:15 Revelation 21:18 Revelation 21:21

grape, grapevine

Definition:

A grape is a small, round, smooth-skinned berry fruit that grows in clusters on vines. The juice of grapes is used in making wine.

- There are different colors of grapes, such as light green, purple, or red.
- Individual grapes can be around one to three centimeters in size.
- People grow grapes in gardens called vineyards. These normally consist of long rows of vines.
- Grapes were a very important food during Bible times and having vineyards was a sign of wealth.
- In order to keep grapes from rotting, people would often dry them. Dried grapes are called "raisins" and they were used to make raisin cakes.
- Jesus told a parable about a grape vineyard to teach his disciples about God's kingdom.

(See also: vine, vineyard, wine)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 23:24
- Hosea 9:10
- Job 15:33
- Luke 6:43-44
- Matthew 7:15-17
- Matthew 21:33

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0811, H0891, H1154, H1155, H1210, H3196, H5955, H6025, H6528, G02880, G47180

Revelation References:

Revelation 14:18

hail, hailstone, hailstorm

Definition:

This term usually refers to lumps of frozen water that fall from the sky. Although spelled the same way in English, a different word, "hail" is used in greeting someone and can mean, "hello" or "greetings to you."

- Hail that comes down from the sky is in the form of balls or chunks of ice called "hailstones."
- Usually hailstones are small (only a few centimeters wide), but sometimes there are hailstones that are as big as 20 centimeters wide and that weigh over a kilogram.
- The book of Revelation in the New Testament describes enormous hailstones weighing 50 kilograms that God will cause to fall on earth when he judges people for their wickedness in the end times.
- The word "hail" that is a formal greeting in older English literally means "rejoice" and could be translated as "Greetings!" or "Hello!"

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

Bible References:

- Matthew 27:29
- Matthew 28:8-10
- Psalms 78:48
- Psalms 148:8
- Revelation 8:7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0068, H0417, H1258, H1259, G54630, G54640

Revelation References:

Revelation 8:7 Revelation 16:21 Revelation 16:21

hard, harder

Definition:

The term “hard” generally refers to something that is difficult, challenging, or requires great diligence and persistence to be done.

- When used as a modifier, its meaning is similar to “great effort.”

Translation Suggestions

- The term “hard” could also be translated as “difficult” or “persistent” or “diligently” or “challenging,” depending on the context.
- In expressions such as “work hard” or “try hard,” the term “hard” could be translated as “with perseverance” or “diligently.”
- The expression “press hard against” could also be translated as “shove with force” or “push strongly against.”
- To “oppress people with hard labor” could be translated as “force people to work so hard that they suffer” or “cause people to suffer by forcing them to do very difficult work.”
- Depending on context the term “harder” could also be translated as “more difficult” or “more diligently”
- In some contexts “hard” could be translated as “heavy” or “heavily.”
- A different kind of “hard labor” is experienced by a woman who is about to deliver a baby.

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2388, H3515, H6381, H7185, H7186, G03180, G14190, G14220, G14230, G25320, G28730, G44560, G44570, G46410, G46420, G46430, G46450, G49120

Revelation References:

Revelation 2:2

harp, harpist

Definition:

A harp is a stringed musical instrument, that usually consists of a large open frame with vertical strings.

- In Bible times, fir wood was used to make harps and other musical instruments.
- Harps were often held in the hands and played while walking.
- In many places in the Bible, harps are mentioned as instruments that were used to praise and worship God.
- David wrote several psalms which were set to harp music.
- He also played a harp for King Saul, to soothe the king’s troubled spirit.

(See also: David, fir, psalm, Saul (OT))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 15:16-18
- Amos 5:23-24
- Daniel 3:5
- Psalm 33:1-3
- Revelation 5:8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3658, H5035, H5059, H7030, G27880, G27890, G27900

Revelation References:

Revelation 5:8 Revelation 14:2 Revelation 15:2 Revelation 18:22

harvest, reap

Definition:

The term “harvest” refers to the gather the ripe fruits, vegetables, seeds, or grains from the plants on which they were growing. The term “reap” means to harvest crops.

- The harvest time normally happens at the end of a growing season.
- The Israelites held a “Festival of Harvest” or “Festival of Ingathering” to celebrate the reaping of the food crops. God commanded them to offer the first fruits of these crops as a sacrifice to him.
- In biblical times, reapers usually harvested crops by hand, either pulling up the plants or cutting them with a sharp cutting tool.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate the concept with the word that is commonly used in the language to refer to the harvesting of crops.
- The event of harvesting could be translated as “time of gathering in” or “crop gathering time” or “fruit picking time.”
- The verb to “harvest” could be translated as to “gather in” or to “pick up” or to “collect.”

(See also: firstfruits, festival, good news)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 9:9-11
- 2 Samuel 21:7-9
- Galatians 6:9-10
- Isaiah 17:11
- James 5:7-8
- Leviticus 19:9
- Matthew 9:38
- Ruth 1:22
- Galatians 6:9-10
- Matthew 6:25-26
- Matthew 13:30
- Matthew 13:36-39
- Matthew 25:24

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2758, H4395, H4672 H7105, H7114, H7938, G02700, G23250, G23260, G23270

Revelation References:

Revelation 14:15 Revelation 14:15 Revelation 14:15 Revelation 14:16

holy city

Definition:

In the Bible, the term "holy city" refers to the city of Jerusalem.

- This term is used to refer to the ancient city of Jerusalem as well as the new, heavenly Jerusalem where God will live and reign among his people.
- This term can be translated by combining the terms for "holy" and "city" that have been used in the rest of the translation.

(See also: heaven, holy, Jerusalem)

Bible References:

- Matthew 4:5-6
- Matthew 27:51-53
- Revelation 21:1-2
- Revelation 21:9-10
- Revelation 22:18-19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5892, H6944, G00400, G41720

Revelation References:

Revelation 11:2 Revelation 21:2 Revelation 21:10 Revelation 22:19

honey, honeycomb

Definition:

"Honey" is the sweet, sticky, edible substance that honeybees make out of flower nectar. Honeycomb is the waxy frame where the bees store honey.

- Depending on the kind, honey can be yellowish or brownish in color.
- Honey can be found in the wild, such as in the hollow of a tree, or wherever bees make a nest. People also raise bees in hives in order to produce honey to eat or sell, but probably the honey mentioned in the Bible was wild honey.
- Three people that the Bible specifically mentions as eating wild honey were Jonathan, Samson, and John the Baptist.
- This term is often used figuratively to describe something that is sweet or very pleasurable. For example, God's words and decrees are said to be "sweeter than honey." (See also: Simile, Metaphor)
- Sometimes a person's words are described as seeming sweet like honey, but instead result in deceiving and harming others.

(See also: John (the Baptist), Jonathan, Philistines, Samson)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 14:1-3
- Deuteronomy 6:3
- Exodus 13:3-5
- Joshua 5:6
- Proverbs 5:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1706, H3293, H3295, H5317, H6688, G31920

Revelation References:

Revelation 10:10

horn, horned, shofar

Definition:

Horns are permanent, hard, pointed growths on the heads of many types of animals, including cattle, sheep, goats, and deer.

- The horn of a ram (male sheep) was made into a musical instrument called a “ram’s horn” or “shofar,” which was blown for special events such as religious festivals or to call men for battle.
- This term should be translated with a word that is different from the word that refers to a trumpet, which is usually made of metal.
- God told the Israelites to make a horn-shaped projection on each of the four corners of the incense and brazen altars. Although these projections were called “horns,” they were not actually animal horns.
- The term “horn” was sometimes used to refer to a “flask” that was shaped like a horn and was used for holding water or oil. A flask of oil was used for anointing a king, as Samuel did with David.

(See also: authority, cow, deer, goat, power royal, sheep, trumpet)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 15:27-28
- 1 Kings 1:39
- 2 Samuel 22:3
- Jeremiah 17:1
- Psalms 22:21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3104, H7160, H7161, H7162, H7782, G27680

Revelation References:

Revelation 5:6 Revelation 9:13 Revelation 12:3 Revelation 13:11 Revelation 17:3 Revelation 17:7 Revelation 17:12 Revelation 17:16

horse, warhorse, horseback, stallion, steed, mare

Definition:

A horse is a large, four-legged animal that in Bible times was mostly used for war and for transporting people. A stallion is a male horse and a mare is a female horse. "Steed" is a poetic word referring to a horse that is powerful or fast.

- Some horses were used to pull carts or chariots, while others were used to carry individual riders.
- In the Bible, horses were considered to be valuable possessions and a measure of wealth, mainly because of their use in war. For example, part of King Solomon’s great wealth was the thousands of horses and chariots that he had.
- Animals that are similar to the horse are the donkey and the mule.
- Horses often wear a bit and bridle on their heads so they can be guided.

(See also: chariot, donkey, Solomon)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:4
- 2 Kings 2:11
- Exodus 14:23-25
- Ezekiel 23:5-7
- Zechariah 6:8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0047, H5483, H5484, H6571, H7409, G24620

Revelation References:

Revelation 6:2 Revelation 6:4 Revelation 6:5 Revelation 6:8 Revelation 9:7 Revelation 9:9 Revelation 9:17 Revelation 9:17 Revelation 14:20 Revelation 18:13 Revelation 19:11 Revelation 19:14 Revelation 19:18 Revelation 19:19 Revelation 19:21

image, carved image, cast metal image, figure, carved figure, statue

Definition:

These terms are all used to refer to idols that have been made for worshiping a false god. In the context of worshiping idols, the term "image" is a shortened form of "carved image."

- A "carved image" or "carved figure" is a wooden object that has been made to look like an animal, person, or thing.
- A "cast metal figure" is an object or statue created by melting metal and pouring it into a mold that is in the shape of an object, animal, or person.
- These wooden and metal objects were used in the worship of false gods.
- The term "image" when referring to an idol could either refer to a wooden or metal idol.

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to an idol, the term "image" could also be translated as "statue" or "engraved idol" or "carved religious object."
- It may be more clear in some languages to always use a descriptive word with this term, such as "carved image" or "cast metal figure," even in places where only the term "image" or "figure" is in the original text.
- Make sure it is clear that this term is different than the term used to refer to being in the image of God.

(See also: false god, God, false god, image of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 14:9-10
- Acts 7:43
- Isaiah 21:8-9
- Matthew 22:21
- Romans 1:23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0457, H1544, H2553, H4541, H4676, H4853, H4906, H5257, H5262, H5566, H6091, H6456, H6459, H6754, H6755, H6816, H8403, H8544, H8655, G15040, G51790

Revelation References:

Revelation 13:14 Revelation 13:15 Revelation 13:15 Revelation 13:15 Revelation 14:11 Revelation 15:2 Revelation 16:2 Revelation 19:20 Revelation 20:4

incense

Definition:

The term “incense” refers to a mixture of fragrant spices that is burned to produce smoke that has a pleasant smell.

- God told the Israelites to burn incense as an offering to him.
- The incense had to be made by mixing equal amounts of five specific spices exactly as God directed. This was a sacred incense, so they were not allowed to use it for any other purpose.
- The “altar of incense” was a special altar that was only used for burning incense.
- The incense was offered at least four times a day, at each hour of prayer. It was also offered every time a burnt offering was made.
- The burning of incense represents prayer and worship rising up to God from his people.
- Other ways to translate “incense” could include “fragrant spices” or “good-smelling plants.”

(See also: altar of incense, burnt offering, frankincense)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 3:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 13:10-11
- 2 Kings 14:4
- Exodus 25:3-7
- Luke 1:10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2553, H3828, H4196, H4289, H5208, H6988, H6999, H7002, H7004, H7381, G23680, G23690, G23700, G23790, G30310

Revelation References:

Revelation 5:8 Revelation 8:3 Revelation 8:4 Revelation 18:13

joy, joyful, rejoice, glad

Definition:

joy

The term “joy” refers to a feeling of delight or deep satisfaction. The related term “joyful” describes a person who feels very glad and is full of deep happiness.

- A person feels joy when he has a deep sense that what he is experiencing is very good.
- God is the one who gives true joy to people.
- Having joy does not depend on pleasant circumstances. God can give people joy even when very difficult things are happening in their lives.
- Sometimes places are described as joyful, such as houses or cities. This means that the people who live there are joyful.

rejoice

The term “rejoice” means to be full of joy and gladness.

- This term often refers to being very happy about the good things that God has done.
- It could be translated as “be very happy” or “be very glad” or “be full of joy.”
- When Mary said “my soul rejoices in God my Savior,” she meant “God my Savior has made me very happy” or “I feel so joyful because of what God my Savior has done for me.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “joy” could also be translated as “gladness” or “delight” or “great happiness.”
- The phrase, “be joyful” could be translated as “rejoice” or “be very glad” or it could be translated “be very happy in God’s goodness.”
- A person who is joyful could be described as “very happy” or “delighted” or “deeply glad.”
- A phrase such as “make a joyful shout” could be translated as “shout in a way that shows you are very happy.”

- A “joyful city” or “joyful house” could be translated as “city where joyful people live” or “house full of joyful people” or “city whose people are very happy.” (See: metonymy)

Bible References:

- Nehemiah 8:10
- Psalm 48:2
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Matthew 2:9-10
- Luke 15:7
- Luke 19:37-38
- John 3:29
- Acts 16:32-34
- Romans 5:1-2
- Romans 15:30-32
- Galatians 5:23
- Philippians 4:10-13
- 1 Thessalonians 1:6-7
- 1 Thessalonians 5:16
- Philemon 1:4-7
- James 1:2
- 3 John 1:1-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **33:7** “The rocky ground is a person who hears God’s word and accepts it with **joy**.”
- **34:4** “The kingdom of God is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field.. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again. He was so filled with **joy**, that he went and sold everything he had and used the money to buy that field.”
- **41:7** The women were full of fear and great **joy**. They ran to tell the disciples the good news.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1523, H1524, H1525, H2302, H2304, H2305, H2654, H2898, H4885, H5937, H5947, H5965, H5970, H6342, H6670, H7440, H7442, H7444, H7445, H7797, H7832, H8055, H8056, H8057, H8342, H8643, G00200, G00210, G21650, G21670, G27440, G46400, G47960, G49130, G54630, G54790

Revelation References:

Revelation 11:10 Revelation 19:7

king, kingship

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “king” refers to a man who is the supreme ruler of a particular group of people or a particular region of land (or both).

- In biblical times, a king was usually chosen to rule on the basis of family relation to the previous king(s). When a king died, usually his oldest son became the next king.
- The Bible often refers to God is as a king who rules over the entire universe (in a general sense) and over his people (in a specific sense).
- The New Testament refers to Jesus as a king in various ways, including: “king of the Jews;” “king of Israel;” and “king of kings.”
- Depending on the context, the term “king” might also be translated as “supreme chief” or “sovereign ruler.”
- The phrase “king of kings” might be translated as “king who rules over all other kings” or “supreme ruler who has authority over all other rulers.”

(See also: authority, Herod Antipas, kingdom, kingdom of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 6:15-16
- 2 Kings 5:18
- 2 Samuel 5:3
- Acts 7:9-10
- Acts 13:22
- John 1:49-51
- Luke 1:5
- Luke 22:24-25
- Matthew 5:35
- Matthew 14:9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:6** One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly.
- **16:1** The Israelites had no **king**, so everyone did what they thought was right for them.
- **16:18** Finally, the people asked God for a **king** like all the other nations had.
- **17:5** Eventually, Saul died in battle, and David became **king** of Israel. He was a good **king**, and the people loved him.
- **21:6** God’s prophets also said that the Messiah would be a prophet, a priest, and a **king**.
- **48:14** David was the **king** of Israel, but Jesus is the **king** of the entire universe!

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4427, H4428, H4430, G09350, G09360

Revelation References:

Revelation 1:5 Revelation 5:10 Revelation 6:15 Revelation 9:11 Revelation 10:11 Revelation 15:3 Revelation 16:12 Revelation 16:14 Revelation 17:2 Revelation 17:9 Revelation 17:12 Revelation 17:12 Revelation 17:14 Revelation 17:14 Revelation 17:18 Revelation 18:3 Revelation 18:9 Revelation 19:16 Revelation 19:16 Revelation 19:18 Revelation 19:19 Revelation 21:24

kingdom

Definition:

A kingdom is a group of people ruled by a king. It also refers to the realm or political regions over which a king or other ruler has control and authority.

- A kingdom can be of any geographical size. A king might govern a nation or country or only one city.
- The term "kingdom" can also refer to a spiritual reign or authority, as in the term "kingdom of God."
- God is the ruler of all creation, but the term "kingdom of God" especially refers to his reign and authority over the people who have believed in Jesus and who have submitted to his authority.
- The Bible also talks about Satan having a "kingdom" in which he temporarily rules over many things on this earth. His kingdom is evil and is referred to as "darkness."

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a physical region that is ruled over by a king, the term "kingdom" could be translated as "country (ruled by a king)" or "king's territory" or "region ruled by a king."
- In a spiritual sense, "kingdom" could be translated as "ruling" or "reigning" or "controlling" or "governing."
- One way to translate "kingdom of priests" might be "spiritual priests who are ruled by God."
- The phrase "kingdom of light" could be translated as "God's reign that is good like light" or "when God, who is light, rules people" or "the light and goodness of God's kingdom." It is best to keep the word "light" in this expression since that is a very important term in the Bible.
- Note that the term "kingdom" is different from an empire, in which an emperor rules over several countries.

(See also: authority, king, kingdom of God, kingdom of Israel, Judah, Judah, priest)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:12
- 2 Timothy 4:17-18
- Colossians 1:13-14
- John 18:36
- Mark 3:24
- Matthew 4:7-9
- Matthew 13:19
- Matthew 16:28
- Revelation 1:9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:2** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, "If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a **kingdom** of priests, and a holy nation."
- **18:4** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon's unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel in two **kingdoms** after Solomon's death.
- **18:7** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel rebelled against Rehoboam. Only two tribes remained faithful to him. These two tribes became the **kingdom** of Judah.
- **18:8** The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named Jeroboam to be their king. They set up their **kingdom** in the northern part of the land and were called the **kingdom** of Israel.
- **21:8** A king is someone who rules over a **kingdom** and judges the people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4410, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4474, H4475, G09320

Revelation References:

Revelation 11:15 Revelation 16:10 Revelation 17:12 Revelation 17:17 Revelation 17:18

know, knew, knowledge, known, unknown, distinguish

Definition:

Used in this sense the term “know” and “knowledge” mean generally to understand something. It can also mean to be aware of a fact. The expression “to make known” means to tell information.

- The term “knowledge” refers to information that people know. It can apply to knowing physical concepts or abstract concepts.
- To “know about” God means to understand facts about him because of what he has revealed to us.
- To “know the Law” means to be aware of what God has commanded or to understand what God has instructed in the laws he gave to Moses.
- Sometimes “knowledge” is used as a synonym for “wisdom,” which includes living in a way that is pleasing to God.
- The “knowledge of God” is sometimes used as a synonym for the “fear of Yahweh.”

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “know” could include “understand” or “be familiar with” or “be aware of” or “be acquainted with.”
- In the context of understanding the difference between two things, the term is usually translated as “distinguish.” When used in this way, the term is often followed by the preposition “between.”
- The term “make known” could be translated as “cause people to know” or “reveal” or “tell about” or “explain.”
- To “know about” something could be translated as “be aware of” or “be familiar with.”
- The expression “know how to” means to understand the process or method of getting something done. It could also be translated as “be able to” or “have the skill to.”
- The term “knowledge” could also be translated as “what is known” or “wisdom” or “understanding,” depending on the context.
- Some languages have two different words for “know,” one for knowing facts and one for knowing a person and having a relationship with that person. The word for knowing facts should be used when translating this sense of the word “know.”

(See also: know-relationship, law, reveal, understand, wise)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1844, H1847, H3045, H3046, H3318, G00500, G00560, G03190, G10970, G11070, G11080, G11100, G14920, G19210, G19220, G19870, G42670

Revelation References:

Revelation 2:2 Revelation 2:9 Revelation 2:13 Revelation 2:17 Revelation 2:19 Revelation 2:23 Revelation 2:24 Revelation 3:1 Revelation 3:3 Revelation 3:8 Revelation 3:9 Revelation 3:15 Revelation 7:14 Revelation 12:12 Revelation 19:12

labor, labors, labored, laboring, laborer, work, hard work

Definition:

The term “labor” refers to doing hard work of any kind.

- In general, labor is any task which uses energy. It is often implied that the task is difficult.
- A laborer is a person who does any type of labor.
- Ways to translate “labor” could include “work” or “toil” or “hard work” or “difficult work” or to “work hard.”

(See also: hard)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3021, H4399, H4522, H4639, H5647, H5656, H5998, H6001, H6089, G20380, G20400, G20410, G28720, G28730

Revelation References:

Revelation 2:2 Revelation 14:13 Revelation 18:17

lamp

Definition:

The term “lamp” generally refers to something that produces light. The lamps used in Bible times were usually oil lamps.

The type of lamp that was used in Bible times is a small container with a fuel source, usually oil, that gives light when it burns.

- An ordinary oil lamp usually consisted of a common piece of pottery filled with olive oil, with a wick placed in the oil to burn.
- For some lamps, the pot or jar was oval, with one end pinched close together to hold the wick.
- An oil lamp could be carried or placed on a stand so that its light could fill a room or house.
- In scripture, lamps are used in several figurative ways as symbols of light and life.

(See also: lampstand, life, light)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 11:36
- Exodus 25:3-7
- Luke 8:16-18
- Matthew 5:15
- Matthew 6:22
- Matthew 25:3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3940, H3974, H4501, H5215, H5216, G29850, G30880

Revelation References:

Revelation 4:5 Revelation 18:23 Revelation 21:23 Revelation 22:5

lampstand

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “lampstand” refers to a structure on which a lamp is placed in order to provide light to a room.

- The lampstand would be tall enough so that the light of the lamp could shine throughout the room.
- The lampstand could be made of wood or metal and could hold one or more lamps.
- Ordinary lamps were made of clay, and lamps for special purposes, such as for the temple, were made of metal (such as bronze, silver, or gold.)
- The lamps were in the shape of a bowl with a raised lip on one side that held a wick. The lamps were filled with olive oil that soaked the wick and burned when the wick was lighted.
- In the Jerusalem temple there was a special gold lampstand that had seven branches for holding seven lamps.

Translation Suggestions

- This term could be also translated as “lamp pedestal” or “structure for holding a lamp” or “lamp holder.”
- For the temple lampstand, this could be translated as “seven-lamp lampstand” or “gold pedestal with seven lamps.”
- It would also be helpful in a translation to include pictures of a simple lampstand and a seven-branch lampstand in the relevant Bible passages.

(See also: bronze, gold, lamp, light, silver, temple)

Bible References:

- Daniel 5:5-6
- Exodus 37:17
- Mark 4:21-23
- Matthew 5:15-16
- Revelation 1:12-13
- Revelation 1:20

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4501, G30870

Revelation References:

Revelation 1:12 Revelation 1:13 Revelation 1:20 Revelation 1:20 Revelation 2:1 Revelation 2:5 Revelation 11:4

leopard

Definition:

A leopard is a large, cat-like, wild animal that is brown with black spots.

- A leopard is a kind of animal which catches other animals and eats them.
- In the Bible, the suddenness of disaster is compared to a leopard, which pounces suddenly on its prey.
- The prophet Daniel and the apostle John tell about visions in which they saw a beast that looked like a leopard.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: beast, Daniel, prey, vision)

Bible References:

- Daniel 7:6
- Hosea 13:7
- Revelation 13:1-2
- Song of Songs 4:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5245, H5246

Revelation References:

Revelation 13:2

lion, lioness

Definition:

A lion is a large, cat-like, that has animal, with powerful teeth and claws for killing and tearing apart its prey.

- Lions have powerful bodies and great speed to catch their prey. Their fur is short and golden-brown.
- Male lions have a mane of hair that encircles their heads.
- Lions kill other animals to eat them and can be dangerous to human beings.
- When King David was a boy, he killed lions that tried to attack the sheep he was caring for.
- Samson also killed a lion, with his bare hands.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: David, leopard, Samson, sheep)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:22-23
- 1 Kings 7:29
- Proverbs 19:12
- Psalms 17:12
- Revelation 5:5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0738, H0739, H0744, H3715, H3833, H3918, H7826, H7830, G30230

Revelation References:

Revelation 5:5 Revelation 9:8 Revelation 9:17 Revelation 10:3 Revelation 13:2

locust

Definition:

The term “locust” refers to a type of large, flying grasshopper that sometimes flies with many other of its kind in a very destructive swarm that eats all vegetation.

- Locusts and other grasshoppers are large, straight-winged insects with long, jointed back legs that give them the ability to jump a long distance way.
- In the Old Testament, swarming locusts were referred to figuratively as a symbol or picture of the overwhelming devastation that would come as a result of Israel’s disobedience.
- God sent locusts as one of the ten plagues against the Egyptians.
- The New Testament says that locusts were a main source of food for John the Baptist while he was living in the desert.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: captive, Egypt, Israel, John (the Baptist), plague)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 6:28
- Deuteronomy 28:38-39
- Exodus 10:3-4
- Mark 1:6
- Proverbs 30:27-28

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0697, H1357, H1462, H1501, H2284, H3218, H5556, H6767, G02000

Revelation References:

Revelation 9:3 Revelation 9:7

lust, lustful, passion, desire

Definition:

Lust is a very strong desire, usually in the context of wanting something sinful or immoral. To lust is to have lust.

- In the Bible, “lust” usually referred to sexual desire for someone other than one’s own spouse.
- Sometimes this term was used in a figurative sense to refer to worshiping idols.
- Depending on the context, “lust” could be translated as “wrong desire” or “strong desire” or “wrongful sexual desire” or “strong immoral desire” or to “strongly desire to sin.”
- The phrase to “lust after” could be translated as to “wrongly desire” or to “think immorally about” or to “immorally desire.”

(See also: adultery, false god)

Bible References:

- 1 John 2:16
- 2 Timothy 2:22
- Galatians 5:16
- Galatians 5:19-21
- Genesis 39:7-9
- Matthew 5:28

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0183, H0185, H0310, H1730, H2181, H2183, H2530, H5178, H5375, H5689, H5691, H5869, H7843, G07660, G19370, G19390, G22370, G37150, G38060

Revelation References:

Revelation 18:14

might, mighty, mighty works

Definition:

The terms “mighty” and “might” refer to having great strength or power.

- Often the word “might” is another word for “strength.” When talking about God, it can mean “power.”
- The phrase “mighty men” often refers to men who are courageous and victorious in battle. David’s band of faithful men who helped protect and defend him were often called “mighty men.”
- God is also referred to as the “mighty one.”
- The phrase “mighty works” usually refers to the amazing things God does, especially miracles.
- This term is related to the term “almighty,” which is a common description for God, meaning that he has complete power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “mighty” could be translated as “powerful” or “amazing” or “very strong.”
- The phrase “his might” could be translated as “his strength” or “his power.”
- In Acts 7, Moses is described as a man who was “mighty in word and deed.” This could be translated as “Moses spoke powerful words from God and did miraculous things” or “Moses spoke God’s word powerfully and did many amazing things.”
- Depending on the context, “mighty works” could be translated as “amazing things that God does” or “miracles” or “God doing things with power.”
- The term “might” could also be translated as “power” or “great strength.”
- Do not confuse this term with the English word that is used to express a possibility, as in “It might rain.”

(See also: Almighty, miracle, power, strength)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:22
- Genesis 6:4
- Mark 9:38-39
- Matthew 11:23

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0046, H0047, H0117, H0202, H0386, H0410, H0430, H0533, H0650, H1219, H1368, H1369, H1396, H1397, H1419, H2220, H2389, H2428, H3201, H3524, H3581, H3966, H4101, H5794, H5797, H6099, H6105, H6108, H6184, H7227, H7580, H8623, H8624, G14110, G14150, G14980, G24780, G24790, G29000, G29040, G31670, G31730

Revelation References:

Revelation 1:6 Revelation 5:2 Revelation 5:13 Revelation 10:1 Revelation 11:18 Revelation 13:13 Revelation 13:16 Revelation 18:2 Revelation 18:8 Revelation 18:21 Revelation 18:21 Revelation 19:6 Revelation 19:18

mind, mindful, remind, reminder, likeminded

Definition:

The term “mind” refers to the part of a person that thinks and makes decisions.

- The mind of each person is the total of his or her thoughts and reasoning.
- To “have the mind of Christ” means to be thinking and acting as Jesus Christ would think and act. It means being obedient to God the Father, obeying the teachings of Christ, being enabled to do this through the power of the Holy Spirit.
- To “change his mind” means someone made a different decision or had a different opinion than he had previously.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “mind” could also be translated as “thoughts” or “reasoning” or “thinking” or “understanding.”
- The expression “keep in mind” could be translated as “remember” or “pay attention to this” or “be sure to know this.”
- The expression “heart, soul, and mind” could also be translated as “what you feel, what you believe, and what you think about.”
- The expression “call to mind” could be translated as “remember” or “think about.”
- The expression “changed his mind and went” could also be translated as “decided differently and went” or “decided to go after all” or “changed his opinion and went.”
- The expression “double-minded” could also be translated as “doubting” or “unable to decide” or “with conflicting thoughts.”

(See also: believe, heart, soul)

Bible References:

- Luke 10:27
- Mark 6:51-52
- Matthew 21:29
- Matthew 22:37
- James 4:8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3629, H3820, H3824, H5162, H7725, G12710, G13740, G33280, G35250, G35400, G35630, G49930, G55900

Revelation References:

Revelation 17:9 Revelation 17:13

mourn, mourner, weeping

Definition:

The terms “mourn” and “mourning” refer to expressing deep grief, usually in response to the death of someone.

- In many cultures, mourning includes specific outward behaviors that show this sadness and grief.
- The Israelites and other people groups in ancient times expressed mourning through loud wailing and lamenting. They also wore rough clothing made of sackcloth and put ashes on themselves.
- Hired mourners, usually women, would loudly weep and wail from the time of death until well after the body was put in the tomb.
- The typical period of mourning was seven days, but could last as long as thirty days (as for Moses and Aaron) or seventy days (as for Jacob).
- The Bible also uses the term figuratively to talk about “mourning” because of sin. This refers to feeling deeply grieved because sin hurts God and people.

(See also: sackcloth, sin)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 15:34-35
- 2 Samuel 1:11
- Genesis 23:2
- Luke 7:31-32
- Matthew 11:17

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0056, H0057, H0060, H0205, H0578, H0584, H0585, H1058, H1065, H1068, H1671, H1897, H1899, H4553, H4798, H5092, H5098, H5110, H5594, H6937, H6941, H8386, G23540, G28750, G36020, G39960, G39970

Revelation References:

Revelation 1:7 Revelation 18:7 Revelation 18:7 Revelation 18:8 Revelation 18:11 Revelation 18:15 Revelation 18:19 Revelation 21:4

mystery, hidden truth

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “mystery” refers to something that we cannot know or understand unless God reveals it or explains it to us.

- The New Testament states that the gospel of Christ was a mystery that was not known in past ages.
- One of the specific points described as a mystery is that Jews and Gentiles would be equal in Christ.
- This term could also be translated as “secret” or “hidden truth” or “previously unknown thing.”

(See also: Christ, Gentile, good news, Jew, true)

Bible References:

- Colossians 4:2-4
- Ephesians 6:19-20
- Luke 8:9-10
- Mark 4:10-12
- Matthew 13:11

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1219, H7328, G34660

Revelation References:

Revelation 1:20 Revelation 10:7 Revelation 17:5 Revelation 17:7

nation

Definition:

In the Bible, a nation is a large group of people who share a common identity and speak the same language. The people of a nation often have the same ancestors and share a common ethnicity.

- In the Bible, a nation could be a country with an extensive government structure and defined boundaries (such as Egypt or Ethiopia), but usually it is more general and refers to a people group.
- Nations in the Bible included the Israelites, the Philistines, the Assyrians, the Babylonians, the Canaanites, the Romans, and the Greeks, among many others.
- Sometimes the word "nation" was used figuratively to refer to the ancestor of a certain people group, as when Rebekah was told by God that her unborn sons were "nations" that would fight against each other. This could be translated as "the founders of two nations" or the "ancestors of two people groups."
- When used in the plural in a general way, the word translated as "nations" often referred to the people who were not Israelites, that is, to Gentiles, the people who do not worship Yahweh. The context usually makes the meaning clear.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the word "nation" could also be translated as "people group" or "people" or "country."
- If a language has a term for "nation" that is distinct from these other terms, then that term can be used wherever it occurs in the Bible text, as long as it is natural and accurate in each context.
- The plural term "nations" can often be translated as "people groups."
- In certain contexts, this term could also be translated as "Gentiles" or "non-Jews."

(See also: Assyria, Babylon, Canaan, Gentile, Greek, people group, Philistines, Rome)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 14:15-17
- 2 Chronicles 15:6
- 2 Kings 17:11-12
- Acts 2:5
- Acts 13:19
- Acts 17:26
- Acts 26:4
- Daniel 3:4
- Genesis 10:2-5
- Genesis 27:29
- Genesis 35:11
- Genesis 49:10
- Luke 7:5
- Mark 13:7-8
- Matthew 21:43
- Romans 4:16-17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0523, H0524, H0776, H1471, H3816, H4940, H5971, G02460, G10740, G10850, G14840

Revelation References:

Revelation 2:26 Revelation 5:9 Revelation 7:9 Revelation 10:11 Revelation 11:9 Revelation 11:18 Revelation 12:5 Revelation 13:7 Revelation 14:6 Revelation 14:8 Revelation 15:4 Revelation 16:19 Revelation 17:15 Revelation 18:3 Revelation 18:23 Revelation 19:15 Revelation 20:3 Revelation 20:8 Revelation 21:24 Revelation 21:26 Revelation 22:2

oath, vow, swear, swearing, swear by, sworn

Definition:

The term “oath” in the Bible refers to a formal promise, usually made in a legal or religious context, in which the person making the oath accepts some kind of accountability or punishment if he does not fulfill his promise. In the Bible, the term “swear” means to make an oath. A “vow” is a solemn promise or oath that a person makes to God.

- In a court of law, a witness often gives an oath to promise that whatever he says will be true and factual.
- In modern times, one meaning of the word “swear” is to use foul or vulgar language. This is never its meaning in the Bible.
- The term “swear by” means to use the name of something or someone as the basis or power on which the oath is made.
- Abraham and Abimelech swore an oath when they made a covenant together concerning the use of a well.
- Abraham told his servant to swear (formally promise) that he would find Isaac a wife from among Abraham’s relatives.
- God also made oaths in which he made promises to his people.
- If a person in ancient Israel made a vow to God, that person was obligated to fulfill the vow. The ancient Israelites believed that God might punish a person who did not fulfill a vow that he made.
- In ancient Israel, sometimes a person would ask God to protect him or provide for him in exchange for making the vow. However, the ancient Israelites did not believe that God was obligated to fulfill these requests.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “an oath” could also be translated as “a pledge” or “a solemn promise.”
- To “swear” could be translated as to “formally promise” or to “pledge” or to “commit to do something.”
- Other ways to translate “swear by my name” could include “make a promise using my name to confirm it.”
- To “swear by heaven and earth” could be translated as to, “promise to do something, stating that heaven and earth will confirm it.”
- Make sure the translation of “swear” or “oath” does not refer to cursing. In the Bible it does not have that meaning.
- Depending on the context, the term “vow” can be translated as “solemn promise” or “solemn oath” or “promise made to God.”

(See also: Abimelech, covenant, promise)

Bible References:

- Genesis 21:23
- Genesis 24:3
- Genesis 31:51-53
- Genesis 47:31
- Luke 1:73
- Mark 6:26
- Matthew 5:36
- Matthew 14:6-7
- Matthew 26:72
- 1 Corinthians 7:27-28
- Acts 21:23
- Genesis 28:21
- Genesis 31:12-13
- Jonah 1:14-16
- Jonah 2:9-10
- Proverbs 7:14

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0422, H0423, H3027, H5375, H7621, H7650, G03320, G36600, G37270, G37280, H5087, H5088, G21710

Revelation References:

Revelation 10:6

oil

Definition:

Oil is a thick, clear liquid that can be taken from certain plants. In Bible times, oil usually came from olives.

- Olive oil was used for cooking, anointing, sacrifice, lamps, and medicine.
- In ancient times, olive oil was highly prized, and the possession of oil was considered a measurement of wealth.
- Make sure the translation of this term refers to the kind of oil that can be used in cooking, not motor oil. Some languages have different words for these different kinds of oil.

(See also: olive, sacrifice)

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 1:21
- Exodus 29:2
- Leviticus 5:11
- Leviticus 8:1-3
- Mark 6:12-13
- Matthew 25:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2091, H3323, H4887, H6671, H7246, H8081, G16370, G34640

Revelation References:

Revelation 6:6 Revelation 18:13 Revelation 18:13

olive

Definition:

The olive is the small, oval fruit from an olive tree, which is mostly grown in the regions surrounding the Mediterranean Sea.

- Olive trees are a type of large evergreen shrub with tiny white flowers. They grow best in hot weather and can survive well with little water.
- The olive tree's fruit starts out green and changes to black as they ripen. Olives were useful for food and for the oil that could be extracted from them.
- Olive oil was used for cooking in lamps and for religious ceremonies.
- In the Bible, olive trees and branches are sometimes used figuratively to refer to people.

(See also: lamp, the sea, Mount of Olives)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 27:28-29
- Deuteronomy 6:10-12
- Exodus 23:10-11
- Genesis 8:11
- James 3:12
- Luke 16:6
- Psalms 52:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2132, H3323, H8081, G00650, G16360, G16370, G25650

Revelation References:

Revelation 11:4

palm

Definition:

The term “palm” refers to a type of tall tree with long, flexible, leafy branches extending from the top in a fan-like pattern.

- The palm tree in the Bible usually refers to a type of palm tree that produces a fruit called a “date.” The leaves have a feather-like pattern.
- Palm trees typically grow in places that have a hot, humid climate. Their leaves stay green all year long.
- As Jesus was entering Jerusalem riding on a donkey, the people laid palm branches on the ground in front of him.
- Palm branches signified peace and the celebration of a victory.

(See also: donkey, Jerusalem, peace)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 6:29-30
- Ezekiel 40:14-16
- John 12:12-13
- Numbers 33:9

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3712, H8558, H8560, H8561, G54040

Revelation References:

Revelation 7:9

peace, peaceful, peacemaker

Definition:

The term “peace” refers to a state of being or a feeling of having no conflict, anxiety, or fearfulness. A person who is “peaceful” feels calm and assured of being safe and secure.

- In the Old Testament, the term “peace” often means a general sense of a person’s welfare, wellness, or wholeness.
- “Peace” can also refer to a time when people groups or countries are not at war with each other. These people are said to have “peaceful relations.”
- To “make peace” with a person or a group of people means to take actions to cause fighting to stop.
- A “peacemaker” is someone who does and says things to influence people to live at peace with each other.
- To be “at peace” with other people means being in a state of not fighting against those people.
- A good or right relationship between God and people happens when God saves people from their sin. This is called having “peace with God.”
- The greeting “grace and peace” was used by the apostles in their letters to their fellow believers as a blessing.
- The term “peace” can also refer to being in a good relationship with other people or with God.

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 5:1-3
- Acts 7:26
- Colossians 1:18-20
- Colossians 3:15
- Galatians 5:23
- Luke 7:50
- Luke 12:51
- Mark 4:39
- Matthew 5:9
- Matthew 10:13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:6** God had commanded the Israelites not to make a **peace** treaty with any of the people groups in Canaan.
- **15:12** Then God gave Israel **peace** along all its borders.
- **16:3** Then God provided a deliverer who rescued them from their enemies and brought **peace** to the land.
- **21:13** He (Messiah) would die to receive the punishment for other people's sin. His punishment would bring **peace** between God and people.
- **48:14** David was the king of Israel, but Jesus is the king of the entire universe! He will come again and rule his kingdom with justice and **peace**, forever.
- **50:17** Jesus will rule his kingdom with **peace** and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5117, H7961, H7962, H7965, H7999, H8001, H8002, H8003, H8252, G02690, G15140, G15150, G15160, G15170, G15180, G22720

Revelation References:

Revelation 1:4 Revelation 6:4

persecute

Definition:

The terms "persecute" and "persecution" refer to continually treating a person or a certain group of people in a harsh way that causes harm to them.

- Persecution can be against one person or many people and usually involves repeated, persistent attacks.
- The Israelites were persecuted by many different people groups Who attacked them, captured them, and stole things from them.
- People often persecute other people who have different religious beliefs or who are weaker.
- The Jewish religious leaders persecuted Jesus because they did not like what he was teaching.
- After Jesus went back to heaven, the Jewish religious leaders and the Roman government persecuted his followers.
- The term "persecute" could also be translated as "keep oppressing" or "treat harshly" or "continually mistreat."
- Ways to translate "persecution" could include, "harsh mistreatment" or "oppression" or "persistent hurtful treatment"

(See also: Christian, church, oppress, Rome)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:52
- Acts 13:50
- Galatians 1:13-14
- John 5:16-18
- Mark 10:30
- Matthew 5:10
- Matthew 5:43-45
- Matthew 10:22
- Matthew 13:20-21
- Philippians 3:6

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **33:7** "The rocky ground is a person who hears God's word and accepts it with joy. But when he experiences hardship or **persecution**, he falls away."

- **45:6** That day many people in Jerusalem started **persecuting** the followers of Jesus, so the believers fled to other places.
- **46:2** Saul heard someone say, “Saul! Saul! Why do you **persecute** me?” Saul asked, “Who are you, Master?” Jesus replied to him, “I am Jesus. You are **persecuting** me!”
- **46:4** But Ananias said, “Master, I have heard how this man has **persecuted** the believers.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1814, H7291, H7852, G13750, G13760, G13770, G15590, G23470

Revelation References:

Revelation 12:13

persevere, perseverance

Definition:

The terms “persevere” and “perseverance” refer to continuing to do something even though it may be very difficult or take a long time.

- To persevere can also mean to keep acting in a Christ-like way even while going through difficult trials or circumstances.
- If a person has “perseverance” it means he is able to keep doing what he should do, even when it is painful or difficult.
- Continuing to believe what God teaches requires perseverance, especially when faced with false teachings.
- Be careful not to use a word like “stubborn” which usually has a negative meaning.

(See also: patient, trial)

Bible References:

- Colossians 1:11
- Ephesians 6:18
- James 5:9-11
- Luke 8:14-15

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G31150, G43430, G52810

Revelation References:

Revelation 2:3 Revelation 2:19

column, pillar

Definition:

The term “pillar” usually refers to a large vertical structure that is used to hold up a roof or other part of a building. Another word for “pillar” is “column.”

- In Bible times, pillars used as support in buildings were normally carved from a single piece of stone.
- When Samson in the Old Testament was captured by the Philistines, he destroyed their pagan temple by pushing the supporting pillars and causing the temple to collapse.
- The word “pillar” sometimes refers to a large stone or boulder that is set up as a memorial to mark a grave or to mark the place where an important event happened.
- It can also refer to an idol that was made to worship a false god. It is another name for a “carved image” and could be translated as “statue.”
- The term “pillar” is used to refer to something that is shaped like a pillar, such as the “pillar of fire” that led the Israelites at night through the desert or the “pillar of salt” that Lot’s wife became after she looked back at the city.
- As a structure supporting a building, the term “pillar” or “column” could be translated as “upright stone support beam” or “supporting stone structure.”
- Other uses of “pillar” could be translated as “statue” or “pile” or “mound” or “monument” or “tall mass,” depending on the context.

(See also: foundation, false god, image)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:4
- Exodus 13:21
- Exodus 33:9
- Genesis 31:45
- Proverbs 9:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0352, H0547, H2106, H2553, H3730, H4552, H4676, H4678, H4690, H5324, H5333, H5982, H8490, G47690

Revelation References:

Revelation 3:12 Revelation 10:1

pit, pitfall, trench, cistern

Definition:

A pit is a deep hole that has been dug in the ground.

- A "cistern" was a hole dug in order to hold water.
- People dig pits for the purpose of trapping animals or finding water.
- A pit can also be used as a temporary place to hold a prisoner.
- Sometimes the phrase "the pit" refers to the grave or to hell. Other times it may refer to "the abyss."
- The term "pit" is also used figuratively in phrases such as, "pit of destruction" which describes being trapped in a disastrous situation or being deeply involved in sinful, destructive practices.

(See also: abyss, hell, prison)

Bible References:

- Genesis 37:21-22
- Job 33:18
- Luke 6:39
- Proverbs 1:12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0875, H0953, H1356, H1475, H2352, H4087, H4113, H4379, H6354, H7585, H7745, H7816, H7825, H7845, H7882, G00120, G09990, G54210

Revelation References:

Revelation 9:1 Revelation 9:2 Revelation 9:2 Revelation 9:2

plague

Definition:

Plagues are events which cause suffering or death to a large number of people. Often a plague is a disease that spreads quickly and causes many people to die before it can be stopped.

- Many plagues have natural causes, but some were sent by God to punish people for sin.
- In the time of Moses, God sent ten plagues against Egypt to force Pharaoh to let Israel leave Egypt. These plagues included water turning into blood, physical diseases, destruction of crops by insects and hail, three days of complete darkness, and death of the firstborn sons.
- This could also be translated as "widespread disasters" or "widespread disease," depending on the context.

(See also: hail, Israel, Moses, Pharaoh)

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 24:13-14
- Exodus 9:14
- Genesis 12:17-20
- Luke 21:11
- Revelation 9:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1698, H4046, H4194, H4347, H5061, H5062, H5063, G30610, G41270

Revelation References:

Revelation 9:18 Revelation 9:20 Revelation 11:6 Revelation 15:1 Revelation 15:6 Revelation 15:8 Revelation 16:9 Revelation 16:21 Revelation 16:21 Revelation 18:4 Revelation 18:8 Revelation 21:9 Revelation 22:18

praise, praised, praiseworthy

Definition:

To praise someone is to express admiration and honor for that person.

- People praise God because of how great he is and because of all the amazing things he has done as the Creator and Savior of the world.
- Praise for God often includes being thankful for what he has done.
- Music and singing is often used as a way to praise God.
- Praising God is part of what it means to worship him.
- The term to "praise" could also be translated as to "speak well of" or to "highly honor with words" or to "say good things about."
- The noun "praise" could be translated as "spoken honor" or "speech that honors" or "speaking good things about."

(See also: worship)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 1:3
- Acts 2:47
- Acts 13:48
- Daniel 3:28
- Ephesians 1:3
- Genesis 49:8
- James 3:9-10
- John 5:41-42
- Luke 1:46
- Luke 1:64-66
- Luke 19:37-38
- Matthew 11:25-27
- Matthew 15:29-31

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:13** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to **praise** God because he saved them from the Egyptian army.
- **17:8** When David heard these words, he immediately thanked and **praised** God because he had promised David this great honor and many blessings.
- **22:7** Zechariah said, "**Praise** God, because he has remembered his people!"
- **43:13** They (disciples) enjoyed **praising** God together and they shared everything they had with each other.
- **47:8** They put Paul and Silas in the most secure part of the prison and even locked up their feet. Yet in the middle of the night, they were singing songs of **praise** to God.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1319, H7121, H8416, G29800, G38530

Revelation References:

Revelation 5:12 Revelation 5:13 Revelation 7:12 Revelation 19:5

preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation

Definition:

To "preach" means to speak to a group of people, teaching them about God and urging them to obey him. To "proclaim" means to announce or declare something publicly and boldly.

- Often preaching is done by one person to a large group of people. It is usually spoken, not written.
- "Preaching" and "teaching" are similar, but are not exactly the same.
- "Preaching" mainly refers to publicly proclaiming spiritual or moral truth, and urging the audience to respond. "Teaching" is a term that emphasizes instruction, that is, giving people information or teaching them how to do something.
- The term "preach" is usually used with the word "gospel."
- What a person has preached to others can also be referred to in general as his "teachings."
- Often in the Bible, "proclaim" means to announce publicly something that God has commanded, or to tell others about God and how great he is.
- In the New Testament, the apostles proclaimed the good news about Jesus to many people in many different cities and regions.
- The term "proclaim" can also be used for decrees made by kings or for denouncing evil in a public way.
- Other ways to translate "proclaim" could include "announce" or "openly preach" or "publicly declare."
- The term "proclamation" could also be translated as "announcement" or "public preaching."

(See also: declare, good news, Jesus, kingdom of God)

Strong's for preach: H1319, H7121, H7150, G12290, G20970, G26050, G27820, G27830, G27840, G29800, G42830

Strong's for proclaim: H1319, H1696, H1697, H2199, H3045, H3745, H4161, H5046, H5608, H6963, H7121, H7440, H8085, G51800, G59100, G12290, G18610, G20970, G26050, G27820, G27840, G29800, G31420, G41350

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 4:1-2
- Acts 8:4-5
- Acts 10:42-43
- Acts 14:21-22
- Acts 20:25
- Luke 4:42
- Matthew 3:1-3
- Matthew 4:17
- Matthew 12:41
- Matthew 24:14
- Acts 9:20-22
- Acts 13:38-39
- Jonah 3:1-3
- Luke 4:18-19
- Mark 1:14-15
- Matthew 10:26

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:2** He (John) **preached** to them, saying, "Repent, for the Kingdom of God is near!"
- **30:1** Jesus sent his apostles to **preach** and to teach people in many different villages.
- **38:1** About three years after Jesus first began **preaching** and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in Jerusalem, and that he would be killed there.
- **45:6** But in spite of this, they **preached** about Jesus everywhere they went.
- **45:7** He (Philip) went to Samaria where he preached about Jesus and many people were saved.
- **46:6** Right away, Saul began **preaching** to the Jews in Damascus, saying, "Jesus is the Son of God!"
- **46:10** Then they sent them off to **preach** the good news of Jesus in many other places.
- **47:14** Paul and other Christian leaders traveled to many cities, **preaching** and teaching people the good news about Jesus.

- **50:2** When Jesus was living on earth he said, “My disciples will **preach** the good news about the kingdom of God to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1319, H7121, H7150, H1319, H1696, H1697, H2199, H3045, H3745, H4161, H5046, H5608, H6963, H7121, H7440, H8085, G12290, G20970, G26050, G27820, G27830, G27840, G29800, G42830, G51800, G59100, G12290, G18610, G20970, G26050, G27820, G27840, G29800, G31420, G41350

Revelation References:

Revelation 5:2

prostitute, harlot, whored

Definition:

The terms “prostitute” and “harlot” both refer to a person who performs sexual acts for money or for religious rites. Prostitutes or harlots were usually female, but some were male.

- In the Bible, the word “prostitute” is sometimes used figuratively to refer to a person who worships false gods or who practices witchcraft.
- The expression “play the harlot” means to act like a harlot by being sexually immoral. This expression is also used in the Bible to refer to a person who worships idols.
- To “prostitute oneself” to something means to be sexually immoral or when used figuratively, to be unfaithful to God by worshiping false gods.
- In ancient times, some pagan temples used male and female prostitutes as part of their rituals.
- This term could be translated by the word or phrase that is used in the project language to refer to a prostitute. Some languages may have a euphemistic term that is used for this. (See: euphemism)

(See also: adultery, false god, sexual immorality, false god)

Bible References:

- Genesis 34:31
- Genesis 38:21
- Luke 15:30
- Matthew 21:31

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2154, H2181, H2183, H2185, H6945, H6948, H8457, G42040

Revelation References:

Revelation 17:1 Revelation 17:5 Revelation 17:15 Revelation 17:16 Revelation 19:2

purple

Definition:

The term “purple” is the name of a color that is a mixture of blue and red.

- In ancient times, purple was a rare and highly valuable color of dye that was used to dye the clothing of kings and other high officials.
- Because it was costly and time-consuming to produce this dye, purple clothing was considered a sign of wealth, distinction, and royalty.
- Purple was also one of the colors used for the curtains in the tabernacle and temple, and for the ephod worn by the priests.
- Purple dye was extracted from a kind of sea snail by either crushing or boiling the snails or by causing them to release the dye while still alive. This was an expensive process.
- Roman soldiers put a purple royal robe on Jesus before his crucifixion, to mock him for his claim to be King of the Jews.
- Lydia from the town of Philippi was a woman who made her living by selling purple cloth.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: ephod, Philippi, royal, tabernacle, temple)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 2:13-14
- Daniel 5:7
- Daniel 5:29-31
- Proverbs 31:22-23

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0710, H0711, H0713, G42090, G42100, G42110

Revelation References:

Revelation 17:4 Revelation 18:12 Revelation 18:16

queen

Definition:

A queen is either the female ruler of a country or the wife of a king.

- Esther became the queen of the Persian empire when she married King Ahasuerus.
- Queen Jezebel was the evil wife of King Ahab.
- The Queen of Sheba was a famous ruler who came to visit King Solomon.
- A term such as “queen mother” usually referred to the mother or grandmother of a ruling king or the widow of the previous king. A queen mother had much influence; Athaliah, for example, influenced the people to worship idols.

(See also: Ahasuerus, Athaliah, Esther, king. Persia ruler, Sheba)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 10:10
- 1 Kings 11:18-19
- 2 Kings 10:12-14
- Acts 8:27
- Esther 1:17
- Luke 11:31
- Matthew 12:42

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1404, H1377, H4410, H4427, H4433, H4436, H4438, H4446, H7694, H8282, G09380

Revelation References:

Revelation 18:7

rebuke, reprove

Definition:

The term “rebuke” refers to correcting someone verbally, usually with sternness or force.

- The New Testament commands Christians to rebuke other believers when they are clearly disobeying God.
- The book of Proverbs instructs parents to rebuke their children when they are disobedient.
- A rebuke is typically given to prevent those who committed a wrong from further involving themselves in sin.
- This could be translated by “sternly correct” or “admonish.”
- The phrase “a rebuke” could be translated by “a stern correction” or “a strong criticism.”
- “Without rebuke” could be translated as “without admonishing” or “without criticism.”

(See also admonish, disobey)

Bible References:

- Genesis 21:25
- Mark 1:23-26
- Mark 16:14
- Matthew 8:26-27
- Matthew 17:17-18

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1605, H1606, H2778, H2781, H3198, H4045, H4148, H8156, H8433, G16490, G16510, G19690, G20080, G36790

Revelation References:

Revelation 3:19

receive, welcome, taken up, acceptance

Definition:

The term “receive” generally means to get or accept something that is given, offered, or presented.

- To “receive” can also mean to suffer or experience something, as in “he received punishment for what he did.”
- There is also a special sense in which we can “receive” a person. For example, to “receive” guests or visitors means to welcome them and treat them with honor in order to build a relationship with them.
- To “receive the gift of the Holy Spirit” means we are given the Holy Spirit and welcome him to work in and through our lives.
- To “receive Jesus” means to accept God’s offer of salvation through Jesus Christ.
- When a blind person “receives his sight” means that God has healed him and enabled him to see.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “receive” could be translated as “accept” or “welcome” or “experience” or “be given.”
- The expression “you will receive power” could be translated as “you will be given power” or “God will give you power” or “power will be given to you (by God)” or “God will cause the Holy Spirit to work powerfully in you.”
- The phrase “received his sight” could be translated as “was able to see” or “became able to see again” or “was healed by God so that he was able to see.”

(See also: Holy Spirit, Jesus, lord, save)

Bible References:

- 1 John 5:9
- 1 Thessalonians 1:6
- 1 Thessalonians 4:1
- Acts 8:15
- Jeremiah 32:33
- Luke 9:5

- Malachi 3:10-12
- Psalms 49:14-15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:13** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no sin. He would die to **receive** the punishment for other people's sin. His punishment would bring peace between God and people.
- **45:5** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, "Jesus, **receive** my spirit."
- **49:6** He (Jesus) taught that some people will receive him and be saved, but others will not.
- **49:10** When Jesus died on the cross, he **received** your punishment.
- **49:13** God will save everyone who believes in Jesus and **receives** him as their Master.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3557, H3947, H6901, H6902, H8254, G03080, G03240, G03530, G03540, G05680, G05880, G06180, G11830, G12090, G15230, G16530, G19260, G28650, G29830, G30280, G33350, G33360, G35490, G38580, G38800, G43270, G43550, G43560, G46870, G52640, G55620

Revelation References:

Revelation 2:17 Revelation 2:28 Revelation 3:3 Revelation 4:11 Revelation 5:12 Revelation 14:11 Revelation 17:12 Revelation 17:12 Revelation 18:4 Revelation 19:20 Revelation 20:4

reed

Definition:

The term "reed" refers to a plant with a long stalk that grows in the water, usually along the edge of a river or stream.

- The reeds in the Nile River where Moses was hidden as a baby were also called "bulrushes." They were tall, hollow stalks growing in dense clumps in the river water.
- These fibrous plants were used in ancient Egypt for making paper, baskets, and boats.
- The stalk of the reed plant is flexible and is easily bent over by the wind.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Egypt, Moses, Nile River)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 14:15
- Luke 7:24
- Matthew 11:7
- Matthew 12:20
- Psalm 68:30

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0098, H0100, H0260, H5488, H6169, H7070, G25630

Revelation References:

Revelation 21:15 Revelation 21:16

reign, rule

Definition:

The term to "reign" means to rule over the people of a particular country or kingdom. The reign of a king is the time period during which he is ruling.

- The term "reign" is also used to refer to God reigning as king over the entire world.
- God allowed human kings to reign over Israel after the people rejected him as their king.
- When Jesus Christ returns, he will openly reign as king over the whole world, and Christians will reign with Him.
- This term could also be translated as "absolute rule" or "rule as king."

(See also: kingdom)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 2:11-13
- Genesis 36:34-36
- Luke 1:30-33
- Luke 19:26-27
- Matthew 2:22-23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3427, H4427, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4475, H4791, H4910, H6113, H7287, H7786, G07570, G09360, G22310, G48210

Revelation References:

Revelation 5:10 Revelation 11:15 Revelation 11:17 Revelation 19:6 Revelation 20:4 Revelation 20:6 Revelation 22:5

reward, prize, deserve

Definition:

The term "reward" refers to what a person receives because of something he has done, either good or bad. To "reward" someone is to give someone something he deserves. However, this is different than the concept of "wages," which refers to payment (often money) given in exchange for work performed.

- A reward can be a good or positive thing that a person receives because he has done something well or because he has obeyed God.
- Sometimes a reward can refer to negative things that may result from bad behavior, such as the statement "the reward of the wicked." In this context "reward" refers to the punishment or negative consequences they receive because of their sinful actions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "reward" could be translated as "payment" or "something that is deserved" or "punishment."
- To "reward" someone could be translated by to "repay" or to "punish" or to "give what is deserved."
- Make sure the translation of this term does not refer to wages. A reward is not specifically about earning money as part of a job.

(See also: punish)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 32:6
- Isaiah 40:10
- Luke 6:35
- Mark 9:40-41
- Matthew 5:11-12
- Matthew 6:3-4
- Psalms 127:3-5
- Revelation 11:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0319, H0866, H0868, H1576, H1578, H1580, H4909, H4991, H5023, H6118, H6468, H6529, H7938, H7939, H7999, G04690, G05140, G05910, G26030, G34050, G34060, G34080

Revelation References:

Revelation 11:18 Revelation 22:12

robe, robed

Definition:

A robe is an outer garment with long sleeves that can be worn by a man or a woman. It is similar to a coat.

- Robes are open in the front and are tied shut with a sash or belt.
- They can be long or short.
- Purple robes were worn by kings as a sign of royalty, wealth, and prestige.

(See also: royal, tunic)

Bible References:

- Exodus 28:4-5
- Genesis 49:11-12
- Luke 15:22
- Luke 20:46
- Matthew 27:27-29

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0145, H0155, H0899, H1545, H2436, H2684, H3671, H3801, H3830, H3847, H4060, H4254, H4598, H5497, H5622, H6614, H7640, H7757, H7897, H8071, G17460, G20670, G24400, G47490, G40160, G55110

Revelation References:

Revelation 6:11 Revelation 7:9 Revelation 7:14 Revelation 19:13 Revelation 19:16 Revelation 22:14

rod

Definition:

The term “rod” refers to a narrow, solid, stick-like tool that was used in several different ways. It was probably at least a meter in length.

- A wooden rod was used by a shepherd to defend the sheep from other animals. It was also thrown toward a wandering sheep to bring it back to the the flock.
- In Psalm 23, King David used the terms “rod” and “staff” as metaphors to refer to God’s guidance and discipline for his people.
- A shepherd’s rod was also used to count the sheep as they passed under it.
- Another metaphorical expression, “rod of iron,” refers to God’s punishment for people who rebel against him and do evil things.
- In ancient times, measuring rods made of metal, wood, or stone were used to measure the length of a building or object.
- In the Bible, a wooden rod was also referred to as an instrument to discipline children.

(See also: staff, sheep, shepherd)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 4:21
- 1 Samuel 14:43-44
- Acts 16:23
- Exodus 27:9-10
- Revelation 11:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2415, H4294, H4731, H7626, G25630, G44630, G44640

Revelation References:

Revelation 2:27 Revelation 11:1 Revelation 12:5 Revelation 19:15

rule, reign, ruler, prefect, official, leader

Definition:

The term “ruler” is a general reference to a person who has authority over other people, such as a leader of a country, kingdom, or religious group. A ruler is one who “rules,” and his authority is his “rule.”

- In the Old Testament, a king was sometimes referred to generally as a “ruler,” as in the phrase “appointed him ruler over Israel.”
- God was referred to as the ultimate ruler, who rules over all other rulers.
- In the New Testament, the leader of a synagogue was called a “ruler.”
- Another type of ruler in the New Testament was a “governor.”
- Depending on the context, “ruler” could be translated as “leader” or “person who has authority over.”
- The action to “rule” means to “lead” to “have authority over.” It means the same thing as “reign” when it refers to the ruling of a king.

(See also: authority, governor, king, synagogue)

Bible References:

- Acts 3:17-18
- Acts 7:35-37
- Luke 12:11
- Luke 23:35
- Mark 10:42
- Matthew 9:32-34
- Matthew 20:25
- Titus 3:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0995, H1166, H1167, H1404, H2708, H2710, H3027, H3548, H3920, H4043, H4410, H4427, H4428, H4438, H4467, H4474, H4475, H4623, H4910, H4941, H5057, H5065, H5387, H5401, H5461, H5715, H6113, H6213, H6485, H6957, H7101, H7218, H7287, H7300, H7336, H7786, H7860, H7980, H7981, H7985, H7989, H7990, H8199, H8269, H8323, H8451, G07460, G07520, G07550, G07570, G07580, G09320, G09360, G10180, G12030, G12990, G17780, G17850, G18490, G22320, G22330, G25250, G25830, G28880, G29610, G35450, G38410, G41650, G41730, G42910

Revelation References:

Revelation 1:5

sackcloth

Definition:

Sackcloth was a coarse, scratchy type of cloth that was made from goat hair or camel hair.

- A person who wore clothing made from it would be uncomfortable. Sackcloth was worn to show mourning, grief, or humble repentance.
- The phrase "sackcloth and ashes" was a common term referring to a traditional expression of grief and repentance.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated as "coarse cloth from animal hair" or "clothes made of goat hair" or "rough, scratchy clothing."
- Another way to translate this term could be "rough, scratchy mourning clothes."
- The phrase "sit in sackcloth and ashes" could be translated as "show mourning and humility by wearing scratchy cloth and sitting in ashes."

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: ash, camel, goat, humble, mourn, repent, sign)

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 3:31
- Genesis 37:34
- Joel 1:8-10
- Jonah 3:5
- Luke 10:13
- Matthew 11:21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8242, G45260

Revelation References:

Revelation 6:12 Revelation 11:3

scroll

Definition:

In ancient times, a scroll was a type of book made of one long, rolled-up sheet of papyrus or leather.

- After writing on a scroll or reading from it, people rolled it up by using the rods attached to its ends.
- Scrolls were used for legal documents and scripture.
- Sometimes scrolls that were delivered by a messenger were sealed with wax. If the wax was still present when the scroll was received, then the receiver knew that no one had opened the scroll to read it or write on it since it had been sealed.
- Scrolls containing the Hebrew Scriptures were read aloud in the synagogues.

(See also: seal, synagogue, word of God)

Bible References:

- Jeremiah 29:3
- Luke 4:17
- Numbers 21:14-15
- Revelation 5:2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4039, H4040, H5612, G09740, G09750

Revelation References:

Revelation 1:11 Revelation 5 Introduction Revelation 5:1 Revelation 5:2 Revelation 5:3 Revelation 5:4 Revelation 5:5 Revelation 5:8 Revelation 5:9 Revelation 6:14 Revelation 10:8 Revelation 10:10 Revelation 13:8 Revelation 17:8 Revelation 20:12 Revelation 20:12 Revelation 20:12 Revelation 21:27

seal, sealed, unsealed

Definition:

When referring to an action, the term "seal" means to close an object with something (usually called a "seal") that makes the object impossible to open without breaking the seal. When referring to an object, the term "seal" refers to something that was made of wood or metal or stone that was formed into a design so that it could be used to stamp something (make an imprint on it).

- A seal was marked with a design to show who it belonged to.
- Seals were used to mark different objects for the purpose of showing that the thing belonged to the owner or had come from the owner or was approved by the owner.
- Seals were used to indicate the authenticity of something as deriving from the owner or being approved by the owner or belonging to the owner in some way.
- Sometimes a seal was put on the top of a ring so that the owner of the ring could press the seal down into something and make an imprint on it.
- Sometimes seals were attached to a string or cord and worn around the neck.
- Melted wax was used to seal letters or other documents that needed to be protected. When the wax cooled and hardened, the letter could not be opened without breaking the wax seal. The person who received the letter would see the unbroken seal and know that no one had opened it.
- A seal was put on the stone in front of Jesus' grave in order to keep anyone from moving the stone.

(See also: Holy Spirit, tomb)

Bible References:

- Exodus 2:3
- Isaiah 29:11
- John 6:27
- Matthew 27:66
- Revelation 5:2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2368, H2560, H2856, H2857, H2858, H5640, G26960, G49720, G49730

Revelation References:

Revelation 5:2 Revelation 5:5 Revelation 5:9
Revelation 6:1 Revelation 6:3 Revelation 6:5
Revelation 6:7 Revelation 6:9 Revelation 6:12
Revelation 7:2 Revelation 7:3 Revelation 7:4
Revelation 7:4 Revelation 7:5 Revelation 7:8
Revelation 8:1 Revelation 9:4 Revelation 10:4
Revelation 20:3 Revelation 22:10

seed

Definition:

A "seed" is the part of a plant that gets planted in the ground to reproduce more of the same kind of plant.

- The term "seed" can also refer to what a man plants into a woman that allows them to reproduce.
- Related to this, "seed" is also used to refer to a man's or woman's offspring or descendants.
- This word often has a plural meaning, referring to more than one seed grain or more than one descendant.
- In the parable of the farmer planting seeds, Jesus compared his seeds to the Word of God, which is planted in people's hearts in order to produce good spiritual fruit.
- The apostle Paul also uses the term "seed" to refer to the Word of God.

Translation Suggestions:

- For the seed of a plant, use a general term that can apply to all plants, if possible.
- When "seed" refers to people who are of the same family line, it may be more clear to use the word "descendant" or "descendants" instead of "seed." Some languages may have a word that means "children and grandchildren."
- For a man or woman's "seed," consider how the target expresses this in a way that will not offend or embarrass people.

(See also: children, descendant)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:32
- Genesis 1:11
- Jeremiah 2:21
- Matthew 13:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2232, H2233, H3610, H6507, G46150, G46870, G46900, G47010, G47030

Revelation References:

Revelation 12:17

seek, search, look for

Definition:

The term “seek” means to look for something or someone. In the past tense, the verb is “sought.” This term is sometimes used figuratively, meaning to “attempt” or “make an effort” to do something or to ask for something.

- To “seek” or “look for” an opportunity to do something can mean to “try to find a time” to do it.
- To “seek Yahweh” means to “spend time and energy getting to know Yahweh and learning to obey him.”
- To “seek protection” means to “try to find a person or place that will protect you from danger.”
- To “seek justice” means to “make an effort to see that people are treated justly or fairly.”
- To “seek the truth” means to “make an effort to find out what the truth is.”
- To “seek favor” means to “urgently ask for favor” or to “do things to cause someone to help you.”

(See also: just, true)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:14
- Acts 17:26-27
- Hebrews 11:6
- Luke 11:9
- Psalms 27:8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0579, H1156, H1239, H1243, H1245, H1556, H1875, H2470, H2603, H2658, H2664, H3289, H7125, H7592, H7836, H8446, G03270, G15670, G19340, G20520, G22120

Revelation References:

Revelation 9:6

seize, seizure, capture

Definition:

The term “seize” means to take or capture someone or something by force. It can also mean to overpower and control someone.

- When a city was taken by means of military force, the soldiers would seize the valuable property of the people they had conquered.
- When used figuratively, a person can be described as being “seized with fear.” This means that the person was suddenly “overcome by fear.” If a person was “seized with fear” it could also be stated that the person “suddenly became very afraid.”
- In the context of labor pains that “seize” a woman, the meaning is that the pains are sudden and overpowering. This could be translated by saying that the pains “overcome” or “suddenly come upon” the woman.
- This term could also be translated as “take control of” or “suddenly take” or “grab.”
- The expression “seized and slept with her” could be translated as “forced himself on her” or “violated her” or “raped her.” Make sure the translation of this concept is acceptable.

(See: euphemism)

Bible References:

- Acts 16:19-21
- Exodus 15:14
- John 10:37-39
- Luke 8:29
- Matthew 26:48

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0270, H1497, H2388, H3027, H3920, H3947, H4672, H5377, H5860, H6031, H7760, H8610, G07240, G19490, G26380, G29020, G29830, G48150, G48840

Revelation References:

Revelation 19:20 Revelation 20:2

serpent, snake, viper

Definition:

These terms all refer to a kind of reptile that has a long, thin body and large, fanged jaws, and that moves by slithering back and forth across the ground. The term “serpent” usually refers to a large snake and “viper” refers to a type of snake that has venom which it uses to poison its prey.

- This animal is also used figuratively to refer to a person who is evil, especially someone who is deceitful.
- Jesus called the religious leaders “offspring of vipers” because they pretended to be righteous but deceived people and treated them unfairly.
- In the garden of Eden, Satan took the form of a serpent when he talked to Eve and tempted her to disobey God.
- After the serpent tempted Eve to sin, and both Eve and her husband Adam did sin, God cursed the snake, saying that from then on, all snakes would slither along the ground, implying that before then they had had legs.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: curse, deceive, disobey, Eden, evil, prey, Satan, sin, tempt)

Bible References:

- Genesis 3:3
- Genesis 3:4-6
- Genesis 3:12-13
- Mark 16:17-18
- Matthew 3:7
- Matthew 23:33

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0660, H2119, H5175, H6620, H6848, H8314, H8577, G21910, G20620, G37890

Revelation References:

Revelation 12:9 Revelation 12:14 Revelation 12:15 Revelation 20:2

servant, serve, maidservant, young man, young women

Definition:

A "servant" refers to a person who works for (or obeys) another person, either by choice or by force. A servant was under his master's direction. In the Bible, "servant" and "slave" are mostly interchangeable terms. The term "serve" generally means to do work for someone, and the concept can be applied in a wide variety of contexts.

- In the Bible the words "young man" or "young woman" often mean "servant" or "slave." This meaning will be discerned from context. One indicator of this situation is if the possessive is used, eg. "her young women" which could be translated as "her servants" or "her slaves."

Translation Suggestions

- The term "serve" can also be translated as "minister to" or "work for" or "take care of" or "obey," depending on the context.
- To "serve God" can be translated as to "worship and obey God" or to "do the work that God has commanded."
- In the Old Testament, God's prophets and other people who worshiped God were often called his "servants."
- In the New Testament, people who obeyed God through faith in Christ were often called his "servants."
- To "serve tables" means to bring food to people who are sitting at tables, or more generally, to "distribute food."
- In the context of a person serving guests, this term means "care for" or "serve food to" or "provide food for." When Jesus told the disciples to "serve" the fish to the people, this could be translated as, "distribute" or "hand out" or "give."
- People who teach others about God are said to serve both God and the ones they are teaching.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Corinthian Christians about how they used to "serve" the old covenant. This refers to obeying the laws of Moses. Now they "serve" the new covenant. That is, because of Jesus' sacrifice on the cross, believers in Jesus are enabled by the Holy Spirit to please God and live holy lives.
- Paul talks about their actions in terms of their "service" to either the old or new covenant. This could be translated as "serving" or "obeying" or "devotion to."
- Often, when a person referred to himself as "your servant" he was showing respect to the person addressed. That person may have had higher social status, or the speaker may be showing humility. It did not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.

(See also: enslave, works, obey, house, lord)

Bible References:

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **6:1** When Abraham was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his **servants** back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **19:10** Then Elijah prayed, "O Yahweh, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your **servant**."
- **29:3** "Since the **servant** could not pay the debt, the king said, 'Sell this man and his family as **slaves** to make payment on his debt.'"
- **35:6** "All my father's **servants** have plenty to eat, and yet here I am starving."
- **47:4** The **slave** girl kept yelling as they walked, "These men are servants of the Most High God."
- **50:4** Jesus also said, "A **servant** is not greater than his master."

Word Data:

- Strong's for Servant: H0519, H5288, H5647, H5649, H5650, H5657, H7916, H8198, H8334, G12490, G14010, G14020, G23240, G34070, G34110, G36100, G38160, G49830, G52570

Strong's for Serve: H3547, H4929, H4931, H5647, H5656, H5673, H5975, H6213, H6399, H6402, H6440, H6633, H6635, H7272, H8104, H8120, H8199, H8278, H8334, G12470, G12480, G13980, G14020, G14380, G19830, G20640, G22120, G23230, G29990, G30000, G30090, G43370, G43420, G47540, G50870, G52560

Revelation References:

Revelation 1:1 Revelation 1:1 Revelation 2:20 Revelation 6:15 Revelation 7:3 Revelation 7:15 Revelation 10:7 Revelation 11:18 Revelation 13:16 Revelation 15:3 Revelation 19:2 Revelation 19:5 Revelation 19:18 Revelation 22:3 Revelation 22:3 Revelation 22:6

shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach

Definition:

The term "shame" refers to the painful feeling of being disgraced or humiliated that a person feels when they do something that others consider dishonorable or improper.

- Something that is "shameful" is "improper" or "dishonorable."
- The term "ashamed" describes how a person feels when he has done something improper or dishonorable.
- The term "humiliate" means to cause someone to feel shamed or disgraced, usually publicly. The act of shaming someone is called "humiliation."
- To "reproach" someone means to criticize or disapprove of that person's character or behavior.
- The phrase "put to shame" means to defeat people or expose their actions so that they feel ashamed of themselves. The prophet Isaiah said that those who make and worship idols will be put to shame.
- The term "disgraceful" can be used to describe a sinful act or the person who did it. When a person does something sinful, it can cause him to be in a state of disgrace or dishonor.
- Sometimes a person who is doing good things is treated in a way that causes him disgrace or shame. For example, when Jesus was killed on a cross, this was a disgraceful way to die. Jesus had done nothing wrong to deserve this disgrace.
- When God humbles someone, it means that he is causing a prideful person to experience failure to help him overcome his pride. This is different from humiliating someone, which is often done in order to hurt that person.
- Saying that a person is "above reproach" or "beyond reproach" or "without reproach" means that this person behaves in a God-honoring way and there is little or nothing that could be said in criticism of him.

Translation Suggestions

- Ways to translate “disgrace” could include “shame” or “dishonor.”
- Ways to translate “disgraceful” could include “shameful” or “dishonoring.”
- To “humiliate” could also be translated as to “shame” or to “cause to feel shame” or to “embarrass.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate “humiliation” could include “shame” or “degrading” or “disgrace.”
- The word “reproach” could also be translated as “accusation” or “shame” or “disgrace.”
- To “reproach” could also be translated as to “rebuke” or to “accuse” or to “criticize,” depending on the context.

(See also: dishonor, accuse, rebuke, false god, humble, Isaiah, worship)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 3:15-17
- 2 Kings 2:17
- 2 Samuel 13:13
- Luke 20:11
- Mark 8:38
- Mark 12:4-5
- 1 Timothy 3:7
- Genesis 34:7
- Hebrews 11:26
- Lamentations 2:1-2
- Psalms 22:6
- Deuteronomy 21:14
- Ezra 9:5
- Proverbs 25:7-8
- Psalms 6:8-10
- Psalms 123:3
- 1 Timothy 5:7-8
- 1 Timothy 6:13-14
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Job 16:9-10
- Proverbs 18:3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0937, H0954, H0955, H1317, H1322, H1421, H1442, H1984, H2490, H2616, H2617, H2659, H2778, H2781, H2865, H3001, H3637, H3639, H3640, H3971, H5007, H5034, H5039, H6030, H6031, H6172, H6256, H7022, H7034, H7036, H7043, H7511, H7817, H8103, H8213, H8216, H8217, H8589, G01520, G01530, G04100, G04220, G04230, G08080, G08180, G08190, G08210, G17880, G17910, G18700, G26170, G30590, G36790, G36800, G36810, G38560, G50140, G51950, G51960, G54840

Revelation References:

Revelation 3:18

ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearer, sheepskin

Definition:

A "sheep" is a medium-sized animal with four legs that has wool all over its body. A male sheep is called a "ram." A female sheep is called a "ewe." The plural of "sheep" is also "sheep."

- A baby sheep is called a "lamb."
- The Israelites often used sheep for sacrifices, especially male sheep and young sheep.
- People eat meat from sheep and use their wool to make clothing and other things.
- Sheep are very trusting, weak, and timid. They are easily influenced to wander away. They need a shepherd to lead them, protect them, and provide them with food, water, and shelter.
- In the Bible, people are compared to sheep who have God as their shepherd.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: Israel, lamb, sacrifice, shepherd)

Bible References:

- Acts 8:32
- Genesis 30:32
- John 2:14
- Luke 15:5
- Mark 6:34
- Matthew 9:36
- Matthew 10:6
- Matthew 12:12
- Matthew 25:33

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:12** One day while Moses was taking care of his **sheep**, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **17:2** David was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father's **sheep**, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the **sheep**.
- **30:3** To Jesus, these people were like **sheep** without a shepherd.
- **38:8** Jesus said, "All of you will all abandon me tonight. It is written, 'I will strike the shepherd and all the **sheep** will be scattered.'"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0352, H1494, H1798, H2169, H3104, H3532, H3535, H3733, H3775, H5739, H5763, H6260, H6629, H6792, H7353, H7462, H7716, G41650, G42620, G42630

Revelation References:

Revelation 18:13

shepherd, herder, pastor

Definition:

A “shepherd” is a person who takes care of sheep. In the Old Testament, this word can also refer to a “herder” who takes care of other kinds of domestic livestock such as goats or cattle.

- As a verb, the term “shepherd” means to lead sheep (or other livestock) to places with good food and water, protect them from wild animals, keep them from getting lost and other duties necessary to keep livestock alive and healthy.
- In the Bible, this term is often used figuratively to refer to taking care of the needs of people (not only animals), both physical and spiritual.
- In the Old Testament, God was called the “shepherd” of his people because he took care of them. In the New Testament, Jesus called himself the “good shepherd,” and in other places Jesus is called the “great shepherd” of the Church.
- The term “shepherd” is also used in the New Testament to refer to a person who is a spiritual leader over other believers. The word translated as “pastor” is the same word that is translated as “shepherd.” Elders and overseers are also called shepherds.

Translation Suggestions

- The noun “shepherd” can be translated as “person who takes care of sheep” or “sheep tender” or “sheep caregiver.”
- When referring to someone who cares for livestock other than sheep, the term can be translated as “herder,” “tender of livestock” or “person who takes care of livestock.”
- When used as a verb, the term “shepherd” could be translated as “take care of sheep” or “watch over sheep.”
- In some contexts, the term “shepherd” could be translated as “leader” or “guide” or “caregiver.”
- When used figuratively, the noun “shepherd” could be translated in different ways, including “spiritual shepherd” or “spiritual leader” or “one who is like a shepherd” or “one who cares for his people like a shepherd cares for his sheep” or “one who leads his people like a shepherd guides his sheep” or “one who takes care of God’s sheep.”
- When used figuratively, the verb “shepherd” could be translated as to “take care of” or to “spiritually nourish” or to “guide and teach” or to “lead and take care of (like a shepherd cares for sheep).”

(See also: sheep, livestock, pastor)

Bible References:

- Genesis 13:7
- Genesis 49:24
- Luke 2:9
- Mark 6:34
- Mark 14:26-27
- Matthew 2:6
- Matthew 9:36
- Matthew 25:32
- Matthew 26:31

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:11** Moses became a **shepherd** in the wilderness far away from Egypt.to
- **17:2** David was a **shepherd** from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father’s sheep, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the sheep.
- **23:6** That night, there were some **shepherds** in a nearby field guarding their flocks.
- **23:8** The **shepherds** soon arrived at the place where Jesus was and they found him lying in a feeding trough, just as the angel had told them.
- **30:3** To Jesus, these people were like sheep without a **shepherd**.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6629, H7462, H7469, H7473, G07500, G41650, G41660

Revelation References:

Revelation 2:27 Revelation 7:17 Revelation 12:5 Revelation 19:15

silver

Definition:

Silver is a shiny, gray precious metal used to make coins, jewelry, containers, and ornaments.

- The various containers that are made from silver include silver cups and bowls, and other things used for cooking, eating, or serving.
- Silver and gold were used in the building of the tabernacle and the temple. The temple in Jerusalem had containers made of silver.
- In Bible times, a shekel was a unit of weight, and a purchase was often priced at a certain number of shekels of silver. By New Testament times there were silver coins of various weights that were measured in shekels.
- Joseph's brothers sold him as a slave for twenty shekels of silver.
- Judas was paid thirty silver coins for betraying Jesus.
- If your culture does not have silver you could translate this term as "precious metal"

(See also: tabernacle, temple)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:9-11
- 1 Samuel 2:36
- 2 Kings 25:13-15
- Acts 3:6
- Matthew 26:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3701, H3702, H7192, G06930, G06940, G06950, G06960, G14060

Revelation References:

Revelation 9:20 Revelation 18:12

slander, slanderer, revile, insult

Definition:

A slander consists of negative, defaming things spoken (not written) about another person. To say such things (not to write them) about someone is to slander that person. The person saying such things is a slanderer.

- Slander may be a true report or a false accusation, but its effect is to cause others to think negatively of the person being slandered.
- To "slander" could be translated as to "speak against" or to "spread an evil report" or to "defame."
- A slanderer is also called an "informer" or a "tale-bearer."

(See also: blasphemy)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 4:13
- 1 Timothy 3:11
- 2 Corinthians 6:8-10
- Mark 7:20-23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1681, H1696, H1848, H3960, H5791, H7270, H7400, H8267, G09870, G09880, G12280, G14260, G26360, G26370, G30590, G30600

Revelation References:

Revelation 2:9

slaughter, slaughtered

Definition:

The term "slaughter" refers to killing a large number of animals or people, or to killing in a violent way. It can also refer to killing an animal for the purpose of eating it. The act of slaughtering is also called "slaughter."

- When Abraham received three visitors at his tent in the desert, he ordered his servants to slaughter and cook a calf for his guests.
- The prophet Ezekiel prophesied that God would send his angel to slaughter all those who would not follow His word.
- 1 Samuel records a great slaughter in which 30,000 Israelites were killed by their enemies because of disobedience to God.
- "Weapons of slaughter" could be translated as "weapons for killing."
- The expression "the slaughter was very great" could be translated as "a large number were killed" or "the number of deaths was very great" or "a terribly high number of people died."
- Other ways to translate "slaughter" could include "kill" or "slay" or "killing."

(See also: angel, cow, disobey, Ezekiel, servant, slay)

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 21:10-11
- Hebrews 7:1
- Isaiah 34:2
- Jeremiah 25:34

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2026, H2027, H2028, H2076, H2491, H2873, H2874, H2878, H4046, H4293, H4347, H4660, H5221, H6993, H7524, H7819, H7821, G28710, G49670, G49690

Revelation References:

Revelation 6:4

snow

Definition:

The term "snow" refers to white flakes of frozen water that can fall from clouds in places where the air temperature is cold.

- Snow falls in places of higher elevation in Israel, but does not always stay on the ground very long before melting. The peaks of mountains tend to have snow that lasts longer. One example of a place mentioned in the Bible as having snow is Mount Lebanon.
- Something that is very white often has its color compared to the color of snow. For example, in the book of Revelation Jesus' clothing and hair were described as being "white as snow."
- The whiteness of snow also symbolizes purity and cleanliness. For example, the statement that our "sins will be as white as snow" means that God will completely cleanse his people from their sins.
- Some languages might refer to snow as "frozen rain" or "flakes of ice" or "frozen flakes."
- "Snow water" refers to the water that comes from melted snow.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Lebanon, pure)

Bible References:

- Exodus 4:6
- Job 37:4-6
- Matthew 28:3
- Psalms 147:16
- Revelation 1:14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7949, H7950, H8517, G55100

Revelation References:

Revelation 1:14

sorcerer, sorceress, sorcery, sorceries, witchcraft, magician

Definition:

"Sorcery" or "witchcraft" refers to using magic, which involves doing powerful things through the help of evil spirits. A "sorcerer" is someone who does these powerful, magical things.

- The use of magic and sorcery can involve both beneficial things (such as healing someone) and harmful things (such as putting a curse on someone). But all kinds of sorcery are wrong, because they use the power of evil spirits.
- In the Bible, God says that the use of sorcery is as evil as other terrible sins (such as adultery, worshiping idols, and child sacrifice).
- The terms "sorcery" and "witchcraft" could also be translated as "evil spirit power" or "casting spells."
- Possible ways to translated "sorcerer" could include "worker of magic" or "person who casts spells" or "person who does miracles using evil spirit power."
- Note that "sorcery" has a different meaning than the term "divination," which refers to attempting to contact the spirit world.

(See also: adultery, demon, divination, false god, magic, sacrifice, worship)

Bible References:

- Acts 8:9-11
- Exodus 7:11-13
- Galatians 5:19-21
- Revelation 9:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3784, H3785, H3786, H6049, G30950, G30960, G30970, G53310, G53320, G53330

Revelation References:

Revelation 18:23 Revelation 21:8 Revelation 22:15

staff, clubs

Definition:

A staff is a long wooden stick or rod, often used as a walking stick.

- When Jacob was old, he used a staff to help him walk.
- God turned Moses' staff into a snake to show his power to Pharaoh.
- Shepherds also used a staff to help guide their sheep, or to rescue the sheep when they fell or wandered.
- The shepherd's staff had a hook on the end, so it differed from the shepherd's rod, which was straight and was used to kill wild animals that were trying to attack the sheep.

(See also: Pharaoh, power, sheep, shepherd)

Bible References:

- Exodus 4:1-3
- Exodus 7:9
- Luke 9:3
- Mark 6:7-9
- Matthew 10:8-10
- Matthew 27:29

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4132, H4294, H4731, H4938, H6086, H6418, H7626, G25630, G35860, G44640

Revelation References:

Revelation 11:1

suffer, suffering

Definition:

The terms "suffer" and "suffering" refer to experiencing something very unpleasant, such as illness, pain, or other hardships.

- When people are persecuted or when they are sick, they suffer.
- Sometimes people suffer because of wrong things they have done; other times they suffer because of sin and disease in the world.
- Suffering can be physical, such as feeling pain or sickness. It can also be emotional, such as feeling fear, sadness, or loneliness.
- The phrase "suffer me" means "bear with me" or "hear me out" or "listen patiently."

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "suffer" can be translated as "feel pain" or "endure difficulty" or "experience hardships" or "go through difficult and painful experiences."
- Depending on the context, "suffering" could be translated as "extremely difficult circumstances" or "severe hardships" or "experiencing hardship" or "time of painful experiences."
- The phrase "suffer thirst" could be translated as "experience thirst" or "suffer with thirst."
- To "suffer violence" could also be translated as "undergo violence" or "be harmed by violent acts."

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:14-16
- 2 Thessalonians 1:3-5
- 2 Timothy 1:8
- Acts 7:11-13
- Isaiah 53:11
- Jeremiah 6:6-8
- Matthew 16:21
- Psalms 22:24
- Revelation 1:9
- Romans 5:3-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:13** God said, "I have seen the **suffering** of my people."
- **38:12** Jesus prayed three times, "My Father, if it is possible, please let me not have to drink this cup of **suffering**."
- **42:3** He (Jesus) reminded them that the prophets said the Messiah would **suffer** and be killed, but would rise again on the third day.
- **42:7** He (Jesus) said, "It was written long ago that the Messiah would **suffer**, die, and rise from the dead on the third day."
- **44:5** "Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to fulfill the prophecies that the Messiah would **suffer** and die."
- **46:4** God said, "I have chosen him (Saul) to declare my name to the unsaved. I will show him how much he must **suffer** for my sake."
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more **suffering**, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0943, H1741, H1934, H4531, H5142, H5375, H5999, H6031, H6040, H6041, H6064, H6090, H6770, H6869, H6887, H7661, G00910, G09410, G09710, G22100, G23460, G23470, G25520, G25530, G25610, G38040, G39580, G43100, G47780, G47770, G48410, G50040

Revelation References:

Revelation 2:10

sulfur, sulfurous

Definition:

Sulfur is a yellow substance that becomes a burning liquid when it is set on fire.

- Sulfur also has a very strong smell that is like the odor of rotten eggs.
- In the Bible, burning sulfur is a symbol of God's judgment on ungodly and rebellious people.
- During the time of Lot, God rained down fire and sulfur on the evil cities of Sodom and Gomorrah.
- In some English Bible versions, sulfur is referred to as "brimstone," which literally means "burning stone."

Translation Suggestions:

- Possible translations of this term could include "yellow stone that burns" or "burning yellowish rock."

(See also: Gomorrah, judge, Lot, rebel, Sodom, godly)

Bible References:

- Genesis 19:24
- Isaiah 34:9
- Luke 17:29
- Revelation 20:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1614, G23030

Revelation References:

Revelation 9:17 Revelation 9:17 Revelation 9:18 Revelation 14:10 Revelation 19:20 Revelation 20:10 Revelation 21:8

sword, swordsmen

Definition:

A sword is a flat-bladed metal weapon used to cut or stab. It has a handle and a long, pointed blade with a very sharp cutting edge.

- In ancient times the length of a sword's blade was about 60 to 91 centimeters.
- Some swords have two sharp edges and are called "double-edged" or "two-edged" swords.
- Jesus' disciples had swords for self defense. With his sword, Peter cut off the ear of the high priest's servant.
- Both John the Baptist and the apostle James were beheaded with swords.

Translation Suggestions

- A sword is used as a metaphor for God's word. God's teachings in the Bible exposed people's innermost thoughts and convicted them of their sin. In a similar way, a sword cuts deeply, causing pain. (See: Metaphor)
- One way to translate this figurative use would be, "God's word is like a sword, which cuts deeply and exposes sin."
- Another figurative use of this term occurred in the book of Psalms, where the tongue or speech of a person was compared to a sword, which can injure people. This could be translated as "the tongue is like a sword that can badly injure someone."
- If swords are not known in your culture, this word could be translated with the name of another long-bladed weapon that is used to cut or stab.
- A sword could also be described as a "sharp weapon" or "long knife." Some translations could include a picture of a sword.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: James (brother of Jesus), John (the Baptist), tongue, word of God)

Bible References:

- Acts 12:2
- Genesis 27:40
- Genesis 34:25
- Luke 2:33-35
- Luke 21:24
- Matthew 10:34
- Matthew 26:55
- Revelation 1:16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0019, H1300, H2719, H4380, H6609, H7524, H7973, G31620, G45010

Revelation References:

Revelation 1:16 Revelation 2:12 Revelation 2:16 Revelation 6:4 Revelation 6:8 Revelation 13:10 Revelation 13:10 Revelation 13:14 Revelation 19:15 Revelation 19:21

terror, terrorize, terrify, dread, panic

Definition:

The term “terror” refers to a feeling of extreme or intense fear. To “terrify” someone means to cause that person to feel very afraid.

- A “terror” is something or someone that causes great fear or dread. An example of a terror could be an attacking enemy army or a plague or disease that is widespread, killing many people.
- These terrors can be described as “terrifying.” This term could be translated as “fear-causing” or “terror-producing.”
- The judgment of God will someday cause terror in unrepentant people who reject his grace.
- The “terror of Yahweh” could be translated as “the terrifying presence of Yahweh” or “the dreaded judgment of Yahweh” or “when Yahweh causes great fear.”
- Ways to translate “terror” could also include “extreme fear” or “deep dread.”

(See also: adversary, fear, judge, plague, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 2:25
- Exodus 14:10
- Luke 21:9
- Mark 6:48-50

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0367, H0926, H0928, H1091, H1161, H1204, H1205, H1763, H2111, H2113, H2189, H2731, H2847, H2851, H2865, H3372, H3707, H4032, H4172, H4288, H4637, H6184, H6206, H6343, H6973, G16290, G16300, G22580, G44220, G44260, G54010

Revelation References:

Revelation 11:13

thief, thieves, rob, robber, robbery, bandit

Definition:

The term “thief” refers to a person who steals money or property from other people. The plural of “thief” is “thieves.” The term “robber” often refers to a thief who also physically harms or threatens the people he is stealing from.

- Jesus told a parable about a Samaritan man who took care of a Jewish man who had been attacked by robbers. The robbers had beaten the Jewish man and wounded him before stealing his money and clothing.
- Both thieves and robbers come suddenly to steal, when people are not expecting it. Often they use the cover of darkness to hide what they are doing.
- In a figurative sense, the New Testament describes Satan as a thief who comes to steal, kill, and destroy. This means that Satan’s plan is to try to get God’s people to stop obeying him. If he succeeded in doing this Satan would be stealing from them the good things that God has planned for them.
- Jesus compared the suddenness of his return to the suddenness of a thief coming to steal from people. Just as a thief comes at a time when people are not expecting it, so Jesus will return at a time when people do not expect it.

(See also: bless, crime, crucify, darkness, destroyer, power, Samaria, Satan)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 3:10
- Luke 12:33
- Mark 14:48
- Proverbs 6:30
- Revelation 3:3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1214, H1215, H1416, H1589, H1590, H1980, H6530, H7703, G07270, G24170, G28120, G30270

Revelation References:

Revelation 3:3 Revelation 16:15

throne, enthroned

Definition:

A throne is a specially-designed chair where a ruler sits when he decides important matters and listens to requests from his people.

- A throne is also a symbol of the authority and power that a ruler has.
- The word “throne” can also be used to refer to the ruler, his reign, or his power.
- In the Bible, God was often portrayed as a king who sits on his throne. Jesus was described as sitting on a throne at the right hand of God the Father.
- Jesus said that heaven is God’s throne. One way to translate this could be, “where God reigns as king.”

(See also: authority, power, king, reign)

Bible References:

- Colossians 1:15-17
- Genesis 41:40
- Luke 1:32
- Luke 22:30
- Matthew 5:34
- Matthew 19:28
- Revelation 1:4-6

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3427, H3676, H3678, H3764, H7675, G09680, G23620

Revelation References:

Revelation 1:4 Revelation 2:13 Revelation 3:21 Revelation 3:21 Revelation 4:2 Revelation 4:2 Revelation 4:3 Revelation 4:4 Revelation 4:4 Revelation 4:4 Revelation 4:5 Revelation 4:5 Revelation 4:6 Revelation 4:6 Revelation 4:6 Revelation 4:9 Revelation 4:10 Revelation 4:10 Revelation 5:1 Revelation 5:6 Revelation 5:7 Revelation 5:11 Revelation 5:13 Revelation 6:16 Revelation 7:9 Revelation 7:10 Revelation 7:11 Revelation 7:11 Revelation 7:15 Revelation 7:15 Revelation 7:17 Revelation 8:3 Revelation 11:16 Revelation 12:5 Revelation 13:2 Revelation 14:3 Revelation 16:10 Revelation 16:17 Revelation 19:4 Revelation 19:5 Revelation 20:4 Revelation 20:11 Revelation 20:12 Revelation 21:3 Revelation 21:5 Revelation 22:1 Revelation 22:3

grave, gravedigger, tomb, burial place

Definition:

The terms “tomb” and “grave” refer to a place where people put the body of a person who has died. A “burial place” is a more general term that also refers to this.

- The Jews sometimes used natural caves as tombs, and sometimes they dug caves into rock in the side of a hill.
- In New Testament times, it was common to roll a large, heavy stone in front of the opening of a tomb in order to close it.
- If the target language the word for a tomb can only refer to a hole in which the body is placed below the ground, other ways to translate this could include “cave” or “hole in the side of a hill.”
- The phrase “the grave” is often used generally and figuratively to refer to the condition of being dead or a place where the souls of dead people are.

(See also: bury, death)

Bible References:

- Acts 2:29-31
- Genesis 23:6
- Genesis 50:5
- John 19:41
- Luke 23:53
- Mark 5:1-2
- Matthew 27:53
- Romans 3:13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **32:4** The man lived among the **tombs** in the area.
- **37:6** Jesus asked them, “Where have you put Lazarus?” They told him, “In the **tomb**. Come and see.”
- **37:7** The **tomb** was a cave with a stone rolled in front of its opening.

- **40:9** Then Joseph and Nicodemus, two Jewish leaders who believed Jesus was the Messiah, asked Pilate for Jesus' body. They wrapped his body in cloth and placed it in a **tomb** cut out of rock. Then they rolled a large stone in front the **tomb** to block the opening.
- **41:4** He (the angel) rolled away the stone that was covering the entrance to the **tomb** and sat on it. The soldiers guarding the **tomb** were terrified and fell to the ground like dead men.
- **41:5** When the women arrived at the **tomb**, the angel told them, "Do not be afraid. Jesus is not here. He has risen from the dead, just like he said he would! Look in the **tomb** and see." The women looked into the **tomb** and saw where Jesus' body had been laid. His body was not there!

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1430, H6900, H6913, H7585, H7845, G34180, G34190, G50280

Revelation References:

Revelation 11:9

tongue, language

Definition:

The term "tongue" refers to the organ inside a person's mouth that is used to speak. The term is often used figuratively to mean "language" or "speaking." There also several other figurative meanings as well.

- In the Bible, the most common figurative meaning for this term is "language" or "speech."
- Sometimes "tongue" may refer to a human language spoken by a certain people group.
- Other times it refers to a supernatural language that the Holy Spirit gives believers in Christ as one of the "gifts of the Spirit."
- In the book of Acts, the expression "tongues" of fire refers to "flames" of fire, presumably shaped like tongues.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term "tongue" can be translated as "language" or "supernatural language." If it is not clear which one it is referring to, it is better to translate it as "language."
- When referring to fire, this term could be translated as "flames."
- The expression "my tongue rejoices" could be translated as "I rejoice and praise God" or "I am joyfully praising God."
- The phrase, "tongue that lies" could be translated as "person who tell lies" or "people who lie."
- Phrases such as "with their tongues" could be translated as "with what they say" or "by their words."

(See also: gift, Holy Spirit, joy, praise, rejoice, spirit)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 12:10
- 1 John 3:18
- 2 Samuel 23:2
- Acts 2:26
- Ezekiel 36:3
- Philippians 2:11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3956, G11000, G12580, G20840

Revelation References:

Revelation 5:9 Revelation 7:9 Revelation 10:11 Revelation 11:9 Revelation 13:7 Revelation 14:6 Revelation 16:10 Revelation 17:15

torment, tormented, tormentor

Definition:

The term "torment" refers to terrible suffering. To torment someone means to cause that person to suffer, often in a cruel way.

- Sometimes the term "torment" refers to physical pain and suffering. For example, the book of Revelation describes physical torment that worshipers of the "beast" will suffer in the end times.
- Suffering may also take the form of spiritual and emotional pain, as experienced by Job.
- The apostle John wrote in the book of Revelation that people who do not believe in Jesus as their Savior will experience eternal torment in the lake of fire.
- This term could be translated as "terrible suffering" or "cause someone to suffer greatly" or "agony." Some translators may add "physical" or "spiritual" to make the meaning clear.

(See also: beast, everlasting, Job, Savior, spirit, suffer, worship)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 2:8
- Jeremiah 30:20-22
- Lamentations 1:11-12
- Luke 8:28-29
- Revelation 11:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3013, G09280, G09290, G09300, G09310, G25580, G28510, G36000

Revelation References:

Revelation 9:5 Revelation 9:5 Revelation 9:5 Revelation 11:10 Revelation 14:10 Revelation 14:11 Revelation 18:7 Revelation 18:10 Revelation 18:15 Revelation 20:10

trample

Definition:

To “trample” means to step on something and smash it with the feet. This term is also used figuratively in the Bible to mean “destroy” or “defeat” or “humiliate.”

- An example of “trampling” would be the smashing down of grass by the feet of people running in a field.
- In ancient times, wine was sometimes made by trampling grapes to remove the juice from them.
- Sometimes the term to “trample” has a figurative meaning of to “punish by humiliating,” comparing it to trampling mud for a threshing floor.
- The term “trample” was used figuratively to express how Yahweh would punish his people Israel for their pride and rebellion.
- Other ways that “trample” could be translated include “crush with the feet” or “smash down with the feet” or “stomp on and crush” or “smash into the ground.”
- Depending on the context, this term could also be translated as “run over,” “walk around on,” or “crush underfoot.”

(See also: grape, shame, punish, rebel, thresh, wine)

Bible References:

- Hebrews 10:29
- Psalms 7:5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0947, H1758, H1869, H4001, H4823, H7429, H7512, G26620, G39610

Revelation References:

Revelation 11:2

tribe, tribal, tribesmen

Definition:

A tribe is a group of people who are descended from a common ancestor.

- People from the same tribe usually also share a common language and culture.
- In the Old Testament, God divided the people of Israel into twelve tribes. Each tribe was descended from a son or grandson of Jacob.
- A tribe is smaller than a nation, but larger than a clan.

(See also: clan, nation, people group, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:19
- 2 Kings 17:16-18
- Genesis 25:16
- Genesis 49:17
- Luke 2:36-38

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0523, H4294, H7625, H7626, G14290, G54430

Revelation References:

Revelation 1:7 Revelation 5:5 Revelation 5:9 Revelation 7:4 Revelation 7:5 Revelation 7:5 Revelation 7:5 Revelation 7:6 Revelation 7:6 Revelation 7:6 Revelation 7:7 Revelation 7:7 Revelation 7:7 Revelation 7:8 Revelation 7:8 Revelation 7:8 Revelation 7:9 Revelation 11:9 Revelation 13:7 Revelation 14:6 Revelation 21:12

tribulation, distress, distresses, trouble

Definition:

The term “tribulation” refers to a time of hardship, suffering, and distress.

- It is explained in the New Testament that Christians will endure times of persecution and other kinds of tribulation because many people in this world are opposed to Jesus’ teachings.
- The term “tribulation” could also be translated as “time of great suffering” or “deep distress” or “severe difficulties.”

(See also: earth, teach, wrath)

Bible References:

- Mark 4:17
- Mark 13:19
- Matthew 13:20-21
- Matthew 24:9
- Matthew 24:29
- Romans 2:9

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6869, G23470, G44230

Revelation References:

Revelation 1:9 Revelation 2:9 Revelation 2:10 Revelation 2:22 Revelation 7:14

trumpet, trumpeter

Definition:

The term “trumpet” refers to an instrument for producing music or for calling people to gather together for an announcement or meeting.

- A trumpet was commonly made from either metal, seashell, or an animal horn.
- Trumpets were most commonly blown to call people to come together for battle, and for Israel’s public assemblies.
- The book of Revelation describes a scene in the end times in which angels blow their trumpets to signal the outpouring of the wrath of God on the earth.

(See also: angel, assembly, earth, horn, Israel, wrath)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 13:7-8
- 2 Kings 9:13
- Exodus 19:12-13
- Hebrews 12:19
- Matthew 6:2
- Matthew 24:31

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2689, H2690, H3104, H7782, H8619, H8643, G45360, G45370, G45380

Revelation References:

Revelation 1:10 Revelation 4:1 Revelation 8:2 Revelation 8:6 Revelation 8:6 Revelation 8:7 Revelation 8:8 Revelation 8:12 Revelation 8:13 Revelation 8:13 Revelation 9:1 Revelation 9:13 Revelation 9:14 Revelation 10:7 Revelation 11:15 Revelation 18:22

understand, understanding, thinking

Definition:

The term “understand” means to hear or receive information and know what it means.

- The term “understanding” can refer to “knowledge” or “wisdom” or realizing how to do something.
- To understand someone can also mean to know how that person is feeling.
- While walking on the road to Emmaus, Jesus caused the disciples to understand the meaning of the scriptures about the Messiah.
- Depending on the context, the term “understand” could be translated by “know” or “believe” or “comprehend” or “know what (something) means.”
- Often the term “understanding” can be translated by “knowledge” or “wisdom” or “insight.”

(See also: believe, know, wise)

Bible References:

- Job 34:16-17
- Luke 2:47
- Luke 8:10
- Matthew 13:12
- Matthew 13:14
- Proverbs 3:5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0995, H0998, H0999, H1847, H2940, H3045, H3820, H3824, H4486, H7200, H7919, H7922, H7924, H8085, H8394, G00500, G01450, G01910, G08010, G10970, G11080, G12710, G19210, G19220, G19870, G19900, G26570, G35390, G35630, G49070, G49080, G49200, G54240, G54280, G54290

Revelation References:

Revelation 3:17 Revelation 13:18

vine

Definition:

The term “vine” refers to a plant that grows by trailing along the ground or by climbing trees and other structures. The word “vine” in the Bible is used only of fruit-bearing vines and usually refers to grape vines.

- In the Bible, the word “vine” almost always means “grapevine.”
- The branches of the grapevine are attached to the main stem which gives them water and other nutrients so that they can grow.
- Jesus called himself the “vine” and called his people the “branches.” In this context, the word “vine” could also be translated as “grapevine stem” or “grape plant stem.” (See: Metaphor)

(See also: grape, vineyard)

Bible References:

- Genesis 40:9
- Genesis 49:11
- John 15:1
- Luke 22:18
- Mark 12:3
- Matthew 21:35-37

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5139, H1612, H8321, G02880, G02900, G10090, G10920

Revelation References:

Revelation 14:18 Revelation 14:19

virgin, virginity

Definition:

A virgin is a woman who has never had sexual relations.

- The prophet Isaiah said that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- Mary was a virgin when she was pregnant with Jesus. He did not have a human father.
- Some languages may have a term that is a polite way of referring to a virgin. (See: Euphemism)

(See also: Christ, Isaiah, Jesus, Mary)

Bible References:

- Genesis 24:15-16
- Luke 1:27
- Luke 1:35
- Matthew 1:23
- Matthew 25:2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:9** The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the Messiah would be born from a **virgin**.
- **22:4** She (Mary) was a **virgin** and was engaged to be married to a man named Joseph.
- **22:5** Mary replied, "How can this be, since I am a **virgin**?"
- **49:1** An angel told a **virgin** named Mary that she would give birth to God's Son. So while she was still a **virgin**, she gave birth to a son and named him Jesus.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1330, H1331, G39320, G39330

Revelation References:

Revelation 14:4

vision, envision

Definition:

The term "vision" refers to something that a person sees. It especially refers to something unusual or supernatural that God shows people in order to give them a message.

- Usually, visions are seen while the person is awake. However, sometimes a vision is something a person sees in a dream while asleep.
- God sends visions to tell people something that is very important. For example, Peter was shown a vision to tell him that God wanted him to welcome Gentiles.

Translation Suggestion

- The phrase "saw a vision" could be translated as "saw something unusual from God" or "God showed him something special."
- Some languages may not have separate words for "vision" and "dream." So a sentence such as "Daniel had dreams and visions in his mind" could be translated as something like "Daniel was dreaming while asleep and God caused him to see unusual things."

(See also: dream)

Bible References:

- Acts 9:10-12
- Acts 10:3-6
- Acts 10:11
- Acts 12:9-10
- Luke 1:22
- Luke 24:23
- Matthew 17:9-10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2376, H2377, H2378, H2380, H2384, H4236, H4758, H4759, H7203, H7723, H8602, G37010, G37050, G37060

Revelation References:

Revelation 9:17

watch, guard, take heed, beware

Definition:

The term “watch” means to look at something very closely and carefully. It also has several figurative meanings. A “watchman” was someone whose job was to guard a city by looking carefully all around him for any danger or threat to the people in the city.

- The command to “watch your life and doctrine closely” means to be careful to live wisely and to not believe false teachings.
- To “watch out” is a warning to be careful to avoid a danger or harmful influence.
- To “watch” or “keep watch” means to always be alert and on guard against sin and evil. It can also mean to “be ready.”
- To “keep watch over” or “keep close watch” can mean to guard, protect or take care of someone or something.
- Other ways of translating “watch” could include “pay close attention to” or “be diligent” or “be very careful” or “be on guard.”
- Other words for “watchman” are “sentry” or “guard.”

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 5:6
- Hebrews 13:17
- Jeremiah 31:4-6
- Mark 8:15
- Mark 13:33-34
- Matthew 25:10-13

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0821, H2370, H4929, H4931, H5027, H5341, H6486, H6822, H6836, H6974, H7462, H7789, H7919, H8104, H8108, H8245, G00690, G09910, G11270, G14920, G23340, G28920, G35250, G37080, G39060, G43370, G46480, G50830, G54380

Revelation References:

Revelation 3:2 Revelation 3:3 Revelation 6:1 Revelation 16:15

wheat

Definition:

Wheat is a type of grain that people grow for food. When the Bible mentions “grain” or “seeds,” it is often talking about wheat grain or seeds.

- The wheat seeds or grains grow at the top of the wheat plant.
- After harvesting the wheat, the grain is separated from the stalk of the plant by threshing it. The stalk of the wheat plant is also called “straw” and is often placed on the ground for animals to sleep on.
- After threshing, the chaff surrounding the grain seed is separated from the grain by winnowing and is thrown away.
- People grind the wheat grain into flour, and use this for making bread.

(See also: barley, chaff, grain, seed, thresh, winnow)

Bible References:

- Acts 27:36-38
- Exodus 34:21-22
- John 12:24
- Luke 3:17
- Matthew 3:12
- Matthew 13:26

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1250, H2406, G46210

Revelation References:

Revelation 6:6 Revelation 18:13

wine, wineskin, new wine

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “wine” refers to a kind of fermented drink made from the juice of a fruit called grapes. Wine was stored in “wineskins,” which were containers made out of animal skin.

- The term “new wine” referred to grape juice that had just been taken from the grape and was not fermented yet. Sometimes the term “wine” also referred to unfermented grape juice.
- To make wine, grapes are crushed in a winepress so that the juice comes out. The juice eventually ferments and alcohol forms in it.
- In Bible times, wine was the normal drink with meals. It did not have as much alcohol as present-day wine has.
- Before wine was served for a meal, it was often mixed with water.
- A wineskin that was old and brittle would get cracks in it, which allowed the wine to leak out. New wineskins were soft and flexible, which meant they did not tear easily and could store the wine safely.
- If wine is unknown in your culture, it could be translated as “fermented grape juice” or “fermented drink made from a fruit called grapes” or “fermented fruit juice.” (See: How to Translate Unknowns)
- Ways to translate “wineskin” could include “bag for wine” or “animal skin wine bag” or “animal skin container for wine.”

(See also: grape, vine, vineyard, winepress)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 5:23
- Genesis 9:21
- Genesis 49:12
- John 2:3-5
- John 2:10
- Matthew 9:17
- Matthew 11:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2561, H2562, H3196, H4469, H4997, H5435, H6025, H6071, H8492, G10980, G36310, G38200, G39430

Revelation References:

Revelation 6:6 Revelation 14:8 Revelation 14:10 Revelation 16:19 Revelation 17:2 Revelation 18:3 Revelation 18:13 Revelation 19:15

winepress

Definition:

During Bible times, a "winepress" was a large container or open place where the juice of grapes was extracted in order to make wine.

- In Israel, winepresses were usually large, wide basins that were dug out of solid rock. Clusters of grapes were put on the flat bottom of the hole and people trampled the grapes with their feet to get the grape juice to flow out.
- Usually a winepress had two levels, with the grapes being trampled in the top level so that the juice would run down into the lower level where it could be collected.
- The term "winepress" is also used figuratively in the Bible as a picture of God's wrath being poured out on wicked people. (See: Metaphor)

(See also: grape, wrath)

Bible References:

- Isaiah 63:2
- Mark 12:1
- Matthew 21:33
- Revelation 14:20

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1660, H3342, H6333, G30250, G52760

Revelation References:

Revelation 14:19 Revelation 14:20 Revelation 14:20 Revelation 19:15

womb

Definition:

The term “womb” refers to where a baby grows inside its mother.

- This is an older term that is sometimes used in order to be polite and less direct. (See: euphemism)
- A more modern term for womb is “uterus.”
- Some languages use a word like “belly” to refer to a woman’s womb or uterus.
- Use a word for this in the project language that is well-known, natural, and acceptable.

Bible References:

- Genesis 25:23
- Genesis 25:24-26
- Genesis 38:27-28
- Genesis 49:25
- Luke 2:21
- Luke 11:27
- Luke 23:29
- Matthew 19:12

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0990, H4578, H7356, H7358, G10640, G28360, G33880

Revelation References:

Revelation 12:2